



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

1 Kings

Version 64

[en]

Copyrights and Licensing

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Date: 2022-08-03

Version: 64

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Literal Text

Date: 2022-06-28

Version: 37

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text

Date: 2022-06-28

Version: 36

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible

Date: 2022-07-11

Version: 2.1.27

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament

Date: 2022-07-11

Version: 0.27

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Date: 2022-06-28

Version: 29

Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Date: 2022-06-28

Version: 32

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links

Date: 2022-08-03

Version: 16

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Copyright © 2022 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: “The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn”. You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.

Table of Contents

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes	13
1 Kings	13
Introduction to 1 Kings	14
1 Kings 1	16
1 Kings 2	75
1 Kings 3	130
1 Kings 4	162
1 Kings 5	200
1 Kings 6	219
1 Kings 7	258
1 Kings 8	313
1 Kings 9	389
1 Kings 10	418
1 Kings 11	450
1 Kings 12	496
1 Kings 13	544
1 Kings 14	584
1 Kings 15	625
1 Kings 16	669
1 Kings 17	718
1 Kings 18	743
1 Kings 19	792
1 Kings 20	814
1 Kings 21	858
1 Kings 22	888
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy	942
Abstract Nouns	943
Active or Passive	945
Apostrophe	948
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	950
Background Information	953
Biblical Distance	956
Biblical Volume	959
Biblical Weight	963
Direct and Indirect Quotations	965
Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding	967
Double Negatives	970
Doublet	973
Ellipsis	975
Euphemism	978
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'	980
First, Second or Third Person	982
Forms of You	984
Generic Noun Phrases	985
Hebrew Months	987
Hendiadys	990
How to Translate Names	993
Hyperbole	997

Hypothetical Situations	1001
Idiom	1004
Introduction of a New Event	1006
Litotes	1009
Merism	1011
Metaphor	1013
Metonymy	1019
Nominal Adjectives	1021
Numbers	1023
Ordinal Numbers	1026
Parallelism	1029
Personification	1032
Pronouns	1034
Proverbs	1036
Reflexive Pronouns	1039
Rhetorical Question	1042
Simile	1045
Symbolic Action	1048
Synecdoche	1050
Translate Unknowns	1052
unfoldingWord® Translation Words	1055
Abiathar	1056
Abijah	1057
Abner	1058
abomination, abominable	1059
Abraham, Abram	1060
Absalom	1061
Adam	1062
Adonijah	1063
adversary, enemy	1064
advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels	1065
afflict, affliction, distress	1066
Ahab	1067
Ahaziah	1068
Ahijah	1069
alien, foreigner, sojourn	1070
altar	1071
amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder,	1072
Ammon, Ammonite	1073
Amorite	1074
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather	1075
angel, archangel	1077
anoint, anointed, anointing	1079
appoint, appointed	1080
Arabia, Arabian	1081
Aram, Aramean, Aramaic, Aram of Damascus	1082
ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of	1083
Asa	1084
Asher	1085
Asherah, Asherah pole, Ashtoreth	1086
asleep, fall asleep, sleep, sleeper, sleepless	1087
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community	1088

assign, assigned, assignment, reassign	1089
ax	1090
Azariah	1091
Baal	1092
Baasha	1093
barley	1094
Bashan	1095
Bathsheba	1096
bear, bearer, carry	1097
beast	1098
Beersheba	1099
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief	1100
Benaiah	1103
Benjamin, Benjaminite	1104
Beth Shemesh	1105
Bethel	1106
bless, blessed, blessing	1107
blood	1109
bloodshed	1111
Boaz	1112
bow and arrow, a bow	1113
bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee	1114
bread	1115
breath, breathe	1116
bronze	1117
brother	1118
burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances	1119
burnt offering, offering by fire	1120
bury, buried, burial	1121
call, call out	1122
camel	1124
Canaan, Canaanite	1125
captive, captivate, captivity, catch	1126
Carmel, Mount Carmel	1127
cast out, driving out, throw out	1128
cedar, cedarwood	1129
chariot, charioteers	1130
cherub	1131
children, child, offspring	1132
chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect	1134
clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments	1135
column, pillar	1136
command, commandment	1137
commander	1138
companion, fellow worker, friend	1139
compassion, compassionate	1140
concubine	1141
confess, confession	1142
court, courtyard	1143
covenant	1144
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love	1146
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox	1147

cry, cry out, outcry	1148
cupbearer	1149
curse, cursed, cursing	1150
curtain	1152
cut off, cut down	1153
cypress	1154
Damascus	1155
Dan	1156
David	1157
day	1159
deceive, lie, deception, illusions	1160
dedicate, dedication, established, devoted	1161
deer, doe, fawns, roebuck	1162
delight	1163
desert, wilderness	1164
destroy, destruction, annihilate	1165
die, dead, deadly, death	1166
discern, discernment, distinguish	1168
disperse, dispersion, scatter, distributed	1169
dominion	1170
donkey, mule	1171
doorpost	1172
dream	1173
drunk, drunkard	1174
earth, land	1175
Edom, Edomite, Idumea	1176
Egypt, Egyptian	1177
elder, older, old	1178
Elijah	1179
Elisha	1180
Ephraim, Ephraimite	1181
Ephrath, Ephrathah	1182
epistle, letter	1183
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever	1184
eunuch	1186
Euphrates River, the River	1187
evil, wicked, unpleasant	1188
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins	1190
exalt, exalted, exaltation	1191
face, facial	1192
faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy	1194
famine	1196
fast, fasting	1197
favor, favorable, favoritism	1198
fear, afraid, frighten	1199
feast, feasting	1200
fig	1201
fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot	1202
firstborn	1203
flesh	1204
flock, herd	1205
flute, pipe	1206

fool, foolish, folly	1207
forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned	1208
forsake, forsaken, leave	1210
found, founder, foundation	1211
fountain, source, spring	1212
free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty	1213
furnace	1214
Galilee, Galilean	1215
gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway	1216
Gath, Gittite	1217
Gaza	1218
Gibeon, Gibeonite	1219
gift	1220
Gilead, Gileadite	1221
gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt	1222
glory, glorious, glorify	1223
God	1225
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry	1227
gold, golden	1229
good, right, pleasant, better, best	1230
govern, governor, proconsul, Tirshatha	1232
grain offering	1233
grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place	1234
hand	1235
hard, harden, hardness	1237
harp, harpist	1238
head	1239
heart	1240
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly	1241
Hebron	1243
high place	1244
Hittite	1245
Hivite	1246
holy place	1247
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred	1248
honey, honeycomb	1250
honor	1251
Horeb	1252
horn, horned	1253
horse, warhorse, horseback	1254
horseman	1255
house of God, Yahweh's house	1256
house, household	1257
humble, humbled, humility	1258
image, carved image, cast metal images, figure, carved figure, statue	1259
incense	1260
inherit, inheritance, heir	1261
iniquity	1263
Isaac	1264
Israel, Israelites	1265
Israel, Israelites	1267
Issachar	1269

Jacob, Israel	1270
jealous, jealousy	1271
Jebus, Jebusite	1272
Jehoiada	1273
Jehoram, Joram	1274
Jehoshaphat	1275
Jehu	1276
Jericho	1277
Jeroboam	1278
Jerusalem	1279
Jesse	1281
Jezebel	1282
Jezreel, Jezreelite	1283
Joab	1284
Joash	1285
Jonathan	1286
Jordan River, Jordan	1287
Joseph (OT)	1288
Joshua	1289
Josiah	1290
joy, joyful, rejoice, glad	1291
Judah	1293
judge, judgment	1294
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification	1296
Kerethites	1298
Kidron Valley	1299
kin, kinfolk, kindred, kinsman	1300
king, kingship	1301
kingdom	1303
kiss	1305
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish	1306
labor, laborer, work, hard work	1308
lamp	1309
lampstand	1310
law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God	1311
Lebanon	1313
Levi, Levite	1314
life, live, living, alive	1315
lion, lioness	1317
livestock, animals	1318
locust	1319
loins, waist	1320
lord, Lord, master, sir	1321
love, beloved	1323
lute, lyre	1325
Maacah	1326
Manasseh	1327
mercy, merciful	1328
messenger	1330
Midian, Midianite	1331
might, mighty, mighty works	1332
miracle, wonder, sign	1333

Mizpah	1335
Moab, Moabite	1336
mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock	1337
Molech, Moloch	1338
month, monthly	1339
Moses	1340
name	1341
Naphtali	1342
Nathan	1343
nation	1344
neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring	1346
noble, nobleman, royal official	1347
oak	1348
oath, swear, swearing, swear by	1349
Obadiah	1350
oil	1351
Omri	1352
oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor, dominate	1353
ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs	1354
palace, house	1355
palm	1356
Paran	1357
peace offering	1358
peace, peaceful, peacemakers	1359
people, people group	1360
Perizzite	1362
Pharaoh, king of Egypt	1363
Philistines	1364
plague	1365
plow, plowed, plowers, plowman, plowshares, unplowed	1366
pomegranate	1367
possess, possessed, possession, dispossess	1368
pray, prayer	1369
precious, valuable, expensive, fine	1370
priest, priesthood	1371
prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials,	1373
prison, prisoner, imprison	1374
promise, promised	1375
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	1376
prosper, prosperity, prosperous	1378
prostitute, harlot, whored	1379
prostrate	1380
prostrate	1381
prostrate, bow down, worship	1382
proverb	1383
province, provincial	1384
provoke, provoked, provocation	1385
punish, punished, punishment, unpunished	1386
queen	1388
raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,	1389
Ramah	1391
Ramoth	1392

ransom, ransomed	1393
rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness	1394
Rehoboam	1395
reign, rule	1396
remnant	1397
repent, repentance	1398
report, reported, tell, reputation	1400
rest, rested, restless	1401
return, turn back	1402
reward, prize, deserve	1403
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright,	1404
rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader	1406
run, runner, rushed, quickly went, scattered, flows	1407
sackcloth	1408
sacrifice, sacrifices, offering	1409
Samaria, Samaritan	1411
sandal	1412
scribe	1413
Sea of Galilee, Sea of Kinnereth, lake of Gennesaret, Sea of Tiberias	1414
sea of reeds, Sea of Reeds, Red Sea	1415
seal, sealed, unsealed	1416
seed, semen	1417
seek, search, look for	1418
seize, seizure, capture	1419
send, sent, send out	1420
servant, serve, slave, young man, young women	1421
set apart	1424
Sheba	1425
Shechem	1426
shepherd, herder, pastor	1427
shield	1429
Shiloh	1430
Shimei	1431
Sidon, Sidonians	1432
siege, besiege, besieged, siegeworks	1433
silver	1434
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	1435
Sinai, Horeb	1437
slaughter, slaughtered	1438
slay, slain, slaughter, kill, murder	1439
Solomon	1440
son	1441
soul, self, person	1443
spear, spearmen	1444
spirit, wind, breath	1445
statute	1447
stone, stoning	1448
storehouse	1449
strength, strengthen, strong	1450
stronghold, fortifications, fortress, citadel	1452
Succoth	1453
sword, swordsmen	1454

Tamar	1455
Tarshish	1456
temple, house, house of God	1457
tent of meeting	1459
tent, tentmakers	1460
test, tested, testing, testing in the fire	1461
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence	1462
thresh	1464
threshold, doorway	1465
throne, enthroned	1466
Tirzah	1467
to minister, ministry	1468
transgress, transgression	1469
tremble, stagger, shake	1470
tribe, tribal, tribesmen	1471
tribute, contribution, fined	1472
trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity	1473
true, truth	1474
turn, turn away, turn back, return	1476
Tyre, Tyrians	1478
understand, understanding, thinking	1479
Uriah	1480
vine	1481
vineyard	1482
virgin, virginity	1483
voice	1484
walk, walked	1485
watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware	1486
water, deep	1487
wheat	1488
will of God	1489
wise, wisdom	1490
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth,	1491
work, works, deeds	1493
Yahweh	1494
Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host of heaven, host of the heavens,	1496
year	1497
yoke, yoked, tied	1498
Zadok	1499
zeal, zealous	1500
Zedekiah	1501
Zion, Mount Zion	1502
Contributors	1503
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors	1503
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors	1509
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors	1510
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors	1511
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors	1511
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links Contributors	1512



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

1 Kings

Introduction to 1 Kings

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of 1 Kings

David dies and Solomon begins to reign (1:1-2:46)

Solomon reigns (3:1-11:43)

- Solomon becomes wise and wealthy (3:1-4:43)
- Solomon's temple (5:1-8:66)
- Rise and fall of Solomon (9:1-11:43)

The kingdom divides (12:1-14:31)

- Rehoboam succeeds Solomon (12:1-24)
- Jeroboam rules the northern kingdom of Israel (12:25-33)
- Ahijah prophesies against Jeroboam (13:1-14:20)
- Rehoboam's end (14:21-31)

Kings and events in Israel and Judah (15:1-22:53)

- Abijah and Asa in Judah (15:1-24)
- Nadab in Israel (15:25-32)
- Baasha in Israel (15:33-16:7)
- Elah in Israel (16:8-14)
- Zimri in Israel (16:15-22)
- Omri in Israel (16:23-28)
- Ahab in Israel (16:29-22:40)
- Jehoshaphat in Judah (22:41-50)
- Ahaziah in Israel (22:51-53)

What are the Books of 1 and 2 Kings about?

These books are about what happened to the people of Israel, from the time of King Solomon to the time both the northern and southern kingdoms were destroyed. These books describe how Israel split into two kingdoms after Solomon died. It also tells about all the kings that ruled over each kingdom after Solomon died.

In the southern kingdom, some kings did what Yahweh judged to be right. For example, King Josiah repaired the temple and reformed the worship of Yahweh. He responded to the high priest finding a copy of the Law of Yahweh in Jerusalem (2 Kings 22-23). However, all of the kings of the northern kingdom were wicked.

The Assyrians destroyed the northern kingdom in 722 B.C. The Babylonians destroyed the southern kingdom in 586 B.C.

How should the title of this book be translated?

The Books of 1 and 2 Kings were originally one book in Hebrew. They were separated into two books when translated into Greek. Translators might choose more meaningful titles such as "The First Book about the Kings" and "The Second Book about the Kings." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

What was the purpose of 1 and 2 Kings?

These books were probably finished during the exile, after the Babylonians had destroyed the temple. They show how being faithful to Yahweh results in his blessing and prospering his people. Worshipping idols and not being faithful result in their being punished and destroyed.

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

Why do the Books of 1 and 2 Kings refer to someone being addressed indirectly?

In the Bible, people often referred to themselves as “your servant” when speaking to anyone in a superior position to themselves. Indirectly addressing people in this way was intended to honor the one addressed. English sometimes uses the address “sir” in this way. But a translator should use whatever expressions that are natural in the project language in order to honor someone in a superior position.

What does the king “did what was right (or evil) in the eyes of Yahweh” mean?

The writer repeats this kind of expression throughout the Books of 1 and 2 Kings. Here “in the eyes of Yahweh” represents what Yahweh thinks about someone. If a king was faithful and obeyed the covenant, he did what was right according to Yahweh. If he was not faithful and disobeyed the covenant, he did what was evil according to Yahweh.

What is the meaning of the term “Israel”?

The name “Israel” is used in many different ways in the Bible. Jacob was the son of Isaac. God changed his name to Israel. The descendants of Jacob became a nation also called Israel. Eventually, the nation of Israel split into two kingdoms. The northern kingdom was named Israel. The southern kingdom was named Judah. (See: [Israel, Israelites](#))

Can I translate the Book of 1 Kings before I translate the Books of 1 and 2 Samuel?

The Books of 1 and 2 Samuel should be translated before 1 Kings, since 1 Kings continues from where 2 Samuel ends.

1 Kings 1

1 Kings 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

1 Kings is a continuation of 2 Samuel.

This chapter records the beginning of the reign of Solomon (chapters 1-11) after the death of David.

Special concepts in this chapter

The next king

David did not announce who was to succeed him. Because of this, there was fighting between David's sons over who should be king. Adonijah invited guests to a banquet and declared himself king. Then those favoring Solomon told David and he declared Solomon the new king.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Idiom

Several times in this chapter, the people use the idiom "sit on the throne" to mean "be king." Solomon assures Adonijah that if he behaves himself "not a hair of his will fall to the earth," meaning "he will not be harmed." (See: [Idiom](#))

1 Kings 1:1

covered him with blankets

They put many blankets on King David to try to keep him warm.

old and advanced in years

“very old.” The two phrases are similar in meaning and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Doublet](#).)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Now the king](#)
- [David](#)
- [with the garments](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [King](#)
- [David](#)
- [even though...servants put many blankets](#)

ULT

¹ [Now the king David](#) was old, coming in the days, and they covered him [with the garments](#), but it was not warm for him.

UST

¹ When [King David](#) was very old, [even though](#) his [servants put many blankets](#) on top of him at night, he was unable to keep warm.

1 Kings 1:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- his servants
- a young woman
- They are seeking
- for my lord
- for my master
- the king
- the king
- the king
- a virgin

Translation Words - UST

- So they
- a young
- Majesty
- allow us
- Your
- Majesty
- Your
- to search for
- virgin

ULT

² And his servants said to him, “They are seeking for my lord the king a young woman, a virgin, and she will stand before the face of the king. And she may be one who is useful for him, and she will lie in your bosom and it will be warm for my master the king.”

UST

² So they said to him, “Your Majesty, allow us to search for a young virgin who can stay with you and take care of you. She can sleep close to you and make you warm.”

1 Kings 1:3

So they searched

Alternate translation: "So the king's servants searched"

within all the borders of Israel

This is a generalization. Alternate translation: "all over the land of Israel" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Abishag

This is a woman's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shunammite

a person from the city of Shunem (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the king

Alternate translation: "King David"

Translation Words - ULT

- [And they sought](#)
- [a...young woman](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [to the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The king gave them permission, so they searched](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [young woman](#)
- [king](#)

ULT

³ [And they sought](#) a beautiful [young woman](#) in all the territory of [Israel](#). And they found Abishag the Shunammite and they brought her [to the king](#).

UST

³ [The king gave them permission, so they searched](#) throughout [Israel](#) for a beautiful [young woman](#). They found a woman named Abishag, from the town of Shunem, and brought her to the [king](#).

1 Kings 1:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- for the king
- but the king
- did...know her

Translation Words - UST

- king
- but the king
- sexual relations

ULT

⁴ (Now the girl was beautiful as far as abundance. And she became one who is useful for the king and she attended to him, but the king did not know her.)

UST

⁴ She was truly very beautiful. She took care of the king, but the king did not have sexual relations with her.

1 Kings 1:5

Adonijah son of Haggith

Haggith was a wife of David. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

exalted himself

Alternate translation: “began to boast”

horsemen

These are men who drive chariots pulled by horses.

fifty men to run ahead of him

These men would go ahead of the chariots to clear the way for them and protect them.

Translation Words - ULT

- [And Adonijah](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [I...will reign](#)
- [a chariot](#)
- [and horsemen](#)
- [who ran](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Adonijah](#)
- [chariot, charioteers](#)
- [horseman](#)
- [reign, rule](#)
- [run, runner, rushed, quickly went, scattered, flows](#)

ULT

⁵ [And Adonijah the son of](#) Haggith lifted himself up, saying, “I, myself, [will reign](#).” And he made for himself [a chariot and horsemen](#) and 50 men [who ran](#) before his face.

UST

⁵⁻⁶ After Absalom died, David's oldest son was Adonijah, whose mother was Haggith. He was a very handsome man. But David had never rebuked him about anything he did. After Absalom died, he thought that he would become king. So he started to boast, saying, “I will become king now.” Then he provided for himself some chariots, and men to drive them, and horses to pull them, and fifty men to run as his bodyguards in front of those chariots wherever he went.

1 Kings 1:6

had never troubled him, saying

Alternate translation: “had never troubled him. He had never even asked him” or “had never wanted to make him angry, so he never even asked him”

Why have you done this or that?

This is a rhetorical question that a father would ask to discipline his son. Alternate translation: “You should know that what you have done is wrong.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

born next after Absalom

David was the father of both Absalom and Adonijah, but they had different mothers. Absalom was born, then Adonijah.

Translation Words - ULT

- [his father](#)
- [was...good of](#)
- [she had borne](#)
- [Absalom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [good, right, pleasant, better, best](#)
- [Absalom](#)
- [bear, bearer, carry](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

⁶ And [his father](#) did not pain him from his days, saying, “Why have you done so?” And also, he was very [good of](#) form and [she had borne](#) him after [Absalom](#).

UST

⁵⁻⁶ After Absalom died, David's oldest son was Adonijah, whose mother was Haggith. He was a very handsome man. But David had never rebuked him about anything he did. After Absalom died, he thought that he would become king. So he started to boast, saying, “I will become king now.” Then he provided for himself some chariots, and men to drive them, and horses to pull them, and fifty men to run as his bodyguards in front of those chariots wherever he went.

1 Kings 1:7

He conferred with Joab

Alternate translation: "Adonijah discussed his plans with Joab"

Joab ... Zeruiah ... Abiathar ... Adonijah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

followed Adonijah and helped him

Alternate translation: "supported and helped Adonijah" or "promised to support and help Adonijah"

Translation Words - ULT

- Joab
- the son of
- Abiathar
- the priest
- Adonijah

Translation Words - UST

- Joab, David's army commander
- Joab, David's army commander
- and Abiathar
- the priest
- Adonijah

ULT

⁷ And his words were with Joab the son of Zeruiah and with Abiathar the priest. And they helped behind Adonijah.

UST

⁷ One day he conferred with Joab, David's army commander, and Abiathar the priest, and they promised to help Adonijah.

1 Kings 1:8

Zadok ... Benaiah ... Jehoiada ... Nathan ... Shimei ... Rei

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- But Zadok
- the priest
- Adonijah
- and Benaiah
- the son of
- Jehoiada
- and Nathan
- the prophet
- and Shimei
- and the mighty men
- were for David

Translation Words - UST

- But other important people
- him
- and David's most capable soldiers
- Zadok
- who was also a priest
- Benaiah
- Benaiah
- Benaiah
- Nathan
- the prophet
- Shimei

ULT

⁸ But Zadok the priest and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada and Nathan the prophet and Shimei and Rei and the mighty men who were for David were not with Adonijah.

UST

⁸ But other important people refused to help him. These included Zadok, who was also a priest, Benaiah who had supervised David's bodyguards, Nathan the prophet, Shimei and Rei, and David's most capable soldiers.

1 Kings 1:9

fattened calves

Alternate translation: “calves that were given plenty of food so that they would be fat” or “young cows that were specially prepared for sacrifice”

stone of Zohemoth

This is a rocky area near Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

En Rogel

This was the name of a spring where people got water. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

all his brothers ... all the men

This is a generalization. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

all his brothers, the king's sons

These two phrases refer to the same people.

men of Judah, the king's servants

These two phrases refer to the same people.

Translation Words - ULT

- Adonijah
- And...sacrificed
- sheep
- and cattle
- And he called
- his brothers
- the sons of
- the king
- the king
- Judah
- the servants of

Translation Words - UST

- One day Adonijah went
- to sacrifice
- from Judah
- some sheep
- and oxen
- He invited
- brothers

ULT

⁹ And Adonijah sacrificed sheep and cattle and fattening near the stone of Zohemoth, which is beside En Rogel. And he called all of his brothers, the sons of the king, and to all the men of Judah, the servants of the king.

UST

⁹ One day Adonijah went to the stone of Zohemoth near En Rogel, which is near Jerusalem, to sacrifice some sheep and oxen and fattened cattle. He invited most of his brothers, King David's other sons, to come. He also invited all of the king's officials from Judah to come to the celebration.

- of the king's
- King
- David's other sons, to come
- officials

1 Kings 1:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- he did...call
- Nathan
- the prophet
- and Benaiah
- the mighty men
- his brother
- Solomon

Translation Words - UST

- invite
- Nathan
- Nathan
- Benaiah
- or the king's most capable soldiers
- or his younger brother
- Solomon

ULT

¹⁰ But he did not call Nathan the prophet and Benaiah and the mighty men and his brother Solomon.

UST

¹⁰ But he did not invite Nathan, Benaiah, or the king's most capable soldiers, or his younger brother Solomon.

1 Kings 1:11

Have you not heard ... it?

The purpose of this question is to introduce the information that Nathan wants to tell Bathsheba. Alternate translation: “You do not seem to have heard ... it.” or “Have you heard ... it?” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

that Adonijah son of Haggith has become king

Alternate translation: “that Haggith’s son Adonijah is trying to become king”

Haggith

Adonijah’s mother and a wife of David. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Nathan
- Bathsheba
- Bathsheba
- Bathsheba
- does...know
- Solomon
- Adonijah
- the son of
- reigns
- and our master
- David

Translation Words - UST

- Nathan found out what they were doing
- Solomon’s
- does...know about it
- Bathsheba
- Bathsheba
- Bathsheba
- that Haggith’s son
- Adonijah
- is making himself king
- And King
- David

ULT

11 And [Nathan](#) said to [Bathsheba](#) the mother of [Solomon](#), saying, “Have you not heard that [Adonijah the son of Haggith](#) [reigns](#), and our master [David](#) does not [know](#)?”

UST

11 [Nathan found out what they were doing](#), so he went to [Solomon’s](#) mother [Bathsheba](#) and asked her, “Have you not heard [that Haggith’s son Adonijah is making himself king](#)? And [King David](#) does not [know about it](#)!”

1 Kings 1:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- let me advise you
- with advice
- your life
- the life of
- your son
- Solomon

Translation Words - UST

- to save yourself
- from being killed
- and your son
- Solomon
- to tell
- allow me...you what you should do

ULT

¹² And now, come, please let me advise you with advice, and slip away with your life and with the life of your son Solomon.

UST

¹² So if you want to save yourself and your son Solomon from being killed, allow me to tell you what you should do.

1 Kings 1:13

did you not swear to your servant ... throne?

The purpose of this question was to remind David of what he had promised Bathsheba. Alternate translation: "you swore to your servant ... throne." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

to your servant

Bathsheba speaks to David as if she were someone else to show that she respects David. Alternate translation: "to me, your servant" (See: [Pronouns](#))

he will sit on my throne

Sitting on the throne is a metonym for being king. Alternate translation: "he will be king just as I was" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Why then is Adonijah reigning?

Bathsheba was to use a question so David would pay attention. Alternate translation: "So then, Adonijah should not be reigning." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the king
- David
- Adonijah
- my master
- sworn
- to your female servant
- Solomon
- your son
- will reign
- does...reign
- my throne

Translation Words - UST

- King
- Your Majesty
- David
- Adonijah
- Your Majesty
- promised
- me
- that my son
- Solomon
- would become the king
- is now king
- your throne

ULT

¹³ Go and come to the king David, and you shall say to him, 'Have you not, my master the king, sworn to your female servant, saying, "Surely Solomon your son will reign after me, and he will sit on my throne?"' And why does Adonijah reign?'

UST

¹³ Go right away to King David. Say to him, 'Your Majesty, you solemnly promised me that my son Solomon would become the king after you die and that he would sit on your throne and rule. So why are people saying that Adonijah is now king?'

1 Kings 1:14

confirm your words

Alternate translation: "tell him that what you have said is true"

Translation Words - ULT

- the king

Translation Words - UST

- the king

ULT

¹⁴ Behold, while you are still speaking there with the king, then I myself will come in behind you and will fill your words."

UST

¹⁴ Then, Bathsheba, while you are still talking to the king, I will come in and tell him that what you are saying to him about Adonijah is true."

1 Kings 1:15

the king's room

Alternate translation: "the room in which the king slept"

Abishag the Shunammite

This is the young virgin that King David's servants had brought to care for him. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 1:3](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Bathsheba](#)
- [Bathsheba](#)
- [Bathsheba](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Now the king](#)
- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [So Bathsheba](#)
- [So Bathsheba](#)
- [So Bathsheba](#)
- [He](#)
- [his](#)
- [king](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And [Bathsheba](#) came to [the king](#) at the room. ([Now the king](#) was very old and Abishag the Shunammite was attending [the king](#).)

UST

¹⁵ [So Bathsheba](#) went to see the [king](#) in [his](#) bedroom. [He](#) was very old, and Abishag was taking care of him.

1 Kings 1:16

bowed and prostrated herself before the king

Alternate translation: "bowed close to the ground in front of the king"

What do you desire?

Alternate translation: "What can I do for you?"

Translation Words - ULT

- Bathsheba
- Bathsheba
- Bathsheba
- And...bowed
- and prostrated herself
- to...the king
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- Bathsheba
- Bathsheba
- Bathsheba
- bowed very low
- in front of
- and the king
- the king

ULT

¹⁶ And Bathsheba bowed and prostrated herself to the king. And the king said, "What is for you?"

UST

¹⁶ Bathsheba bowed very low in front of the king, and the king asked her, "What do you want?"

1 Kings 1:17

you swore to

The form of “you” here is emphatic. Alternate translation: “you yourself swore to”

your servant

Bathsheba speaks as if she were another person to show David that she respects him. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 1:13](#). Alternate translation: “me, your servant”

Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

he shall sit on my throne

Sitting on the throne is a metonym for being king. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 1:13](#). Alternate translation: “he will be king just as I was” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [My master](#)
- [you...have sworn](#)
- [to your female servant](#)
- [by Yahweh](#)
- [your God](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [your son](#)
- [will reign](#)
- [my throne](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Your Majesty](#)
- [promised...knowing that](#)
- [me](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [our God was listening](#)
- [that my son](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [would become king](#)
- [your throne](#)

ULT

¹⁷ And she said to him, “[My master](#), you yourself [have sworn to your female servant by Yahweh your God](#), ‘Surely [Solomon your son will reign](#) after me, and he will sit on [my throne](#).’

UST

¹⁷ She replied, “[Your Majesty](#), you solemnly [promised me, knowing that Yahweh our God was listening, that my son Solomon would become king](#) after you die and that he would sit on [your throne](#) and rule.

1 Kings 1:18

see

Alternate translation: “look” or “listen” or “pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

Translation Words - ULT

- Adonijah
- reigns
- my master
- the king
- you do...know

Translation Words - UST

- Adonijah
- has made himself
- king
- and you
- do...know anything about it

ULT

18 And now, behold, [Adonijah reigns](#), and now, [my master the king](#), you do not [know](#).

UST

18 But now, [Adonijah has made himself king](#), and [you](#) do not know anything about it.

1 Kings 1:19

oxen, fattened calves, and sheep in abundance

Alternate translation: "many oxen, fattened calves, and sheep"

Translation Words - ULT

- And he has sacrificed
- ox
- but...to Solomon
- your servant
- and sheep
- and he has called
- he has...called
- the sons of
- the king
- and to Abiathar
- the priest
- and to Joab
- the commander of

Translation Words - UST

- He has sacrificed
- oxen
- your son
- Solomon
- and sheep
- and he has invited
- he did...invite
- sons
- He
- has also invited Abiathar
- the priest
- and Joab
- the commander of your army

ULT

¹⁹ And he has sacrificed ox and fattening and sheep to abundance, and he has called to all the sons of the king and to Abiathar the priest and to Joab the commander of the army, but he has not called to Solomon your servant.

UST

¹⁹ He has sacrificed a lot of oxen and fattened cattle and sheep, and he has invited all of your other sons to the celebration. He has also invited Abiathar the priest and Joab the commander of your army, but he did not invite your son Solomon.

1 Kings 1:20

the eyes of all Israel are on you, waiting

Here “eyes” refers to the people. Here “the eyes ... are on you” is an idiom that means the people are waiting expectantly. Alternate translation: “all the people of Israel are waiting expectantly” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Idiom](#))

will sit on the throne

Sitting on the throne is a metonym for being king. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 1:13](#). Alternate translation: “will be king”

Translation Words - ULT

- [my master](#)
- [my master](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [to tell](#)
- [the throne of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Your Majesty](#)
- [you are no longer with us](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [is the one who will](#)
- [king](#)
- [become](#)

ULT

²⁰ And you, [my master the king](#), the eyes of all [Israel](#) are on you, [to tell](#) them who will sit on [the throne of my master the king](#) after him.

UST

²⁰ [Your Majesty](#), all the people of [Israel](#) are expecting you to tell them who [is the one who will become king](#) after [you are no longer with us](#).

1 Kings 1:21

when my master the king sleeps with his fathers

Bathsheba speaks to King David as if she were speaking about him to show that she respects him. Alternate translation: “when you sleep with your fathers” (See: [Pronouns](#))

sleeps with his fathers

This is a polite way of saying “dies.” (See: [Euphemism](#))

I and my son Solomon will be regarded as criminals

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “the new king will regard my son Solomon and me as criminals” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

²¹ And it will happen, as soon as [my master the king](#) lies down with [his fathers](#), that I myself [and my son Solomon](#) will be [sinners](#).”

UST

²¹ If you do not do that, [what will happen is that after you die people will consider that my son Solomon and I are rebelling, and they will execute us because we did not help Adonijah to become king](#).”

Translation Words - ULT

- [my master](#)
- [the king](#)
- [his fathers](#)
- [and my son](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [sinners](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [what will happen is that after](#)
- [you](#)
- [people will consider...are rebelling, and they will execute us because we did not help Adonijah](#)
- [that my son](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [king](#)

1 Kings 1:22

General Information:

Nathan the prophet speaks to King David.

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- then Nathan
- the prophet

Translation Words - UST

- the king
- Nathan
- Nathan

ULT

²² And behold, while she was still speaking with the king, then Nathan the prophet came.

UST

²² While she was still talking to the king, Nathan came to the palace.

1 Kings 1:23

prostrated himself

Alternate translation: "bowed very low"

Translation Words - ULT

- And they told
- the king
- the king
- to the king
- Nathan
- the prophet
- and he prostrated himself
- to the ground

Translation Words - UST

- The king's servants
- the king
- his
- Nathan
- the prophet
- So Bathsheba left, and Nathan went into where...was
- and knelt down
- the ground

ULT

²³ And they told the king, saying, "Behold, Nathan the prophet." And he came before the face of the king, and he prostrated himself to the king with his nostrils to the ground.

UST

²³ The king's servants told David, "Nathan the prophet has come." So Bathsheba left, and Nathan went into where the king was and knelt down, with his face on the ground.

1 Kings 1:24

have you said, 'Adonijah will reign after me, and he will sit on my throne?'

This can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "have you said that Adonijah will reign after you, and he will sit on your throne?" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

he will sit on my throne

Sitting on the throne is a metonym for being king. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 1:13](#). Alternate translation: "he will be king just as I was"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Nathan](#)
- [My master](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Adonijah](#)
- [will reign](#)
- [my throne](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Nathan](#)
- [Your Majesty](#)
- [Adonijah](#)
- [will](#)
- [become](#)
- [king](#)

ULT

²⁴ And [Nathan](#) said, "[My master the king](#), have you yourself said, '[Adonijah will reign](#) after me, and he will sit on [my throne](#)?'"

UST

²⁴ Then [Nathan](#) said, "[Your Majesty](#), have you declared that [Adonijah will become king](#) after you?"

1 Kings 1:25

eating and drinking before him

Adonijah probably sat at a table where he could watch all those he had invited as they ate and drank. The main idea is that the people Nathan named were with Adonijah and they were celebrating together. Alternate translation: “eating and drinking with him” or “eating and drinking where he can see them” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and sacrificed](#)
- [ox](#)
- [Adonijah](#)
- [Let...live](#)
- [and sheep](#)
- [and he has called](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [and to the commanders of](#)
- [and to Abiathar](#)
- [the priest](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he](#)
- [King Adonijah](#)
- [and has sacrificed](#)
- [We hope that...will live a long time](#)
- [oxen](#)
- [and sheep](#)
- [And he has invited](#)
- [sons](#)
- [Joab the army commander](#)
- [and Abiathar](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [with him](#)

ULT

²⁵ For he has gone down today [and sacrificed ox](#) and fattening [and sheep](#) to abundance, [and he has called](#) to all of [the sons of the king and to the commanders of the army and to Abiathar the priest](#). And behold, they are eating and drinking before his face. And they say, ‘Let [the king Adonijah live!](#)’

UST

²⁵ I say that because today [he](#) has gone down to En Rogel [and has sacrificed](#) a lot of [oxen](#), fattened cattle, [and sheep](#). [And he has invited](#) all of your other sons, [Joab the army commander](#), and [Abiathar the priest](#). They are all eating and drinking [with him](#) and saying, ‘[We hope that King Adonijah will live a long time!](#)’

1 Kings 1:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- am your servant
- your servant
- he has...called
- and...to Zadok
- the priest
- and to Benaiah
- the son of
- Jehoiada
- and to Solomon

Translation Words - UST

- But he did...or Benaiah
- But he did...or Benaiah
- or Solomon
- But he did...or Benaiah
- invite
- me
- or Solomon
- or Zadok
- the priest

ULT

²⁶ But as for me, I am your servant, and he has not called to Zadok the priest and to Benaiah the son of Jehoiada and to Solomon your servant.

UST

²⁶ But he did not invite me or Zadok the priest or Benaiah or Solomon.

1 Kings 1:27

Has my master the king done this without telling us, your servants, who should sit on the throne after him?

Nathan refers to David in the third person. This is a way of showing respect to the king. It can be stated in second person. Alternate translation: "Have you, my master the king, done this without telling us, your servants, who should sit on the throne after you?" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

who should sit on the throne

Sitting on the throne is a metonym for being king. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 1:13](#). Alternate translation: "who would be king after him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- my master
- my master
- the king
- the king
- you have...caused...to know
- your servants
- the throne of

Translation Words - UST

- Did you say that
- you
- your other officials
- you want to
- become
- king
- king

ULT

²⁷ Has this matter happened from with [my master the king](#) and [you have](#) not [caused your servants to know](#) who will sit on [the throne of my master the king](#) after him?"

UST

²⁷ [Did you say that](#) they should do this without telling [your other officials](#) who [you want to become king](#) after [you](#) are no longer the [king](#)?"

1 Kings 1:28

General Information:

King David makes a promise to Bathsheba.

came into the king's presence

Alternate translation: "came before the king" or "came back to the king"

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the king
- the king
- David
- Call
- to Bathsheba
- to Bathsheba
- to Bathsheba

Translation Words - UST

- Then King
- So someone went and told her, and she came in
- king
- David
- Tell
- Bathsheba
- Bathsheba
- Bathsheba

ULT

²⁸ And the king David answered and said, "Call to Bathsheba for me." And she came before the face of the king and she stood before the face of the king.

UST

²⁸ Then King David said, "Tell Bathsheba to come in here again." So someone went and told her, and she came in and stood in front of the king.

1 Kings 1:29

made an oath

Alternate translation: "made a solemn promise"

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- And...swore
- Yahweh
- As...is alive
- my life
- has ransomed
- distress

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- ransom, ransomed
- Yahweh
- king, kingship
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by
- trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity

ULT

²⁹ And the king swore and said, "As Yahweh is alive, who has ransomed my life from every distress.

UST

²⁹⁻³⁰ Then the king said, "Yahweh has rescued me from all my troubles. I promised you, with Yahweh the God whom we Israelites worship listening, that your son Solomon would be king after I am no longer the king. Today, as surely as Yahweh lives, I solemnly declare that I will do what I promised."

1 Kings 1:30

he will sit on my throne in my place

Sitting on the throne is a metonym for being king. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 1:13](#). Alternate translation: “he will take my place and be king just as I was” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- I have sworn
- by Yahweh
- the God of
- Israel
- Solomon
- your son
- will reign
- my throne
- day

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- son
- Yahweh
- Solomon
- day
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by
- reign, rule
- throne, enthroned

ULT

30 For just as I have sworn to you by Yahweh the God of Israel, saying, ‘Surely Solomon your son will reign after me, and he will sit on my throne in my place,’ surely thus I will do this day.”

UST

29-30 Then the king said, “Yahweh has rescued me from all my troubles. I promised you, with Yahweh the God whom we Israelites worship listening, that your son Solomon would be king after I am no longer the king. Today, as surely as Yahweh lives, I solemnly declare that I will do what I promised.”

1 Kings 1:31

May my master King David live forever

Bathsheba knew David would not live forever; this is a way of saying that he is a good king. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Bathsheba](#)
- [Bathsheba](#)
- [Bathsheba](#)
- [May...live](#)
- [to eternity](#)
- [And...bowed](#)
- [to the ground](#)
- [and she prostrated herself](#)
- [before the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [my master](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Bathsheba](#)
- [Bathsheba](#)
- [Bathsheba](#)
- [I hope you will live](#)
- [forever](#)
- [Bathsheba](#)
- [knelt down with her face on](#)
- [the ground](#)
- [Your](#)
- [Majesty](#)
- [Your](#)
- [Your](#)

ULT

³¹ And [Bathsheba bowed](#) with nostrils [to the ground](#) and she [prostrated herself before the king](#) and she said, "May [my master the king David live to eternity!](#)"

UST

³¹ [Bathsheba knelt down with her face on the ground](#) and said, "Your Majesty, I hope you will live forever!"

1 Kings 1:32

General Information:

King David anoints Solomon king.

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the king
- David
- Call
- to Zadok
- the priest
- and to Nathan
- the prophet
- and to Benaiah
- the son of
- Jehoiada

Translation Words - UST

- Then King
- When they came in
- David
- Summon
- Zadok
- the priest
- Nathan
- the prophet
- and Benaiah
- and Benaiah
- and Benaiah

ULT

³² And the king David said, “Call for me to Zadok the priest and to Nathan the prophet and to Benaiah the son of Jehoiada.” And they came before the face of the king.

UST

³² Then King David said to a servant, “Summon Zadok the priest, Nathan the prophet, and Benaiah.” So a servant went and summoned them. When they came in,

1 Kings 1:33

the servants of your master

David speaks of himself as if he were speaking of someone else so Zadok, Nathan, and Benaiah would remember that David is still king. Alternate translation: “my servants” (See: [Pronouns](#))

Gihon

This is the name of a water spring. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the servants of
- your master
- Solomon
- my son
- the female mule

Translation Words - UST

- he
- my son
- Solomon
- mule
- my
- officials

ULT

³³ And [the king](#) said to them, “Take with you [the servants of your master](#), and you shall cause [Solomon my son](#) to mount on [the female mule](#) that is for me and bring him down to Gihon.

UST

³³ [he](#) said to them, “Put [my son Solomon](#) on my [mule](#). Take him with [my officials](#) down to the spring at Gihon.

1 Kings 1:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Zadok
- the priest
- Let...live
- and Nathan
- the prophet
- And...shall anoint
- as king
- the king
- Israel
- with the horn
- Solomon

Translation Words - UST

- Zadok
- Zadok
- Solomon
- and Nathan
- and Nathan
- must anoint him with olive oil to appoint him to be
- the king
- King
- Israel
- trumpets
- We hope that...will live for many years

ULT

³⁴ And Zadok the priest and Nathan the prophet shall anoint him there as king over Israel. And you shall blow with the horn and you shall say, 'Let the king Solomon live!'

UST

³⁴ There, you two, Zadok and Nathan, must anoint him with olive oil to appoint him to be the king of Israel. Then you two must blow trumpets, and all the people there must shout, 'We hope that King Solomon will live for many years!'

1 Kings 1:35

he will come and sit on my throne

The words “sit on the throne” are used as a metonym for being king in [1 Kings 1:13](#), [1 Kings 1:17](#), and [1 Kings 1:30](#). Here David speaks of Solomon literally sitting on a physical throne.

Translation Words - ULT

- my throne
- will reign
- I have commanded
- leader
- Israel
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- my throne
- king instead of me
- I have appointed him
- to be the ruler
- all the people of Israel
- Judah

ULT

35 And you shall go up after him, and he shall come and sit on [my throne](#); and he [will reign](#) in my place. And [I have commanded](#) him to be [leader](#) over [Israel](#) and over [Judah](#).”

UST

35 Then follow him back here, and he will come and sit on [my throne](#). He will then become [king instead of me](#). [I have appointed him to be the ruler](#) of [all the people of Israel](#) and of [Judah](#).”

1 Kings 1:36

So let it be!

They agree and will do what King David said.

May Yahweh, the God of my master the king, confirm

Benaiah speaks to King David as if he were speaking to someone else to show that he respects King David. Alternate translation: "My master and king, may Yahweh your God confirm" (See: [Pronouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Benaiah
- the son of
- Jehoiada
- the king
- the king
- Yahweh
- the God of
- my master

Translation Words - UST

- Benaiah
- Benaiah
- Benaiah
- We will do that
- who is your
- We hope that Yahweh
- who is your
- God and our God

ULT

³⁶ And Benaiah the son of Jehoiada answered the king and said, "Truly! So has Yahweh the God of my master the king spoken.

UST

³⁶ Benaiah replied, "We will do that! We hope that Yahweh, who is your God and our God, will cause it to happen!

1 Kings 1:37

has been with my master the king, so

Benaiah speaks to King David as if he were speaking to someone else to show that he respects King David. Alternate translation: “has been with you, my master the king, so” (See: [Pronouns](#))

make his throne greater than the throne of my master King David

The word **throne** is a metonym for either: (1) the person who sits on the throne. Alternate translation: “make the one who sits on the throne greater than my master King David” or (2) the kingdom over which the one who sits on the throne rules. Alternate translation: “make his kingdom greater than the kingdom of my master King David” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the throne of my master King David

Benaiah speaks to King David as if he were speaking to someone else to show that he respects King David. Alternate translation: “your throne, my master King David” (See: [Pronouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [my master](#)
- [my master](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [his throne](#)
- [than the throne of](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [King David](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [you](#)
- [you](#)
- [We hope that he will also help](#)
- [king](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [and enable him](#)
- [than...have been](#)

ULT

³⁷ Just as [Yahweh](#) has been with [my master the king](#), so may he be with [Solomon](#). And may he make [his throne](#) greater [than the throne of my master the king David](#).”

UST

³⁷ [King David](#), [Yahweh](#) has helped [you](#). [We hope that he will also help Solomon and enable him](#) to become an even greater [king](#) than [you have been](#).”

1 Kings 1:38

General Information:

The people of Israel anoint Solomon as king over Israel.

Kerethites ... Pelethites

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Gihon

This is the name of a spring, where fresh water comes out of the ground. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Zadok
- the priest
- the king
- David
- and Nathan
- the prophet
- and Benaiah
- the son of
- Jehoiada
- and the Kerethite
- Solomon
- the female mule of

Translation Words - UST

- So Zadok
- So Zadok
- King
- David's
- mule
- Nathan
- Nathan
- Benaiah
- Benaiah
- Benaiah
- and the two groups...men who were the king's bodyguards
- Solomon

ULT

³⁸ And Zadok the priest and Nathan the prophet and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada and the Kerethite and the Pelethite went down and they caused Solomon to mount on the female mule of the king David. And they brought him to Gihon.

UST

³⁸ So Zadok, Nathan, Benaiah, and the two groups of men who were the king's bodyguards went and put Solomon on King David's mule and escorted him down to the spring at Gihon.

1 Kings 1:39

took the horn of oil out of the tent

This means the priest took the special animal horn filled with olive oil that was kept in Yahweh's special tent.

took the horn of oil

This could mean: (1) the horn of an animal filled with olive oil or (2) a container that had replaced the original horn, but the people still called it a horn. Alternate translation: "took a container of oil"

all the people

This is a generalization. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Zadok](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [Let...live](#)
- [the horn of](#)
- [with the horn](#)
- [the oil](#)
- [the tent](#)
- [and he anointed](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [the people](#)
- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [There Zadok](#)
- [There Zadok](#)
- [King](#)
- [the container](#)
- [trumpets](#)
- [of olive oil](#)
- [the sacred tent](#)
- [and anointed](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [the people](#)
- [We hope that...will live for many years](#)

ULT

39 And [Zadok the priest](#) took [the horn of the oil](#) from [the tent](#) and he anointed [Solomon](#). And they blew [with the horn](#), and all [the people](#) said, "Let [the king Solomon](#) live!"

UST

39 [There Zadok](#) took [the container of olive oil](#) from [the sacred tent](#) and anointed [Solomon](#). Then two of them blew [trumpets](#), and all [the people](#) shouted, "[We hope that King Solomon will live for many years!](#)"

1 Kings 1:40

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- And the people
- with the flutes
- and were rejoicing
- with...joy
- the earth

Translation Words - UST

- the people
- and playing
- joyfully
- joyfully
- flutes
- so that the ground

ULT

⁴⁰ And all the people went up after him. And the people were playing with the flutes and were rejoicing with great joy. And the earth was split by their sound.

UST

⁴⁰ Then all the people followed him back up to the city, shouting joyfully and playing flutes. They shouted very loudly, so that the ground shook.

1 Kings 1:41

General Information:

Adonijah hears the loud noise and waits for the news.

Translation Words - ULT

- Adonijah
- the called ones
- Joab
- the horn

Translation Words - UST

- When Adonijah
- When Joab
- of the trumpets
- he asked

ULT

⁴¹ And Adonijah and all the called ones who were with him heard and they had finished eating. And Joab heard the sound of the horn, and he said, "Why is the sound of the city noisy?"

UST

⁴¹ When Adonijah and all his guests were finishing eating at their celebration, they heard the noise. When Joab heard the sound of the trumpets, he asked, "What is the meaning of all that noise in the city?"

1 Kings 1:42

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jonathan
- the son of
- Abiathar
- the priest
- Adonijah
- strength
- and...good

Translation Words - UST

- Jonathan
- son
- of Abiathar
- the priest
- Adonijah
- whom we can trust
- good

ULT

⁴² He was still speaking, and behold, Jonathan the son of Abiathar the priest came. And Adonijah said, "Come, for you are a man of strength and you will bring good news."

UST

⁴² While he was still speaking, Jonathan son of Abiathar the priest, arrived. Adonijah said, "Come in! You are a man whom we can trust, so you must be bringing us good news!"

1 Kings 1:43

General Information:

Adonijah learns that Solomon is the new king.

Translation Words - ULT

- Jonathan
- to Adonijah
- our master
- the king
- David
- has caused...to reign
- Solomon

Translation Words - UST

- Jonathan
- replied
- His Majesty
- King
- David
- has made Solomon
- to be the king

ULT

⁴³ And Jonathan answered and said to Adonijah, "No, but our master the king David has caused Solomon to reign.

UST

⁴³ Jonathan replied, "No, I do not have good news! His Majesty, King David, has made Solomon to be the king!

1 Kings 1:44

Kerethites ... Pelethites

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the king
- And...has sent
- the female mule of
- Zadok
- the priest
- Nathan
- the prophet
- and Benaiah
- the son of
- Jehoiada
- and the Kerethite

Translation Words - UST

- He
- King David's
- sent
- mule
- Zadok
- Zadok
- Nathan
- Nathan
- Benaiah
- Benaiah
- Benaiah
- bodyguards

ULT

⁴⁴ And [the king has sent](#) with him [Zadok the priest](#) and [Nathan the prophet](#) and [Benaiah the son of Jehoiada](#) and the [Kerethite](#) and the [Pelethite](#). And they caused him to mount on [the female mule of the king](#).

UST

⁴⁴ [He sent Zadok, Nathan, Benaiah,](#) and the his own groups of [bodyguards](#) to go with Solomon. They put Solomon on [King David's mule](#).

1 Kings 1:45

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Zadok
- the priest
- and Nathan
- the prophet
- And...have anointed
- as king
- rejoicing

Translation Words - UST

- Zadok
- Zadok
- and Nathan
- and Nathan
- have anointed
- king
- joyfully

ULT

⁴⁵ And Zadok the priest and Nathan the prophet have anointed him as king at Gihon, and they have come up from there rejoicing, and the city is in an uproar. This is the sound that you have heard.

UST

⁴⁵ They went down to the spring at Gihon, and there Zadok and Nathan have anointed him to become the king. Now they have returned from there to the city, shouting joyfully. That is why there is that great noise that you are hearing.

1 Kings 1:46

is sitting on the throne of the kingdom

This could mean: (1) that these words are a metonym for being king. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 1:35](#). Alternate translation: “is now king” or (2) that Solomon was physically sitting on the physical throne. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [the throne of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [So Solomon is now our king](#)
- [So Solomon is now our king](#)

ULT

⁴⁶ And also, [Solomon](#) sits on [the throne of](#) the kingship.

UST

⁴⁶ [So Solomon is now our king.](#)

1 Kings 1:47

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the servants of
- the king
- the king
- the king
- his throne
- than your throne
- And...bowed down
- to bless
- our master
- David
- God
- May...make...better
- the name of
- than your name
- Solomon

Translation Words - UST

- Furthermore, the palace officials
- His Majesty
- lying
- bowed his head to worship Yahweh
- what he had done
- King
- When they said that, the king
- David, to tell him that they approved of
- will make...even more famous than you have been
- Solomon
- Solomon
- an even better...than you have been
- and enable him
- king
- God

ULT

⁴⁷ And also, the servants of the king came to bless our master the king David, saying, 'May God make the name of Solomon better than your name, and may he make his throne greater than your throne.' And the king bowed down on the bed.

UST

⁴⁷ Furthermore, the palace officials came to His Majesty, King David, to tell him that they approved of what he had done. They said, 'We wish that God will make Solomon even more famous than you have been and enable him to be an even better king than you have been.' When they said that, the king, lying on his bed, bowed his head to worship Yahweh.

1 Kings 1:48

a person to sit on my throne this day

This could mean: (1) that these words are a metonym for being king. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 1:35](#). Alternate translation: “a person to be king today as I was” or (2) that Solomon was physically sitting on the physical throne. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- Blessed be
- Yahweh
- the God of
- Israel
- my throne

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh, the...whom we
- God
- Israelites
- worship
- to become
- the king

ULT

⁴⁸ And also, thus said the king, ‘Blessed be Yahweh the God of Israel, who has given one who sits on my throne today, and my eyes are seeing.’”

UST

⁴⁸ Then he said, ‘I praise Yahweh, the God whom we Israelites worship, because he has allowed one of my sons to become the king today and has permitted me to see it happen.’”

1 Kings 1:49

General Information:

Adonijah becomes terrified of King Solomon.

They stood up

Another possible meaning is “They began to act quickly” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the called ones](#)
- [were for Adonijah](#)
- [And...trembled...a](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Adonijah's](#)
- [guests](#)
- [trembled](#)

ULT

⁴⁹ And all [the called ones](#) who [were for Adonijah trembled](#) and rose. And they went, [a](#) man to his way.

UST

⁴⁹ Then all of [Adonijah's guests trembled](#), so they all immediately got up and left and scattered.

1 Kings 1:50

Adonijah ... took hold of the horns of the altar

The “horns of the altar” symbolized the strength and protection of Yahweh, but because Adonijah literally went into the area of the physical tent to take literal hold of the physical horns, you should translate this literally.

Adonijah ... rose up, went

Another possible meaning is “Adonijah ... quickly went” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And Adonijah](#)
- [was afraid](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [the horns of](#)
- [the altar](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Adonijah](#)
- [was afraid of what...would do](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [the projections at the corners](#)
- [of the altar](#)

ULT

⁵⁰ [And Adonijah was afraid](#) of the face of [Solomon](#). And he rose and went and grasped [the horns of the altar](#).

UST

⁵⁰ [Adonijah was afraid of what Solomon would do](#), so he went to the sacred tent and grabbed [the projections at the corners of the altar](#), because he thought that no one would kill him there.

1 Kings 1:51

is afraid of King Solomon

The servants speak to King Solomon as if they were speaking of someone else to show that they respected King Solomon. Alternate translation: "is afraid of you, King Solomon" (See: [Pronouns](#))

he will not kill his servant

Adonijah speaks of himself as if he were speaking of another person so people will think that he respects King Solomon. Alternate translation: "he will not kill me" (See: [Pronouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And it was told
- to Solomon
- Solomon
- Solomon
- Let...swear
- he will...put to death
- his servant
- with the sword
- Adonijah
- fears
- the king
- the king (2)
- the horns of
- the altar

Translation Words - UST

- you
- Solomon
- Solomon
- Adonijah
- to solemnly promise that he will not command
- that...be executed
- that...be executed
- that...be executed
- is afraid of
- so he has gone
- King (2)
- to the sacred tent
- and is holding on to the altar
- and is holding on to the altar

ULT

51 And it was told to Solomon, saying, "Behold, Adonijah fears Solomon the king. And behold, he has grasped the horns of the altar, saying, 'Let Solomon the king swear to me as soon as today that he will not put to death his servant with the sword.'"

UST

51 But someone told Solomon, "See, Adonijah is afraid of you, so he has gone to the sacred tent and is holding on to the altar. He is saying, 'Before I leave, I want King Solomon to solemnly promise that he will not command that I be executed.'"

1 Kings 1:52

General Information:

Solomon spares the life of Adonijah.

not a hair of his will fall to the earth

This is an exaggeration to say that Solomon will keep Adonijah safe. Alternate translation: “not a hair of his head will fall” or “I will keep him safe” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

wickedness is found in him

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **wickedness**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. It is spoken of as if it were an object that could be found in a container. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “he does what is evil” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

⁵² And [Solomon](#) said, “If he will be a son of [strength](#), some of his hair will not fall to the ground. But if [evil](#) is found in him, then he will die.”

UST

⁵² [Solomon](#) replied, “If [he proves that he is loyal to me, I will](#) not harm him at all. But if he [does anything that is wrong](#), he [will be executed](#).”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [strength](#)
- [to the ground](#)
- [evil](#)
- [then he will die](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [he proves that he is loyal to me, I will](#)
- [at all](#)
- [does anything that is wrong](#)
- [will be executed](#)

1 Kings 1:53

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- Solomon
- Solomon
- the king
- to...the king
- And...sent
- the altar
- and bowed down
- to your house

Translation Words - UST

- So King
- He came to
- Solomon
- Solomon
- Then Solomon
- sent some men to Adonijah
- the altar
- and bowed down in front
- home

ULT

⁵³ And Solomon the king sent, and they brought him down from beside the altar. And he came and bowed down to Solomon the king. And Solomon said to him, "Go to your house."

UST

⁵³ So King Solomon sent some men to Adonijah, and they brought him back from the altar. He came to Solomon and bowed down in front of him. Then Solomon said to him, "Go home."

1 Kings 2

1 Kings 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter has two stories: David's last advice to Solomon and Solomon's punishment of those who supported Adonijah and also Shimei, who had cursed David when David was fleeing from Absalom. (See: [curse](#), [cursed](#), [cursing](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Exalting oneself

Exalting oneself can lead to disaster as when Adonijah made himself king. (See: [exalt](#), [exalted](#), [exaltation](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Euphemism

David spoke of his impending death using a euphemism: "I am going the way of all the earth." (See: [Euphemism](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Parallelism

David wanted to emphasize the importance of obeying God to his son Solomon. He used parallelism, saying the same thing seven times using different words: "Keep the commands of Yahweh your God to walk in his ways, to obey his statutes, his commandments, his decisions, and his covenant decrees, being careful to do what is written in the law of Moses." Some languages have other ways of emphasizing an idea. (See: [Parallelism](#))

1 Kings 2:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the days of
- David
- to die
- and he commanded
- Solomon
- his son

Translation Words - UST

- When David
- knew that he was...die
- about to
- these final instructions
- to his son
- Solomon

ULT

¹ And the days of David to die came near, and he commanded Solomon his son, saying,

UST

¹ When David knew that he was about to die, he gave these final instructions to his son Solomon:

1 Kings 2:2

I am going the way of all the earth

This is a polite way of saying "I am going to die." (See: [Euphemism](#))

show yourself a man

The ellipsis can be filled in. Alternate translation: "show everyone that you are a man" or "live so that everyone can see you are a good man" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the earth](#)
- [And you shall be strong](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [else](#)
- [on earth](#)

ULT

² "I am about to go in the way of all [the earth](#). [And you shall be strong](#), and you shall become a man.

UST

² "I am about to die, as everyone [else on earth](#) does. Be courageous and conduct yourself as man should.

1 Kings 2:3

walk in his ways

Walking on a path is a metonym for the way a person lives. Alternate translation: “live the way he commands” (See: [Idiom](#))

so you may prosper

Alternate translation: “so you may succeed” or “so you may do well”

Translation Words - ULT

- And you shall keep
- the keeping of
- to keep
- Moses
- you may do wisely
- Yahweh
- your God
- his statutes
- his commandments
- and his judgments
- and his testimonies
- in the law of Moses

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- our God
- Do this
- you will prosper
- Conduct
- tells you to do
- yourself as he wants you to do
- Obey all of his laws and commands and decrees
- Obey all of his laws and commands and decrees
- Obey all of his laws and commands and decrees
- in the laws that Moses gave us
- Moses gave us

ULT

³ And you shall keep the keeping of Yahweh your God to walk in his ways, to keep his statutes, his commandments, and his judgments, and his testimonies, according to what is written in the law of Moses, so that you may do wisely all that you do and everywhere that you would turn there,

UST

³ Do what Yahweh our God tells you to do. Conduct yourself as he wants you to do. Obey all of his laws and commands and decrees and instructions that are written in the laws that Moses gave us. Do this in order that you will prosper in all that you do and wherever you go.

1 Kings 2:4

may fulfill his word

Alternate translation: “do everything he promised he would do”

If your sons ... you will never cease

Yahweh is talking to David, so the words “you” and “your” refer to David.

to walk before me faithfully

Yahweh is talking to David, so the word “me” refers to Yahweh.

with all their heart and with all their soul

The idiom “with all ... heart” means “completely” and “with all ... soul” means “with all ... being.” These two phrases have similar meanings.

Alternate translation: “with all their being” or “with all their energy” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Doublet](#))

you will never cease to have a man on the throne of Israel

The word “throne” is a metonym for the king who sits on the throne. The litotes “will never cease to have” can be stated positively. Alternate translation: “your descendants will never cease to be kings of Israel” or “one of your descendants will always be the king of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Litotes](#))

ULT

⁴ so that [Yahweh](#) may cause his word to stand, which he spoke concerning me, saying, ‘If [your sons will keep](#) their way, to walk before my face [in truth](#) with all [their heart](#) and with all [their soul](#),’ saying, ‘a man for you will not [be cut off](#) from on [the throne of Israel](#).’

UST

⁴ If you [continually do](#) that, [Yahweh](#) will do what he promised me. He said, ‘If your [descendants](#) do what I tell them to do, [and faithfully obey my commands](#) with all [their inner beings](#), they will always [be the ones who will rule Israel](#).’

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [your sons](#)
- [will keep](#)
- [in truth](#)
- [their heart](#)
- [their soul](#)
- [will...be cut off](#)
- [the throne of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [continually do](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [descendants](#)
- [and faithfully](#)
- [obey my commands](#)
- [their inner beings](#)
- [be the ones](#)
- [who will rule](#)
- [Israel](#)

1 Kings 2:5

what Joab ... did to me, and what he did

David is referring to the same thing twice. Alternate translation: "what Joab ... did to me—that is, what he did"

shed the blood of war in peace

This could mean: (1) "killed those men during a time of peace as if he were killing them in war" or (2) "took revenge on those men during a time of peace because they had killed people in war" (See: [Metonymy](#))

put the blood of war on the belt around his waist and on the shoes on his feet

This could mean: (1) Joab was close enough to these men when he killed them that their blood spattered on his belt and on his sandals or (2) the word "blood" is a metonym for guilt of murder, and the belt and the shoes are metonyms for Joab's authority as commander, so David is saying that because Joab is guilty of murder, he should not be commander of the army. Either way, it is best to translate this literally. (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

⁵ And also you yourself [know](#) what [Joab the son of Zeruiah](#) did to me, what he did to two of [the commanders of the armies of Israel](#), to [Abner the son of Ner](#) and to [Amasa the son of Jether](#): [and he slew them](#). And he put [the bloodshed of war in peace](#) and he gave [the bloodshed of war](#) on his belt, which [was on his loins, and on his sandal](#), which was on his feet.

UST

⁵ There is something else that I [want](#) you to do. You know what [Joab](#) did to me. [He killed](#) my two [army commanders](#), [Abner and Amasa](#). He murdered them [violently](#). [He is guilty of murder](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [you...know](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [in peace](#)
- [was on his loins](#)
- [and on his sandal](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the son of \(2\)](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the commanders of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [to Abner](#)
- [and he slew them](#)
- [the bloodshed of](#)
- [the bloodshed of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [want](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [violently](#)
- [He is...of murder](#)
- [He is...of murder](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [Abner \(2\)](#)
- [and Amasa](#)
- [He killed](#)
- [army](#)

- army
- Abner
- violently
- guilty

1 Kings 2:6

do not let his gray head go down to the grave in peace

Here being old is represented by having gray hair, that is, a “gray head.” Alternate translation: “make sure Joab dies a violent death before he grows old” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [according...your wisdom](#)
- [in peace](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Because you are wise, do to him what you think is best for you](#)
- [peacefully](#)

ULT

⁶ And you shall act [according](#) to [your wisdom](#), and you shall not let his gray hair go down [in peace](#) to Sheol.

UST

⁶ [Because you are wise, do to him what you think is best for you](#) to do, but do not allow him to become old and die [peacefully](#).

1 Kings 2:7

Barzillai

a man's name (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

let them be among those who eat at your table

The table is a metonym for the home where the table is. Alternate translation: "welcome them to eat at your home" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And to the sons of
- the Gileadite
- covenant faithfulness
- Absalom
- your brother

Translation Words - UST

- But act kindly
- the sons
- the man from the region of Gilead
- your older brother
- Absalom

ULT

⁷ And to the sons of Barzillai the Gileadite do covenant faithfulness, and let them be among those who eat at your table. For so they came near to me when I fled from the face of Absalom your brother.

UST

⁷ But act kindly toward the sons of Barzillai, the man from the region of Gilead, and be sure that they always have enough food to eat. Do that because Barzillai helped me when I was running away from your older brother Absalom.

1 Kings 2:8

Shimei ... Gera

men's names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Benjamite

descendant of Benjamin

Bahurim ... Mahanaim

place names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- is Shimei
- the son of
- by Yahweh
- I will...put you to death
- by the sword
- the Benjamite
- he...cursed me
- with a...curse
- on the day of
- at the Jordan
- and I swore

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Shimei
- that I would not cause...to be executed
- in the area where the descendants of Benjamin live
- cursed me terribly
- cursed me terribly
- on the day I left Jerusalem
- when I was crossing the Jordan River
- solemnly promised
- while Yahweh listened
- that I would not cause...to be executed

ULT

⁸ And behold, with you is Shimei the son of Gera the Benjamite from Bahurim. And he himself cursed me with a grievous curse on the day of my going to Mahanaim. And he himself went down to meet me at the Jordan, and I swore to him by Yahweh, saying, 'I will not put you to death by the sword.'

UST

⁸ Also, you remember Gera's son Shimei from the town of Bahurim in the area where the descendants of Benjamin live. You know what he did to me. He cursed me terribly on the day I left Jerusalem and went to the town of Mahanaim. But when he later came down to see me when I was crossing the Jordan River, I solemnly promised, while Yahweh listened, that I would not cause him to be executed.

1 Kings 2:9

do not let him go free from punishment

This can be expressed positively. Alternate translation: "be sure to punish him" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

bring his gray head down to the grave with blood

Blood is a metonym for violent death, and the head is synecdoche for the whole person. Alternate translation: "make sure he dies a violent death" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [wise](#)
- [and you know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [are a wise](#)
- [know](#)

ULT

⁹ And now, do not leave him unpunished. For you are a [wise](#) man, [and you know](#) what you shall do to him. And you shall cause his gray hair to go down with blood to Sheol."

UST

⁹ But now you must surely punish him. You [are a wise](#) man, so you will [know](#) what you should do to him. He is an old man, but be sure that his blood flows when he dies."

1 Kings 2:10

General Information:

David dies and Solomon takes his place as the new king of Israel.

slept with his ancestors

David dying is spoken of as if he had fallen asleep. Alternate translation: "died" (See: [Euphemism](#))

David ... and was buried

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "David ... and they buried him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [his fathers](#)
- [and he was buried](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then David](#)
- [David](#)
- [and was buried](#)
- [in that part of Jerusalem which was called](#)

ULT

¹⁰ And [David](#) lay down with [his fathers](#) and he was buried in the city of [David](#).

UST

¹⁰ Then [David](#) died and was buried in that part of Jerusalem which was called the city of [David](#).

1 Kings 2:11

The days that David reigned over Israel were

Alternate translation: "The time that David reigned over Israel was" or "David reigned over Israel for"

Translation Words - ULT

- And the days
- David
- reigned
- he reigned
- he reigned
- Israel
- In Hebron
- years
- years
- and in Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- David
- had been king
- in Hebron
- He ruled
- had been king
- Israel
- years
- and for thirty-three
- in Hebron
- in Jerusalem

ULT

¹¹ And the days that David reigned over Israel were 40 years. In Hebron he reigned seven years and in Jerusalem he reigned 33 years.

UST

¹¹ David had been king of Israel for forty years. He ruled for seven years in Hebron and for thirty-three years in Jerusalem.

1 Kings 2:12

sat on the throne of his father David

The throne represents the authority of the king. Alternate translation: “became king, as his father David had been” (See: [Metonymy](#))

his rule was firmly established

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “Yahweh firmly established Solomon’s rule” or “Yahweh caused Solomon to take complete control of the kingdom” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

¹² [And Solomon](#) sat on [the throne of David his father](#). And [his kingdom](#) was firmly established.

UST

¹² [Solomon became the ruler to take the place of his father David](#) and took control of all of the kingdom.

Translation Words - ULT

- [And Solomon](#)
- [the throne of](#)
- [David](#)
- [his father](#)
- [his kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [became the ruler](#)
- [to take the place of](#)
- [his father](#)
- [David](#)

1 Kings 2:13

General Information:

Adonijah comes to speak to Bathsheba.

peacefully

with no desire to cause harm

Translation Words - ULT

- Adonijah
- the son of
- Bathsheba
- Bathsheba
- Bathsheba
- Solomon
- Is...peaceful
- It is peaceful

Translation Words - UST

- One day Adonijah
- One day Adonijah
- Solomon's
- Bathsheba
- Bathsheba
- Bathsheba
- Have you
- She said to him...because you want things to go well

ULT

¹³ And Adonijah the son of Haggith came to Bathsheba the mother of Solomon. And she said, "Is your coming peaceful?" And he said, "It is peaceful."

UST

¹³ One day Adonijah came to Solomon's mother Bathsheba. She said to him, "Have you come because you want things to go well?" He replied, "Yes."

1 Kings 2:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

¹⁴ And he said, "A word is for me to you." And she said, "Speak."

UST

¹⁴ But then he said, "I have something to request you to do." She said, "Tell me what you want me to do."

1 Kings 2:15

all Israel

This is a generalization. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

things changed

Alternate translation: “what we expected to happen did not happen”

the kingdom was given to my brother

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “Yahweh gave the kingdom to my brother” or “my brother became king” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- You...know
- Israel
- their faces
- to reign
- But...turned around
- for my brother
- from Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- know that
- the Israelite people
- But that did not happen
- Instead
- my younger brother
- became king, because
- Yahweh

ULT

15 And he said, “You yourself [know](#) that the kingship was for me, and all [Israel](#) had set [their faces](#) on me [to reign](#). [But](#) the kingship [turned around](#) and became [for my brother](#), for [from Yahweh](#) it was for him.

UST

15 He said, “You [know that](#) all [the Israelite people](#) expected me to be their king because I am David’s oldest son. [But that did not happen](#). [Instead](#), [my younger brother became king, because that is what Yahweh wanted](#).

1 Kings 2:16

General Information:

Adonijah shares his request with Bathsheba.

do not turn away from my face

Turning from the face of someone is a metonym for refusing to look at someone, which in turn is a metonym for refusing to do what that person requests. Alternate translation: “do not refuse to do what I request” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

16 And now, I am requesting one request from with you, do not turn back my face.” And she said to him, “Speak.”

UST

16 Now I have one thing that I request you to do. Please do not refuse to do it.” She replied, “Tell me what you want me to do.”

1 Kings 2:17

he will not turn away from your face

Turning from the face of someone is a metonym for refusing to look at someone, which in turn is a metonym for refusing to do what that person requests. Alternate translation: “he will not refuse to do what you request” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Abishag the Shunammite

See [1 Kings 1:3](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Solomon](#)
- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [King](#)
- [Solomon](#)

ULT

17 And he said, “Please speak [to Solomon the king](#), for he will not turn back your face, that he may give to me Abishag the Shunammite for a wife.”

UST

17 He said, “Please ask [King Solomon](#) to give to me Abishag, the woman from the town of Shunem, to be my wife. I am sure that he will not refuse.”

1 Kings 2:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Bathsheba
- Bathsheba
- Bathsheba
- Good
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- Bathsheba
- Bathsheba
- Bathsheba
- the king
- for you

ULT

¹⁸ And Bathsheba said, “Good, I myself will speak concerning you to the king.”

UST

¹⁸ Bathsheba replied, “Very well, I will speak to the king for you.”

1 Kings 2:19

General Information:

Bathsheba goes to King Solomon with Adonijah's request.

The king rose

"The king stood up" from where he was sitting on his throne.

had a throne brought

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "told someone to bring a throne" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the king's mother

Bathsheba

Translation Words - ULT

- [Bathsheba](#)
- [Bathsheba](#)
- [Bathsheba](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [Adonijah](#)
- [and he bowed down](#)
- [his throne](#)
- [a throne](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [So Bathsheba went](#)
- [So Bathsheba went](#)
- [So Bathsheba went](#)
- [King...s](#)
- [a chair](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [to tell him what Adonijah wanted](#)
- [The king](#)
- [he](#)
- [king](#)
- [and bowed down](#)

ULT

¹⁹ And [Bathsheba](#) came to [the king Solomon](#) to speak to him concerning [Adonijah](#). And [the king](#) rose to meet her and [he bowed down](#) to her and he sat on [his throne](#). And he set [a throne](#) for the mother of [the king](#), and she sat by his right hand.

UST

¹⁹ So [Bathsheba went](#) to [King Solomon](#) to tell him what [Adonijah wanted](#). The [king](#) got up from his throne and went to greet her and [bowed down](#) to her. Then [he](#) sat on his throne again and asked someone to bring [a chair](#) for her. So she sat down at the [king's](#) right side.

1 Kings 2:20

you will not turn away from my face ... I will not turn away from your face

Turning from the face of someone is a metonym for refusing to look at someone, which in turn is a metonym for refusing to do what that person requests. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 2:16](#) and [1 Kings 2:17](#). Alternate translation: “you will not refuse to do what I request ... I will not refuse to do what you request” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The king](#)

ULT

²⁰ And she said, “One small request I am requesting from with you, do not turn back my face.” And [the king](#) said to her, “Request, my mother, for I will not turn back your face.”

UST

²⁰ Then she said, “I have one small thing that I want you do. Please do not say that you will not do it.” [The king](#) replied, “Mother, what do you want? I will not refuse you.”

1 Kings 2:21

Let Abishag the Shunammite be given to Adonijah ... as his wife

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Allow Adonijah ... to marry Abishag the Shunammite" or "Give Abishag the Shunammite to Adonijah ... as his wife" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to Adonijah
- your brother

Translation Words - UST

- your older brother
- Adonijah

ULT

²¹ And she said, "Let Abishag the Shunammite be given to [Adonijah](#) [your brother](#) for a wife."

UST

²¹ She said, "Allow Abishag to be given to [your older brother Adonijah](#) to be his wife."

1 Kings 2:22

General Information:

King Solomon gives an answer to Adonijah's request.

Why do you ask ... Adonijah? Why do you not ask the kingdom for him also ... Zeruiah?

King Solomon was angered by his mother's request. Alternate translation: "You are wrong to ask ... Adonijah! This is the same as asking the kingdom for him also ... Zeruiah!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- Solomon
- for Adonijah
- is my brother
- and for Abiathar
- the priest
- and for Joab
- the son of

Translation Words - UST

- The king
- to Adonijah
- Does he want me to allow him to rule the kingdom, too
- brother
- Abiathar
- the priest instead of Zadok
- and that Joab should be the army commander
- and that Joab should be the army commander

ULT

²² And [the king Solomon](#) answered and said to his mother, "And why are you requesting Abishag the Shunammite [for Adonijah](#)? Then request for him the kingship, for he [is my brother](#), older than I, and for him [and for Abiathar the priest and for Joab the son of Zeruiah](#)!"

UST

²² [The king](#) replied angrily, "What? Are you requesting me to give Abishag [to Adonijah](#)? [Does he want me to allow him to rule the kingdom, too](#)? Because he is my older [brother](#), does he think that he should be the king? Does he think that [Abiathar](#) should be [the priest instead of Zadok, and that Joab should be the army commander](#) instead of Benaiah because they supported him when he tried to become the king?"

1 Kings 2:23

May God do so to me, and more also, if Adonijah has not spoken this word against his own life

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “God will have every right to execute me—and to do even worse things to me—if I do not execute Adonijah because he has made this request” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [And...swore](#)
- [by Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [by his life](#)
- [Adonijah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Solomon](#)
- [Then Solomon](#)
- [solemnly promised](#)
- [Yahweh to listen...wish](#)
- [God](#)
- [to strike me and kill](#)
- [Adonijah](#)

ULT

²³ And [the king Solomon swore by Yahweh](#), saying, “Thus may [God](#) do to me, and thus may he add, unless [by his life Adonijah](#) has spoken this word.

UST

²³ [Then Solomon solemnly promised](#), requesting [Yahweh to listen](#), “I [wish God to strike me and kill](#) me if I do not cause [Adonijah](#) to be executed for requesting this!

1 Kings 2:24

General Information:

King Solomon executes Adonijah.

set me on the throne

The word “throne” refers to Solomon’s authority to rule that was given by Yahweh. (See: [Metonymy](#))

who has made me a house

Here “house” refers to descendants that Yahweh gave to King Solomon, who would continue to reign after him. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- as...is alive
- the throne of
- David
- my father
- a house
- Adonijah
- shall be put to death

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- has appointed
- king
- as my father
- David
- He has promised
- Adonijah
- will be executed

ULT

²⁴ And now, as [Yahweh is alive](#), who has established me and caused me to sit on [the throne of David my father](#), and who has made for me [a house](#) just as he said, surely today [Adonijah shall be put to death.](#)”

UST

²⁴ [Yahweh has appointed](#) me to be the [king](#) and placed me here to rule [as my father David](#) did. [He has promised](#) that my descendants will be the kings of Israel. So just as surely as Yahweh lives, I solemnly promise that [Adonijah will be executed](#) today!”

1 Kings 2:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- Solomon
- And...sent
- by the hand of
- Benaiah
- the son of
- Jehoiada
- and he died

Translation Words - UST

- So King
- Solomon
- to Benaiah
- to Benaiah
- to Benaiah
- to go
- and kill
- and Benaiah did that

ULT

²⁵ And the king Solomon sent by the hand of Benaiah the son of Jehoiada. And he attacked him and he died.

UST

²⁵ So King Solomon gave orders to Benaiah to go and kill Adonijah, and Benaiah did that.

1 Kings 2:26

General Information:

Solomon dismisses Abiathar from being priest.

suffered in every way my father suffered

Abiathar had suffered alongside King David before David became king.

Translation Words - ULT

- And with respect to Abiathar
- the priest
- Yahweh
- David
- my father
- my father
- you were afflicted
- was afflicted
- the king
- death
- I will...put you to death
- but...on...day
- the box of
- my Lord

Translation Words - UST

- Then Solomon said to
- Abiathar
- David
- father
- my father
- and you endured...the troubles
- endured
- the priest
- deserve to be killed
- but I will...execute you
- now
- Yahweh's
- Yahweh's
- sacred chest

ULT

26 And with respect to Abiathar the priest the king said, "Go to Anathoth, to your fields. For you are a man of death, but I will not put you to death on this day, because you lifted the box of my Lord Yahweh before the face of David my father and because you were afflicted with all that my father was afflicted."

UST

26 Then Solomon said to Abiathar the priest, "Go to the town of Anathoth, to your land there. You deserve to be killed, but I will not execute you now, because you were the one who supervised the men who carried Yahweh's sacred chest for David my father, and you endured all the troubles that my father endured."

1 Kings 2:27

that he might fulfill

The word “he” refers to King Solomon.

the word of Yahweh

Alternate translation: “the things that Yahweh had said”

which he had spoken

The word “he” refers to Yahweh.

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- And...drove...out
- Abiathar
- a priest
- to Yahweh
- the word of...Yahweh
- the house of
- at Shiloh

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- Abiathar
- from being
- the priest
- of Yahweh. By doing that
- what...had said many years previously at Shiloh
- Yahweh
- the descendants

ULT

²⁷ And Solomon drove Abiathar out from being a priest to Yahweh, to fulfill the word of Yahweh, which he had spoken concerning the house of Eli at Shiloh.

UST

²⁷ So Solomon dismissed Abiathar from being the priest of Yahweh. By doing that he caused to happen what Yahweh had said many years previously at Shiloh, that some day he would get rid of the descendants of Eli.

1 Kings 2:28

General Information:

King Solomon orders Benaiah to execute Joab.

The news came to Joab

Alternate translation: "Joab heard what Solomon did after he had become king"

the horns of the altar

The horns of the altar symbolized Yahweh's power and protection. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And the report
- Joab
- Joab
- Joab
- Yahweh
- the horns of
- the altar
- had turned aside
- he had...turned aside
- Adonijah
- Absalom
- the tent of

Translation Words - UST

- he
- Joab
- when Joab
- had...supported
- because he thought that no one would kill him there
- of the altar
- Absalom
- Adonijah
- heard what had happened
- the sacred tent
- the sacred tent
- of the altar

ULT

²⁸ And the report came as far as Joab, for Joab had turned aside after Adonijah, but he had not turned aside after Absalom. And Joab fled to the tent of Yahweh and he took hold of the horns of the altar.

UST

²⁸ Joab had not supported Absalom when he tried to become the king, but he had supported Adonijah. So when Joab heard what had happened, he ran to the sacred tent, and he took hold of the altar because he thought that no one would kill him there.

1 Kings 2:29

It was told King Solomon that Joab had fled

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation:
 "Someone told King Solomon that Joab had fled" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And it was told
- to the king
- the son of
- Jehoiada
- Solomon
- Solomon
- Joab
- the tent of
- Yahweh
- the altar
- And...sent
- Benaiah

Translation Words - UST

- When someone told Solomon
- Solomon
- When someone told Solomon
- Benaiah
- and execute
- that Joab
- the sacred tent
- the sacred tent
- and was alongside
- the altar
- Benaiah
- Benaiah

ULT

²⁹ And it was told to the king Solomon that Joab had fled to the tent of Yahweh, and behold, he was beside the altar. And Solomon sent Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, saying, "Go, attack him."

UST

²⁹ When someone told Solomon that Joab had run to the sacred tent and was alongside the altar, Solomon told Benaiah, "Go and execute Joab."

1 Kings 2:30

General Information:

Benaiah goes to execute Joab.

Translation Words - ULT

- Benaiah
- Benaiah
- the tent of
- Yahweh
- the king
- to the king (2)
- I will die
- Joab

Translation Words - UST

- So Benaiah
- Benaiah
- the sacred tent
- the sacred tent
- The king commands that
- he (2)
- I will die
- Joab had replied

ULT

³⁰ And Benaiah entered into the tent of Yahweh and he said to him, "Thus says the king, 'Come out!'" And he said, "No, for here I will die." And Benaiah brought back word to the king, saying, "Thus has spoken Joab and thus he answered me."

UST

³⁰ So Benaiah went to the sacred tent and said to Joab, "The king commands that you come out." But Joab replied, "No, I will die here." So Benaiah went back to the king and reported what he had said to Joab, and what Joab had replied.

1 Kings 2:31

**bury him so that you may take away from me
and from my father's house the blood that
Joab shed without cause**

Here "house" stands for the descendants of David while "blood" represents guilt. Alternate translation: "bury him and so remove from me and my family the guilt for the murders Joab committed without cause" or "bury him. Do that so Yahweh will not hold me and my father's house guilty because Joab murdered people for no reason" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- and bury him
- the house of
- my father
- the bloodshed
- Joab

Translation Words - UST

- The king
- and bury his body
- for what Joab
- he
- two men who were innocent
- two men who were innocent

ULT

³¹ And [the king](#) said to him, "Do just as he has spoken and attack him [and bury him](#). And you will remove from on me and from on [the house of my father the bloodshed](#) without cause that [Joab](#) poured out.

UST

³¹ [The king](#) replied to him, "Do what he has requested. Kill him [and bury his body](#). If you do that, I and my descendants will no longer be punished [for what Joab](#) did when [he](#) killed [two men who were innocent](#).

1 Kings 2:32

General Information:

King Solomon explains why Joab should die.

May Yahweh return his blood on his own head

The word "his" refers to Joab. "Blood" is a metonym for murder. And, the idiom "his blood on his own head" means the person should be considered guilty for murder. Alternate translation: "Joab has murdered people, and I want Yahweh to hold him guilty for what he has done" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

more righteous and better

These words mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Abner and Amasa were much better men than Joab. (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- And...will return
- did...know
- Abner
- the son of
- the son of
- the commander of
- the commander of (2)
- Israel
- Judah
- his blood
- his head
- righteous
- and better
- and he slew them
- with the sword
- and my father
- David

Translation Words - UST

- But I hope
- Yahweh
- Judah
- who were...much better...than he is
- who were...much better...than he is
- who were...much better...than he is
- will punish Joab
- My father
- David
- did...even know that Joab was planning to murder them
- for attacking and killing
- Abner

ULT

³² And Yahweh will return his blood on his head, because he attacked two men more righteous and better than himself and he slew them with the sword, and my father David did not know: Abner the son of Ner, the commander of the army of Israel, and Amasa the son of Jether, the commander of the army of Judah.

UST

³² But I hope that Yahweh will punish Joab for attacking and killing Abner, the commander of the army of Israel, and Amasa, the commander of the army of Judah, who were both much better men than he is. My father David did not even know that Joab was planning to murder them.

- Abner
- the commander of (2)
- Abner
- and Amasa
- the commander
- of Israel

1 Kings 2:33

may their blood return on the head of Joab and on the head of his descendants

The word "blood" is a metonym for murder. And, the idiom "blood return on the head of" means the person should be considered guilty for murder. Alternate translation: "I want Yahweh to hold Joab and his descendants guilty" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

to his house, and to his throne

The words "house" and "throne" are metonyms for the family and the kingdom. Alternate translation: "to David's descendants and to David's kingdom" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- their shed blood
- And...will return
- peace
- Yahweh
- on the head of
- Joab
- his seed
- and for his seed
- to eternity
- eternity
- But for David
- and for his house
- and for his throne

Translation Words - UST

- I hope that
- Yahweh
- who rule
- he did
- will punish
- Joab
- and his descendants
- descendants
- forever for his murdering Abner and Amasa
- forever
- But I hope that things will go well
- David's
- descendants

ULT

³³ And [their shed blood will return on the head of Joab](#) and on the head of [his seed to eternity](#). But for David and for his seed and for his house and for his throne will be [peace](#) until [eternity](#) from with [Yahweh](#)."

UST

³³ [I hope that Yahweh will punish Joab and his descendants forever for his murdering Abner and Amasa](#). But I hope that things will go well forever for [David's descendants who rule as he did](#)."

1 Kings 2:34

General Information:

Benaiah kills Joab and becomes the commander of King Solomon's army.

He was buried in his own house

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "They buried Joab in his own house"

in his own house

The house is a metonym for the land on which the house stood. The Israelites buried people out of doors in graves or tombs. Alternate translation: "where his family lived" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Benaiah](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)
- [and put him to death](#)
- [And he was buried](#)
- [in his house](#)
- [in the wilderness](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [So Benaiah](#)
- [So Benaiah](#)
- [So Benaiah](#)
- [and killed Joab](#)
- [Joab was buried](#)
- [on his property in the wilderness of Judah](#)
- [on his property in the wilderness of Judah](#)

ULT

³⁴ And [Benaiah the son of Jehoiada](#) went up and attacked him and put him to death. And he was buried in his house in the wilderness.

UST

³⁴ So [Benaiah](#) went into the sacred tent and killed Joab. Joab was buried on his property in the wilderness of Judah.

1 Kings 2:35

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the king
- Benaiah
- the son of
- Jehoiada
- Zadok
- the priest
- Abiathar

Translation Words - UST

- and he
- Then the king
- Benaiah
- Benaiah
- Benaiah
- Zadok
- to be the priest
- Abiathar

ULT

³⁵ And the king gave Benaiah the son of Jehoiada in his place over the army. And Zadok the priest the king gave in place of Abiathar.

UST

³⁵ Then the king appointed Benaiah to be the commander of the army instead of Joab, and he appointed Zadok to be the priest instead of Abiathar.

1 Kings 2:36

General Information:

King Solomon tells Shimei to stay in Jerusalem or Shimei will die.

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- And...sent
- and called
- for Shimei
- a house
- in Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- Then the king
- sent
- to summon
- Shimei
- a house for yourself
- in Jerusalem

ULT

³⁶ And the king sent and called for Shimei, and he said to him, "Build a house for yourself in Jerusalem and dwell there. And do not go out from there here or there.

UST

³⁶ Then the king sent a messenger to summon Shimei, and the king said to him, "Build a house for yourself here in Jerusalem. Remain there and do not leave the city to go anywhere.

1 Kings 2:37

Your blood will be on your own head

Here “blood” is a metonym for guilt and the head is a metonym for the person. Alternate translation: “You will be responsible for your own death” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- on the day
- know
- you will...die
- Your blood
- on your head

Translation Words - UST

- the day that
- you will be executed
- own
- your...fault
- your...fault

ULT

³⁷ And it will happen [on the day](#) when you go out and you pass over the wadi of Kidron, [know](#) surely that [you will](#) surely [die](#). [Your blood](#) will be [on your head](#).”

UST

³⁷ Be sure that [the day that](#) you leave Jerusalem and go across the Kidron Brook, [you will be executed](#), and it will be your [own fault](#).”

1 Kings 2:38

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Shimei
- Shimei
- to the king
- the king
- is good
- my master
- your servant
- in Jerusalem
- days

Translation Words - UST

- Shimei
- So Shimei
- is good
- Your Majesty
- Your Majesty
- is good
- I will
- in Jerusalem
- for several years

ULT

³⁸ And Shimei said to the king, "The word is good. Just as my master the king has spoken, thus your servant will do." And Shimei dwelled in Jerusalem many days.

UST

³⁸ Shimei replied, "Your Majesty, what you say is good. I will do what you have said." So Shimei remained in Jerusalem for several years.

1 Kings 2:39

General Information:

Shimei leaves Jerusalem.

Achish ... Maacah ... Gath

men's names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Gath

a Philistine city (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- years
- the slaves
- your slaves
- of Shimei
- Shimei
- the son of
- Maacah
- the king of
- Gath
- are in Gath
- And they told

Translation Words - UST

- years
- Shimei's
- Shimei
- slaves
- They went
- stay with
- Maacah's
- son
- the king of
- the city of Gath
- that they were in Gath

ULT

³⁹ And it happened from the end of three years that two of the slaves of Shimei fled to Achish the son of Maacah, the king of Gath. And they told Shimei, saying, "Behold, your slaves are in Gath."

UST

³⁹ But three years later, two of Shimei's slaves ran away. They went to stay with Maacah's son Achish, the king of the city of Gath. When someone told Shimei that they were in Gath,

1 Kings 2:40

Shimei arose

This is an idiom. "Shimei quickly" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Shimei
- Shimei
- his donkey
- to Gath
- from Gath
- to seek
- his slaves
- his slaves

Translation Words - UST

- on his donkey
- Gath
- back home
- He
- his
- found
- slaves
- them

ULT

⁴⁰ And [Shimei](#) rose and saddled [his donkey](#) and went [to Gath](#), to Achish, [to seek his slaves](#). And [Shimei](#) went and brought back [his slaves from Gath](#).

UST

⁴⁰ he put a saddle [on his donkey](#) and got on the donkey and went to [Gath](#). [He found his slaves](#) staying with King Achish and brought [them back home](#).

1 Kings 2:41

General Information:

King Solomon judges Shimei for leaving Jerusalem.

Solomon was told

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “someone told Solomon” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And it was told](#)
- [to Solomon](#)
- [Shimei](#)
- [from Jerusalem](#)
- [to Gath](#)
- [and had returned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [King Solomon](#)
- [that](#)
- [Shimei](#)
- [from Jerusalem](#)
- [to Gath](#)
- [and had returned](#)

ULT

⁴¹ [And it was told to Solomon](#) that [Shimei](#) had gone [from Jerusalem to Gath](#) and had returned.

UST

⁴¹ But someone told [King Solomon](#) that [Shimei](#) had gone [from Jerusalem to Gath](#) and had returned.

1 Kings 2:42

Did I not make you swear ... saying, 'Know ... die'?

Solomon is reminding Shimei of what Shimei had promised.

Alternate translation: "You know very well that I made you swear ... saying, 'Know ... die!'" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- And...sent
- is good
- and called
- for Shimei
- I...cause you to swear
- by Yahweh
- and testify
- On the day
- know
- you will...die

Translation Words - UST

- the king
- sent a soldier
- you will be executed
- And you
- is good
- to summon
- Shimei
- I told you to solemnly promise, knowing that...was listening
- Yahweh
- Be sure that if you...leave Jerusalem
- ever

ULT

⁴² And the king sent and called for Shimei and said to him, "Did I not cause you to swear by Yahweh and testify against you, saying, 'On the day when you go out and go here or there, surely know that you will surely die'? And you said to me, 'The word I have heard is good.'

UST

⁴² So the king sent a soldier to summon Shimei and said to him, "I told you to solemnly promise, knowing that Yahweh was listening, that you must not leave Jerusalem. I told you, 'Be sure that if you ever leave Jerusalem, you will be executed.' And you replied to me, 'What you have said is good; I will do what you have said.'

1 Kings 2:43

General Information:

King Solomon pronounces judgment upon Shimei for leaving Jerusalem.

Why then have you not kept your oath ... you?

This could mean: (1) Solomon is asking for an answer or (2) Alternate translation: "You have done wrong by breaking your oath ... you."
(See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [did you...keep](#)
- [the oath of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the command](#)
- [I commanded](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [do what](#)
- [solemnly promised to](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [disobey](#)
- [I commanded you](#)

ULT

⁴³ And why [did you](#) not [keep the oath of Yahweh](#) and [the command](#) that [I commanded](#) concerning you?"

UST

⁴³ So why did you not [do what](#) you [solemnly promised to Yahweh](#)? Why did you [disobey](#) what [I commanded you](#)?"

1 Kings 2:44

will return your wickedness on your own head

Here the head represents the person, and wickedness is spoken of as if it were a solid or liquid that could be put on a person's head.

Alternate translation: "will hold you responsible for all your wickedness" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- Shimei
- on your head
- You...know
- knows
- the evil
- your evil
- your heart
- to David
- my father
- Yahweh
- And...will return

Translation Words - UST

- The king
- Shimei
- you for
- know
- in your inner being
- in your inner being
- the evil things
- the evil things
- my father
- David
- So Yahweh
- will now punish

ULT

⁴⁴ And [the king](#) said to [Shimei](#), "You yourself [know](#) all [the evil](#) that [your heart knows](#), that you did [to David my father](#). And [Yahweh](#) will return your evil on your head."

UST

⁴⁴ [The king](#) also said to [Shimei](#), "You [know in your inner being](#) all [the evil things](#) that you did to [my father David](#). So [Yahweh](#) will now punish you for the [evil things](#) that you did."

1 Kings 2:45

General Information:

King Solomon orders Shimei to be put to death.

the throne of David will be established before Yahweh forever

Here "throne of David" represents the authority and rule of David and all his descendants forever. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- But the king
- Solomon
- will be blessed
- and the throne of
- David
- Yahweh
- eternity

Translation Words - UST

- will bless
- me
- and he
- David's descendants
- to rule
- forever
- forever

ULT

⁴⁵ But the king Solomon will be blessed, and the throne of David will be established before the face of Yahweh until eternity."

UST

⁴⁵ But Yahweh will bless me, and he will enable David's descendants to rule forever."

1 Kings 2:46

in Solomon's hand

This use of "hand" represents Solomon's power and authority. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- And...commanded
- Benaiah
- the son of
- Jehoiada
- and he died
- And the kingdom
- in the hand of
- Solomon

Translation Words - UST

- Then the king
- gave a command
- to Benaiah
- son
- of Jehoiada
- to death
- Solomon
- obtained
- complete control

ULT

⁴⁶ And [the king](#) [commanded Benaiah the son of Jehoiada](#), and he went out and attacked him, [and he died](#). And the [kingdom](#) was established [in the hand of Solomon](#).

UST

⁴⁶ Then the king gave a command to [Benaiah son of Jehoiada](#). He went out and put Shimei [to death](#). So [Solomon](#) [obtained complete control](#) of the kingdom.

1 Kings 3

1 Kings 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter has two stories. Verses 1-15 is the story of Solomon's dream when God asked him what he wanted and he said he needed wisdom to be a good and fair ruler. Verses 16-28 is the story of a court case showing Solomon's wisdom. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Wisdom

God was very pleased with Solomon's request for wisdom. This is because wisdom was something that he could use to serve other people instead of himself. Because this was a noble request, God promised Solomon wisdom, wealth, and fame. (See: [promise](#), [promised](#))

Putting the needs of others first

There are two additional examples of people putting the needs of others in front of their own needs. God is pleased with people wanting to do their job well more than wanting to be blessed. A mother will put the life of her child above every other concern. (See: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#))

1 Kings 3:1

General Information:

Solomon marries an Egyptian.

Solomon allied himself by marriage with Pharaoh king of Egypt

Solomon became the son-in-law of Pharaoh king of Egypt so the two kings would work together and fight together against their enemies.

until he had finished building

She was still in the city of David after he had finished building.

the house of Yahweh

Alternate translation: "the temple"

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- Pharaoh
- Pharaoh
- the king of
- Egypt
- David
- his house
- the house of
- Yahweh
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- Now Solomon
- of Pharaoh
- the king's
- the king
- of Egypt
- live in the part of Jerusalem called
- David
- his house, the temple
- his house, the temple
- of Yahweh

ULT

¹ And Solomon made himself the son-in-law of Pharaoh the king of Egypt. And he took the daughter of Pharaoh and he brought her into the city of David until his completing to build his house and the house of Yahweh and the wall of Jerusalem round about.

UST

¹ Now Solomon made an agreement to marry the daughter of Pharaoh, the king of Egypt. Then Solomon brought the king's daughter to live in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David. She lived there until Solomon's workers had finished building his house, the temple of Yahweh, and the wall around Jerusalem.

1 Kings 3:2

no house had yet been built

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “no one had yet built a house” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

for the name of Yahweh

The word “name” is a metonym for the person, and “for the name” refers to worshiping the person. Alternate translation: “in which people would worship Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- were sacrificing
- at the high places
- a house
- for the name of
- Yahweh
- days

Translation Words - UST

- that time
- the temple
- of Yahweh
- of Yahweh
- the Israelite people
- were still offering sacrifices
- at many other places of worship

ULT

² Only the people were sacrificing at the high places because a house had not been built for the name of Yahweh until those days.

UST

² At that time the temple of Yahweh had not yet been built, so the Israelite people were still offering sacrifices at many other places of worship.

1 Kings 3:3

walking in the statutes of David his father

How one lives one's life is spoken of as walking on a path. Alternate translation: "obeying the laws that David his father had made" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- And...loved
- Yahweh
- in the statutes of
- David
- his father
- at the high places
- was sacrificing
- and burning incense

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- loved
- Yahweh
- all the instructions that
- his father
- David
- But he also offered sacrifices
- and burned incense
- at various places

ULT

³ And Solomon loved Yahweh by walking in the statutes of David his father, but at the high places he was sacrificing and burning incense.

UST

³ Solomon loved Yahweh, and he obeyed all the instructions that his father David had given him. But he also offered sacrifices and burned incense at various places.

1 Kings 3:4

General Information:

God asks Solomon what he can do for Solomon.

the great high place

Alternate translation: “the most famous place for makings sacrifices” or “the most important altar”

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- to Gibeon
- to sacrifice
- was the...high place
- Solomon
- burnt up offerings
- altar

Translation Words - UST

- One day the king
- went
- to the city of Gibeon
- to offer a sacrifice
- that was where a very famous place...worship was
- offered
- whole burnt sacrifices there

ULT

⁴ And the king went to Gibeon to sacrifice there, for it was the great high place. Solomon offered up a thousand burnt up offerings on that altar.

UST

⁴ One day the king went to the city of Gibeon to offer a sacrifice there, because that was where a very famous place of worship was. He offered a thousand whole burnt sacrifices there.

1 Kings 3:5

Ask! What should I give you?

Alternate translation: "Ask me for whatever you want and I will give it to you." or "What do you want? Ask and I will give it to you."

Translation Words - ULT

- At Gibeon
- Yahweh
- Solomon
- in a dream
- God

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- at Gibeon
- in a dream
- He asked him
- me

ULT

⁵ At Gibeon Yahweh appeared to Solomon in a dream that night. And God said, "Request! What should I give to you?"

UST

⁵ That night, Yahweh appeared to him at Gibeon in a dream. He asked him, "What would you like me to give to you?"

1 Kings 3:6

General Information:

Solomon responds to God's question.

You have shown great covenant faithfulness to your servant

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **faithfulness**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form such as "faithful" or "faithfully." Alternate translation: "You have been very faithful to your covenant with your servant" or "You have greatly and faithfully loved your servant" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

because he walked before you in trustworthiness, in righteousness, and in uprightness of heart

Walking is a metaphor for the way one lives. The abstract nouns "trustworthiness," "righteousness," and "uprightness" can be translated as adjectives. Alternate translation: "because he was trustworthy and righteous, and his heart was upright" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

in uprightness of heart

A sincere person is spoken of as one whose heart is upright. Alternate translation: "he was sincere" or "he spoke the truth and did what was good" (See: [Metaphor](#))

have given him a son

The "son" is Solomon. (See: [Pronouns](#))

to sit on his throne

Sitting on the throne represents ruling as king. Alternate translation: "to rule in his place" (See: [Metonymy](#))

today

Solomon is speaking of the years he had already been ruling, not of the time since the sun had last set.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [covenant faithfulness](#)
- [covenant faithfulness](#)
- [a son](#)
- [his throne](#)
- [as it is...day](#)

ULT

⁶ And [Solomon](#) said, "You yourself have did great [covenant faithfulness](#) with [your servant David](#), [my father](#), because he walked before your face [in faithfulness and in righteousness](#) and in uprightness of [heart](#) with you. [And you have kept](#) for him this great [covenant faithfulness](#) and you have given to him [a son](#) sitting on [his throne as it is](#) this day.

UST

⁶ [Solomon](#) replied, "You always greatly [and faithfully loved my father David](#), [who served you well](#). You did that because he was [faithful](#) to you and acted [righteously and honestly](#) toward you. [And you have shown how greatly and faithfully](#) you loved him by giving me to him, [his son](#), and now I am ruling [as he did before he died](#).

- your servant
- David
- my father
- in faithfulness
- and in righteousness
- heart
- And you have kept

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- and faithfully loved
- And you have shown how
- his son
- and now
- as he did before he died
- my father
- David
- who served you well
- faithful
- righteously
- and honestly
- and faithfully

1 Kings 3:7

General Information:

Solomon asks for wisdom.

your servant

Solomon speaks as if he is another person to show respect to Yahweh. Alternate translation: “me” (See: [Pronouns](#))

I am only a little child

Solomon is saying that he is like a child who does not know as much as a father. (See: [Metaphor](#))

I do not know how to go out or come in

This is an idiom that means Solomon does not know how to govern as king. Alternate translation: “I do not know how to be the king” or “I do not know the right way to do things as king” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [my God](#)
- [you...have caused...to reign](#)
- [your servant](#)
- [David](#)
- [my father](#)
- [I do...know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Now, Yahweh](#)
- [my God](#)
- [me](#)
- [to be the king](#)
- [like my father was](#)
- [like my father was](#)
- [do...know](#)

ULT

⁷ And now, [Yahweh my God](#), you yourself [have caused your servant to reign](#) in place of [David my father](#), but I am a young youth. [I do not know](#) going out or coming in.

UST

⁷ [Now, Yahweh my God](#), you have enabled [me to be the king like my father was](#). But I am very young, like a little child. I do not [know](#) how to rule my people at all.

1 Kings 3:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And your servant
- your people
- a...people
- you have chosen

Translation Words - UST

- I
- the people
- They
- you have chosen

ULT

⁸ And your servant is in the midst of your people, whom you have chosen, a numerous people who can not be numbered and can not be counted because of abundance.

UST

⁸ I live among the people whom you have chosen. They are a very large group of people. There are very, very many of them; no one can count them.

1 Kings 3:9

For who is able to judge this great people of yours?

Solomon asks a question to emphasize that he knows that no one can judge. Alternate translation: "No one is able to judge this great people of yours." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to your servant
- a heart
- to judge
- to judge
- your people
- your people
- to discern
- good
- and evil

Translation Words - UST

- to think clearly
- in order that I may rule
- rule
- your people well
- group of people
- Enable me to know what is
- good
- and what is evil
- I will

ULT

⁹ And may you give to your servant a heart that hears to judge your people, to discern between good and evil. For who is able to judge your people, this heavy one?"

UST

⁹ So please enable me to think clearly, in order that I may rule your people well. Enable me to know what is good and what is evil. If you do not do that, I will never be able to rule this great group of people who belong to you."

1 Kings 3:10

General Information:

God gives Solomon wisdom and more.

Translation Words - ULT

- And...was good
- the Lord
- Solomon

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- was very pleased
- Solomon had requested

ULT

¹⁰ And the thing was good in the eyes of the Lord, that Solomon had requested this thing.

UST

¹⁰ Yahweh was very pleased that Solomon had requested that.

1 Kings 3:11

the life of your enemies

The “life” is a metonym for the power to kill. Alternate translation: “the power to kill your enemies” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- days
- the life of
- your enemies
- discerning
- justice

Translation Words - UST

- God
- years
- be able to kill all
- your enemies
- will be able to know
- and to do what is right while you govern these people

ULT

11 And [God](#) said to him, “Because you have requested this thing and you have not requested for yourself many [days](#), and you have not requested riches for yourself, and you have not requested [the life of your enemies](#), but you requested for yourself [discerning](#) to hear [justice](#),

UST

11 [God](#) said to him, “You did not request that you live for many [years](#) or that you become very rich or that you [be able to kill all your enemies](#). Instead, you have requested that I enable you to be wise, in order that you [will be able to know and to do what is right while you govern these people](#).

1 Kings 3:12

now I will do all you asked of me when you gave me your request

Alternate translation: "I will do what you asked me to do when you spoke with me"

I give you a wise and an understanding heart

The heart is a metonym for what a person thinks and desires.

Alternate translation: "I make you able to be wise and to understand many things" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [wise](#)
- [and discerning](#)
- [a...heart](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [be very wise](#)
- [be very wise](#)
- [The result will be](#)

ULT

¹² behold, I have done according to your word. Behold, I have given to you a [wise and discerning heart](#), so that one has not been like you before your face, and after you will not rise one like you.

UST

¹² So I will certainly do what you requested. I will enable you to [be very wise](#). [The result will be](#) that no one who has lived before you or who will live after you will be as wise as you are.

1 Kings 3:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- honor
- among the kings
- your days

Translation Words - UST

- and honored
- of the years
- king

ULT

¹³ And also what you have not requested I have given to you, both riches and honor, so that there will not be a man like you among the kings all of your days.

UST

¹³ I will also give you things that you did not request. I will enable you to become very rich and honored, all of the years that you live. You will be richer and more honored than any other king.

1 Kings 3:14

walk in my ways to keep

Living one's life is spoken of as walking on a path. Alternate translation: "live as I want you to live and obey" (See: [Metaphor](#))

lengthen your days

Alternate translation: "make you live a long time"

Translation Words - ULT

- to keep
- my statutes
- and my commandments
- David
- your father
- your days

Translation Words - UST

- you conduct your life
- as I want you to
- obey all...laws and commandments
- as your...David did
- father
- years

ULT

¹⁴ And if you will walk in my ways to keep my statutes and my commandments, just as David your father walked, then I will lengthen your days."

UST

¹⁴ If you conduct your life as I want you to, and if you obey all my laws and commandments, as your father David did, I will enable you to live for many years."

1 Kings 3:15

behold

The word “behold” here shows that Solomon saw something interesting.

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- it was a dream
- Jerusalem
- the box of
- the box of the covenant of the Lord
- burnt offerings
- peace offerings
- a feast
- his servants

Translation Words - UST

- Then Solomon
- and he realized that God had spoken to him in a dream
- officials
- Then
- sacred chest was
- sacred chest was...Yahweh
- and he offered many sacrifices that were completely burned on the altar
- Then he made a feast for...his
- Then he made a feast for...his

ULT

¹⁵ And **Solomon** awoke, and behold, **it was a dream!** And he entered **Jerusalem** and he stood before the face of **the box of the covenant of the Lord**. And he offered up **burnt offerings** and he made **peace offerings**. And he made **a feast** for all **his servants**.

UST

¹⁵ **Then Solomon** awoke, **and he realized that God had spoken to him in a dream**. **Then** he went to Jerusalem and stood in front of the sacred tent where the **sacred chest was**, **and he offered many sacrifices that were completely burned on the altar** and offerings to promise friendship with Yahweh. **Then he made a feast for all his officials**.

1 Kings 3:16

General Information:

Two prostitutes ask Solomon to make a decision.

Translation Words - ULT

- prostitutes
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- prostitutes
- King Solomon

ULT

¹⁶ At that time two women, **prostitutes**, came to **the king** and they stood before his face.

UST

¹⁶ One day two **prostitutes** came and stood in front of **King Solomon**.

1 Kings 3:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- my master
- in...house
- in the house
- and I gave birth

Translation Words - UST

- Your Majesty
- in the same house
- while she was there in the house
- I gave birth

ULT

¹⁷ And the one woman said, "Please, my master, I and this woman dwell in one house, and I gave birth with her in the house.

UST

¹⁷ One of them said, "Your Majesty, this woman and I live in the same house. I gave birth to a baby while she was there in the house.

1 Kings 3:18

General Information:

The two prostitutes tell Solomon their story.

Translation Words - ULT

- on the...day
- of my giving birth
- that...gave birth
- in the house
- were in the house

Translation Words - UST

- day
- gave birth to a baby
- gave birth to a baby
- were in the house
- There was no one else there

ULT

¹⁸ And it happened on the third day of my giving birth that this woman also gave birth. And we were together, there was no stranger with us in the house, only we two were in the house.

UST

¹⁸ On the third day after my baby was born, this woman also gave birth to a baby. Only the two of us were in the house. There was no one else there.

1 Kings 3:19

lay on him

It may be helpful to state that this caused the baby to die. Alternate translation: “accidentally rolled on top of her baby and smothered him” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [And...died](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [baby](#)
- [died](#)

ULT

¹⁹ And [the son of](#) this woman [died](#) at night, because she lay on him.

UST

¹⁹ But one night this woman's [baby died](#) because she accidentally rolled on top of her baby and smothered it.

1 Kings 3:20

your servant

The woman speaks as if she were speaking of someone else to show that she respects Solomon. Alternate translation: "I" (See: [Pronouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- my son
- her son
- and your female servant
- the one who died

Translation Words - UST

- baby
- baby
- me
- and brought her dead

ULT

20 And she arose in the middle of the night and she took my son from my side, and your female servant was asleep. And she laid him in her bosom. And her son, the one who died, she laid in my bosom.

UST

20 So she got up at midnight and took my baby boy who was lying beside me while I was sleeping. She carried him to her bed and brought her dead baby and put it in my bed.

1 Kings 3:21

General Information:

Two prostitutes continue to share their story with Solomon.

nurse my child

This means to feed her baby milk from her breast.

Translation Words - ULT

- my son
- my son
- he was dead
- I had borne

Translation Words - UST

- my baby
- baby
- I saw that it was dead
- my

ULT

²¹ And I rose in the morning to nurse my son, and behold, he was dead! And I considered diligently with respect to him in the morning, and behold, he was not my son, whom I had borne!"

UST

²¹ When I awoke the next morning and was ready to nurse my baby, I saw that it was dead. But when I looked at it closely in the morning light, I saw that it was not my baby!"

1 Kings 3:22

before the king

Alternate translation: “before Solomon” or “while Solomon could see and hear them”

Translation Words - ULT

- my son
- and your son
- your son
- and my son
- is the living one
- is the living one
- is the dead one
- is the dead one
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- and the baby
- The baby
- baby is yours
- Then the first woman
- is alive is mine
- is alive is mine
- is dead is yours
- the dead
- king

ULT

²² And the other woman said, “No, but my son is the living one, and your son is the dead one.” And this one was saying, “No, but your son is the dead one, and my son is the living one.” And they spoke before the face of the king.

UST

²² But the other woman said, “That is not true! The baby that is alive is mine, and the baby that is dead is yours!” Then the first woman said, “No, the dead baby is yours, and the one that is alive is mine!” And they continued to argue in front of the king.

1 Kings 3:23

General Information:

Solomon makes a decision for the two women.

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- my son
- and your son
- your son
- and my son
- the living one
- is the living one
- is the dead one
- is the dead one

Translation Words - UST

- Then the king
- Both of you
- My baby
- is the one...and the one that
- that...is dead is yours
- is the one...and the one that
- that...is dead is yours
- is alive
- that...is dead is yours

ULT

²³ And the king said, "This one says, 'This is my son, the living one, and your son is the dead one,' but this one says, 'No, but your son is the dead one, and my son is the living one.'"

UST

²³ Then the king said, "Both of you are saying, 'My baby is the one that is alive and the one that is dead is yours.'"

1 Kings 3:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the king
- a sword
- the sword

Translation Words - UST

- So he
- king
- a sword
- a sword

ULT

²⁴ And the king said, "Take a sword for me." And they brought the sword before the face of the king.

UST

²⁴ So he said to one of his servants, "Bring me a sword." So the servant brought a sword to the king.

1 Kings 3:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- living
- the...child

Translation Words - UST

- Then the king
- the baby that
- is alive

ULT

²⁵ And the king said, "Divide the living child into two pieces, and give the half to one and the half to the other."

UST

²⁵ Then the king said to the servant, "Cut the baby that is alive into two parts. Give one part to each of the women."

1 Kings 3:26

General Information:

The real mother asks the king to spare the child's life.

her heart was full of compassion for her son

This speaks of the woman having a lot of compassion as if her heart were a container and compassion were a solid object. Alternate translation: "she greatly loved her baby" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- her son
- was the living one
- living
- the king
- her compassionate feelings
- my master
- the...child
- and...certainly

Translation Words - UST

- baby
- the baby
- was alive
- is alive
- greatly loved her baby
- the king
- No, Your Majesty
- Do not allow him to kill
- or my baby

ULT

²⁶ And the woman whose [son was the living one](#) said to [the king](#), for [her compassionate feelings](#) for [her son](#) became warm. And she said, "Please, [my master](#), give to her the [living child](#), and you must [certainly](#) not put him to death!" But this one was saying, "Either for me or for you he will not be. Divide!"

UST

²⁶ But the woman whose [baby was alive greatly loved her baby](#), so she said to the king, "No, Your Majesty! [Do not allow him to kill the baby!](#) Give her the child that [is alive!](#)" But the other woman said to the king, "No, cut it in half. Then it will not be her baby [or my baby.](#)"

1 Kings 3:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- living
- the...child
- and...certainly

Translation Words - UST

- the king
- to the woman who said
- Do...cut the baby in half
- Do...cut the baby in half

ULT

²⁷ And the king answered and said, "Give to her the living child, and you must certainly not put him to death. She is his mother."

UST

²⁷ Then the king said to the servant, "Do not kill the baby. Give the baby to the woman who said, 'Do not cut the baby in half,' because she is truly the baby's mother."

1 Kings 3:28

all Israel

This is a generalization. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- the judgment
- had judged
- the king
- the king
- and they were afraid
- the wisdom of
- God
- justice

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelite people
- the king...and they had an awesome respect
- the king...and they had an awesome respect
- God had truly enabled him
- to be very wise
- to judge people's matters fairly
- the king...and they had an awesome respect
- had decided...that
- had decided...that

ULT

²⁸ And all Israel heard the judgment that the king had judged, and they were afraid from the face of the king, because they saw that the wisdom of God was within him to do justice.

UST

²⁸ All the Israelite people heard about what the king had decided, and they had an awesome respect for him. They realized that God had truly enabled him to be very wise, to judge people's matters fairly.

1 Kings 4

1 Kings 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter names the important people in Solomon's government and shows the extent of his kingdom.

1 Kings 4:1

General Information:

This is the beginning of a list of Solomon's officials. The list ends in 1 Kings 4:6.

Translation Words - ULT

- King
- king
- Solomon
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- was king
- Solomon
- Israel

ULT

¹ And King Solomon was king over all Israel.

UST

¹ Now when Solomon was king over all Israel,

1 Kings 4:2

Azariah ... Zadok

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the officials
- Azariah
- the son of
- Zadok
- was the priest

Translation Words - UST

- were his most important officials
- Azariah
- Azariah
- father was Zadok
- was the priest

ULT

² And these were the officials which were for him: Azariah the son of Zadok was the priest.

UST

² these were his most important officials: Azariah, whose father was Zadok, was the priest.

1 Kings 4:3

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of Solomon's officials.

Elihoreph ... Ahijah ... Shisha ... Jehoshaphat ... Ahilud

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and Ahijah](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [were scribes](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons](#)
- [son](#)
- [and Ahijah](#)
- [were the official secretaries](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)

ULT

³ Elihoreph [and Ahijah](#), the sons of Shisha, [were scribes](#). [Jehoshaphat the son of](#) Ahilud was the recorder.

UST

³ Shisha's [sons](#) Elihoreph [and Ahijah](#) [were the official secretaries](#). Ahilud's [son Jehoshaphat](#) was the one who announced to the people the king's decisions.

1 Kings 4:4

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of Solomon's officials.

Benaiah ... Jehoiada ... Zadok ... Abiathar

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And Benaiah](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)
- [And Zadok](#)
- [and Abiathar](#)
- [were priests](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Benaiah was](#)
- [Benaiah was](#)
- [Benaiah was](#)
- [Zadok](#)
- [and Abiathar](#)
- [were also priests](#)

ULT

⁴ [And Benaiah the son of Jehoiada](#) was over the army. [And Zadok and Abiathar were priests.](#)

UST

⁴ [Benaiah was](#) the army commander. [Zadok and Abiathar were also priests.](#)

1 Kings 4:5

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of Solomon's officials.

Azariah ... Nathan ... Zabud

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And Azariah](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Nathan](#)
- [Nathan](#)
- [was a priest](#)
- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Azariah](#)
- [Azariah](#)
- [sons](#)
- [whose father was Nathan](#)
- [Another of Nathan's](#)
- [and the king's](#)
- [chief](#)

ULT

⁵ [And Azariah the son of Nathan](#) was over the stationed ones. And Zabud [the son of Nathan was a priest](#), the friend of [the king](#).

UST

⁵ [Azariah, whose father was Nathan](#), was in charge of the governors. [Another of Nathan's sons](#), Zabud, was a priest and the king's chief advisor.

1 Kings 4:6

Connecting Statement:

This ends the list of Solomon's officials.

Ahishar ... Adoniram ... Abda

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the men who were subjected to forced labor

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "the men whom Solomon forced to work for him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the house](#)
- [the son of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the servants who worked in the palace](#)
- [Abda's son](#)

ULT

⁶ And Ahishar was over [the house](#). And Adoniram [the son of](#) Abda was over the forced labor.

UST

⁶ Ahishar supervised [the servants who worked in the palace](#). [Abda's son](#) Adoniram supervised the men who were forced to do work for the king.

1 Kings 4:7

General Information:

This begins a list of Solomon's 12 officers. The list ends in 1 Kings 4:19.

Translation Words - ULT

- And for Solomon
- Israel
- the king
- his house
- A month
- in the year

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon appointed
- the districts in Israel
- king
- the others who lived and worked in the palace. Each man was required
- month
- in each year

ULT

⁷ And for Solomon were 12 stationed ones over all Israel, and they sustained the king and his house. A month in the year it would be on one to sustain.

UST

⁷ Solomon appointed twelve men to govern the districts in Israel. They also were required to provide food for the king and all the others who lived and worked in the palace. Each man was required to provide from his own district the food for one month in each year.

1 Kings 4:8

Ben-Hur

This is the name of a man. Note that “Ben” before a name means “son of” so “Ben-Hur” means “the son of Hur.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in the hill country

“who was the officer in charge of the hill country

Ephraim

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [were their names](#)
- [Ephraim](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [names were](#)
- [of the tribe of Ephraim](#)

ULT

⁸ And these [were their names](#): Ben Hur in the hill country of [Ephraim](#),

UST

⁸ Their [names were](#): Ben-Hur, for the hill area [of the tribe of Ephraim](#).

1 Kings 4:9

Connecting Statement:

The list of Solomon's 12 officers continues.

Ben-Deker

This is the name of a man. Note that "Ben" before a name means "son of" so "Ben-Deker" means "the son of Deker." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in Makaz

Alternate translation: "who was the officer in charge of Makaz"

Makaz ... Shaalbim ... Beth Shemesh ... Elon Beth Hanan

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and Beth Shemesh](#)
- [and Beth Shemesh](#)
- [and Beth Shemesh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Beth Shemesh](#)
- [Beth Shemesh](#)
- [Beth Shemesh](#)

ULT

⁹ Ben Deker in Makaz and in Shaalbim [and Beth Shemesh](#) and Elon Beth Hanan,

UST

⁹ Ben-Deker, for the cities of Makaz, Shaalbim, [Beth Shemesh](#), and Elon Bethhanan,

1 Kings 4:10

Connecting Statement:

The list of Solomon's 12 officers continues.

Ben-Hesed

This is the name of a man. Note that "Ben" before a name means "son of" so "Ben-Hesed" means "the son of Hesed." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in Arubboth

Alternate translation: "who was the officer in charge of Arubboth"

Arubboth ... Sokoh ... Hephher

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the land of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and the area near](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Ben Hesed in the Arubboth (for him was Sokoh and all [the land of](#) Hephher),

UST

¹⁰ Ben-Hesed, for the cities of Arubboth and Sokoh [and the area near](#) the city of Hephher,

1 Kings 4:11

Connecting Statement:

The list of Solomon's 12 officers continues.

Ben-Abinadab

This is the name of a man. Note that "Ben" before a name means "son of" so "Ben-Abinadab" means "the son of Abinadab." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in all Naphoth Dor

Alternate translation: "who was the officer in charge of all Naphoth Dor"

Naphoth Dor

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Taphath

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon's](#)

ULT

11 Ben Abinadab was for all Naphoth Dor (Taphath, the daughter of [Solomon](#), was for him for a wife),

UST

11 Ben-Abinadab, who was married to [Solomon's](#) daughter Taphath, for all the district of Dor,

1 Kings 4:12

Connecting Statement:

The list of Solomon's 12 officers continues.

Baana ... Ahilud

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in Taanach

Alternate translation: "who was the officer in charge of Taanach"

Taanach ... Megiddo ... Beth Shan ... Zarethan ... Jezreel ... Beth Shan to Abel Meholah ... Jokmeam

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [Jezreel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Jezreel](#)

ULT

¹² Baana [the son of](#) Ahilud in Taanach and Megiddo, and all Beth Shan that is beside Zarethan from below [Jezreel](#), from Beth Shan as far as Abel Meholah, as far as from the other side of Jokmeam,

UST

¹² Ahilud's [son](#) Baana, for the cities of Taanach and Megiddo, for all the region near the city of Zarethan, and from the city of Beth Shan south of [Jezreel](#) as far as the cities of Abel Meholah and Jokmeam,

1 Kings 4:13

Connecting Statement:

The list of Solomon's 12 officers continues.

Ben-Geber ... Jair ... Manasseh

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in Ramoth Gilead

Alternate translation: "who was the officer in charge of Ramoth Gilead"

Ramoth Gilead ... Argob ... Bashan

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#) (2)
- [Manasseh](#)
- [were in Gilead](#)
- [was in the Bashan](#)
- [and a gate bar of](#)
- [bronze](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [who was a descendant of](#) (2)
- [Manasseh](#)
- [that...and for the area](#)
- [in the region of Bashan](#)
- [and bronze bars](#)
- [across the gates](#)

ULT

¹³ Ben Geber in Ramoth Gilead, for him were the villages of Jair [the son of Manasseh](#) that [were in Gilead](#), for him was the region of Argob, which [was in the Bashan](#)—60 great cities with a wall and a [gate bar of bronze](#);

UST

¹³ Ben-Geber, for the city of Ramoth in the region of Gilead, for the villages in Gilead that belonged to Jair, [who was a descendant of Manasseh, and for the area](#) of Argob [in the region of Bashan](#). There were sixty large cities in that region altogether, each city with a wall around it [and bronze bars across the gates](#).

1 Kings 4:14

Connecting Statement:

The list of Solomon's 12 officers continues.

Ahinadab ... Iddo

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in Mahanaim

Alternate translation: "who was the officer in charge of Mahanaim"

Mahanaim

This is the name of place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

¹⁴ Ahinadab [the son of](#) Iddo in Mahanaim,

UST

¹⁴ Iddo's [son](#) Ahinadab, for the city of Mahanaim east of the Jordan River;

1 Kings 4:15

Connecting Statement:

The list of Solomon's 12 officers continues.

Ahimaaz

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in Naphtali

Alternate translation: "who was the officer in charge of Naphtali"

Naphtali

This is a tribal land named after a son of Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Basemath

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in Naphtali](#)
- [Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon's](#)
- [Naphtali](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Ahimaaz [in Naphtali](#) (he also took Basemath the daughter of [Solomon](#) for a wife),

UST

¹⁵ Ahimaaz, who had married [Solomon's](#) daughter Basemath, for the territory of the tribe of [Naphtali](#),

1 Kings 4:16

Connecting Statement:

The list of Solomon's 12 officers continues.

Baana ... Hushai

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in Asher

Alternate translation: "who was the officer in charge of Asher"

Asher

This is a tribal land named after a son of Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bealoth

This is the name of a piece of land. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- in Asher

Translation Words - UST

- son
- for the territory of the tribe of Asher

ULT

¹⁶ Baana the son of Hushai in Asher and Bealoth,

UST

¹⁶ Hushai's son Baana, for the territory of the tribe of Asher and for the city of Aloth,

1 Kings 4:17

Connecting Statement:

The list of Solomon's 12 officers continues.

Jehoshaphat ... Paruah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in Issachar

Alternate translation: "who was the officer in charge of Issachar"

Issachar

This is a tribal land named after a son of Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [in Issachar](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [for the territory of the tribe of Issachar](#)

ULT

¹⁷ [Jehoshaphat the son of Paruah in Issachar,](#)

UST

¹⁷ Paruah's [son Jehoshaphat, for the territory of the tribe of Issachar,](#)

1 Kings 4:18

Connecting Statement:

The list of Solomon's 12 officers continues.

Shimei ... Ela

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in Benjamin

Alternate translation: "who was the officer in charge of Benjamin"

Benjamin

This is a tribal land named for a son of Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Shimei](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [in Benjamin](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Shimei](#)
- [for the territory of the tribe of Benjamin](#)

ULT

¹⁸ [Shimei the son of Ela in Benjamin](#),

UST

¹⁸ [Ela's son Shimei, for the territory of the tribe of Benjamin](#),

1 Kings 4:19

Connecting Statement:

The list of Solomon's 12 officers ends.

Geber ... Uri ... Sihon ... Og

These are men's names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in the land of Gilead

Alternate translation: "who was the officer in charge of the land of Gilead"

Gilead ... Bashan

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the country of Sihon

Alternate translation: "the land that in earlier years belonged to Sihon"

Amorites

This is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in the land

Here "the land" refers to the land of Judah; the previous officials presided over different parts of Israel.

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- in the land of
- the land of
- was in the land
- Gilead
- the king of
- the king of (2)
- the Amorite
- the Bashan

Translation Words - UST

- son
- for the region
- the land
- for the territory of the tribe of Judah
- of Gilead
- the king of
- formerly ruled (2)

ULT

¹⁹ Geber the son of Uri in the land of Gilead, the land of Sihon, the king of the Amorite and Og, the king of the Bashan, and he was the one stationed one who was in the land.

UST

¹⁹ Uri's son Geber, for the region of Gilead, the land that Sihon the king of the Amor people group formerly ruled, and Og who formerly ruled the region of Bashan. In addition to all these, Solomon appointed one governor for the territory of the tribe of Judah.

- the Amor people group
- the region of Bashan

1 Kings 4:20

Judah and Israel were as numerous as the sand by the sea

The speaker uses exaggeration to say that there were so many people that it would be impossible to count them all. The words "Judah" and "Israel" are metonyms for the people who lived in Judah and Israel. Alternate translation: "There were as many people in Judah and Israel as there are grains of sand by the sea" or "there were more people in Judah and Israel than a person could count" (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judah](#)
- [and Israel](#)
- [and rejoicing](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in Judah](#)
- [and Israel](#)
- [and they were happy](#)

ULT

²⁰ [Judah and Israel](#) were numerous as the sand that is on the sea according to abundance. They were eating and drinking [and rejoicing](#).

UST

²⁰ There were as many people [in Judah and Israel](#) as there are grains of sand on the seashore. They had plenty to eat and drink, [and they were happy](#).

1 Kings 4:21

the River

Alternate translation: "the Euphrates River"

Translation Words - ULT

- And Solomon
- Solomon
- ruling
- the days of
- his life
- the kingdoms
- the river
- to the land of
- the Philistines
- Egypt
- tribute
- and serving

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Euphrates River, the River
- Philistines
- Solomon
- Solomon
- day
- earth, land
- kingdom
- reign, rule
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- tribute, contribution, fined

ULT

²¹ And Solomon was ruling over all the kingdoms from the river to the land of the Philistines and as far as the border of Egypt, bringing tribute near and serving Solomon all the days of his life.

UST

²¹ Solomon's kingdom extended from the Euphrates River in the northeast to the region of Philistia in the west and to the border of Egypt in the south. The conquered people in those areas paid taxes and were under Solomon's control all during his life.

1 Kings 4:22

thirty cors

A cor is a unit of dry measure. (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the bread of](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [for...day](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [day](#)
- [bread](#)

ULT

²² And [the bread of Solomon](#) for one [day](#) was 30 cors of fine flour and 60 cors of flour,

UST

²² The people whom Solomon ruled were required to bring to Solomon every day thirty donkey-loads of fine flour and sixty donkey-loads of wheat,

1 Kings 4:23

deer, gazelles, roebucks

four-legged animals that run fast (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

deer

more than one of these animals

fattened fowl

Alternate translation: “birds that people fed so they would become fat”

Translation Words - ULT

- [cattle](#)
- [cattle](#)
- [sheep](#)
- [from deer](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [cow](#), [bull](#), [calf](#), [cattle](#), [heifer](#), [ox](#)
- [cow](#), [bull](#), [calf](#), [cattle](#), [heifer](#), [ox](#)
- [deer](#), [doe](#), [fawns](#), [roebuck](#)
- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

ULT

²³ ten fat [cattle](#) and 20 pasture [cattle](#) and 100 [sheep](#), apart [from deer](#) and gazelle and roebuck and fattened fowl.

UST

²³ ten head of cattle that had been raised in stalls, twenty head of cattle raised in pastures, one hundred sheep, grain-fed poultry—and wild game: deer, gazelle, and roebucks.

1 Kings 4:24

Tiphsah

name of a piece of land

Translation Words - ULT

- had dominion
- the river
- the river
- Gaza
- the kings of
- And peace

Translation Words - UST

- dominion
- Euphrates River, the River
- Euphrates River, the River
- Gaza
- king, kingship
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers

ULT

²⁴ For he had dominion over all beyond the river, from Tiphsah and as far as Gaza, over all the kings of beyond the river. And peace was for him from all his sides, from all around.

UST

²⁴ Solomon ruled over all the area west of the Euphrates River, from the city of Tiphsah in the northeast to the city of Gaza in the southwest. He ruled over all the kings in that area. There was peace between his government and the governments of nearby countries.

1 Kings 4:25

Judah and Israel

The words “Judah” and “Israel” are metonyms for the people of Judah and Israel. (See: [Metonymy](#))

every man under his vine and under his fig tree

“each family had their own garden with grapevines and fig trees,” This showed that the people lived in safety and peace, since they were not at war and had time to grow their gardens.

from Dan to Beersheba

This represents the whole land of Israel from Dan in the north to Beersheba in the south. (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judah](#)
- [and Israel](#)
- [his vine](#)
- [his fig tree](#)
- [from Dan](#)
- [Beersheba](#)
- [Beersheba](#)
- [Beersheba](#)
- [Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Beersheba](#)
- [Beersheba](#)
- [Beersheba](#)
- [Dan](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [fig](#)
- [vine](#)

ULT

²⁵ And [Judah and Israel](#) dwelled in safety, a man under [his vine](#) and under [his fig tree](#), [from Dan](#) and as far as [Beersheba](#), all the days of [Solomon](#).

UST

²⁵ All during the years that Solomon ruled, the people of Judah and Israel lived safely.

1 Kings 4:26

stalls of horses

A stall is a place where an animal such as a horse is kept and cared for.

Translation Words - ULT

- [for Solomon](#)
- [horses](#)
- [for his chariotry](#)
- [horsemen](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [chariot, charioteers](#)
- [horse, warhorse, horseback](#)
- [\[\[rc://en/tw/dict/bible/other/horseman\]\]](#)

ULT

²⁶ And there was [for Solomon](#) 40,000 stalls of [horses for his chariotry](#) and 12,000 horsemen.

UST

²⁶ Solomon had forty thousand stalls for the horses that pulled his chariots and twelve thousand men who rode on horses.

1 Kings 4:27

who came to King Solomon's table

Alternate translation: "who ate with King Solomon" or "whom King Solomon invited to eat with him"

every man in his month

Solomon had assigned 12 officers in [1 Kings 4:7](#) to bring him food in different months.

They let nothing be lacking

This can be expressed positively. Alternate translation: "They provided everything that Solomon needed" (See: [Litotes](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- his month

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [\[\[rc://en/tw/dict/bible/other/month\]\]](#)

ULT

²⁷ And those stationed ones sustained [the king Solomon](#) and all the ones who came near to the table of [the king Solomon](#), a man his month. They would not let anything be lacking.

UST

²⁷ His twelve district governors supplied the food that King Solomon needed for himself and for all those who ate in the palace. Each governor supplied food for one month each year. They provided everything that Solomon required.

1 Kings 4:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And...the barley
- for the horses
- according to his regulation

Translation Words - UST

- barley
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

ULT

²⁸ And they brought the barley and the straw for the horses and for the steed to the place there where it should be, a man according to his regulation.

UST

²⁸ They also brought stalks of barley and wheat for the fast horses that pulled the chariots and for the other work horses. They brought this fodder to the places where the horses were kept.

1 Kings 4:29

God gave Solomon great wisdom and understanding

The abstract nouns “wisdom” and “understanding” can be translated as verbs. God giving him these things means that God enabled him to have these qualities. Alternate translation: “God enabled Solomon to be wise and to understand many things” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Idiom](#))

wideness of understanding like the sand on the seashore

Solomon was able to understand many things about many different subjects. If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **wideness**, you could express the same idea with an adjective. Alternate translation: “Solomon was able to understand many things about a wide range of subjects” (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- wisdom
- to Solomon
- and...understanding
- heart

Translation Words - UST

- God
- heart
- wise, wisdom
- Solomon
- understand, understanding, thinking

ULT

²⁹ And God gave wisdom to Solomon and very much understanding and width of heart like the sand that is on the lip of the sea.

UST

²⁹ God enabled Solomon to be extremely wise and to have great understanding. He enjoyed learning about a huge number of things.

1 Kings 4:30

Solomon's wisdom exceeded the wisdom of all the people

Alternate translation: "Solomon was wiser than all the wise people"

the people of the east

This refers to people from countries east of Israel such as Arabia and Mesopotamia.

Translation Words - ULT

- the wisdom of
- than the wisdom of
- the wisdom of
- Solomon
- the sons of
- Egypt

Translation Words - UST

- son
- wise, wisdom
- wise, wisdom
- wise, wisdom
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Solomon

ULT

³⁰ And the wisdom of Solomon was greater than the wisdom of all the sons of the east and than all the wisdom of Egypt.

UST

³⁰ He was wiser than all the wise men in the regions east of Israel, and all the wise men in Egypt.

1 Kings 4:31

Ethan ... Heman ... Kalkol ... Darda ... Mahol

men's names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And he was wiser
- man
- the sons of
- his name
- nations

Translation Words - UST

- name
- son
- wise, wisdom
- Adam
- nation

ULT

³¹ And he was wiser than every man, than Ethan the Ezrahite and Heman and Kalkol and Darda, the sons of Mahol. And his name was in all the surrounding nations.

UST

³¹ Ethan from Ezrah and Heman and Kalkol and Darda and the sons of Mahol were considered to be very wise, but Solomon was wiser than all of them. People in all the nearby countries heard about Solomon.

1 Kings 4:32

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [proverbs](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [proverb](#)

ULT

³² And he spoke 3,000 [proverbs](#) and his songs were 1,005.

UST

³² He composed more than one thousand songs.

1 Kings 4:33

cedar ... hyssop

These words form a merism that includes all plants. Alternate translation: “cedar tree ... hyssop bush” or “the greatest of trees ... least important of bushes” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#) and [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the cedar](#)
- [is in the Lebanon](#)
- [the beast](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Lebanon](#)
- [beast](#)
- [cedar, cedarwood](#)

ULT

³³ And he spoke concerning the trees, from [the cedar](#) that [is in the Lebanon](#) and as far as the hyssop that comes out on the wall. And he spoke concerning [the beast](#) and concerning the bird and concerning the creeping thing and concerning the fish.

UST

³³ He talked about various kinds of plants, from the huge cedar trees in Lebanon to the tiny hyssop plants that grow in cracks in walls. He also talked about wild animals, birds, reptiles, and fish.

1 Kings 4:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the peoples
- the wisdom of
- his wisdom
- Solomon
- the kings of
- the earth

Translation Words - UST

- wise, wisdom
- wise, wisdom
- Solomon
- earth, land
- king, kingship
- people, people group

ULT

³⁴ And they came from all the peoples to hear the wisdom of Solomon, from with all the kings of the earth who had heard his wisdom.

UST

³⁴ People came from all over the world to hear the wise things that Solomon said. Many kings sent men to listen to him and then return and tell them what Solomon said.

1 Kings 5

1 Kings 5 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This is the beginning of the description of the building of the temple. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Building the temple

Building the temple took a lot of work and cooperation. King Hiram of Tyre provided lumber for building the temple in exchange for wheat and olive oil. Solomon also had many people cutting rocks for the walls of the temple.

1 Kings 5:1

General Information:

Solomon talks with King Hiram about building the Temple.

Hiram had always loved David

Alternate translation: "Hiram had always been a close friend of King David"

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- as king
- Tyre
- the days
- And...sent
- his servants
- Solomon
- they had anointed
- his father
- a one loved
- by David

Translation Words - UST

- anoint, anointed, anointing
- love, beloved
- David
- Solomon
- Tyre, Tyrians
- day
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- send, sent, send out
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

¹ And Hiram the king of Tyre sent his servants to Solomon when he heard that they had anointed him as king in place of his father, for Hiram was a one loved by David all the days.

UST

¹ Hiram, the king of the city of Tyre, had always been a close friend of King David. When he heard that Solomon had been appointed to become the king after his father was no longer king, he sent messengers to Solomon.

1 Kings 5:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- And...sent

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- send, sent, send out

ULT

² And Solomon sent to Hiram, saying,

UST

² Solomon gave those messengers this message to take back to Hiram:

1 Kings 5:3

Yahweh was putting his enemies under the soles of his feet

To put an enemy under someone's foot means to conquer them. Alternate translation: "Yahweh was helping David to defeat his enemies" or "David was busy since Yahweh was giving him victory over his enemies" (See: [Idiom](#))

for the name of Yahweh

The word "name" is a metonym for the person, and "for the name" refers to worshiping the person. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "in which people would worship Yahweh" (See: [Metonymy](#))

because of the wars that surrounded him

Another possible meaning is "because of the wars with which his enemies surrounded him" or "because he was fighting enemies on all sides"

Yahweh was putting his enemies under the soles of his feet

This speaks of Yahweh giving David complete control over his enemies as putting them under his feet. Alternate translation: "Yahweh was enabling David to completely defeat his enemies" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- You...knew
- David
- my father
- a house
- for the name of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- his God

Translation Words - UST

- God
- name
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house, household
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

³ "You yourself knew David my father, that he was not able to build a house for the name of Yahweh his God because of the face of the warfare that surrounded him, until Yahweh was giving them under the soles of his feet.

UST

³ "You know that my father David led his soldiers to fight many wars against his enemies in the nearby countries. So he could not try to build a temple in which we could worship Yahweh our God, until after Yahweh enabled the Israelite army to defeat all his enemies.

1 Kings 5:4

has given me rest on every side

Before Solomon became king, King David and the people of Israel had been at war, but now King Solomon and the people were at rest and in a time of peace.

There is neither adversary nor disaster

neither humans who cause harm nor natural events that cause harm. This can be stated positively. Alternate translation: "We are safe from our enemies and from natural disasters" (See: [Merism](#))

adversary

enemy

disaster

event that causes harm to people and their property

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [my God](#)
- [has given rest](#)
- [adversary](#)
- [evil](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [rest, rested, restless](#)

ULT

⁴ But now, [Yahweh my God has given rest](#) to me from all around. There is no [adversary](#) and there is no [evil](#) occurrence.

UST

⁴ But now Yahweh our God has enabled us to have peace with all the surrounding countries. There is no danger that we will be attacked.

1 Kings 5:5

So

This is to emphasize the words that follow. "Listen! This is what I am going to do:" or "Because of what Yahweh has done for me, this is what I am going to do:"

for the name of Yahweh my God ... for my name

The word "name" is a metonym for the person. Alternate translation: "where Yahweh my God will live ... where I will live" (See: [Metonymy](#))

set on your throne in your place

Here "throne" refers to ruling as king. Alternate translation: "make to be the king after you" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a house
- the house for
- for the name of
- my name
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- my God
- David
- my father
- Your son
- your throne

Translation Words - UST

- God
- name
- name
- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house, household
- house, household
- throne, enthroned

ULT

⁵ And behold I am saying to build a house for the name of Yahweh my God, just as Yahweh spoke to David my father, saying, 'Your son, whom I will give in your place on your throne, he will build the house for my name.'

UST

⁵ Yahweh promised my father David, 'Your son, whom I will enable to be king after you are no longer king, will build a temple for me, Yahweh your God.'

1 Kings 5:6

there is no one among us who knows how to cut timber like the Sidonians

Alternate translation: "your workers know how to cut timber better than my men"

Sidonians

people of the city of Sidon

Translation Words - ULT

- command
- cedars
- the Lebanon
- and...my servants
- your servants
- your servants
- you...know
- knowing how
- like the Sidonians

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- Lebanon
- Sidon, Sidonians
- cedar, cedarwood
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

⁶ And now, **command** and let them cut for me **cedars** from **the Lebanon** and let **my servants** be with **your servants** and I will give to you the wage of **your servants** according to all that you say. For you yourself **know** that there is no man among us **knowing how** to cut trees **like the Sidonians**."

UST

⁶ So I am requesting that you command your workers to cut cedar trees for me. My men will work with them, and I will pay your workers whatever you decide. But my men cannot do the work alone, because they do not know how to cut down trees like your workers from the city of Sidon do."

1 Kings 5:7

General Information:

King Hiram answers Solomon.

the words of Solomon

Alternate translation: "what Solomon said"

May Yahweh be blessed today

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "I praise Yahweh today" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- that he rejoiced
- Blessed be
- Yahweh
- to David
- wise
- a...son
- people

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- son
- wise, wisdom
- Yahweh
- David
- Solomon
- joy, joyful, rejoice, glad
- people, people group

ULT

⁷ And it happened as soon as Hiram heard the words of [Solomon that he rejoiced](#) exceedingly. And he said, "[Blessed be Yahweh](#) today, who has given [to David](#) a [wise son](#) over this great [people](#)."

UST

⁷ When Hiram heard the message from Solomon, he was very happy and said, "I praise Yahweh today for giving David a very wise son to rule that great nation!"

1 Kings 5:8

cypress

Cypress is another kind of valuable wood that would be used for building the temple.

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- you sent
- cedar
- cypress

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- cedar, cedarwood
- cypress
- send, sent, send out

ULT

⁸ And Hiram sent to Solomon, saying, "I have heard what you sent to me. I myself will do all your desire with the trees of cedar and with the trees of cypress.

UST

⁸ He sent this message back to Solomon, "I have heard the message that you sent to me, and I am ready to do what you ask. I will provide cedar and cypress logs.

1 Kings 5:9

make them into rafts

Alternate translation: "tie them together so they will float in groups"

them broken up there

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "my workers untie the logs from each other" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

You will do what I desire

Alternate translation: "You can do what I want" or "You can pay me"

Translation Words - ULT

- [And my servants](#)
- [the Lebanon](#)
- [you send](#)
- [the bread of](#)
- [my house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Lebanon](#)
- [bread](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [send, sent, send out](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

⁹ [And my servants](#) will bring down from [the Lebanon](#) to the sea, and I myself will set rafts on the sea as far as the place where [you send](#) for me. And I will break them up there and you yourself will lift. And you yourself will do my desire by giving [the bread of my house](#)."

UST

⁹ My workers will bring the logs down from the Lebanon mountains to the Mediterranean Sea. Then they will tie them together to make rafts to float them in the water along the coast to the place that you indicate. Then my workers will untie the logs, and your workers will take them from there. What I want you to do is to supply food for my men."

1 Kings 5:10

fir

The word “fir” refers to many kinds of trees, including cypress trees.

Translation Words - ULT

- to Solomon
- cedar
- cypress

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- cedar, cedarwood
- cypress

ULT

¹⁰ And Hiram was giving to Solomon trees of cedar and trees of cypress, all of his desire.

UST

¹⁰ So Hiram arranged for his workers to supply all the cedar and cypress logs that Solomon wanted.

1 Kings 5:11

measures of wheat

This was a dry measurement whereas the oil was a liquid measurement. It was not clear which measure was intended. The measurement in the UST is an educated guess. (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

year by year

Alternate translation: "every year"

Translation Words - ULT

- [And Solomon](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [wheat](#)
- [for his house](#)
- [oil](#)
- [year](#)
- [by year](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [year](#)
- [year](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [oil](#)
- [wheat](#)

ULT

11 [And Solomon](#) gave to Hiram 20,000 kors of [wheat](#) as food [for his house](#) and 20 kors of beaten [oil](#). Thus [Solomon](#) would give to Hiram [year by year](#).

UST

11 Each year Solomon gave Hiram 3,520 cubic meters of wheat and 416,350 liters of pure olive oil to feed his workers.

1 Kings 5:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And Yahweh
- wisdom
- to Solomon
- Solomon
- peace
- a covenant

Translation Words - UST

- covenant
- wise, wisdom
- Yahweh
- Solomon
- Solomon
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers

ULT

¹² And Yahweh gave wisdom to Solomon, just as he spoke to him. And there was peace between Hiram and Solomon and the two of them cut a covenant.

UST

¹² Yahweh enabled Solomon to be wise, just like he had promised. Solomon and Hiram made a treaty.

1 Kings 5:13

General Information:

Solomon forces men to build the Temple.

conscripted labor out of all Israel

Alternate translation: "forced men from all over Israel to work"

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- Solomon
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Solomon
- king, kingship

ULT

¹³ And the king Solomon brought up forced labor from all Israel. And the forced labor was 30,000 men.

UST

¹³ King Solomon forced thirty thousand men from all over Israel to become his workers.

1 Kings 5:14

in shifts

That is, there were three groups that took turns spending one month in Lebanon and two months at home.

One month they were in Lebanon and two months at home

Each of the three groups spent one month working in Lebanon and then two months at home in Israel.

the men who were subjected to forced labor

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “the men whom Solomon was forcing to work for him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And he sent them](#)
- [to Lebanon](#)
- [in the Lebanon](#)
- [by the month](#)
- [a month](#)
- [months](#)
- [in his house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Lebanon](#)
- [Lebanon](#)
- [month, monthly](#)
- [month, monthly](#)
- [month, monthly](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [send, sent, send out](#)

ULT

¹⁴ [And he sent them to Lebanon](#), 10,000 [by the month](#) in shifts. They were [a month in the Lebanon](#), two [months in his house](#). And Adoniram was over the forced labor.

UST

¹⁴ Adoniram was their boss. Solomon divided the men into three groups. Each month ten thousand of them went to Lebanon and worked for a month there, and then they came back home for two months.

1 Kings 5:15

seventy thousand

"70,000" (See: [Numbers](#))

burdens

heavy things that people have to work hard to carry

eighty thousand

"80,000" (See: [Numbers](#))

stonecutters

men who dig stones out of the ground and cut them to the proper shape

Translation Words - ULT

- [for Solomon](#)
- [a burden](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And there was [for Solomon](#) 70,000 who lift [a burden](#) and 80,000 who hew in the hill country,

UST

¹⁵ Solomon also forced eighty thousand men to cut stones in the hill country and seventy thousand men to haul the stones to Jerusalem.

1 Kings 5:16

3,300 chief officers

“three thousand three hundred chief officers” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- from the officials of
- of Solomon
- the work
- the work
- were the ones having dominion
- over the people

Translation Words - UST

- dominion
- work, works, deeds
- work, works, deeds
- Solomon
- people, people group
- rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader

ULT

¹⁶ apart from the officials of the stationed ones of Solomon who were over the work, 3,300 were the ones having dominion over the people, the ones who were doing the work.

UST

¹⁶ He also assigned 3,300 men to supervise their work.

1 Kings 5:17

quarried large stones of high quality

Alternate translation: "dug large, good stones out of the mountain and cut them to be the right shape"

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- And...commanded
- precious
- the house

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- house, household
- king, kingship
- precious, valuable, expensive, fine

ULT

17 And the king commanded and they removed large stones, precious stones to found the house, stones of hewing.

UST

17 The king also commanded his workers to cut huge blocks of stones from the quarries and to smooth the sides of the stones. These huge stones were for the foundation of the temple.

1 Kings 5:18

Gebalites

men from the city of Gebal (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [the house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

¹⁸ And the builders of [Solomon](#) and the builders of Hiram and the Gebalites hewed and they prepared the trees and the stones to build [the house](#).

UST

¹⁸ Solomon's workers and Hiram's workers and men from the city of Gebal shaped the stones and prepared the timber to build the temple.

1 Kings 6

1 Kings 6 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The building of the temple continues in this chapter. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Building the temple

Solomon built the temple in seven years. The outside walls were made of rock. Solomon shaped the rocks for the wall in the quarry and then assembled them at the temple site. The inside was covered with wood. Inside the temple was a room covered by gold, which was the Most Holy Place where the ark was housed under statues of angels. It represented the presence of God.

1 Kings 6:1

Solomon began to build

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do the building.
Alternate translation: "Solomon commanded his workers to begin building" (See: [Metonymy](#))

480th ... fourth

These are the ordinal forms of 480 and 4. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

in the month of Ziv, which is the second month

"Ziv" is the name of the second month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- year
- in the...year
- the sons of
- in the month of
- is the...month
- the house of Yahweh
- Israel
- Israel
- from the land of
- Egypt
- of the reigning of
- Solomon

Translation Words - UST

- years
- during the...year
- the Israelite people
- Solomon's workers
- the temple
- the Israelite people
- Israel
- Egypt
- that Solomon
- ruled
- that
- month

ULT

¹ And it happened in year 480 of the going out of the sons of Israel from the land of Egypt, in the fourth year of the reigning of Solomon over Israel, in the month of Ziv (that is the second month), that he began to build the house of Yahweh.

UST

¹ 480 years after the Israelite people left Egypt, during the fourth year that Solomon ruled Israel, in the second month, that of Ziv, Solomon's workers began to build the temple.

1 Kings 6:2

Connecting Statement:

The narrator continues to describe the temple and its dimensions.

sixty cubits long, twenty cubits wide, and thirty cubits high

“60 cubits long, 20 cubits wide, and 30 cubits high.” A cubit is 46 centimeters. This can be written used modern measures. Alternate translation: “27.6 meters long, 9.2 meters wide, and 13.8 meters high” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Distance](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [As for the house](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [for Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Inside, the main part of the temple](#)
- [Inside, the main part of the temple](#)
- [Inside, the main part of the temple](#)
- [Inside, the main part of the temple](#)

ULT

² [As for the house](#) that [the king Solomon](#) built [for Yahweh](#), 60 cubits was its length, and 20 its width, and 30 cubits its height.

UST

² [Inside, the main part of the temple](#) was twenty-seven meters long, nine meters wide, and thirteen and one-half meters high.

1 Kings 6:3

Connecting Statement:

The narrator continues to describe the temple and its dimensions.

portico

an area of a building made of columns and a roof that leads to and connects with the building's entrance door. This portico was probably attached to the front part of the wall that surrounded the temple.

twenty cubits ... ten cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "9.2 meters...4.6 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the temple of
- the house
- the house
- the house

Translation Words - UST

- The front portico
- The front portico
- deep and nine meters
- as the main part of the temple

ULT

³ As for the porch on the face of the temple of the house, 20 cubits was its length, in accordance with the face of the width of the house; ten by the cubit was its width in accordance with the face of the house.

UST

³ The front portico was four and one-half meters deep and nine meters wide, just as wide as the main part of the temple.

1 Kings 6:4

Connecting Statement:

The narrator continues to describe the temple and its dimensions.

he made windows

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do the building.
Alternate translation: "they made windows" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [for the house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in the temple walls](#)

ULT

⁴ And he made [for the house](#) windows with narrowed frames.

UST

⁴ There were openings like windows [in the temple walls](#). The openings were narrower on the outside than on the inside.

1 Kings 6:5

Connecting Statement:

The narrator continues to describe the temple and its dimensions.

he built

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do the building.
Alternate translation: "they built" (See: [Metonymy](#))

he built rooms around it

He built rooms on the outside of the outside wall around the main chamber.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the house](#)
- [the house](#)
- [for the temple](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the temple](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [temple, house, house of God](#)

ULT

⁵ And he built against the wall of [the house](#) a spread out place all around, the walls of [the house](#) all around, [for the temple](#) and for the inner room. And he made side rooms all around.

UST

⁵ Against the two sides and the back of [the temple](#) walls, they built a structure that had rooms in it. This structure had three levels; each level was two and one-third meters high.

1 Kings 6:6

Connecting Statement:

The narrator continues to describe the temple and its dimensions.

he made

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do the building.
Alternate translation: "they made" (See: [Metonymy](#))

The lowest story ... the middle ... the third

This refers to the rooms in each story of the building.

five cubits ... six cubits ... seven cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "about 2.3 meters ... about 2.8 meters ... about 3.2 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

he made offsets in the wall of the house

They made ledges all around the main building to support the beams of the small rooms.

beams

A beam is a long heavy piece of wood used to support a building.

Translation Words - ULT

- [for...house...the](#)
- [the house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The wall of the temple](#)
- [the rooms](#)

ULT

⁶ The spread out place of the lowest level, five by the cubit was its width, and the middle level, six by the cubit was its width, and the third level, seven by the cubit was its width. For he gave ledges for the [house](#) all around [the](#) outside, so not to hold on to the walls of [the house](#).

UST

⁶ Each room in the lowest level was two and one-third meters wide. Each room in the middle level was two and four-fifths meters wide. The rooms in the top level were three and one-tenth meters wide. [The wall of the temple](#) at the top level was thinner than the wall at the middle level, and the wall of the middle level was thinner than the wall at the bottom level. In this way, the rooms could rest on the wall underneath them; [the rooms](#) did not need wooden beams underneath to support them.

1 Kings 6:7

Connecting Statement:

The narrator continues to describe the temple.

the house

Here “house” refers to God’s house, the temple.

stones prepared at the quarry

A quarry is where people cut large stones from a mountain and shape them with tools so they are smooth. After they prepared the stones at the quarry, they brought them to the temple.

Translation Words - ULT

- As for the house
- in the house
- or the ax

Translation Words - UST

- for the foundation of the temple
- the temple
- or chisels

ULT

⁷ As for the house while it was being built, it was built of finished stone of a quarry. And a hammer or the ax, any implement of iron, was not heard in the house while it was being built.

UST

⁷ The huge stones for the foundation of the temple were cut and shaped at the quarry to become very smooth. The result was that while the workers were building the temple there was no noise, because they did not use hammers or chisels or any other iron tools there.

1 Kings 6:8

Connecting Statement:

The narrator continues to describe the temple.

ground level ... middle level ... third level

There were a total of three floors. Some languages call these “ground floor,” “first floor,” and “second floor.”

Translation Words - ULT

- the house

Translation Words - UST

- of the temple

ULT

⁸ The opening of the middle side room was to the shoulder of the house at the south, and by stairs they went up on the middle level, and from the middle level to the third level.

UST

⁸ The entrance to the bottom level of this attached structure was on the south side of the temple. There were stairs from the bottom level to the middle and top levels.

1 Kings 6:9

Connecting Statement:

The narrator continues to describe the temple.

Solomon built ... he covered

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do the building.
Alternate translation: "Solomon's workers built ... they covered" (See: [Metonymy](#))

beams ... of cedar

A beam is a long heavy piece of wood used to support a building. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 6:6](#).

planks ... of cedar

A plank is a flat wooden board used for floors and walls.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the house](#)
- [the house](#)
- [with the cedars](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [So Solomon's workers finished](#)
- [the temple](#)
- [They made the ceiling from cedar beams and boards](#)

ULT

⁹ And he built [the house](#) and he finished it. And he covered [the house](#) with beams and rows [with the cedars](#).

UST

⁹ [So Solomon's workers finished](#) building the framework of [the temple](#).
[They made the ceiling from cedar beams and boards](#).

1 Kings 6:10

Connecting Statement:

The narrator continues to describe the temple and its dimensions.

He built

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do the building.

Alternate translation: "They built" (See: [Metonymy](#))

He built the side rooms

These are the same rooms that are referred to in [1 Kings 6:5](#).

inner chambers

This phrase is a metonym for the walls that enclosed the chambers. Alternate translation: "exterior walls that enclosed the inner chambers" (See: [Metonymy](#))

five cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "2.3 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

timbers of cedar

The word "timbers" is a general term that refers to wood used for building, such as beams and planks.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the house](#)
- [the house](#)
- [cedar](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the rooms](#)
- [temple](#)
- [cedar beams](#)

ULT

¹⁰ And he built the spread out place against all [the house](#), five cubits was its height, and it held on to [the house](#) with the wood of [cedar](#).

UST

¹⁰ They built [the rooms](#) alongside the main chambers with three levels, each two and one-third meters high, and joined them to the [temple](#) with [cedar beams](#).

1 Kings 6:11

The word of Yahweh came to Solomon, saying,

The idiom “The word of Yahweh came to” is used to introduce a special message from God. Alternate translation: “Yahweh gave a message to Solomon. He said,” or “Yahweh spoke this message to Solomon:” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the word of Yahweh](#)
- [Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Yahweh...this](#)
- [Solomon](#)

ULT

¹¹ And [the word of Yahweh](#) was to [Solomon](#), saying,

UST

¹¹ [Then Yahweh](#) said [this](#) to [Solomon](#),

1 Kings 6:12

which you are building

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do the building.
Alternate translation: "which you are having your workers build" (See: [Metonymy](#))

walk in my statutes

The word "walk" is a metaphor for "live" or "obey." Alternate translation: "continually obey all my statutes" (See: [Metaphor](#))

do justice

This could mean: (1) "carry out all of my laws" or (2) "treat the people whom you are ruling justly."

keep all my commandments and walk in them

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize the importance of obeying God's commandments. AT "carefully obey all I tell you to do" (See: [Parallelism](#))

I will confirm my promise with you that I had made to David your father

Alternate translation: "I will do everything I promised David your father that I would do for you"

Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)
- [in my statutes](#)
- [my judgments](#)
- [and you keep](#)
- [my commandments](#)
- [David](#)
- [your father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [about this temple](#)
- [continually...all my statutes...and commands](#)
- [you...and decrees](#)
- [you...and decrees](#)
- [you...and decrees](#)
- [father](#)
- [David](#)

ULT

¹² "This [house](#) that you are building, if you walk [in my statutes](#) and you do [my judgments, and you keep all my commandments](#) by walking in them, then I will cause my word to stand with you that I spoke to [David your father](#).

UST

¹² "I want to tell you [about this temple](#) that you are building. If you [continually obey all my statutes and decrees and commands](#), I will do for you what I promised to your [father David](#).

1 Kings 6:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- Israel
- I will...forsake
- my people

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelite
- the Israelite
- people, in this temple, and I will
- people, in this temple, and I will
- abandon

ULT

¹³ And I will dwell in the midst of the sons of Israel and I will not forsake my people Israel."

UST

¹³ I will live among the Israelite people, in this temple, and I will never abandon them."

1 Kings 6:14

Solomon

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do the building.
Alternate translation: "Solomon's workers" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [the house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon's](#)
- [the temple](#)

ULT

¹⁴ And [Solomon](#) built [the house](#) and he finished it.

UST

¹⁴ [Solomon's](#) workers worked to finish building [the temple](#).

1 Kings 6:15

he built ... he covered them ... he covered the floor

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do the building.

Alternate translation: "they built ... they covered them ... they covered the floor" (See: [Metonymy](#))

interior walls

walls between the rooms on the inside

cypress

Cypress is a kind of wood that was used for building the temple.
(See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the house](#)
- [the house](#)
- [the house](#)
- [cedar](#)
- [cypress](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [rooms](#)
- [the ceiling](#)
- [from the floor to](#)
- [from the floor to](#)
- [from cypress](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And he built the walls of [the house](#) on the inside with sides of [cedar](#). From the floor of [the house](#) up to the walls of the ceiling, he overlaid wood on the inside, and he overlaid the floor of [the house](#) with sides of [cypress](#).

UST

¹⁵ On the inside, they lined the [rooms from the floor to the ceiling](#). They made the floor [from cypress boards](#).

1 Kings 6:16

He built twenty cubits ... He built this room

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do the building.
Alternate translation: "He commanded them to build twenty cubits ... He had them build this room" (See: [Metonymy](#))

He built twenty cubits

Alternate translation: "He built a room twenty cubits long"

twenty cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "9.2 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the house](#)
- [cedar](#)
- [as the...holy place](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Inside the back part of the temple](#)
- [the very holy place](#)
- [cedar boards](#)

ULT

16 And he built 20 cubits from the rear of [the house](#) with sides of [cedar](#) from the floor up to the walls. And he built for it on the inside as an inner room, [as the holiest holy place](#).

UST

16 [Inside the back part of the temple](#) they built an inner room, called [the very holy place](#). It was nine meters long. All the walls of this room were lined with [cedar boards](#).

1 Kings 6:17

forty cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: “18.4 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

main hall

Alternate translation: “main room”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the house](#)
- [is the temple](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [In front of the very holy place was](#)
- [In front of the very holy place was](#)

ULT

¹⁷ And 40 by the cubit was [the house](#) (that [is the temple](#)) before the face of it.

UST

¹⁷ [In front of the very holy place was](#) a room that was eighteen meters long.

1 Kings 6:18

gourds

a type of hard, round vegetable that grows on a vine on the ground

open flowers

Alternate translation: “blooming flowers” or “flowers that were open”

Translation Words - ULT

- And cedar
- was cedar
- the house

Translation Words - UST

- The cedar boards on the walls
- The walls were completely covered with cedar boards
- inside the temple were decorated with...of gourds

ULT

¹⁸ And cedar was into inside the house, carving of gourds and opened ones of flowers. The whole was cedar, there was no stone seen.

UST

¹⁸ The cedar boards on the walls inside the temple were decorated with carvings of gourds and flowers. The walls were completely covered with cedar boards, with the result that the stones of the walls behind them could not be seen.

1 Kings 6:19

Solomon prepared

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "They prepared" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the house
- the box of
- the box of...the covenant of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- At the back of the temple they made the very holy place
- in order to put the
- in order to put the...chest
- sacred

ULT

¹⁹ And he set up the inner room in the midst of [the house](#) on the inside for giving there [the box of the covenant of Yahweh](#).

UST

¹⁹ At the back of the temple they made the very holy place, in order to put the sacred chest there.

1 Kings 6:20

Solomon overlaid

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "They overlaid" (See: [Metonymy](#))

twenty cubits

Alternate translation: "9.2 meters"

covered the altar with cedar wood

This altar would be used for burning incense.

Translation Words - ULT

- with...gold
- an altar
- with cedar

Translation Words - UST

- They...the walls with...of pure gold
- For burning incense they also made an altar
- of cedar boards

ULT

²⁰ And before the face of the inner room, it was 20 cubits in length, and 20 cubits in width, and 20 cubits its height. And he overlaid it with pure [gold](#) and he overlaid [an altar with cedar](#).

UST

²⁰ That room was nine meters long, nine meters wide, and nine meters high. [They](#) covered [the walls with](#) very thin sheets [of pure gold](#). [For burning incense they also made an altar of cedar boards](#).

1 Kings 6:21

Solomon overlaid ... he placed

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "They overlaid ... they placed" (See: [Metonymy](#))

overlaid

Alternate translation: "covered"

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- the house
- with...gold
- gold
- with gold

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- told them to...the other walls inside the temple
- of pure gold
- and to fasten...chains
- gold...across the entrance to the very holy place

ULT

²¹ And Solomon overlaid the house on the inside with pure gold. And he crossed chains of gold over the face of the inner room, and he overlaid it with gold.

UST

²¹ Solomon told them to cover the other walls inside the temple with very thin sheets of pure gold and to fasten gold chains across the entrance to the very holy place.

1 Kings 6:22

He overlaid ... He also overlaid

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "They overlaid ... They also overlaid" (See: [Metonymy](#))

altar that belonged to the inner room

Alternate translation: "altar of incense at the entrance to the inner room"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the house](#)
- [the house](#)
- [with gold](#)
- [with gold](#)
- [the altar](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the temple and the](#)
- [all](#)
- [altar that](#)
- [of gold](#)
- [very thin](#)

ULT

²² And he overlaid all [the house with gold](#) until finishing all [the house](#). And the whole of [the altar](#) that was for the inner room he overlaid [with gold](#).

UST

²² They covered [all](#) the walls of [the temple and the altar that](#) was outside the very holy place with [very thin](#) sheets of gold.

1 Kings 6:23

Solomon made

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "Solomon commanded them to make" (See: [Metonymy](#))

olivewood

wood from an olive tree

ten cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "4.6 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [cherubs](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [large statues of two creatures with wings](#)

ULT

²³ And he made in the inner room two [cherubs](#) of wood of oil; ten cubits was its height.

UST

²³ Inside the very holy place they made from olive tree wood [large statues of two creatures with wings](#). Each one was four and one-half meters tall.

1 Kings 6:24

five cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "2.3 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the...cherub
- the...cherub

Translation Words - UST

- cherub
- cherub

ULT

24 And five cubits was the wing of the one cherub and five cubits was the wing of the second cherub. It was ten cubits from the ends of its wings and as far as the ends of its wings.

UST

24-26 They each were the same size and had the same shape. They each had two wings which were spread out. Each wing was two and one-third meters long, with the result that the distance between the outer ends of the two wings was four and one-half meters across. The height of each cherub was four and one-half meters.

1 Kings 6:25

wingspan

the distance from the tip of one wing to the tip of the other wing

same dimensions

Alternate translation: "same size"

Translation Words - ULT

- was the...cherub
- cherubs

Translation Words - UST

- cherub
- cherub

ULT

²⁵ And ten by the cubit was the second cherub, one size and one shape were for the two cherubs.

UST

1 Kings 6:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the...cherub
- was the...cherub

Translation Words - UST

- cherub
- cherub

ULT

²⁶ The height of the one cherub was ten by the cubit and so was the second cherub.

UST

²⁴⁻²⁶ They each were the same size and had the same shape. They each had two wings which were spread out. Each wing was two and one-third meters long, with the result that the distance between the outer ends of the two wings was four and one-half meters across. The height of each cherub was four and one-half meters.

1 Kings 6:27

Solomon placed

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "They placed" (See: [Metonymy](#))

innermost room

another name for the most holy place

Translation Words - ULT

- the cherubs
- the cherubs
- the...cherub
- the...house
- the house

Translation Words - UST

- so that the wing of the
- They put these statues next to
- so that the wing of the
- each other in the very holy place
- walls

ULT

²⁷ And he gave the cherubs in the midst of the inner house. And they spread out the wings of the cherubs and the wing of the one touched against the wall and the wing of the second cherub was touching against the second wall. And their wings were toward the middle of the house, touching wing to wing.

UST

²⁷ They put these statues next to each other in the very holy place so that the wing of the one touched the one wing of the other in the center of the room, and the outer wings touched the walls.

1 Kings 6:28

Solomon overlaid

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "They overlaid" (See: [Metonymy](#))

overlaid

"covered." See how you translated this in [1 Kings 6:21](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the cherubs](#)
- [with gold](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [They covered the statues](#)
- [of gold](#)

ULT

²⁸ And he overlaid [the cherubs with gold](#).

UST

²⁸ [They covered the statues](#) with very thin sheets [of gold](#).

1 Kings 6:29

He carved

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.

Alternate translation: "He commanded them to carve" (See:

[Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the house](#)
- [cherubs](#)
- [and palm trees](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [decorate the walls of the main room](#)
- [of winged creatures](#)
- [and palm trees and flowers](#)

ULT

²⁹ And he carved all the walls of [the house](#) round about with engravings of carvings of [cherubs and palm trees](#) and opened ones of flowers, from inside and to the outside.

UST

²⁹ Solomon told them to [decorate the walls of the main room](#) and the very holy place by carving representations of [winged creatures and palm trees and flowers](#).

1 Kings 6:30

Solomon overlaid

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "He had them overlay" (See: [Metonymy](#))

overlaid

covered

Translation Words - ULT

- [the house](#)
- [with gold](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [rooms](#)
- [of gold](#)

ULT

³⁰ And he overlaid the floor of [the house with gold](#), for inside and for the outside.

UST

³⁰ They also covered the floor of both [rooms](#) with very thin sheets [of gold](#).

1 Kings 6:31

Solomon made

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "They made" (See: [Metonymy](#))

lintel

beam across the top of a door frame

indented sections

toothlike notches on each of five sections

Translation Words - ULT

- [the pillar](#)
- [doorposts](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The lintel](#)
- [and doorposts](#)

ULT

³¹ Also he made the opening of the inner room with doors of wood of oil; [the pillar, doorposts](#), were a fifth part.

UST

³¹ They made a set of doors from olive tree wood, and placed them at the entrance to the very holy place. [The lintel and doorposts](#) had five indented sections.

1 Kings 6:32

he made ... he made ... He overlaid ... he spread

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "they made ... they made ... They overlaid ... they spread" (See: [Metonymy](#))

overlaid

"covered." See how you translated this in [1 Kings 6:21](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- cherubs
- [and palm trees](#)
- [the palm trees](#)
- [with gold](#)
- [the gold](#)
- [the cherubs](#)

Translation Words - UST

- winged creatures
- [palm](#)
- [things](#)
- [things](#)
- [very thin sheets of](#)
- [gold](#)

ULT

³² And the two of the doors were wood of oil, and he carved on them carvings of cherubs [and palm trees](#) and opened ones of flowers, and he overlaid them [with gold](#). And he beat out [the gold](#) on [the cherubs](#) and on [the palm trees](#).

UST

³² The doors were decorated by carving on them representations of winged creatures, [palm](#) trees, and flowers. All of these [things](#) were covered with [very thin sheets of gold](#).

1 Kings 6:33

In this way, Solomon also made for the temple entrance doorposts of olive wood having four indented sections

Alternate translation: "In the same way, Solomon also made doorposts of olive wood for the temple entrance, with four indented sections"

Solomon also made

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "they also made" (See: [Metonymy](#))

indented sections

tooth-like notches

Translation Words - ULT

- [the temple](#)
- [doorposts of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [wood](#)
- [and the main room](#)

ULT

³³ And so he made for the opening of [the temple doorposts of](#) wood of oil from a fourth part.

UST

³³ They made a rectangular doorframe from olive tree [wood](#), with four indented sections, and put it between the entrance room [and the main room](#).

1 Kings 6:34

The two leaves of the one door

This means each door had two sections connected by hinges so they could fold together.

Translation Words - ULT

- cypress
- the...curtains

Translation Words - UST

- two folding
- from cypress wood and fastened them

ULT

³⁴ And the two of the doors were wood of cypress, the two of the one door leaves were folding and the two of the second door curtains were folding.

UST

³⁴ They made two folding doors from cypress wood and fastened them to the doorframe.

1 Kings 6:35

He carved ... he evenly overlaid

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "They carved ... they evenly overlaid" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [cherubs](#)
- [and palm trees](#)
- [with gold](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The doors were also decorated with wood...of winged creatures](#)
- [palm trees, and flowers, and they](#)
- [gold](#)

ULT

³⁵ And he carved [cherubs and palm trees](#) and opened ones of flowers. And he overlaid [with gold](#) made smooth on the engraving.

UST

³⁵ [The doors were also decorated with wood carvings of winged creatures, palm trees, and flowers, and they](#) were also covered evenly with very thin sheets of [gold](#).

1 Kings 6:36

He built the inner courtyard

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "They built the inner courtyard" (See: [Metonymy](#))

cedar beams

A beam is a long heavy piece of wood used to support a building. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 6:6](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the...courtyard](#)
- [cedar](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The walls around the courtyard were made of cedar and stone](#)
- [cedar beams they put down two layers of stone](#)

ULT

36 And he built the inner [courtyard](#) with three rows of hewn stone and a row of cut beams of [cedar](#).

UST

36 They built a courtyard in front of the temple. [The walls around the courtyard were made of cedar and stone](#). To make the walls, between each layer of [cedar beams they put down two layers of stone](#).

1 Kings 6:37

the fourth year

The word “fourth” is the ordinal form of “four.” You may need to make explicit the event from which the writer counts the years. Alternate translation: “the fourth year after Solomon became king” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

house of Yahweh

Alternate translation: “the temple”

in the month of Ziv

“Ziv” is the name of the second month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on Western calendars. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 6:1](#). (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the house of Yahweh](#)
- [was founded](#)
- [in the month of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [They...the foundation of the temple of Yahweh](#)
- [laid](#)
- [month](#)

ULT

³⁷ In the fourth year [the house of Yahweh was founded](#), [in the month of](#) Ziv.

UST

³⁷ [They laid the foundation of the temple of Yahweh](#) in the [month](#) of Ziv, in the fourth year that Solomon ruled.

1 Kings 6:38

the eleventh year

The word “eleventh” is the ordinal forms of “eleven.” You may need to make explicit the event from which the writer counts the years.

Alternate translation: “the eleventh year after Solomon became king” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

in the month of Bul, which is the eighth month

“Bul” is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³⁸ And in the year 11, in the month of Bul (it is the eighth month), the house was finished according to all his words and according to all his requirements. And he built it seven years.

UST

³⁸ In the eleventh year that he ruled, in the month of Bul, they finished building the temple and all of its parts, doing exactly what Solomon's told them to do. It required seven years to build it.

the house was finished in all its parts and conforming to all its specifications

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “they finished building every part of the house. They built it exactly the way Solomon had told them to build it”

Solomon took

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work. Alternate translation: “It took Solomon's workers” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And in the year
- in the month of
- the...month
- the house
- his requirements

Translation Words - UST

- the eleventh
- the month of...they...building the
- year
- temple
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

1 Kings 7

1 Kings 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter has a description of the palace Solomon built and the materials used in the temple courtyard. It is the last chapter about the building of the temple. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Bronze

Solomon hired a man from Tyre who was good at casting things out of bronze. The bronze objects were made by hollowing out the shape of the object in clay and then pouring in the hot melted liquid bronze and letting it cool. He made two large pillars and a large water reservoir set on the backs of 12 bronze cows. He made all the instruments for use in the sacrifices outside the temple. He made the furnishing inside the temple out of gold.

The temple and the palace

Solomon spent 13 years building a palace for himself that was much bigger than the temple. It is significant that the house of Solomon was much larger than the house of God. (See: [house of God](#), [Yahweh's house](#))

1 Kings 7:1

General Information:

The author is writing about Solomon's palace.

Solomon took thirteen years to build his own palace

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "It took Solomon's workers thirteen years to build his palace" (See: [Metonymy](#))

palace

If your language does not have a word for "palace," you may translate this as "house" or "big house."

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [his house](#)
- [his house](#)
- [years](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a palace for](#)
- [but it required](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [years](#)

ULT

¹ And [Solomon](#) built [his house](#) 13 [years](#).
And he finished all of [his house](#).

UST

¹ They also built [a palace for Solomon](#),
[but it required](#) thirteen [years](#) to build it.

1 Kings 7:2

General Information:

Some details are given about the structure of the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon.

He built

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.

Alternate translation: "He commanded them to build" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon

Alternate translation: "the house called the House of the Lebanon Forest"

one hundred cubits ... fifty cubits ... thirty cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "46 meters...23 meters...13.8 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

beams

A beam is a long piece of strong wood used to support walls and roofs.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the house of](#)
- [the Lebanon](#)
- [pillars of](#)
- [the pillars](#)
- [cedar](#)
- [cedar](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [One of the buildings](#)
- [Lebanon](#)
- [It was supported](#)
- [pillars](#)
- [cedar](#)
- [cedar](#)

ULT

² And he built [the house of](#) the forest of [the Lebanon](#): 100 cubits was its length and 50 cubits was its width and 30 cubits was its height, with four rows of [pillars of cedar](#) and cut beams of [cedar](#) on [the pillars](#).

UST

² [One of the buildings](#) they built was a large ceremonial hall. It was called the Palace of the Forest of [Lebanon](#). It was forty-six meters long, twenty-three meters wide, and fourteen meters high. [It was supported](#) by four rows of [cedar pillars](#). There were [cedar](#) beams across each row.

1 Kings 7:3

Connecting Statement:

Some details continue to be given about the structure of the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon.

The house was roofed with cedar that rested on beams

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The carpenters built a roof from cedar planks and attached them to beams" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

beams

long pieces of strong wood usually used to support a roof

Translation Words - ULT

- with cedar
- the...pillars

Translation Words - UST

- cedar planks
- pillars

ULT

³ And it was covered with cedar from above over the sides that were on the 45 pillars, 15 was the row.

UST

³ The carpenters build a roof from cedar planks that were attached to beams. The carpenters made pillars to support the cedar beams. There were a total of forty-five pillars put in place, making fifteen pillars in each row to support the roof.

1 Kings 7:4

Connecting Statement:

Some details continue to be given about the structure of the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon.

ULT

⁴ And the window frames were three rows, and opening to opening were three occurrences.

UST

⁴ On each of the two side walls there were three sets of windows facing each other.

1 Kings 7:5

Connecting Statement:

Some details continue to be given about the structure of the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon.

were made square

Alternate translation: "had rectangular frames"

Translation Words - ULT

- [and the doorposts](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [had rectangular frames](#)

ULT

⁵ And all the openings [and the doorposts](#) were squared framework. And the front of an opening to an opening were three occurrences.

UST

⁵ All the windows and doorways [had rectangular frames](#). The windows along the long wall on one side faced the windows on the other side.

1 Kings 7:6

General Information:

The author writes about the structure of the Hall of Pillars.

colonnade

a series of columns, all the same distance apart

fifty cubits ... thirty cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "23 meters...13.8 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

portico

an area of a building made of columns and a roof that leads to and connects with the building's entrance door. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 6:3](#)

Translation Words - ULT

- [the pillars](#)
- [and pillars](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [pillars](#)
- [pillars](#)

ULT

⁶ And he made the porch of [the pillars](#), 50 cubits was its length and 30 cubits was its width. And a porch was on their face [and pillars](#) and a roof were on their face.

UST

⁶ They also built a long room with [pillars](#); it was twenty-three meters long and fourteen meters wide. In front of it was a covered porch whose roof was supported by [pillars](#).

1 Kings 7:7

General Information:

The author writes about the hall of the throne.

Solomon built

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "Solomon had them build" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the hall of the throne

This could mean: (1) "the house in which he was going to place his throne" or (2) "a house named The King's Chair House"

It was covered with cedar

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The workers covered the floor with cedar wood" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

from floor to floor

This refers to the entire floor. Alternate translation: "from one wall to the other"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the throne](#)
- [judgment](#)
- [with cedar](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the Hall of the Throne](#)
- [Solomon decided about people's disputes](#)
- [cedar wood](#)

ULT

⁷ And he made the porch of [the throne](#) there where he would judge, the porch of [judgment](#). And it was covered [with cedar](#) from the floor up to the floor.

UST

⁷ Then they made a building called [the Hall of the Throne](#). It was also called the Hall of Justice. That was where [Solomon decided about people's disputes](#). The entire floor was covered with [cedar wood](#).

1 Kings 7:8

Solomon's house in which he was to live, in another courtyard within the palace grounds, was similarly designed

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Solomon had someone design the house in which he was to live, in another courtyard within the palace grounds, in the same way" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

He also built

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work. Alternate translation: "He also commanded them to build" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And his house](#)
- [was from the house](#)
- [And...a house](#)
- [the...courtyard](#)
- [Pharaoh](#)
- [Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the courtyard](#)
- [Hall of Judgment](#)
- [a house](#)
- [They also built the same kind of](#)
- [for Solomon](#)
- [of the king of Egypt](#)

ULT

⁸ [And his house](#) there where he would dwell, the other [courtyard](#), [was from the house](#) of the porch; it was like this work. And he would make [a house](#) for the daughter of [Pharaoh](#), whom [Solomon](#) had taken, like this porch.

UST

⁸ In [the courtyard](#) behind the [Hall of Judgment](#) they built [a house for Solomon](#) to live in that was made like the other buildings. [They also built the same kind of](#) house for his wife, who was the daughter [of the king of Egypt](#).

1 Kings 7:9

General Information:

The writer is writing about the stones used for the buildings.

These buildings were adorned with costly hewn stones

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The workers adorned the buildings with costly, hewn stones" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

hewn stones, precisely measured and cut with a saw and smoothed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "hewn stones, that workers had precisely measured and cut with a saw and smoothed" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

These stones were used

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The workers used these stones" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

from the foundation to the stones on top, and also on the outside to the great court

The author is emphasizing that the workers used expensive stones for the foundations and all the buildings.

Translation Words - ULT

- [precious](#)
- [and from the foundation](#)
- [the...courtyard](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [from the foundations up to the eaves](#)
- [The stones had been expensive](#)
- [the quarry](#)

ULT

⁹ All of these were [precious](#) stones according to the measurement of hewn stones, sawn with the saw from inside and from outside [and from the foundation](#) up to the eaves and from outside up to the great [courtyard](#).

UST

⁹ All of these buildings and the walls around the palace courtyard were made from stones, [from the foundations up to the eaves](#). [The stones had been expensive](#) for the workers to cut at [the quarry](#), according to the sizes that were needed, and the sides of the stones were shaped and smoothed by cutting them with saws.

1 Kings 7:10

The foundation was constructed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The workers constructed the foundation" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

eight and ten cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "about 3.7 meters and 4.6 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And it was founded](#)
- [precious](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The foundations were also made from](#)
- [expensive](#)

ULT

¹⁰ [And it was founded](#) with [precious](#) stones, large stones, stones of ten cubits and stones of eight cubits.

UST

¹⁰ [The foundations were also made from](#) huge blocks of [expensive](#) stones that had been prepared at the quarry. Some of them were about three and three-quarters meters long and others were about four and four-fifths meters long.

1 Kings 7:11

cedar beams

A beam is a long piece of wood used for structural support.

Translation Words - ULT

- precious
- and cedar

Translation Words - UST

- expensive
- cedar beams

ULT

11 And from above were precious stones, according to the measurement of hewn stone, and cedar.

UST

11 On top of the foundation stones were other expensive stones that had been cut according to the sizes they needed, as well as cedar beams.

1 Kings 7:12

three rows of cut stone and a row of cedar beams

See how you translated this in [1 Kings 6:36](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [And a...courtyard](#)
- [and for the...courtyard of](#)
- [cedar](#)
- [the house of Yahweh](#)
- [the house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The palace courtyard](#)
- [the temple](#)
- [the temple](#)
- [in front of the temple had walls made by putting down](#)
- [cedar beams](#)

ULT

¹² [And a](#) great [courtyard](#) was all around, three hewn stone rows and a row of cut beams of [cedar](#), [and for the](#) inner [courtyard of the house of Yahweh](#) and for the porch of [the house](#).

UST

¹² [The palace courtyard](#), the inner courtyard in front of [the temple](#), and the portico [in front of the temple had walls made by putting down](#) three layers of cut stones between each layer of [cedar beams](#).

1 Kings 7:13

brought him from Tyre

Hiram accepted Solomon's invitation to come to Jerusalem. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- Solomon
- And...sent
- from Tyre

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- Tyre, Tyrians
- king, kingship
- send, sent, send out

ULT

13 And [the king Solomon sent](#) and took Hiram [from Tyre](#).

UST

13-14 There was a man who lived in the city of Tyre whose name was Hiram. He was a craftsman. His father had also lived in Tyre and had also been very skilled at making things from bronze, but Hiram's father was no longer living. His mother was from the tribe of Naphtali. Hiram was very wise and intelligent and was very skilled at making things from bronze. Solomon invited him to come to Jerusalem and supervise all the work of making things from bronze, and Hiram agreed.

1 Kings 7:14

the son of a widow ... his father was a man of Tyre

A widow is a woman whose husband has died, so we know that the father is dead. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Huram was filled with wisdom and understanding and skill

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. The words “wisdom and understanding” mean basically the same thing and are used together for emphasis. Yahweh giving such things as wisdom is spoken of as if they were liquids that Yahweh had poured into a container, and Hiram is spoken of as if he were that container. Alternate translation: “Yahweh had given Hiram wisdom, understanding, and skill” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Doublet](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- was a son of
- from the tribe of
- the king
- Solomon
- Naphtali
- and his father was
- Tyre
- bronze
- with bronze
- with the wisdom
- the understanding
- the knowledge
- the work
- his work

Translation Words - UST

- son
- wise, wisdom
- work, works, deeds
- work, works, deeds
- Naphtali
- Solomon
- Tyre, Tyrians
- bronze
- bronze
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

ULT

¹⁴ He was a son of a woman, a widow, from the tribe of Naphtali and his father was a man of Tyre, one who engraves bronze. And he was filled with the wisdom and the understanding and the knowledge in order to do all the work with bronze. And he came to the king Solomon and he did all his work.

UST

¹³⁻¹⁴ There was a man who lived in the city of Tyre whose name was Hiram. He was a craftsman. His father had also lived in Tyre and had also been very skilled at making things from bronze, but Hiram's father was no longer living. His mother was from the tribe of Naphtali. Hiram was very wise and intelligent and was very skilled at making things from bronze. Solomon invited him to come to Jerusalem and supervise all the work of making things from bronze, and Hiram agreed.

- understand, understanding, thinking

1 Kings 7:15

eighteen cubits ... twelve cubits

A cubit is about 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "about 8.3 meters...5.5 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

in circumference

Circumference is the distance or measurement around a circular object or area.

Translation Words - ULT

- the pillars
- the...pillar
- the...pillar
- bronze

Translation Words - UST

- bronze
- pillars
- and eight and one-half
- around

ULT

¹⁵ And he formed the two of the pillars bronze, 18 cubits was the height of the one pillar and a cord of 12 cubits surrounded the second pillar.

UST

¹⁵ He made two bronze pillars. Each one was eight and one-third meters tall and eight and one-half around.

1 Kings 7:16

five cubits

A cubit is about 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "2.3 meters"
(See: [Biblical Distance](#))

two capitals

decorations on top of each of the two pillars

polished bronze

They polished the bronze so that it would reflect sunlight. "gleaming bronze"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the heads of](#)
- [the pillars](#)
- [bronze](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gleaming bronze](#)
- [top](#)
- [pillars](#)

ULT

¹⁶ And he made the two of the capitals to give on [the heads of the pillars](#), casting of [bronze](#). Five cubits was the height of the one capital and five cubits was the height of the second capital.

UST

¹⁶ He also made two [gleaming bronze](#) tops to be put on [top](#) of the [pillars](#). Each top was two and one-third meters tall.

1 Kings 7:17

Checker latticework and wreaths of chain work

Alternate translation: "Crossed metal strips woven together and metal chains twisted together"

Translation Words - ULT

- the head of
- the pillars

Translation Words - UST

- top
- each pillar

ULT

¹⁷ Lattices, a work of lattice, twisted threads, a work of chains, were for the capitals which were on the head of the pillars. Seven were for the one capital and seven were for the second capital.

UST

¹⁷ Then he made bronze networks of chains like wreaths to decorate the top of each pillar. There were seven of these networks at the top of each pillar.

1 Kings 7:18

Huram made

Huram would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "Huram commanded his workers to make"
(See: [Metonymy](#))

two rows of pomegranates

A pomegranate is a fruit with a hard, red rind and many juicy seeds inside. Hiram did not use real pomegranates to decorate the pillars. He made them out of bronze.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the pillars](#)
- [the head of](#)
- [the pomegranates](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He put...pomegranates over](#)
- [top](#)
- [each pillar](#)

ULT

18 And he made [the pillars](#), and two rows all around on the one lattice to cover the capitals, which were on [the head of the pomegranates](#), and he did so for the second capital.

UST

18 Hiram also made bronze figures that resembled pomegranates. [He put](#) two rows of [pomegranates over](#) the [top](#) of [each pillar](#).

1 Kings 7:19

The capitals ... were decorated with lilies, four cubits high

Lilies are plants whose flowers are wide at one end and very narrow at the other end. These words can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Hiram decorated the capitals ... with bronze lilies, four cubits high" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the tops of the portico

Translate "portico" as in [1 Kings 7:6](#).

four cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "about 1.8 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the head of
- the pillars

Translation Words - UST

- The top over
- each pillar

ULT

¹⁹ And the capitals, which were on the head of the pillars, were the work of a lily on the porch, four cubits.

UST

¹⁹ The top over each pillar was shaped like a lily. Each lily leaf was one and four-fifths meters tall.

1 Kings 7:20

two hundred pomegranates

"200 pomegranates." A pomegranate is a fruit with a hard, red rind and many juicy seeds inside. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 7:18](#) (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [pillars](#)
- [And the pomegranates](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of pomegranates](#)
- [each pillar](#)

ULT

²⁰ And capitals were on the two [pillars](#), also from above. from near the belly, which was to the opposite of the lattice. [And the pomegranates](#) were 200, rows all around on the second capital.

UST

²⁰ These tops were placed on a bowl shaped section around which were two rows of two hundred figures [of pomegranates](#) around the top of [each pillar](#).

1 Kings 7:21

He raised up

Huram would have commanded his workers to do this work.

Alternate translation: "They raised up" (See: [Metonymy](#))

The pillar on the right was named Jakin

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The name of the pillar on the right side was Jakin" (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

the pillar on the left was named Boaz

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The name of the pillar on the left side was Boaz" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

²¹ And he raised up the pillars for the porch of the temple. And he raised up the right pillar and he called its name Jakin. And he raised up the left pillar and he called its name Boaz.

UST

²¹ His helpers set up the pillars in front of the entrance of the temple. The pillar on the south side was named Jakin, and the pillar on the north side was named Boaz.

Translation Words - ULT

- And he raised up
- And he raised up
- And he raised up (2)
- the pillars
- the...pillar
- the...pillar (2)
- Boaz
- the temple
- and he called
- and he called
- its name
- its name

Translation Words - UST

- His helpers set up
- The pillar
- and the pillar (2)
- the pillars
- The pillar
- and the pillar (2)
- Boaz
- of the temple
- was named
- was named
- was named
- was named

1 Kings 7:22

The fashioning of the pillars was done

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Huram fashioned the pillars" or "Huram's men fashioned the pillars" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the head of
- the pillars
- the pillars

Translation Words - UST

- top
- of the pillars
- pillars

ULT

²² And on the head of the pillars was the work of a lily. And the work of the pillars was finished.

UST

²² The bronze tops that were shaped like lilies were placed on top of the pillars. So Hiram and his helpers completed the work of making the bronze pillars.

1 Kings 7:23

Huram made

Huram would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "Huram also commanded them to make" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the round sea

This refers to a bronze tank or basin that would hold water.

cast metal

Huram melted the bronze and formed it in a mold.

ten cubits ... five cubits ... thirty cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "4.6 meters...2.3 meters...13.8 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

from brim to brim

Alternate translation: "from one edge to the other"

in circumference

Circumference is the distance or measurement around a circular object or area.

ULT

²³ And he made the sea that was cast. It was ten by the cubit from its lip up to its lip, circular all around. And five by the cubit was its height and a cord of 30 cubits surrounded it all around.

UST

²³ Huram also made a very large round bronze basin called "The Sea" that was made of metal and cast in a clay mold. It was two and one-third meters tall, four and three-fifths meters across, and thirteen and three-quarters meters around.

1 Kings 7:24

encircling the sea were gourds

A gourd is a type of hard, round vegetable that grows on a vine on the ground.

when that basin was cast

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “when Hiram cast that basin” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

24 And gourds were from underneath to its lip, surrounding it all around, ten by the cubit, encircling the sea all around. The gourds were two rows that were cast when it was cast.

UST

24 Around the outer edge of the rim of the “The Sea” were two rows of figures that resembled gourds that were made of bronze. But the gourds were not cast separately. They were cast in the same mold as the rest of the tank. For each meter of length around the rim of the tank there were about eighteen gourds.

1 Kings 7:25

The Sea

This refers to the bronze tank or basin that held water for sacrifices.

stood on

Alternate translation: "was on top of"

"The Sea" was set on top of them

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Hiram's workers set 'The Sea' on top of the bronze oxen" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

hindquarters

This is the back quarter of the body of an animal with four feet.

Translation Words - ULT

- [cattle](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [oxen](#)

ULT

²⁵ It was standing over 12 [cattle](#), three faces toward the north and three faces toward the west and three faces toward the south and three faces toward the east, and the sea was over them from above. And all their hindquarters were toward the inside.

UST

²⁵ Hiram also cast twelve bronze statues of [oxen](#). He placed them to face outward. He placed three of them to face north, three to face west, three to face south, and three to face east. His helpers put the large bronze tank known as "The Sea" so that it sat on the backs of the statues of the oxen.

1 Kings 7:26

its brim was forged like the brim of a cup, like a lily blossom

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Hiram forged the brim to look like the brim of a cup, to curve outward like a lily" (See: [Simile](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

two thousand baths

A bath is a unit of volume equal to about 22 liters. Alternate translation: "2,000 baths" or "44,000 liters" (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

ULT

²⁶ And its thickness was a handbreadth and its lip was like the work of the lip of a cup, the blossom of a lily. It contained 2,000 baths.

UST

²⁶ The sides of the tank were eight centimeters thick. The rim was like the rim of a cup. It curved outward, like the petals of a lily. When the tank was full, it held about forty-four cubic meters of water.

1 Kings 7:27

Huram made

Huram would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "Huram also commanded them to make" or "They also made" (See: [Metonymy](#))

four cubits ... three cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "about 1.8 meters ... about 1.4 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bronze](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bronze](#)

ULT

²⁷ And he made the ten [bronze](#) stands. Four by the cubit was the length of the one stand and four by the cubit was its width and three by the cubit was its height.

UST

²⁷ Huram also made ten [bronze](#) carts. Each was one and four-fifths meters long, one and four-fifths meters wide, and one and one-third meters tall.

1 Kings 7:28

The work of the stands was like this

This means the author will describe the stands in the words that follow.

ULT

²⁸ And this was the work of the stand: rims were for them, and rims were between the joints.

UST

²⁸ On the sides of the carts there were panels set in frames.

1 Kings 7:29

on the panels and on the frames were lions, oxen, and cherubim

There were decorative pieces in the shapes of lions, oxen, and cherubim fastened to the sides of the stands.

wreaths of hammered work

Here the word “wreaths” refers to spiral-shaped pieces of bronze.

Translation Words - ULT

- were lions
- to the lions
- oxen
- and the cattle
- and cherubs

Translation Words - UST

- lions
- lions
- oxen
- and bulls
- and winged creatures

ULT

²⁹ And on the rims, which were between the joints, **were lions, oxen, and cherubs**. And on the joints was a pedestal from above and from below **to the lions and the cattle** were wreaths, work of descent.

UST

²⁹ On those panels were bronze figures of **lions, oxen, and winged creatures**. Below and above the **lions and bulls** there were decorations of bronze wreaths.

1 Kings 7:30

four bronze wheels and axles

There was one axle for each pair of wheels. Alternate translation: "four bronze wheels and two axles" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))

its four corners

Alternate translation: "the four corners of each stand"

The supports were cast with wreaths

Each support was cast as one piece with the wreaths. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Hiram cast the supports with spiral-shaped pieces" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- bronze
- bronze

Translation Words - UST

- bronze
- made of bronze

ULT

³⁰ And four wheels of bronze were for the one stand and axles of bronze and its four feet were shoulders for them, from the under part of the basin; the shoulders were cast from each side with wreaths.

UST

³⁰ Each cart had four bronze wheels and two axles made of bronze. At the top corners of each cart were bronze supports to hold up a basin. On these supports were also decorations of bronze wreaths.

1 Kings 7:31

a cubit and a half ... a cubit

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: “about 70 centimeters ... about 50 centimeters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

a crown that rose up

Here the word “crown” refers to the circular piece at the top of the stand’s opening that held the basin.

their panels were square

“the panels of the stands were square.” This phrase returns to the description of the panels that began in [1 Kings 7:28](#).

ULT

³¹ And its mouth on the inside of the capital and upward was by the cubit, and its mouth was round, the work of a pedestal, a cubit and a half of the cubit. And also on its mouth were carvings and their rims were squared, not circular.

UST

³¹ On top of each cart, under each basin, was a frame that resembled a circular collar. The top of each circular frame was forty-six centimeters above the top of the cart, and the bottom of it was twenty-three centimeters below the top of the cart. There were also engravings within square panels.

1 Kings 7:32

their housings

Here the word “their” refers to the axles. The word “housings” refers to the casings into which the axles were inserted.

a cubit and a half

A cubit was 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: “about 70 centimeters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

ULT

³² And the four of the wheels were for the under part of the rims, and the hands of the wheels were with the stand. And the height of the one wheel was a cubit and a half of the cubit.

UST

³² The wheels were sixty-nine centimeters high. They were below the panels. The wheels were connected to axles that had been cast in the same mold as the rest of the cart.

1 Kings 7:33

The wheels were forged like chariot wheels

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Hiram made the wheels like small chariot wheels" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Their housings, rims, spokes, and hubs

Here the word "Their" refers to the wheels.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the chariot](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of chariots](#)

ULT

33 And the work of the wheels was like the work of the wheel of [the chariot](#). Their hands and their rims and their spokes and their hubs, the whole thing was cast.

UST

33 The wheels of the carts were like the wheels [of chariots](#). The axles, the rims, the spokes, and the hubs were all cast from bronze.

1 Kings 7:34

There were four handles at the four corners of each stand

Alternate translation: "There was a handle at each of the four corners of each stand"

ULT

³⁴ And four shoulders were to the four corners of the one stand, its shoulders were part of the stand.

UST

³⁴ At the top corners of each cart there were handles. These were molded into the cart itself.

1 Kings 7:35

half a cubit deep

A cubit was 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: “twenty-three centimeters wide” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

on the top of the stand its supports and panels were attached

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Hiram attached the supports and panels to the top of each stand” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the head of

Translation Words - UST

- The bands and the braces were cast in the same mold

ULT

³⁵ And at the top of the stand, a half of the cubit was the height, circular all around. And on [the head of](#) the stand was its hands and its rims were part of it.

UST

³⁵ There was a bronze band of twenty-three centimeters around the top of each cart. There were braces attached to the corners of each cart. [The bands and the braces were cast in the same mold](#) as the rest of the cart.

1 Kings 7:36

Huram engraved

Huram would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: “they engraved” (See: [Metonymy](#))

they were surrounded

Here the word “they” refers to the cherubim, lions, and palm trees.

they were surrounded by wreaths

The word “wreaths” refers to spiral-shaped pieces of bronze. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language.
Alternate translation: “there were wreaths all around them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [cherubs](#)
- [lions](#)
- [and palm trees](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [were also decorated with figures...winged creatures](#)
- [lions](#)
- [and palm trees](#)

ULT

³⁶ And he engraved on the planks of its hands and on its rims [cherubs](#), [lions](#), and [palm trees](#) according to the bare space of each, and wreaths were all around.

UST

³⁶ The braces and the panels on the sides of the carts [were also decorated with figures of winged creatures](#), [lions](#), and [palm trees](#), whenever there was space for them, and there were bronze wreaths all around them.

1 Kings 7:37

He made

Huram would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "He commanded them to make" (See: [Metonymy](#))

All of them were cast in the same molds

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Hiram cast all of the stands in the same mold" or "They cast all of the stand in the same mold" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

they had one size, and the same shape

Alternate translation: "all of the stands were the same size and shape"

ULT

³⁷ Like this he made the ten stands, one casting, one size, one shape was for all of them.

UST

³⁷ That is how Hiram made the ten carts. They were all cast in the same mold, so they were all alike. They all were the same size and had the same shape.

1 Kings 7:38

Huram made ten

Huram would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "Huram had them make ten" (See: [Metonymy](#))

forty baths

A bath is a unit of volume equal to about 22 liters. Alternate translation: "about 88 liters" or "about 90 liters" (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

four cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "about 1.8 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bronze](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bronze](#)

ULT

38 And he made ten [bronze](#) basins. The one basin contained 40 baths. The one basin was four by the cubit, one basin was on the one base for the ten stands.

UST

38 Huram also made ten [bronze](#) basins, one basin for each of the ten stands. Each basin was one and four-fifths meters across and held 880 liters of water.

1 Kings 7:39

He made five ... He set

Huram would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "Human had them make five ... Hiram commanded them to set" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the south-facing side ... the north-facing side

Alternate translation: "the south side ... the north side"

on the east corner, facing toward the south of the temple

Alternate translation: "near the southeast corner of the temple"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the house](#)
- [the house](#)
- [the house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the temple](#)
- [the temple](#)
- [on the corner that was toward the east and in the direction of the south](#)

ULT

³⁹ And he gave the stands, five on the shoulder of [the house](#) from the right and five on the shoulder of [the house](#) from its left. And he gave the sea from the south shoulder of [the house](#) eastward, from in front of the south.

UST

³⁹ Hiram placed five of the carts on the right side of [the temple](#) and five on the left side of [the temple](#). He put the large tank known as "The Sea" [on the corner that was toward the east and in the direction of the south](#).

1 Kings 7:40

Huram made ... he finished

Huram would have commanded his workers to do this work.

Alternate translation: "Huram had them make ... they finished" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the work
- for the king
- Solomon
- for the house of Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- for carrying the blood of the animals that would be sacrificed
- King
- Solomon requested him
- for the temple. This is a list of the bronze things he made

ULT

⁴⁰ And Hiram made the basins and the shovels and the sprinkling bowls. And Hiram finished doing all [the work](#) that he did [for the king Solomon for the house of Yahweh](#):

UST

⁴⁰ Hiram also made pots, shovels for carrying ashes, and bowls [for carrying the blood of the animals that would be sacrificed](#). He completed all the work that [King Solomon requested him](#) to do [for the temple](#). This is a list of the bronze things he made:

1 Kings 7:41

the bowl-like capitals

The capitals were shaped like bowls. (See: [Simile](#))

decorative latticework

Alternate translation: "crossed metal strips woven together"

Translation Words - ULT

- pillars
- the...pillars
- the pillars
- the head of
- the head of (2)

Translation Words - UST

- pillars
- two...top of the pillars...the two wreaths...the tops of
- the pillars
- two...top of the pillars...the two wreaths...the tops of
- two...top of the pillars...the two wreaths...the tops of (2)

ULT

⁴¹ two [pillars](#), and the bowls of the capitals that were on [the head of](#) the two [pillars](#), and the two latticeworks for covering the two bowls of the capitals that were on [the head of the pillars](#),

UST

⁴¹ the two [pillars](#), the [two](#) tops to be put on [top of the pillars](#), [the two wreaths](#) of chains to decorate [the tops of the pillars](#),

1 Kings 7:42

He made

Huram would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "They made" (See: [Metonymy](#))

four hundred pomegranates

"400 pomegranates." A pomegranate is a fruit with a hard, red rind and many juicy seeds inside. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 7:18](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the...pomegranates
- pomegranates
- the pillars

Translation Words - UST

- of pomegranates
- one hundred in each row
- of

ULT

⁴² and the 400 [pomegranates](#) for the two latticeworks, two rows of [pomegranates](#) for the one latticework to cover the two bowls of the capitals that were on the faces of [the pillars](#),

UST

⁴² the four hundred figures of [pomegranates](#) in four rows, with [one hundred in each row](#); two of these rows were placed over the head of [each pillar](#),

1 Kings 7:43

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

⁴³ and the ten stands, and the ten
basins on the stands,

UST

⁴³ the ten carts, the ten basins,

1 Kings 7:44

He made

Huram would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "They made" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the...cattle](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [oxen](#)

ULT

⁴⁴ and the one sea and the 12 [cattle](#)
under the sea,

UST

⁴⁴ the big tank known as "The Sea," the
twelve statues of [oxen](#) on whose backs
the tank was placed,

1 Kings 7:45

Huram made

Huram would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "They made" (See: [Metonymy](#))

all the other implements

Alternate translation: "all the other tools"

polished bronze

bronze that was polished so that it would reflect light

Translation Words - ULT

- [for the king](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [for the house of Yahweh](#)
- [were...bronze](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [King](#)
- [for...Solomon](#)
- [and put them outside...temple](#)
- [bronze](#)

ULT

⁴⁵ and the pots and the shovels and the sprinkling bowls and all these vessels that Hiram made [for the king Solomon](#), [for the house of Yahweh](#), were polished bronze.

UST

⁴⁵ the pots, shovels for the ashes of the altar, and bowls. Hiram and his workers made all these things for [King Solomon](#) [and put them outside](#) the [temple](#). They were all made of [bronze](#) that the workmen polished for it to gleam brightly.

1 Kings 7:46

The king had cast them

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "The king had his workers cast them" (See: [Metonymy](#))

plain of the Jordan

Alternate translation: "flat land near the Jordan River"

Succoth ... Zarethan

These are names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Jordan](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Succoth](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that Hiram](#)
- [the Jordan River valley](#)
- [between the cities of Succoth](#)

ULT

⁴⁶ In the circular plain of [the Jordan the king](#) cast them in the compactness of the ground between [Succoth](#) and between Zarethan.

UST

⁴⁶ They made them by pouring melted bronze into the clay molds [that Hiram](#) had set up near [the Jordan River valley](#), [between the cities of Succoth](#) and Zarethan.

1 Kings 7:47

Solomon did not weigh

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "Solomon did not have them weigh" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the weight of the bronze could not be measured

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "no one could measure the weight of the bronze" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [And...caused...to rest](#)
- [the bronze](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [tell his workers to weigh those](#)
- [bronze](#)

ULT

⁴⁷ And [Solomon caused](#) all the vessels [to rest](#) because of very much abundance, the weight of [the bronze](#) had not been ascertained.

UST

⁴⁷ [Solomon](#) did not [tell his workers to weigh those bronze](#) objects, because there were many items. So no one ever knew what they weighed.

1 Kings 7:48

Solomon had made

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.

Alternate translation: "Solomon's workers had made" (See:

[Metonymy](#))

on which the bread of the presence was to be placed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "on which the priests were to place the bread of the presence" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [were in the house of Yahweh](#)
- [the altar of](#)
- [gold](#)
- [was gold](#)
- [the bread of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon's](#)
- [the gold items](#)
- [where the bread...presence was kept before God](#)
- [for...temple of Yahweh](#)
- [the altar](#)
- [where the bread...presence was kept before God](#)

ULT

⁴⁸ And [Solomon](#) made all the vessels that [were in the house of Yahweh: the altar of gold](#) and the table, which would have [the bread of](#) the face on it, [was gold](#).

UST

⁴⁸ [Solomon's](#) workers also made all [the gold items](#) for the [temple of Yahweh: the altar](#), the table [where the bread](#) of the [presence was kept before God](#),

1 Kings 7:49

the flowers, the lamps

The “flowers” and “lamps” were part of the lampstands.

Translation Words - ULT

- the...lampstands
- were...gold
- were gold
- and the lamps

Translation Words - UST

- lampstands that were put in front of the very holy place
- the decorations that resembled flowers
- the tongs to grasp the hot coals
- the lamps

ULT

⁴⁹ And the five lampstands from the south and five from the north, before the face of the inner room, were pure gold. And the blossom and the lamps and the snuffers were gold.

UST

⁴⁹ the ten lampstands that were put in front of the very holy place, five on the south side and five on the north side, the decorations that resembled flowers, the lamps, the tongs to grasp the hot coals,

1 Kings 7:50

had made the cups ... all of which were made of pure gold

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "had his workers make all the cups ... out of pure gold" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

sockets of gold made for the doors

Here, **sockets** may refer to either: (1) the sockets in which the door pegs turned, or (2) the hinges on which the doors hung.

Translation Words - ULT

- were...gold
- were gold
- for the...holy place
- the house
- for the temple

Translation Words - UST

- the very holy place
- the entrance to the main room
- Those things were all made of gold
- of the temple
- of the temple

ULT

⁵⁰ And the cups and the trimmers and the sprinkling bowls and the palms and the firepans were pure [gold](#). And the sockets of the doors of the inner house, [for the holiest holy place](#), for the doors of [the house](#), [for the temple](#), were [gold](#).

UST

⁵⁰ the cups, the gold lamp wick snuffers, the small lamp bowls, the dishes for incense, the pans for carrying the hot coals, and the sockets for the doors at the entrance to [the very holy place](#) and for the doors at [the entrance to the main room of the temple](#). Those things were all made of gold.

1 Kings 7:51

the work that King Solomon directed for the house of Yahweh was finished

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the workers finished the work that King Solomon had them do for the house of Yahweh” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the work
- the king
- into the storerooms of
- Solomon
- Solomon
- for the house of Yahweh
- the house of Yahweh
- the holy things of
- David
- his father
- the silver
- the gold

Translation Words - UST

- So Solomon's
- Then they placed in
- So Solomon's
- all the silver
- and gold, and the other valuable items
- the work
- for the temple
- the temple...to Yahweh
- Then they placed in
- storerooms
- his father
- David had dedicated

ULT

⁵¹ And all the work that the king Solomon did for the house of Yahweh was complete. And Solomon brought in the holy things of David, his father, the silver and the gold and the vessels he gave into the storerooms of the house of Yahweh.

UST

⁵¹ So Solomon's workers finished all the work for the temple. Then they placed in the temple storerooms all the things that his father David had dedicated to Yahweh—all the silver and gold, and the other valuable items.

1 Kings 8

1 Kings 8 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The ark is placed in the new temple. This is a very significant event in the history of the Israelites. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Celebration of the temple's completion

When the temple was finished, Solomon told all of the people to come to Jerusalem. They took the ark out of the tent and brought it to the temple. Then Solomon prayed that God would hear and answer prayers made to him when they faced towards the temple.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Idiom

Solomon prayed that God would respond to people's prayers using an idiom: "that your eyes may be open to the request of your servant." (See: [Idiom](#))

1 Kings 8:1

assembled the elders of Israel

Alternate translation: "called together the leaders of Israel"

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- Solomon
- assembled
- at Jerusalem
- the box of
- the box of...the covenant of Yahweh
- David
- Zion
- the elders of
- Israel
- Israel
- the heads of
- the tribes
- the fathers of
- the sons of
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- the temple
- then
- He arranged for them to join
- sacred chest
- Yahweh's...sacred chest
- from Mount Zion
- David
- summoned to Jerusalem
- all the elders
- of Israel
- of the clans
- the leaders
- of the tribes
- and the leaders
- of the clans

ULT

¹ Then Solomon assembled the elders of Israel, all the heads of the tribes, the lifted ones of the fathers of the sons of Israel, to the king Solomon at Jerusalem, to bring up the box of the covenant of Yahweh from the city of David (it is Zion).

UST

¹ Solomon then summoned to Jerusalem all the elders of Israel, all the leaders of the tribes and the leaders of the clans. He arranged for them to join in bringing to the temple Yahweh's sacred chest from Mount Zion, where it was in the part of the city called the city of David.

1 Kings 8:2

All the men of Israel

This may refer either: (1) to the people whom Solomon called to Jerusalem and who are listed in 8:1 or (2) generally to those who traveled to Jerusalem for the feast, not necessarily to every male person who lived in Israel. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

at the feast

This is a reference to the Feast of Succoth, also known as the Feast of Tabernacles or Feast of Shelters .

in the month of Ethanim, which is the seventh month

“Ethaniam” is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

² And all the men of [Israel assembled](#) to [the king Solomon in the month of Ethanim at the feast](#) (it is the seventh month).

UST

² So all [the Israelite](#) leaders [came](#) to [King Solomon](#) during the [Festival of Shelters, in the month of Ethanim](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [And...assembled](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [in the month of](#)
- [at the feast](#)
- [the...month](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the Israelite](#)
- [came](#)
- [King](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [Festival of Shelters](#)
- [in the...of Ethanim](#)
- [month](#)

1 Kings 8:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the elders of
- Israel
- the priests
- the box

Translation Words - UST

- When they had
- When they had
- the priests
- the sacred chest

ULT

³ And all the elders of Israel came and the priests lifted the box.

UST

³ When they had all arrived, the priests lifted up the sacred chest

1 Kings 8:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the box of
- the box of...Yahweh
- the tent of meeting
- were in the tent
- holiness
- the priests
- and the Levites

Translation Words - UST

- it
- it...the sacred things
- to the temple...in the tent
- the sacred tent
- Then the descendants of Levi
- the priests
- had been

ULT

⁴ And they brought up the box of Yahweh and the tent of meeting and all the vessels of holiness that were in the tent. And the priests and the Levites brought them up.

UST

⁴ and brought it to the temple. Then the descendants of Levi who assisted the priests helped them to carry to the temple the sacred tent and all the sacred things that had been in the tent.

1 Kings 8:5

all the assembly of Israel

This is a generalization. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

sheep and oxen that could not be counted

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “more sheep and oxen than anyone would ever be able to count” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And the king
- Solomon
- the congregation of
- the ones who congregated
- Israel
- the box
- sacrificing
- sheep
- and cattle

Translation Words - UST

- Then King
- Solomon
- people gathered
- the Israelite
- the Israelite
- Yahweh's sacred chest
- And they sacrificed
- a huge amount of sheep
- and oxen

ULT

⁵ And the king Solomon and all the congregation of Israel, the ones who congregated to him, were with him before the face of the box, sacrificing sheep and cattle that could not be counted and could not be numbered because of abundance.

UST

⁵ Then King Solomon and many of the Israelite people gathered in front of Yahweh's sacred chest. And they sacrificed a huge amount of sheep and oxen. No one was able to count the sacrifices because there were very many.

1 Kings 8:6

into the inner room of the house, to the most holy place, under

Alternate translation: “into the inner room of the house—that is, to the most holy place—under”

Translation Words - ULT

- the priests
- the box of
- the box of...the covenant of Yahweh
- the house
- the...holy place
- the cherubs

Translation Words - UST

- Then the priests
- the sacred chest
- the sacred chest
- into the very holy place
- the temple
- of the winged creatures

ULT

⁶ And the priests brought the box of the covenant of Yahweh into its place, into the inner room of the house, into the holiest holy place, to beneath the wings of the cherubs.

UST

⁶ Then the priests brought the sacred chest into the very holy place in the temple, and they placed it under the wings of the statues of the winged creatures.

1 Kings 8:7

poles by which it was carried

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "poles by which the priests carried it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the cherubs
- the cherubs
- the box
- the box

Translation Words - UST

- The wings of those statues
- and over the poles
- sacred chest
- and over the poles

ULT

⁷ For the cherubs were spreading out wings toward the place of the box. And the cherubs covered over the box and over its poles from above.

UST

⁷ The wings of those statues spread out over the sacred chest and over the poles by which it was carried.

1 Kings 8:8

their ends were seen ... they could not be seen

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "people could see their ends ... people could not see them"

this day

This means the day on which the writer wrote.

Translation Words - ULT

- the heads of
- the holy place
- day

Translation Words - UST

- the ends
- the entrance to the very holy place
- are still

ULT

⁸ And the poles were made long and the heads of the poles were seen from the holy place on the face of the inner room, and they were not seen on the outside. And they are there until this day.

UST

⁸ The poles were very long, with the result that the ends of the poles could be seen by people who were standing at the entrance to the very holy place, but they could not be seen by people standing outside the temple. Those poles are still there.

1 Kings 8:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- in the box
- Moses
- caused to rest
- at Horeb
- Yahweh
- the sons of
- Israel
- from the land of
- Egypt

Translation Words - UST

- sacred chest
- Moses
- had
- at Mount Sinai, where
- Yahweh
- people
- people
- Egypt
- Egypt

ULT

⁹ There was nothing in the box except the two tablets of stone, which Moses caused to rest there at Horeb, where Yahweh cut with the sons of Israel when they went out from the land of Egypt.

UST

⁹ The only things that were in the sacred chest were the two stone tablets that Moses had put there at Mount Sinai, where Yahweh made a covenant with the people after they left Egypt.

1 Kings 8:10

It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Translation Words - ULT

- the priests
- the holy place
- the house of...Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- The priests
- the sacred chest
- in the temple

ULT

¹⁰ And it happened when the priests went out from the holy place, that the cloud filled the house of Yahweh.

UST

¹⁰ The priests put the sacred chest in the temple. When they came out of the holy place, suddenly it was filled with a cloud.

1 Kings 8:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the priests
- to minister
- the glory of
- Yahweh
- the house of...Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- The glory
- The glory
- of Yahweh...the temple
- the priests
- continue their work

ULT

¹¹ And the priests were not able to stand to minister because of the face of the cloud, for the glory of Yahweh filled the house of Yahweh.

UST

¹¹ The glory of Yahweh filled the temple, with the result that the priests were not able to continue their work.

1 Kings 8:12

Yahweh has said ... darkness

Solomon speaks to Yahweh as if he were speaking to someone else to show that he respects Yahweh. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

¹² Then [Solomon](#) said, “[Yahweh](#) has said he would dwell in the dark cloud.

UST

¹² Then [Solomon](#) prayed this: “[Yahweh](#), you have placed the sun in the sky, but you have decided that you would live in very dark clouds.

1 Kings 8:13

lofty residence

beautiful building in which someone very important lives

Translation Words - ULT

- a house of
- forever

Translation Words - UST

- a place for you
- forever

ULT

¹³ Surely I have built a house of elevation for you, a place for your dwelling forever.”

UST

¹³ I have built for you a splendid temple, a place for you to live in forever.”

1 Kings 8:14

all the assembly of Israel

Alternate translation: "all the people of Israel who were gathered there"

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- his face
- and he blessed
- the assembly of
- the assembly of
- Israel
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- the people
- the people
- the people
- the people
- the king
- and faced them
- and he asked God to bless them

ULT

¹⁴ And the king turned his face around and he blessed all the assembly of Israel, and all the assembly of Israel was standing.

UST

¹⁴ Then, while all the people stood there, the king turned around and faced them, and he asked God to bless them.

1 Kings 8:15

May Yahweh, the God of Israel, be praised

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Praise Yahweh, the God of Israel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

with his own hands

The hand is a metonym for the power in the hand. Alternate translation: "by his own power" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Blessed is
- Yahweh
- the God of
- Israel
- David
- my father
- and...by his hand

Translation Words - UST

- Praise
- Yahweh
- God
- Israelites
- By his own power he has done
- what he promised to my father
- David

ULT

¹⁵ And he said, "Blessed is Yahweh, the God of Israel, who spoke by his mouth with David my father, and fulfilled by his hand, saying,

UST

¹⁵ He said, "Praise Yahweh, the God to whom we Israelites belong! By his own power he has done what he promised to my father David. What he promised was this:

1 Kings 8:16

in order for my name to be

The word “name” is a metonym for the person, and “for ... name” refers to worshiping the person. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: “so that people would worship me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the day
- my people
- my people
- David
- Israel
- Israel
- Israel
- from Egypt
- I did...choose
- But I chose
- the tribes of
- a house
- my name

Translation Words - UST

- time
- my people
- my people
- David
- my people
- Israel
- my people
- out of Egypt
- I have...chosen
- But I chose you
- Israel
- in which a temple
- should be

ULT

16 ‘From [the day](#) when I brought out [my people Israel from Egypt](#), I [did](#) not [choose](#) a city from all [the tribes of Israel](#) to build [a house](#), so that [my name](#) would be there. [But I chose David](#) to be over [my people Israel](#).’

UST

16 From the [time](#) that I brought [my people out of Egypt](#), I [have](#) never [chosen](#) any city in [Israel in which a temple should be](#) built for my people to worship me there. [But I chose you, David](#), to rule [my people](#).”

1 Kings 8:17

it was in the heart of David my father

What David desired is spoken of as if it were an item in a container and the heart as if it were a container. Alternate translation: “David my father desired” (See: [Metaphor](#))

for the name of Yahweh

The word “name” is a metonym for the person, and “for the name” refers to worshiping the person. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: “in which people would worship Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the heart of
- David
- my father
- a house
- for the name of
- the God of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- My father
- David
- wanted
- a temple
- in order that
- we Israelite people could worship...there
- our God

ULT

¹⁷ And it was with the heart of David my father to build a house for the name of Yahweh, the God of Israel.

UST

¹⁷ Then Solomon said, “My father David wanted to build a temple in order that we Israelite people could worship Yahweh our God there.

1 Kings 8:18

In that it was in your heart

What David desired is spoken of as if it were an item in a container and the heart as if it were a container. Alternate translation: "Because you desired" (See: [Metaphor](#))

for my name

The word "name" is a metonym for the person, and "for ... name" refers to worshipping the person. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "in which people will worship me" (See: [Metonymy](#))

for it to be in your heart

What David desired is spoken of as if it were an item in a container and the heart as if it were a container. Alternate translation: "to desire to do that" or "by wanting to do that" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [my father](#)
- [your heart](#)
- [your heart](#)
- [a house](#)
- [for my name](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [But Yahweh](#)
- [him](#)
- [him](#)
- [wanted](#)
- [you wanted](#)
- [a temple](#)
- [and what](#)

ULT

18 But [Yahweh](#) said to [David my father](#), 'Because it was with [your heart](#) to build [a house for my name](#), you did well that it was in [your heart](#).

UST

18 But [Yahweh](#) said to [him](#), 'You have [wanted](#) to build [a temple](#) for me, [and what you wanted](#) to do was good.

1 Kings 8:19

one who will be born from your loins

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “one who will be your own offspring” or “one whom you yourself will father” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the house
- the house
- your son
- from your loins
- for my name

Translation Words - UST

- a temple
- it...build
- It is one of your
- sons
- who I want to

ULT

¹⁹ However, you will not build the house, but rather your son, the one who comes out from your loins, he himself will build the house for my name.’

UST

¹⁹ However, you are not the one who I want to build it. It is one of your sons who I want to build a temple for me.’

1 Kings 8:20

has carried out the word that he had said

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “has done exactly what he said he would do” (See: [Idiom](#))

I have arisen in the place of David my father

Height is a metaphor for power. Alternate translation: “I have gained the power that David my father had” (See: [Metaphor](#))

I sit on the throne of Israel

The throne is a metonym for the activity of the one who sits on the throne. Alternate translation: “I rule over Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

for the name of Yahweh

The word “name” is a metonym for the person, and “for ... name” refers to worshiping the person. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: “in which people will worship Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#) (2)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [And...has raised up](#)
- [And I have risen up](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [David](#)
- [my father](#)
- [the throne of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the house](#)
- [for the name of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [And now Yahweh](#)
- [I have become](#)
- [And now Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh promised](#) (2)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Israelites](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [my father, and](#)
- [my father, and](#)
- [I have arranged for this temple](#)

ULT

²⁰ And [Yahweh has raised up](#) his word that he had spoken. [And I have risen up](#) in the place of [David my father](#), and I sit on [the throne of Israel](#), just as [Yahweh](#) spoke. And I have built [the house for the name of Yahweh, the God of Israel](#).

UST

²⁰ [And now Yahweh](#) has done what he promised to do. [I have become the king of Israel](#) to succeed [my father, and](#) I am ruling my people, as [Yahweh promised. I have arranged for this temple](#) to be built for us [Israelites](#) to worship [Yahweh](#), the [God](#) to whom we [Israelites](#) belong.

- I have arranged for this temple

1 Kings 8:21

is Yahweh's covenant, which

The stone tablets on which Yahweh had written the terms of the covenant are spoken of as if they were the covenant itself. Alternate translation: "are the tablets on which Yahweh wrote the terms of the covenant that" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- for the box
- is the covenant of
- Yahweh
- our fathers
- from the land of
- Egypt

Translation Words - UST

- sacred chest
- are the two stone tablets of the covenant
- Yahweh
- our ancestors
- out of Egypt
- out of Egypt

ULT

²¹ And I have set a place there for the box, where there is the covenant of Yahweh, which he cut with our fathers when he brought them out from the land of Egypt."

UST

²¹ I have also provided a place in the temple for the sacred chest in which are the two stone tablets of the covenant that Yahweh made with our ancestors when he brought them out of Egypt."

1 Kings 8:22

all the assembly of Israel

Alternate translation: "all the people of Israel who were gathered there"

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- the altar of
- Yahweh
- the assembly of
- Israel
- to the heavens

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- the altar
- which was
- the Israelite
- people who had gathered there
- toward heaven

ULT

²² And Solomon stood before the face of the altar of Yahweh, in front of all the assembly of Israel. And he spread out his palms to the heavens.

UST

²² Then Solomon stood in front of the altar which was in front of the Israelite people who had gathered there. He spread out his arms toward heaven,

1 Kings 8:23

who keeps his covenant faithfulness with your servants

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **faithfulness**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form such as “faithfully” or “faithful.” Alternate translation: “who faithfully loves your servants” or “who is faithful to your covenant with your servants” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

walk before you with all their heart

The way a person lives is spoken of as if that person were walking on a path. Alternate translation: “live wholeheartedly the way that you want them to” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- the God of
- God
- their heart
- Israel
- in the heavens
- the earth
- keeping
- the covenant
- and the covenant faithfulness
- to your servants

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- the God
- god...you
- for us who earnestly do
- what you want us to do
- whom we Israelite people worship
- in heaven
- the earth
- You solemnly promised that you would faithfully love us
- And that is what you have done
- for us who earnestly do

ULT

²³ And he said, “Yahweh, the God of Israel, there is no God like you in the heavens from above or on the earth from below, keeping the covenant and the covenant faithfulness to your servants, the ones who walk before your face with all their heart;

UST

²³ and he prayed, “Yahweh, the God whom we Israelite people worship, there is no god like you up in heaven or down here on the earth. You solemnly promised that you would faithfully love us. And that is what you have done for us who earnestly do what you want us to do.

1 Kings 8:24

fulfilled it with your hand

The hand is a metonym for the power of the hand. Alternate translation: “by your power fulfilled what you said” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- you have kept
- for your servant
- David
- my father
- and with your hand
- as...day

Translation Words - UST

- You have done
- my father
- David
- who served you very well
- and today
- by your power you have done them

ULT

²⁴ which you have kept for your servant David my father, what you spoke to him. And you spoke with your mouth and with your hand you fulfilled, as this day.

UST

²⁴ You have done the things that you promised my father David, who served you very well, that you would do. Truly, you promised to do these things for him, and today we see that by your power you have done them.

1 Kings 8:25

to sit on the throne of Israel

The throne is a metonym for the activity of the one who sits on the throne. Alternate translation: "to rule over Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

walk before me ... have walked before me

The way a person lives is spoken of as if that person were walking on a path. Alternate translation: "live as I want you to ... have lived as I want you to" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- the God of
- your sons
- Israel
- Israel
- keep
- will keep
- for your servant
- David
- my father
- will...be cut off
- the throne of

Translation Words - UST

- So now, Yahweh
- the God
- they would conduct their lives as he did
- whom we Israelites
- in Israel
- worship
- they would conduct their lives as he did
- I am requesting that
- my father that you would do
- my father that you would do
- some of his descendants
- who would be kings

ULT

²⁵ And now, Yahweh, the God of Israel, keep for your servant David my father, what you spoke to him, saying, 'A man will not be cut off for you from before my face, sitting on the throne of Israel, if only your sons will keep their way, to walk before my face, just as you have walked before my face.'

UST

²⁵ So now, Yahweh, the God whom we Israelites worship, I am requesting that you do the other things that you promised my father that you would do. You told him that there would always be some of his descendants who would be kings in Israel, if they would conduct their lives as he did.

1 Kings 8:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the God of
- Israel
- let...be proven faithful
- to your servant
- David
- my father

Translation Words - UST

- God
- of us Israelite people
- cause
- for my father
- David
- who served you well, to happen

ULT

²⁶ And now, the God of Israel, please let your word be proven faithful, which you spoke to your servant David my father.

UST

²⁶ So now, God of us Israelite people, cause what you promised to do for my father David, who served you well, to happen.

1 Kings 8:27

But will God actually live on the earth?

Possible meanings of this question are: (1) Solomon is asking a real question and expecting an answer or (2) the question is rhetorical and Solomon is emphasizing that God is too big and mighty to live on earth. Alternate translation: "But it surely cannot be that God will actually live on the earth!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

But will God

Here Solomon speaks about God in the third person. It can be stated in the second person. Alternate translation: "But will you" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Look

Alternate translation: "What I am about to say is important" or "The truth is that"

you—how much less can this temple that I have built

Alternate translation: "you, so this temple that I have built certainly cannot contain you"

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [the heavens](#)
- [and the heavens of](#)
- [the heavens](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [the earth among people](#)
- [There is...enough space in heaven](#)
- [There is...enough space in heaven](#)
- [There is...enough space in heaven](#)
- [temple](#)

ULT

²⁷ Indeed, would [God](#) really dwell on [the earth](#)? Behold, [the heavens and the heavens of the heavens](#) can not contain you, how much less this [house](#) that I have built!

UST

²⁷ But [God](#), will you really live on [the earth among people](#)? [There is not enough space in heaven](#) for you to have enough space to live there. So this [temple](#) that I have commanded my workers to build is certainly too small for you to live in.

1 Kings 8:28

respect this prayer of your servant and his request

The words “prayer” and “request” mean basically the same thing and emphasize that he is sincere as he makes his request. Solomon refers to himself as “your servant” to show that he respects Yahweh. This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “respect me, your servant, as I make this request” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Pronouns](#))

listen to the cry and prayer that your servant prays before you today

The words “cry” and “prayer” mean basically the same thing and emphasize that he is sincere as he asks Yahweh to help him. Solomon refers to himself as “your servant” to show that he respects Yahweh. This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “listen to me, your servant, as I call today for you to help me” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Pronouns](#))

ULT

²⁸ Yet you will turn to the prayer of your servant and to his plea for favor, Yahweh my God, to listen to the cry and to the prayer that your servant is praying before your face today:

UST

²⁸ But Yahweh, my God, please listen to me while I am praying to you this day.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yet you will turn
- the prayer of
- the prayer
- your servant
- your servant (2)
- his plea for favor
- Yahweh
- my God
- the cry

Translation Words - UST

- But
- Yahweh
- God
- please
- me
- I (2)
- while
- am praying
- while

1 Kings 8:29

May your eyes be open toward

The eye is a metonym for what the eye does. Alternate translation: "May you watch over" (See: [Metonymy](#))

night and day

This is a merism. Alternate translation: "all the time" or "continually" (See: [Merism](#))

My name and my presence

These two words together emphasize that Yahweh will dwell in the temple. (See: [Doublet](#))

that your servant will pray

Solomon speaks of himself as "your servant" to show that he respects Yahweh. This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: "that I, your servant, will pray" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)
- [and day](#)
- [My name](#)
- [the prayer](#)
- [will pray](#)
- [your servant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [temple](#)
- [day](#)
- [I will always be there](#)
- [and pray](#)
- [I request](#)
- [me whenever I turn my face toward](#)

ULT

²⁹ that your eyes be opened to this [house](#) night [and day](#), to the place where you have said, '[My name](#) will be there,' to listen to [the prayer](#) that [your servant](#) [will pray](#) to this place.

UST

²⁹ I pray that you would protect this [temple](#) night and [day](#). This is the place about which you have said, '[I will always be there](#).' [I request](#) that you listen to [me](#) [whenever I turn my face toward](#) this temple [and pray](#).

1 Kings 8:30

listen to the request of your servant and of your people Israel

Solomon speaks of himself as “your servant” to show that he respects Yahweh. This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “listen to my request and the request of your people Israel” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the plea for favor of
- your servant
- and your people
- Israel
- they will pray
- the heavens
- and forgive

Translation Words - UST

- I request that
- when I pray
- when I pray
- and your people pray
- while they
- your home in heaven
- and forgive us for the sins that we have committed

ULT

³⁰ And you will listen to the plea for favor of your servant and your people Israel that they will pray toward this place. And you, you will listen toward the place of your dwelling to the heavens. And you will hear and forgive

UST

³⁰ I request that when I pray to you and your people pray to you while they turn their faces toward this place, that in your home in heaven you will hear us and forgive us for the sins that we have committed.

1 Kings 8:31

is required to swear

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "someone requires him to swear" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- sins
- against his neighbor
- a curse
- to curse him
- a curse
- your altar
- in...house

Translation Words - UST

- Suppose that people accuse someone of doing something wrong to another person
- Suppose that people accuse someone of doing something wrong to another person
- altar
- holy temple
- And suppose that he says, 'I did not do that; may God punish me if I am not...truth
- And suppose that he says...I did not do that; may God punish me if I am not...truth
- And suppose that he says...I did not do that; may God punish me if I am not...truth

ULT

³¹ a man who [sins against his neighbor](#) and lifts up against him [a curse to curse him](#) and [a curse](#) comes before the face of [your altar](#) in this [house](#).

UST

³¹ Suppose that people accuse someone of doing something wrong to another person, and they bring him to your [altar](#) outside this [holy temple](#). And suppose that he says, 'I did not do that; may God punish me if I am not telling the [truth](#).'

1 Kings 8:32

upon his own head

Here “head” refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: “on him” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

give to him according to his righteousness

Alternate translation: “to give him what he deserves because he is righteous”

Translation Words - ULT

- [in the heavens](#)
- [and judge](#)
- [your servants](#)
- [by declaring as wicked](#)
- [a wicked one](#)
- [on his head](#)
- [and by declaring as righteous](#)
- [a righteous one](#)
- [according to his righteousness](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [from heaven](#)
- [who is...the truth](#)
- [Then punish the person](#)
- [innocent](#)
- [innocent](#)
- [who](#)
- [is guilty](#)
- [as he deserves to be punished](#)
- [that the other person is](#)

ULT

³² And you, you will hear [in the heavens](#) and act [and judge your servants, by declaring as wicked a wicked one](#), to give his way [on his head](#), and [by declaring as righteous a righteous one](#), to give to him [according to his righteousness](#).

UST

³² In that case, listen [from heaven](#) and decide [who is telling the truth](#). Then [punish the person who is guilty as he deserves to be punished](#), and declare [that the other person is innocent](#).

1 Kings 8:33

your people Israel are defeated by an enemy

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “an enemy defeats your people Israel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

confess your name

This could mean: (1) “confess that they have sinned against you” or (2) “praise you” or (3) “say that they will obey you from now on.”

request forgiveness from you

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **forgiveness**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: “ask you to forgive them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [your people](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [an enemy](#)
- [they have sinned](#)
- [and they turn back](#)
- [and they confess](#)
- [your name](#)
- [and they pray](#)
- [and they plead for favor](#)
- [in...house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Or suppose that your Israelite people](#)
- [by](#)
- [they](#)
- [have sinned against](#)
- [Then suppose that they stop acting in a sinful way](#)
- [Suppose that they face in the direction of](#)
- [this temple](#)
- [and acknowledge](#)
- [and acknowledge](#)
- [And suppose that they plead that you will forgive them](#)

ULT

³³ When [your people Israel](#) are struck down before the face of [an enemy](#) because [they have sinned](#) against you, [and they turn back](#) to you [and they confess your name](#) and [they pray](#) and [they plead for favor](#) toward you in this house,

UST

³³ [Or suppose that your Israelite people](#) are defeated [by](#) their enemies in a battle because [they have sinned against](#) you. Suppose also that they are forced to go to some distant country. [Then suppose that they stop acting in a sinful way](#). Suppose that they face in the direction of this temple and [acknowledge](#) you have justly punished them. [And suppose that they plead that you will forgive them](#).

1 Kings 8:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- in the heavens
- and you will forgive
- for the sin of
- your people
- Israel
- and bring them back
- to their fathers

Translation Words - UST

- from heaven
- forgive
- your Israelite people
- for the sins
- that they have committed
- and bring them back
- our ancestors

ULT

³⁴ then you, you will hear in the heavens and you will forgive for the sin of your people Israel and bring them back to the ground that you gave to their fathers.

UST

³⁴ In that case, listen to them from heaven, forgive your Israelite people for the sins that they have committed, and bring them back to this land that you gave to our ancestors.

1 Kings 8:35

the skies are shut up and there is no rain

The sky is spoken of as if it were a building in which God stores the rain. Alternate translation: “you do not allow rain to fall” (See: [Metaphor](#))

confess your name

This could mean: (1) “confess that they have sinned against you” or (2) “praise you” or (3) “say that they will obey you from now on.” See how you translated this in [1 Kings 8:33](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the heavens](#)
- [they have sinned](#)
- [and...from their sin](#)
- [and they pray](#)
- [and they confess](#)
- [your name](#)
- [they turn back](#)
- [you have afflicted them](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Or suppose that you do...allow](#)
- [have sinned against you](#)
- [acting sinfully](#)
- [and admit that](#)
- [you have justly punished them](#)
- [you have justly punished them](#)
- [they stop](#)
- [and humbly pray to you](#)

ULT

³⁵ When [the heavens](#) are restrained and there is no rain because [they have sinned](#) against you, [and they pray](#) toward this place [and they confess your name](#) and [they turn back from their sin](#) when [you have afflicted them](#),

UST

³⁵ [Or suppose that you do](#) not [allow](#) any rain to fall because your people [have sinned against you](#). Suppose that they face in the direction of this place [and admit that you have justly punished them](#). Suppose also that [they stop acting sinfully and humbly pray to you](#).

1 Kings 8:36

in which they should walk

The way a person lives is spoken of as if that person were walking on a path. Alternate translation: "that they should live" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- in the heavens
- and forgive
- for the sin of
- your servants
- and your people
- to your people
- Israel
- good
- your land
- for an inheritance

Translation Words - UST

- in heaven
- and forgive
- your Israelite people
- the sins
- that they have committed
- that they have committed
- to your people
- right
- this land
- to belong to them permanently

ULT

³⁶ then you, you will hear [in the heavens and forgive for the sin of your servants and your people Israel](#), for you direct the [good](#) way in which they will walk. And you will give rain on [your land](#), which you have given [to your people for an inheritance](#).

UST

³⁶ In that case, listen to them [in heaven and forgive your Israelite people for the sins that they have committed](#). Teach them the [right](#) way to conduct their lives, and then send rain on [this land](#) that you have given [to your people to belong to them permanently](#).

1 Kings 8:37

blight or mildew

These are agricultural terms that refer to the death of crops from either too little or too much rain, respectively.

locusts or caterpillars

A “locust” is a type of grasshopper that causes destruction by eating crops. The word “caterpillar” refers to an early growth stage of the locust.

Translation Words - ULT

- famine
- in the land
- in the land of
- locust
- his enemy
- his gates
- plague

Translation Words - UST

- this land
- surround any of their cities
- experience famine
- by
- locusts or grasshoppers
- surround any of their cities
- any of those bad things

ULT

³⁷ If **famine** would be **in the land**, if there would be pestilence, if there would be blight, mildew, **locust**, grasshopper, if **his enemy** would make it narrow for him **in the land of his gates**, any **plague**, any sickness,

UST

³⁷ Suppose that the people of **this land** **experience famine**, or suppose that there is a plague by mildew or **by locusts or grasshoppers**. Or suppose that their enemies **surround any of their cities** in order to attack them. Suppose that **any of those bad things** happen to them.

1 Kings 8:38

prayers and requests

The words “prayer” and “request” mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the person is sincere as he makes his request. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 8:28](#). Alternate translation: “requests” (See: [Doublet](#))

knowing the plague in his own heart

This could mean: (1) The person’s sin is spoken of as if it were a plague. Alternate translation: “knowing the sin in his own heart” or (2) The “plague” is a metonym for the sins that the disasters are a punishment for. Alternate translation: “knowing in his heart that the plague is the result of his own sin” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [prayer](#)
- [plea for favor](#)
- [man](#)
- [your people](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [know](#)
- [his heart](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [your Israelite people](#)
- [earnestly plead with you](#)
- [because they know](#)
- [their inner beings](#)
- [they are](#)
- [they are](#)
- [temple](#)
- [and pray](#)

ULT

³⁸ any [prayer](#), any [plea for favor](#) that would be for any [man](#), for any of [your people Israel](#), who [know](#), a man the plague of [his heart](#), and he would spread out his palms toward this [house](#),

UST

³⁸ And suppose that [your Israelite people earnestly plead with you](#), [because they know in their inner beings](#) that [they are](#) suffering because they have sinned. Suppose that they stretch out their arms toward this [temple and pray](#).

1 Kings 8:39

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- in the heavens
- and you will forgive
- you know
- you know
- his heart
- the heart of
- the sons of
- mankind

Translation Words - UST

- in heaven
- and forgive them
- only one who
- knows
- as he needs
- thinking
- person
- person

ULT

³⁹ then you, you will hear in the heavens, the place of your dwelling, and you will forgive and act and give to a man according to all his ways, because you know his heart. For you, you know, you alone, the heart of all the sons of mankind,

UST

³⁹ In that case, listen to them from your home in heaven, and forgive them, and help them. You are the only one who knows what people are thinking, so act toward each person as he needs,

1 Kings 8:40

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- they may fear you
- the days
- are alive
- to our fathers

Translation Words - UST

- may then have an awesome respect
- years
- live
- our ancestors

ULT

⁴⁰ so that they may fear you all the days that they are alive on the face of the ground that you gave to our fathers.

UST

⁴⁰ in order that your people may then have an awesome respect for you all the years that they live in this land that you gave to our ancestors.

1 Kings 8:41

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the foreigner
- is...from among your people
- Israel
- from a...land
- your name

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- name
- earth, land
- alien, foreigner, sojourn
- people, people group

ULT

⁴¹ And also, to the foreigner, he who is not from among your people Israel, and he comes from a distant land on account of your name,

UST

⁴¹⁻⁴² There will be some foreigners who do not belong to your Israelite people who will have come here from countries far away because they have heard that you are very great, and because they have heard about the great things that you have done for your people. Suppose that people like that come here to this temple to worship you and pray.

1 Kings 8:42

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- name...your
- strong
- your...hand
- and pray
- house

Translation Words - UST

- house of God, Yahweh's house
- name
- pray, prayer
- hand
- strength, strengthen, strong

ULT

⁴² for they will hear of your great name and your strong hand and your extended arm, and he will come and pray toward this house,

UST

⁴¹⁻⁴² There will be some foreigners who do not belong to your Israelite people who will have come here from countries far away because they have heard that you are very great, and because they have heard about the great things that you have done for your people. Suppose that people like that come here to this temple to worship you and pray.

1 Kings 8:43

this house I have built is called by your name

The phrase “is called by your name” shows that God possesses and owns the house. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “you own this house that I have built” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- in the heavens
- the foreigner
- has been called
- house
- has cried out
- the peoples of
- like your people
- the earth
- will know
- and to know
- your name
- your name
- to fear
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- in heaven
- they
- they
- your Israelite people
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know that
- temple
- call, call out
- fear, afraid, frighten
- name
- name
- cry, cry out, outcry
- earth, land
- alien, foreigner, sojourn

ULT

⁴³ you, you will hear [in the heavens](#), the place of your dwelling, and you will act according to all that [the foreigner has cried out](#) to you, so that all [the peoples of the earth will know your name to fear you, like your people Israel, and to know](#) that [your name has been called](#) over this [house](#) that I have built.

UST

⁴³ In that case, in your home [in heaven](#) listen to their prayer, and do for them what [they](#) request you to do. Do that in order that all the people groups in the world will know about you and revere you, as we [your Israelite people](#) do. Then [they](#) will [know that](#) this [temple](#) that I have caused to be built to honor you belongs to you and is where you should be worshiped.

1 Kings 8:44

Suppose that your people go out ... suppose that they pray

When Solomon was speaking, these hypothetical situations had not happened, but Solomon knew that they might happen in the future. Use the form in your language for talking about events that have not happened but might happen in the future. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

for your name

The word “name” is a metonym for the person, and “for ... name” refers to worshiping the person. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: “in which people will worship you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [your people](#)
- [his enemy](#)
- [you send them](#)
- [and they pray](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [you have chosen](#)
- [and the house](#)
- [for your name](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you send your people](#)
- [their enemies](#)
- [your people pray](#)
- [you](#)
- [they are](#)
- [you have chosen](#)
- [temple](#)
- [for you](#)

ULT

⁴⁴ If [your people](#) go out to battle against [his enemy](#), by the way that [you send them, and they pray](#) to [Yahweh](#), in the way of the city, it which [you have chosen, and the house](#) that I have built for your name,

UST

⁴⁴ Suppose that [you send your people](#) to go to fight against [their enemies](#). And suppose that [your people pray](#) to [you](#), wherever [they are](#), and that they turn toward this city that [you have chosen](#) and toward this [temple](#) that I have caused to be built [for you](#).

1 Kings 8:45

their prayer and their request

The words “prayer” and “request” mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the people are sincere as they make their request. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 8:28](#). Alternate translation: “their request” (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in the heavens](#)
- [their prayer](#)
- [their plea for favor](#)
- [their justice](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in heaven](#)
- [to their prayers](#)
- [Listen to what they plead for](#)
- [and assist them](#)

ULT

⁴⁵ then you will hear [in the heavens](#) [their prayer](#) and [their plea for favor](#) and you will do [their justice](#).

UST

⁴⁵ In that case, listen [in heaven to their prayers](#). [Listen to what they plead for](#) you to do, [and assist them](#).

1 Kings 8:46

Suppose that they sin ... suppose that you are

When Solomon was speaking, these hypothetical situations had not happened, but Solomon knew that they might happen in the future. Use the form in your language for talking about events that have not happened but might happen in the future. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- they sin
- does...sin
- man
- an enemy
- the enemy
- and they took them captive
- as their captives
- the land of

Translation Words - UST

- everyone
- sin against
- sins
- their enemies
- their own countries, even to countries
- capture them
- capture them
- their own countries, even to countries

ULT

⁴⁶ If [they sin](#) against you (for there is no [man](#) who does not [sin](#)) and you are angry with them and you give them over before the face of [an enemy](#) and [they took them captive as their captives](#) to [the land of the enemy](#), distant or near,

UST

⁴⁶ It is true that [everyone sins](#). So, suppose that your people [sin against](#) you and that you become angry with them. You might allow [their enemies](#) to defeat them, [capture them](#), and take them away to [their own countries, even to countries](#) that are far away.

1 Kings 8:47

suppose that they realize ... suppose that they repent ... Suppose that they say

When Solomon was speaking, these hypothetical situations had not happened, but Solomon knew that they might happen in the future. Use the form in your language for talking about events that have not happened but might happen in the future. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

where they have been exiled

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "where their enemies have taken them as exiles" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

captors

people who keep others as prisoners

We have acted perversely and sinned. We have behaved wickedly

These two sentences mean the same thing. Together they emphasize how bad the people's actions were. (See: [Parallelism](#))

acted perversely and sinned

The words mean basically the same thing and emphasize how badly the people sinned. (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- and they bring back
- and they turn back
- their heart
- we have acted wickedly
- in the land
- in the land of
- they have been taken captive
- those who took them captive
- and plead for favor
- We have sinned
- and we have done iniquity

Translation Words - UST

- And suppose that, while your people are
- in those countries
- they had...go
- in those countries
- We have sinned

ULT

⁴⁷ and they bring back to their heart in the land there where they have been taken captive, and they turn back and plead for favor to you in the land of those who took them captive, saying, 'We have sinned and we have done iniquity, we have acted wickedly.'

UST

⁴⁷ And suppose that, while your people are in those countries to which they had to go, they sincerely repent and plead with you there saying, 'We have sinned and have done things that are very wicked.'

- and have done things that are very wicked
- and have done things that are very wicked
- they...repent
- and plead with you
- sincerely
- and plead with you

1 Kings 8:48

Suppose that they return ... suppose that they pray

When Solomon was speaking, these hypothetical situations had not happened, but Solomon knew that they might happen in the future. Use the form in your language for talking about events that have not happened but might happen in the future. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

with all their heart and with all their soul

The idiom “with all ... heart” means “completely” and “with all ... soul” means “with all ... being.” These two phrases have similar meanings. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 2:4](#). Alternate translation: “with all their being” or “with all their energy” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Doublet](#))

in the land

Alternate translation: “while they are living in the land”

toward their land

“toward the land in which they belong.” This refers to Israel.

for your name

The word “name” is a metonym for the person, and “for ... name” refers to worshiping the person. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: “in which people will worship you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and they return](#)
- [their heart](#)
- [you chose](#)
- [and the house](#)
- [for your name](#)
- [their soul](#)
- [in the land of](#)
- [their land](#)
- [their enemies](#)
- [they took...captive](#)
- [and they pray](#)
- [to their fathers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Suppose that they very truly and sincerely](#)
- [Suppose that they very truly and sincerely](#)
- [for you](#)

ULT

⁴⁸ [and they return](#) to you with all [their heart](#) and with all [their soul in the land of their enemies](#) where [they took](#) them [captive and they pray](#) to you toward the way of [their land](#), which you gave [to their fathers](#), the city that [you chose and the house](#) that I have built [for your name](#),

UST

⁴⁸ [Suppose that they very truly and sincerely repent while in the land of their enemies who captured them. And they turn toward this land](#) that you gave to [our ancestors](#). Suppose that they turn toward this city that [you have chosen](#) to be the [place where we should worship you](#), and toward this [temple](#) that I have caused to be built [for you](#). Suppose that [they then pray to you](#).

- they then pray to you
- repent while in the land of their enemies
- who captured them
- And they turn toward
- this land
- place where we should worship you
- our ancestors
- you have chosen
- temple

1 Kings 8:49

their prayer and their request

The two words “prayer” and “request” mean basically the same thing. Together they emphasize that the people were sincere as they made their request to Yahweh. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 8:28](#). (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their prayer](#)
- [in the heavens](#)
- [their plea for favor](#)
- [their justice](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in heaven](#)
- [while they plead for your help](#)
- [and help them](#)
- [and help them](#)

ULT

⁴⁹ then you will hear [their prayer in the heavens](#), the place of your dwelling, and [their plea for favor](#), and you will do [their justice](#).

UST

⁴⁹ In that case, from your home [in heaven](#) listen to them [while they plead for your help](#), and help them.

1 Kings 8:50

Forgive your people who have sinned against you, and all their transgressions that they have committed against you

Solomon twice requests Yahweh to forgive the people. This emphasizes the earnestness of his request. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And you will forgive
- your people
- have sinned
- their transgressions
- they have transgressed
- compassion
- and they will have compassion on them
- those who took them captive

Translation Words - UST

- Forgive
- them for
- have committed against
- sins
- they
- and cause their enemies to act kindly toward them
- and cause their enemies to act kindly toward them
- and cause their enemies to act kindly toward them

ULT

⁵⁰ And you will forgive your people who have sinned against you and all their transgressions that they have transgressed against you. And you will give them compassion before the face of those who took them captive and they will have compassion on them.

UST

⁵⁰ Forgive them for all the sins that they have committed against you and cause their enemies to act kindly toward them.

1 Kings 8:51

a furnace where iron is forged

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “a furnace where people forge iron” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- your people
- and your inheritance
- from Egypt
- the furnace of

Translation Words - UST

- They
- are your special possession
- of Egypt
- they were in a blazing furnace

ULT

⁵¹ For they are [your people and your inheritance](#), whom you brought out [from Egypt](#), from the midst of [the furnace of iron](#),

UST

⁵¹ Do not forget that the Israelites are your people. [They are your special possession](#). You brought our ancestors out [of Egypt](#) where they were greatly suffering as though [they were in a blazing furnace](#).

1 Kings 8:52

May your eyes be open

The eye is a synecdoche for the person. Alternate translation: "Please pay attention" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the plea for favor of
- the plea for favor of
- your servant
- your people
- Israel
- their crying out

Translation Words - UST

- I
- request that
- listen to
- their king, and heed their prayers whenever
- your Israelite people
- they call out

ULT

⁵² for your eyes to be opened to [the plea for favor of your servant](#) and to [the plea for favor of your people Israel](#), to listen to them in all [their crying out](#) to you.

UST

⁵² [I request that](#) you always [listen to](#) your Israelite people and to [their king](#), and [heed their prayers whenever they call out](#) to you to help them.

1 Kings 8:53

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- as an inheritance
- the peoples of
- the earth
- by the hand of
- Moses
- your servant
- our fathers
- from Egypt
- my Lord
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- chose them from
- people groups
- in the world
- to belong to you
- is what you told Moses to tell them when
- is what you told Moses to tell them when
- you
- you
- our ancestors
- out of Egypt

ULT

⁵³ For you yourself separated them for yourself as an inheritance from all the peoples of the earth, just as you spoke by the hand of Moses your servant when you brought out our fathers from Egypt, my Lord Yahweh."

UST

⁵³ You chose them from all the other people groups in the world to belong to you, which is what you told Moses to tell them when you brought our ancestors out of Egypt."

1 Kings 8:54

prayer and request

The words “prayer” and “request” mean basically the same thing and emphasize that he is sincere as he makes his request. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 8:28](#). Alternate translation: “request” (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- to pray
- prayer
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- and plea for favor
- the altar of
- from bowing
- toward the heavens

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- praying this
- and pleading
- Yahweh
- of the altar
- for his help
- of the altar
- where he had been kneeling
- lifted up

ULT

⁵⁴ And it happened that as soon as [Solomon](#) finishing [to pray](#) to [Yahweh](#) all this [prayer and plea for favor](#), he rose from before the face of [the altar of Yahweh](#), [from bowing](#) on his knees with his palms spread out [toward the heavens](#).

UST

⁵⁴ After [Solomon](#) had finished [praying this and pleading](#) to [Yahweh](#) for his [help](#), he stood up in front of [the altar where he had been kneeling](#). He [lifted up](#) his arms.

1 Kings 8:55

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- and he blessed
- the assembly of
- Israel
- with a...voice

Translation Words - UST

- Then he asked God to bless
- the Israelite
- people
- He prayed loudly

ULT

⁵⁵ And he stood and he blessed all the assembly of Israel with a great voice, saying,

UST

⁵⁵ Then he asked God to bless all the Israelite people. He prayed loudly, saying,

1 Kings 8:56

May Yahweh be praised

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Praise Yahweh" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Not one word has failed out of all Yahweh's good promises

This can be stated positively. Alternate translation: "Yahweh has made every word of his good promises come true" (See: [Litotes](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Blessed be](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [rest](#)
- [for his people](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [good](#)
- [by the hand of](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [his servant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Praise](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [us his people](#)
- [us his people](#)
- [peace](#)
- [done](#)
- [good things](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [the man who served him very well](#)

ULT

56 "[Blessed be Yahweh](#), who has given [rest for his people Israel](#), according to all that he had spoken. One word did not fall from all his [good](#) word that he had spoken [by the hand of Moses his servant](#)."

UST

56 "[Praise Yahweh](#), who has given [us his people peace](#), like he promised that he would do. He has [done](#) every one of the [good things](#) that he promised to [Moses](#), [the man who served him very well](#)."

1 Kings 8:57

leave us or forsake us

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize Solomon's desire for Yahweh to be present with the people. (See: Doublet)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- our God
- our fathers
- may he...forsake us

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- our ancestors
- and that he will never, never abandon us

ULT

⁵⁷ May Yahweh our God be with us, just as he was with our fathers. May he not leave us and may he not forsake us,

UST

⁵⁷ I pray that our God will be with us like he was with our ancestors, and that he will never, never abandon us.

1 Kings 8:58

incline our hearts to him

Here their “hearts” refer to the people’s desires and emotions. Desiring to please someone is spoken of as inclining the heart toward that person. Alternate translation: “make us want to please him” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

live in all his ways

Here “in his ways” is an idiom that refers to the way he wants people to live. Alternate translation: “live as he requires us to live” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- our heart
- and to keep
- his commandments
- he commanded
- and his statutes
- and his judgments
- our fathers

Translation Words - UST

- to...to conduct our lives as he wants us to
- to...to conduct our lives as he wants us to
- commandments
- and to obey all his
- and statutes and decrees
- and statutes and decrees
- our ancestors

ULT

58 inclining [our heart](#) to him, to walk in all his ways [and to keep his commandments and his statutes and his judgments](#), which [he commanded our fathers](#).

UST

58 I pray that he will cause us to loyally serve him, [to conduct our lives as he wants us to](#), and to obey all his [commandments and statutes and decrees](#) that he gave to [our ancestors](#).

1 Kings 8:59

day and night

This merism refers to “all the time” or “continually.” (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- I have pleaded for favor
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- our God
- by day
- day
- by its day
- the justice of
- and the justice of
- his servant
- his people
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- I pray
- I pray that he will think about them
- that Yahweh our God
- that Yahweh our God
- by day
- day
- by day
- I pray that he will always
- mercifully toward
- and toward our king, giving us
- us Israelite people
- us Israelite people

ULT

⁵⁹ And may these words of mine, which I have pleaded for favor before the face of Yahweh, be near to Yahweh our God by day and night, to do the justice of his servant and the justice of his people Israel, the word of day by its day,

UST

⁵⁹ I pray that Yahweh our God will never forget these words that I have prayed, pleading for his help. I pray that he will think about them by day and by night. I pray that he will always act mercifully toward us Israelite people and toward our king, giving us the things that we need day by day.

1 Kings 8:60

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the peoples of
- the earth
- may know
- Yahweh
- is the God

Translation Words - UST

- the people groups
- in the world
- will know that
- you, Yahweh
- God

ULT

⁶⁰ so that all the peoples of the earth may know that Yahweh, he is the God, there is none besides!

UST

⁶⁰ If you do that, all the people groups in the world will know that you, Yahweh, are the only one who is God, and that there is no other one who is God.

1 Kings 8:61

let your heart be true

Alternate translation: "be wholly devoted"

walk in his statutes

The way a person lives is spoken of as if that person were walking on a path. Alternate translation: "always obey his statutes" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- your heart
- Yahweh
- our God
- in his statutes
- and by keeping
- his commandments
- as...day

Translation Words - UST

- fully committed
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- statutes
- and commands
- are doing
- now

ULT

⁶¹ And may [your heart](#) be completely with [Yahweh our God](#), by walking [in his statutes and by keeping his commandments](#), as this [day](#)."

UST

⁶¹ I pray that you, his people, will always be [fully committed](#) to [Yahweh](#), and that you will obey all his [statutes and commands](#), like you [are doing now](#)."

1 Kings 8:62

all Israel with him

This generalization may refer either: (1) to the people whom Solomon called to Jerusalem and who are listed in [1 Kings 8:1](#), or (2) to those who traveled to Jerusalem for the feast, not necessarily to every person who lived in Israel. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the king](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [were sacrificing](#)
- [sacrifices](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then the king](#)
- [the Israelite people](#)
- [offered sacrifices](#)
- [offered sacrifices](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

⁶² [And the king](#) and all [Israel](#) with him [were sacrificing sacrifices](#) before the face of [Yahweh](#).

UST

⁶² [Then the king](#) and all [the Israelite people](#) who were there [offered sacrifices](#) to [Yahweh](#).

1 Kings 8:63

all the people of Israel

This generalization may refer either: (1) to the people whom Solomon called to Jerusalem and who are listed in [1 Kings 8:1](#), or (2) to those who traveled to Jerusalem for the feast, not necessarily to every person who lived in Israel. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

twenty-two thousand oxen

“22,000 oxen” (See: [Numbers](#))

120,000 sheep

“one hundred twenty thousand sheep” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- And...sacrificed
- a sacrifice of
- he sacrificed
- Israel
- And...dedicated
- the house of...Yahweh
- peace offerings
- to Yahweh
- cattle
- and...sheep
- the king
- the sons of

Translation Words - UST

- They sacrificed
- They sacrificed
- They sacrificed
- Yahweh
- people
- dedicated
- the temple
- cattle
- sheep
- to restore fellowship with
- Yahweh
- Then...king
- people

ULT

⁶³ And Solomon sacrificed a sacrifice of peace offerings which he sacrificed to Yahweh: 22,000 cattle and 120,000 sheep. And the king and all the sons of Israel dedicated the house of Yahweh.

UST

⁶³ They sacrificed twenty-two thousand cattle and 120,000 sheep to restore fellowship with Yahweh. Then the king and all the people dedicated the temple.

1 Kings 8:64

the bronze altar that was before Yahweh

“the bronze altar that was in Yahweh’s presence.” Since the temple is Yahweh’s dwelling place among his people, the altar is described as being in his presence.

Translation Words - ULT

- On...day
- the king
- Yahweh (2)
- set apart
- the courtyard
- the house of Yahweh
- the burnt up offering
- the burnt up offering
- the grain offering
- the grain offering (2)
- the peace offerings
- the peace offerings
- the altar of
- bronze

Translation Words - UST

- On that day
- the king
- the bronze
- also dedicated
- of the courtyard
- temple
- sacrifices that would be completely burned on
- all those sacrifices...be burned
- the altar
- to restore fellowship with
- on it that day
- Yahweh (2)
- They sacrificed them there
- all those sacrifices...be burned (2)

ULT

64 On that day the king set apart the middle of the courtyard that was before the face of the house of Yahweh, for he made there the burnt up offering and the grain offering and the fat pieces of the peace offerings because the altar of bronze that was before the face of Yahweh was too small to contain the burnt up offering and the grain offering and the fat pieces of the peace offerings.

UST

64 On that day, the king also dedicated the middle part of the courtyard that was in front of the temple. Then he offered there sacrifices that would be completely burned on the altar, the offerings of flour and the fat of the animals that were sacrificed to restore fellowship with Yahweh. They sacrificed them there because the bronze altar was not big enough for all those sacrifices to be burned on it that day.

1 Kings 8:65

all Israel with him

This generalization may refer either: (1) to the people whom Solomon called to Jerusalem and who are listed in [1 Kings 8:1](#), or (2) to those who traveled to Jerusalem for the feast, not necessarily to every person who lived in Israel. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 8:62](#). (See: [Hyperbole](#))

seven days ... seven days ... fourteen days

"7 days...7 days...14 days" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- the feast
- Israel
- a...assembly
- Egypt
- Yahweh
- our God
- days
- days
- days

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- Israelite people
- the Festival of Shelters
- days and then
- days
- days
- before the Lord
- before the Lord
- of people there
- and the border of Egypt in the far south

ULT

⁶⁵ And [Solomon](#) performed [the feast](#) at that time, and all [Israel](#) with him, a great [assembly](#), from Lebo Hamath as far as the wadi of [Egypt](#), before the face of [Yahweh our God](#) seven [days](#) and seven [days](#), 14 [days](#).

UST

⁶⁵ Then [Solomon](#) and all the [Israelite people](#) celebrated [the Festival of Shelters](#) for seven [days and then](#) for another seven [days, before the Lord](#), for a total of fourteen [days](#). There was a huge crowd [of people there](#), some of whom had come from distant places like Hamath in the far north [and the border of Egypt in the far south](#).

1 Kings 8:66

eighth day

The word "eighth" is the ordinal form of "8." (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

joyful and glad

The two words mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- On the...day
- Yahweh
- for David
- his servant
- and for Israel
- the people
- his people
- and they blessed
- the king
- to their tents
- rejoicing
- and good of
- the goodness
- heart

Translation Words - UST

- day
- the people
- They all praised him
- David and
- David and
- his
- Israelite people
- to their homes
- happy
- because of all
- things that
- because of all
- Yahweh
- to bless

ULT

66 On the eighth day he sent the people away, and they blessed the king and they went to their tents rejoicing and good of heart on account of all the goodness that Yahweh had done for David, his servant, and for Israel, his people.

UST

66 On the final day, Solomon sent the people to their homes. They all praised him and went home happy because of all the things that Yahweh had done to bless David and his Israelite people.

1 Kings 9

1 Kings 9 General Notes

Structure and formatting

There are two parts to this chapter. Verses 1–9 is a dream in which God warned Solomon that he and his descendants were not to worship idols. If they did this, the temple would be destroyed. Verses 10–28 is about Solomon's extensive building and his partnership with Hiram, king of Tyre. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Worship only Yahweh

Yahweh alone must be worshiped. It is necessary for people to stay faithful to God and not worship idols. (See: [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [trustworthy](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

“Walk” is a common image in Scripture. It is said, “if you walk before me as David your father walked.” (See: [walk](#), [walked](#))

1 Kings 9:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- Solomon (2)
- the house of...Yahweh
- the house of
- the king
- he delighted

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon's workers
- that Solomon wanted them (2)
- the temple
- and his
- palace
- that Solomon wanted them

ULT

¹ And it happened as soon as Solomon finished building the house of Yahweh and the house of the king, and every desire of Solomon that he delighted to do,

UST

¹ After Solomon's workers had finished building the temple and his palace and everything else that Solomon wanted them to build,

1 Kings 9:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Solomon
- at Gibeon

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- him in a dream
- city of Gibeon

ULT

² that Yahweh appeared to Solomon a second time, just as he had appeared to him at Gibeon.

UST

² Yahweh appeared to him in a dream a second time, like he had appeared to him at the city of Gibeon.

1 Kings 9:3

your prayer and your request

The words “prayer” and “request” mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh recognized that Solomon’s request was sincere. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 8:28](#).
Alternate translation: “your request” (See: [Doublet](#))

to put my name there forever

The name is a metonym for the person. Alternate translation: “to dwell there and to claim possession of it forever” (See: [Metonymy](#))

My eyes and my heart will be there

The eyes and heart are synecdoche for the whole person. Alternate translation: “I will protect and care for it” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- your prayer
- your plea for favor
- you plead for favor
- I have set apart
- house
- my name
- eternity
- and my heart
- the days

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- prayed
- pleaded for me
- I have set
- house
- apart
- myself
- for me...in...forever
- for me...in...forever
- for me...in...forever

ULT

³ And Yahweh said to him, “I have heard your prayer and your plea for favor that you plead for favor before my face. I have set apart this house that you built, by setting my name there until eternity. And my eyes and my heart will be there all the days.

UST

³ Yahweh said to him, “I heard what you prayed and what you pleaded for me to do. I have set this house apart for myself, for me to be present in it forever.

1 Kings 9:4

if you walk before me as David your father walked

The way a person lives is spoken of as if that person were walking on a path. Alternate translation: "if you live the way I want you to live, just as David your father did" (See: [Metaphor](#))

in integrity of heart and in uprightness

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize how righteous David was. (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [your father](#)
- [heart](#)
- [and with uprightness](#)
- [I have commanded you](#)
- [if you keep](#)
- [my statutes](#)
- [and my judgments](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [conduct](#)
- [like your father](#)
- [David](#)
- [very sincerely](#)
- [very sincerely](#)
- [I have commanded you to obey](#)
- [I have commanded you to obey](#)
- [I have commanded you to obey](#)

ULT

⁴ And as for you, if you will walk before my face just as [David your father](#) walked with completeness of [heart and with uprightness](#), by doing according to all that [I have commanded you, if you keep my statutes and my judgments](#),

UST

⁴ And as for you, if you [conduct](#) your life as I want you to, [like your father David](#) did, and if you [very sincerely](#) obey all the statutes and decrees that [I have commanded you to obey](#),

1 Kings 9:5

the throne of your kingdom

Here “throne” refers to his reign. Alternate translation: “your dynasty” or “your reign” (See: [Metonymy](#))

will never fail to be on the throne of Israel

The action of ruling a kingdom is spoken of as if it were a person sitting on a throne. This can be expressed positively. Alternate translation: “will always rule over Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Litotes](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- then I will raise up
- the throne of
- the throne of
- your kingdom
- Israel
- Israel
- for eternity
- David
- your father
- will...be cut off

Translation Words - UST

- I will do
- father
- father
- be ruled
- I would do
- I promised him
- his descendants
- that Israel
- would always
- be ruled

ULT

⁵ then I will raise up the throne of your kingdom over Israel for eternity, just as I spoke to David your father, saying, ‘A man for you will not be cut off from on the throne of Israel.’

UST

⁵ I will do what I promised your father that I would do. I promised him that Israel would always be ruled by his descendants.

1 Kings 9:6

my commandments and my statutes

Here the words “commandments” and “statutes” mean basically the same thing and emphasize all that Yahweh has commanded. (See: [Doublet](#))

worship other gods and bow down to them

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- you...turn back
- or your sons
- you do...keep
- my commandments
- my statutes
- and serve
- gods
- and you bow down

Translation Words - UST

- or your descendants
- stop worshiping me
- suppose that you disobey
- commands and decrees that I
- suppose that you start to...other gods
- suppose that you start to...other gods
- suppose that you start to...other gods
- worship

ULT

⁶ If you ever [turn back](#), you [or your sons](#), from after me and [you do](#) not [keep my commandments, my statutes](#) that I have given before your face, and you go [and serve](#) other [gods and you bow down](#) to them,

UST

⁶ But suppose that you [or your descendants stop worshiping me](#); [suppose that you disobey the commands and decrees that I have given to you](#); [suppose that you start to worship other gods](#).

1 Kings 9:7

set apart to my name

Here the word “name” is a metonym for the person who possesses something. Alternate translation: “set apart for myself” (See: [Metonymy](#))

I will cast it out of my sight

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **sight**, you could express the same idea with the verb “see.” Looking at something is a metaphor for protecting it. Alternate translation: “I will put it where I no longer have to see it” or “I will get rid of it so I no longer have to protect it” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- then I will cut off
- Israel
- Israel
- the house
- I have set apart
- for my name
- I will send away
- for a proverb
- the peoples

Translation Words - UST

- Then I will remove
- my Israelite people
- Israel
- I will also abandon
- this temple
- dedicated
- dedicated
- Then people
- will despise

ULT

7 then I will cut off Israel from on the face of the ground that I have given to them, and the house that I have set apart for my name, I will send away from on my face, and Israel will be for a proverb and for a taunt among all the peoples.

UST

7 Then I will remove my Israelite people from the land that I have given to them. I will also abandon this temple that I have dedicated. Then people everywhere will despise Israel and make fun of it.

1 Kings 9:8

This temple will become a heap of ruins

Alternate translation: "This temple will be destroyed and its remains will be piled into a high mound"

will be shocked and will hiss

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "will express amazement and make a sound of disrespect" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...house](#)
- [and to...house](#)
- [will be appalled](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [to...land](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [temple](#)
- [temple](#)
- [astonished when they see it](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [this land](#)

ULT

⁸ And this [house](#) will be elevated, every one who passes by near it [will be appalled](#) and will hiss. And they will say, 'On what account did [Yahweh](#) do thus to this [land and to](#) this [house](#)?'

UST

⁸ Despite the fact that this [temple](#) is very beautiful, there will come a time when everyone who passes by will be [astonished when they see it](#), and they will hiss and say, 'Why has [Yahweh](#) done this to [this land](#) and to this [temple](#)?'

1 Kings 9:9

bowed down to them and worshiped them

These two phrases mean the same thing. The phrase "bowed down to them" describes the posture that people used in worship. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- they forsook
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- evil
- their God
- to...gods
- their fathers
- from the land of
- Egypt
- and bowed down
- and served them

Translation Words - UST

- Israelite people abandoned
- Yahweh
- Yahweh has caused them to experience
- these disasters
- their God
- accept...gods
- their ancestors
- Egypt
- Egypt
- They started to
- and worship

ULT

⁹ And they will say, 'Because [they forsook Yahweh their God](#), who brought [their fathers](#) out [from the land of Egypt](#), and they held on to other [gods](#) and bowed down to them and served them. Therefore [Yahweh](#) brought on them all this [evil](#).'

UST

⁹ Other people will reply, 'It happened because the [Israelite people abandoned Yahweh their God](#), the one who brought [their ancestors](#) out of [Egypt](#). [They started to accept and worship other gods](#). And that is why [Yahweh has caused them to experience all these disasters](#).'

1 Kings 9:10

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way of doing this, you could consider using it here.

at the end of twenty years

Alternate translation: "after 20 years"

Solomon had finished building

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Solomon do this. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [the...houses](#)
- [the house of](#) (2)
- [the house of...Yahweh](#)
- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon's workers worked for...temple](#)
- [Solomon's workers worked for...temple](#)
- [and the palace](#) (2)
- [Solomon's workers worked for...temple](#)
- [and the palace](#)

ULT

¹⁰ And it happened from the end of 20 years that [Solomon](#) had built the two [houses, the house of Yahweh](#) and [the house of the king](#).

UST

¹⁰ [Solomon's workers worked for](#) twenty years to build the [temple and the palace](#).

1 Kings 9:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- the king
- Tyre
- the Galilee
- Solomon
- Solomon
- cedar
- cypress
- and with gold
- his delight
- in the land of

Translation Words - UST

- the king of
- he
- Tyre
- of Galilee
- Solomon
- After it was all finished, King Solomon
- all the cedar
- and pine logs
- the gold that
- needed for this work
- in the region

ULT

¹¹ Hiram, the king of Tyre, had lifted Solomon with trees of cedar and with trees of cypress and with gold, according to all his delight. Then the king Solomon gave to Hiram 20 cities in the land of the Galilee.

UST

¹¹ Hiram, the king of the city of Tyre, had arranged for his workers to give Solomon all the cedar and pine logs and all the gold that he needed for this work. After it was all finished, King Solomon gave to Hiram twenty cities in the region of Galilee.

1 Kings 9:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- from Tyre
- Solomon
- they were...right

Translation Words - UST

- from Tyre to Galilee
- Solomon
- he was...pleased with them

ULT

¹² And Hiram came out from Tyre to see the cities that Solomon had given to him, but they were not right in his eyes.

UST

¹² But when Hiram went from Tyre to Galilee to see the cities that Solomon had given to him, he was not pleased with them.

1 Kings 9:13

What cities are these which you have given me, my brother?

Hiram is rebuking Solomon. This questions can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "These cities that you have given me are good for nothing." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

which they are still called today

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "and people still call them that today" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- my brother
- And he called
- the land of
- day

Translation Words - UST

- My friend
- of that
- Hiram called
- that region

ULT

¹³ And he said, "What are these cities that you have given to me, [my brother](#)?" [And he called](#) them [the land of](#) Kabul until this [day](#).

UST

¹³ He said to Solomon, "[My friend](#), those cities that you gave me are worthless." Because [of that](#), [Hiram called that region](#) Worthless.

1 Kings 9:14

120 talents of gold

“one hundred and twenty talents of gold.” A talent is a unit of weight equal to about 33 kilograms. Alternate translation: “about 4,000 kilograms of gold” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...sent](#)
- [to the king](#)
- [gold](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gave](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [of gold for those cities](#)

ULT

¹⁴ And Hiram [sent to the king](#) 120 kikkars of [gold](#).

UST

¹⁴ Hiram [gave Solomon](#) only 4,000 kilograms [of gold for those cities](#).

1 Kings 9:15

the account of the forced labor which King Solomon imposed

Alternate translation: "the account of Solomon requiring men to work"

the Millo

This could mean: (1) "the terrace system" or (2) "the landfill."

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- Solomon
- the house of...Yahweh
- his house
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- King
- Solomon
- the temple
- and his palace
- around Jerusalem

ULT

¹⁵ Now this is the matter of the forced labor that the king Solomon brought up to build the house of Yahweh and his house and the Millo and the wall of Jerusalem and Hazor and Megiddo and Gezer.

UST

¹⁵ This is a record of the work that King Solomon forced men to do. He forced them to build the temple and his palace and the landfill on the east side of the city, and the wall around Jerusalem, and to rebuild the cities of Hazor, Megiddo, and Gezer.

1 Kings 9:16

Pharaoh king of Egypt had gone up

The person is a metonym for the army he commands. Alternate translation: "The army of Pharaoh, king of Egypt, had gone up" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Pharaoh
- the king of
- Egypt
- and seized
- with fire
- he slew
- the Canaanite
- Solomon

Translation Words - UST

- was that the army of the king of Egypt
- was that the army of the king of Egypt
- and captured it
- Then they had burned the houses in the city
- and killed
- all the people of the Canaan people group
- The king of Egypt
- Solomon

ULT

16 [Pharaoh, the king of Egypt](#), had gone up [and seized](#) Gezer and he burned it [with fire](#) and [he slew the Canaanite](#), the one who dwelled in the city. And he gave it as sending gifts to his daughter, the wife of [Solomon](#).

UST

16 The reason they needed to rebuild Gezer [was that the army of the king of Egypt](#) had attacked Gezer [and captured it](#). Then they had burned the houses in the city and killed all the people of the [Canaan people group](#) who lived there. [The king of Egypt](#) gave that city to his daughter for a gift when she married [Solomon](#).

1 Kings 9:17

So Solomon rebuilt Gezer

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Solomon do this. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon's workers](#)

ULT

¹⁷ And [Solomon](#) built Gezer and lower Beth Horon

UST

¹⁷ So [Solomon's workers](#) also rebuilt the city of Gezer, and they also rebuilt the city of Lower Beth Horon.

1 Kings 9:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Tadmor](#)
- [in the wilderness](#)
- [in the land](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Tamar](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [earth, land](#)

ULT

¹⁸ and Baalath and [Tadmor in the wilderness in the land](#) ^[1]

UST

¹⁸ They also rebuilt the cities of Baalath and Tamar in the wilderness in the southern part of Judah.

1 Kings 9:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the storehouses
- for Solomon
- Solomon
- the chariotry
- the horsemen
- to build
- and in the Lebanon
- in Jerusalem
- the land of
- his dominion

Translation Words - UST

- supplies for
- Solomon
- he
- horses
- and chariots
- to build
- Lebanon
- in Jerusalem
- and in other places
- the area over which he ruled

ULT

¹⁹ and all the cities of the storehouses that were for Solomon and the cities of the chariotry and the cities of the horsemen and the desire of Solomon, whatever he desired to build in Jerusalem and in the Lebanon and in all the land of his dominion.

UST

¹⁹ They also built the cities where they kept the supplies for Solomon, the places where his horses and chariots were kept. They also built everything else that he wanted them to build, in Jerusalem and in Lebanon, and in other places in the area over which he ruled.

1 Kings 9:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- the ones who were left over
- the Amorite
- the Hittite
- the Perizzite
- the Hivite
- and the Jebusite
- of the sons of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- people groups
- the Amor
- the Heth
- the Periz
- the Hiv
- and...Jebus
- who were...killed when the
- Israelites
- captured their land

ULT

²⁰ All the people, the ones who were left over from the Amorite, the Hittite, the Perizzite, the Hivite, and the Jebusite, they who were not of the sons of Israel,

UST

²⁰ There were many people groups who belonged to the Amor, the Heth, the Periz, the Hiv, and the Jebus, who were not killed when the Israelites captured their land.

1 Kings 9:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- their sons
- the sons of
- were left over
- in the land
- Israel
- Solomon
- serving
- day

Translation Words - UST

- Their descendants
- slaves
- still lived in
- still lived in
- Israel
- Solomon
- to build
- are still

ULT

²¹ their sons who were left over after them in the land, them whom the sons of Israel were not able to utterly destroy, Solomon brought them up for the forced labor of serving until this day.

UST

²¹ Their descendants still lived in Israel. It was those people whom Solomon forced to become his slaves to build all those places, and they are still slaves.

1 Kings 9:22

Solomon made no forced laborers of the people of Israel

Alternate translation: "Solomon did not force the people of Israel to labor"

Translation Words - ULT

- But from the sons of
- Israel
- Solomon
- a servant
- and his servants
- and his commanders
- and the commanders of
- his chariotry
- and his horsemen

Translation Words - UST

- But Solomon
- any Israelite people
- any Israelite people
- army officers
- to become
- slaves
- soldiers, servants, officials
- who rode on
- his horses

ULT

²² But from the sons of Israel Solomon did not give a servant, for they were the men of warfare and his servants and his commanders and his third men and the commanders of his chariotry and his horsemen.

UST

²² But Solomon did not force any Israelite people to become slaves. Some of them became soldiers, servants, officials, army officers, commanders of his chariot forces, and men who rode on his horses.

1 Kings 9:23

550 of them

“five hundred and fifty of them” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- were the commanders of
- the work
- the work
- for Solomon
- the ones having dominion
- over the people

Translation Words - UST

- There were
- officials
- who supervised
- build all
- slaves who worked
- slaves who worked

ULT

²³ These [were the commanders of](#) the stationed ones who were over [the work for Solomon](#), 550, [the ones having dominion over the people](#), the ones doing [the work](#).

UST

²³ There were 550 officials who supervised the [slaves who worked](#) to [build all](#) those places.

1 Kings 9:24

built the Millo

This could mean: (1) “built the terrace system” or (2) “built the landfill.” See how you translated “the Millo” in [1 Kings 9:15](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Pharoah](#)
- [David](#)
- [her house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of the king of Egypt](#)
- [David](#)
- [the palace](#)

ULT

²⁴ As soon as the daughter of [Pharoah](#) went up from the city of [David](#) to [her house](#) that he had built for her, then he built the Millo.

UST

²⁴ After Solomon's wife, who was the daughter [of the king of Egypt](#), moved from the part of Jerusalem called the city of [David](#) to [the palace](#) that Solomon's workers built for her, Solomon told his workers to fill in the land on the east side of the city.

1 Kings 9:25

altar that was before Yahweh

See how you translated this phrase in [1 Kings 8:64](#).

So he completed the temple

Solomon is a metonym for the workers he hired to do the work.
Alternate translation: "So his workers completed the temple" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- in the year
- burnt up offerings
- and peace offerings
- the altar
- for Yahweh
- Yahweh
- and he burned incense
- the house

Translation Words - UST

- year
- Solomon
- temple offerings...the priests burned completely
- on the altar
- and offerings to promise friendship
- with Yahweh
- Yahweh
- He also brought incense to be burned
- the temple

ULT

²⁵ And Solomon offered up three times in the year burnt up offerings and peace offerings on the altar that he built for Yahweh, and he burned incense with it, which was before the face of Yahweh. And he completed the house.

UST

²⁵ Three times each year Solomon brought to the temple offerings that the priests burned completely on the altar and offerings to promise friendship with Yahweh. He also brought incense to be burned in the presence of Yahweh. And that is how his men finished building the temple.

1 Kings 9:26

King Solomon built

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Solomon do this. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

a fleet of ships

Alternate translation: “a large group of ships”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [the sea of reeds](#)
- [in the land of](#)
- [Edom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [King](#)
- [Solomon's workers also built](#)
- [the Sea of Reeds](#)
- [in the land](#)
- [the Edom people group](#)

ULT

²⁶ And [the king Solomon](#) made a fleet in Ezion Geber, which is near Elath on the lip of [the sea of reeds in the land of Edom](#).

UST

²⁶ [King Solomon's workers also built](#) a fleet of ships at the city of Ezion Geber, which is near the city of Elath, on the shore of [the Sea of Reeds, in the land](#) belonging to [the Edom people group](#).

1 Kings 9:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And...sent
- his servants
- the servants of
- who knew
- Solomon

Translation Words - UST

- sent
- some...sailors
- workers
- expert
- with Solomon's

ULT

²⁷ And Hiram **sent** in the fleet **his servants**, men of ships **who knew** the sea, with **the servants of Solomon**.

UST

²⁷ King Hiram **sent some expert sailors** to go on the ships **with Solomon's workers**.

1 Kings 9:28

420 talents of gold

“four hundred and twenty talents of gold.” A talent is a unit of weight equal to about 33 kilograms. Alternate translation: “about 14,000 kilograms of gold” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [gold](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [of gold](#)

ULT

28 And they came to Ophir and took from there [gold](#), 420 kikkars. And they brought it to [the king Solomon](#).
9:18 ^[1]

UST

28 They sailed to the region of Ophir and brought back to [Solomon](#) about fourteen metric tons [of gold](#).

1 Kings 10

1 Kings 10 General Notes

Structure and formatting

There are two parts to this chapter: The fame of Solomon's wisdom and the wealth of his kingdom. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Queen of Sheba

King Solomon became so famous for his wisdom that the queen of Sheba (modern day Yemen) came all the way to see him and was deeply impressed. God promised him great wealth and he became famously rich. (See: [promise](#), [promised](#))

1 Kings 10:1

Solomon's fame concerning the name of Yahweh

Here Yahweh is represented by his "name." This could mean: (1) Alternate translation: "Solomon's fame, which glorified Yahweh" or (2) Alternate translation: "Solomon's fame, which Yahweh had given him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Now the queen of
- Sheba
- the report of
- Solomon
- with respect to the name of
- Yahweh
- to test him

Translation Words - UST

- The queen
- who ruled the land of Sheba
- that
- Yahweh
- had caused...to become famous
- Solomon
- to ask him questions that were difficult to answer

ULT

¹ Now the queen of Sheba heard the report of Solomon with respect to the name of Yahweh. And she came to test him with difficult questions.

UST

¹ The queen who ruled the land of Sheba heard that Yahweh had caused Solomon to become famous, so she traveled to Jerusalem to ask him questions that were difficult to answer.

1 Kings 10:2

all that was in her heart

This is a generalization. Alternate translation: “everything she wanted to know” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to Jerusalem
- with...strength
- camels
- and...gold
- precious
- Solomon
- her heart

Translation Words - UST

- She
- with a large group of wealthy people
- camels
- precious
- gold
- Solomon
- which she was interested

ULT

² And she came to Jerusalem with very heavy strength, camels lifting spices and very much gold and precious stone. And she came to Solomon and spoke to him all that was with her heart.

UST

² She came with a large group of wealthy people, and she brought camels that were loaded with spices, precious gems, and much gold. When she met Solomon, she asked him questions about all the things in which she was interested.

1 Kings 10:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- And...told
- he did...tell
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- answered
- that
- He

ULT

³ And Solomon told her all her matters.
There was not a matter hidden from the king that he did not tell her.

UST

³ Solomon answered all her questions.
He explained everything that she asked about, even things that were very difficult.

1 Kings 10:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the queen of
- Sheba
- the wisdom of
- Solomon
- and the house

Translation Words - UST

- The queen
- The queen
- Solomon
- wise
- palace

ULT

⁴ And the queen of Sheba saw all the wisdom of Solomon and the house that he had built

UST

⁴ The queen realized that Solomon was very wise. She saw his palace,

1 Kings 10:5

the seating of his servants

This could mean: (1) "how his servants were seated around the table" or (2) "where his servants lived."

there was no more breath in her

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "she was utterly amazed" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his servants](#)
- [and his cupbearers](#)
- [and his burnt up offerings](#)
- [at the house of Yahweh](#)
- [breath](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [she saw where his officials lived, their uniforms](#)
- [and the sacrifices](#)
- [to the temple to be offered](#)
- [She was extremely amazed](#)
- [cupbearer](#)

ULT

⁵ and the food of his table and the seating of [his servants](#) and the service of his attendants and their apparel [and his cupbearers and his burnt up offerings](#) that he offered up [at the house of Yahweh](#). And there was no more [breath](#) in her.

UST

⁵ she saw the food that was served on his table every day, [she saw where his officials lived, their uniforms](#), the servants who served the food and wine, [and the sacrifices](#) that he took [to the temple to be offered](#). [She was extremely amazed](#).

1 Kings 10:6

I heard in my own land

Alternate translation: "I heard while I was in my own land"

your words and your wisdom

Here the word "wisdom" can describe the word "words." Alternate translation: "your wise sayings" (See: [Hendiadys](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- True
- in my land
- your wisdom

Translation Words - UST

- the king
- my own country
- wise
- is true

ULT

⁶ And she said to the king, "True is the word that I heard in my land concerning your words and concerning your wisdom.

UST

⁶ She said to the king, "Everything that I heard in my own country about you and about how wise you are is true!

1 Kings 10:7

my eyes have seen it

The phrase “my eyes” emphasizes that she herself saw it. Alternate translation: “I have seen it for myself” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Not half was told me about your wisdom and wealth

This can be stated without the passive form. Alternate translation: “They did not tell me about even half of your wisdom and wealth” or “You are much more wise and wealthy than what they told me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- I did...believe
- was...told
- the report
- wisdom
- and goodness

Translation Words - UST

- believe it was true
- is only half of what they could have told me
- people told me
- You are extremely wise and rich, more than what
- You are extremely wise and rich, more than what

ULT

⁷ And I did not believe the words until when I came and my eyes saw, and behold, the half was not told to me! You added wisdom and goodness to the report that I had heard.

UST

⁷ But I did not believe it was true until I came here and saw it myself. But really, what they told me is only half of what they could have told me about you. You are extremely wise and rich, more than what people told me.

1 Kings 10:8

who constantly stand before you

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “who are always in your presence waiting to serve you” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- are...servants of yours
- your wisdom

Translation Words - UST

- are your servants
- wise things that

ULT

⁸ Happy are your men! Happy are these [servants of yours](#), the ones who stand continually before your face, the ones who hear [your wisdom](#)! ^[1]

UST

⁸ How fortunate are your wives! And how fortunate [are your servants](#), who are waiting to serve you, who are listening to the [wise things that](#) you say!

1 Kings 10:9

May Yahweh your God be praised

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "May people praise Yahweh your God" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

who placed you on the throne of Israel

The throne is a metonym for the king who sits on it. Alternate translation: "who made you king of Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- your God
- for eternity
- as king
- justice
- and righteousness
- be blessed
- has delighted
- the throne of
- Israel
- Israel
- Because...loves

Translation Words - UST

- Praise
- Yahweh
- you (2)
- king
- in order that
- will rule them fairly and righteously
- your God
- who has shown that he is pleased with
- king
- the Israelite people
- Israel
- God has...loved
- always

ULT

⁹ May Yahweh your God be blessed, who [has delighted](#) in you, to give you on [the throne of Israel](#). [Because Yahweh loves Israel for eternity](#), he set you [as king](#) to do [justice and righteousness!](#)"

UST

⁹ [Praise Yahweh, your God, who has shown that he is pleased with you by causing you to become the king of Israel! God has always loved the Israelite people, and therefore he has appointed you to be their king, in order that you will rule them fairly and righteously.](#)"

1 Kings 10:10

120 talents of gold

“one hundred and twenty talents of gold.” A talent is a unit of weight equal to about 33 kilograms. Alternate translation: “about 4,000 kilograms of gold” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

No greater amount of spices ... was ever given to him again

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “No one ever again gave to King Solomon more spices than the queen of Sheba gave to him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to the king
- to King
- gold
- precious
- the queen of
- Sheba
- Solomon

Translation Words - UST

- Then the queen
- Then the queen
- the king the things that she had
- King
- of gold
- again did
- Solomon

ULT

¹⁰ And she gave to the king 120 kikkars of gold and very many spices and precious stone. There has not come again like that spice with respect to abundance that the queen of Sheba gave to King Solomon.

UST

¹⁰ Then the queen gave to the king the things that she had brought. She gave him over 4,000 kilograms of gold and a large amount of spices and gems. Never again did King Solomon receive more spices than the queen gave him at that time.

1 Kings 10:11

almug wood

a type of wood, possibly one with a pleasant scent (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- gold
- precious

Translation Words - UST

- gold
- and precious

ULT

11 And also the fleet of Hiram, which lifted [gold](#) from Ophir, brought from Ophir very many trees of almug and [precious](#) stone.

UST

11 In the ships that belong to King Hiram, in which they had previously brought [gold](#) from Ophir, they also brought a large amount of almug wood [and precious](#) gem stones.

1 Kings 10:12

The king made

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Solomon do this. Alternate translation: “The king told his people to make” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

or been seen again

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “nor has anyone ever seen such a great quantity again” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to this day

This means to the day that the author was writing this.

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the king
- for the house of Yahweh
- and for the house of
- and lyres
- and harps
- day

Translation Words - UST

- his
- King Solomon told
- temple
- and in his palace
- and also to make harps
- and lyres
- had

ULT

¹² And [the king](#) made the trees of almug a support [for the house of Yahweh and for the house of the king, and lyres and harps](#) for the ones who sing. Such trees of almug had not come in and had not been seen until this [day](#).

UST

¹² [King Solomon told his](#) workers to use that wood to make pillars in the [temple and in his palace, and also to make harps and lyres](#) for the musicians. That wood was the largest amount of fine wood that [had](#) ever been brought to or seen in Israel.

1 Kings 10:13

everything she wished for, whatever she asked

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

of his royal bounty

Alternate translation: "because as king he had so much"

Translation Words - ULT

- And the king
- the king
- Solomon
- Solomon
- to the queen of
- Sheba
- according to the hand of
- And she turned
- to her land
- and her servants

Translation Words - UST

- King
- he
- He gave her those gifts
- Solomon
- to the queen
- from Sheba
- gave
- and the people who came with her
- returned
- to her own land

ULT

¹³ And the king Solomon gave to the queen of Sheba all her desire, whatever she requested apart from what he gave to her according to the hand of the king Solomon. And she turned and went to her land, she and her servants.

UST

¹³ King Solomon gave to the queen from Sheba everything that she wanted. He gave her those gifts in addition to the gifts that he always gave to other rulers who visited him. Then she and the people who came with her returned to her own land.

1 Kings 10:14

in one year

“each year.” This refers to every year of Solomon’s reign, and not to just one time.

666 talents of gold

“six hundred sixty-six.” A talent is a unit of weight equal to about 33 kilograms. Alternate translation: “almost 22,000 kilograms of gold” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the gold](#)
- [gold](#)
- [to Solomon](#)
- [in...year](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [year](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [gold](#)
- [twenty-two metric...of](#)

ULT

14 And the weight of [the gold](#) that came [to Solomon](#) in one [year](#) was 666 kikkars of [gold](#),

UST

14 Each [year](#) there was brought to [Solomon](#) a total of [twenty-two metric tons of gold](#).

1 Kings 10:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the kings of
- the Arab
- and the governors of
- the land

Translation Words - UST

- by the kings
- of Arabia
- and by the governors of the districts
- Israel

ULT

¹⁵ apart from the men of the ones who explore and from the merchandise of the ones who go about, and all the kings of the Arab and the governors of the land.

UST

¹⁵ That was in addition to the taxes paid to him by the merchants and traders, and the annual taxes paid by the kings of Arabia and by the governors of the districts in Israel.

1 Kings 10:16

King Solomon made

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Solomon do this. Alternate translation: “King Solomon’s men made” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

two hundred large shields

“200 large shields” (See: [Numbers](#))

Six hundred shekels of gold

A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. Alternate translation: “About 6.6 kilograms of gold” or “Six and one half kilograms of gold” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

Six hundred shekels

Because the word “shekels” does not appear here in the Hebrew text, some modern versions assume instead the unit of bekah, which was equivalent to only a half shekel. Any version making this assumption would signal a metric equivalent of about three kilograms.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [gold](#)
- [gold](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [King](#)
- [Solomon’s workers](#)
- [took this gold](#)
- [of gold](#)

ULT

¹⁶ And [the king Solomon](#) made 200 large beaten [gold](#) shields, 600 [gold](#) went up on one large shield,

UST

¹⁶ [King Solomon’s workers](#) took this [gold](#) and hammered it into thin sheets and covered two hundred large shields with those thin sheets [of gold](#). They put six and one-half kilograms of gold on each shield.

1 Kings 10:17

He also made

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Solomon do this. Alternate translation: “The king’s men also made” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

three hundred shields

“300 shields” (See: [Numbers](#))

Three minas of gold

A mina is a unit of weight equal to about 550 grams. Alternate translation: “About 1.7 kilograms of gold” or “One and three-quarters kilograms of gold” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon

“the house called the House of the Lebanon Forest.” See how you translated this in [1 Kings 7:2](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [gold](#)
- [gold](#)
- [shields](#)
- [shield](#)
- [the king](#)
- [to the house of](#)
- [the Lebanon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [smaller shields](#)
- [shields](#)
- [gold](#)
- [and three-quarters kilograms](#)
- [Then the king](#)
- [in the Palace](#)
- [of Lebanon](#)

ULT

¹⁷ and 300 beaten [gold shields](#), three [gold](#) minas went up on one [shield](#). And [the king](#) gave them [to the house of](#) the forest of [the Lebanon](#).

UST

¹⁷ His workers made three hundred [smaller shields](#). They covered each of them with one [and three-quarters kilograms](#) of [gold](#). [Then the king](#) put those [shields in the Palace](#) of the Forest of [Lebanon](#).

1 Kings 10:18

the king made

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped the king do this. Alternate translation: “the king’s men made” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

throne of ivory

Ivory is the hard, white substance from the tusks or teeth of large animals. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [a...throne](#)
- [with...gold](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [His workers](#)
- [a large throne](#)
- [gold](#)

ULT

¹⁸ And [the king](#) made a great ivory [throne](#) and he overlaid it with refined [gold](#).

UST

¹⁸ [His workers](#) also made for him [a large throne](#). Part of it was covered with ivory, and part of it was covered with very fine [gold](#).

1 Kings 10:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- to the throne
- for the throne
- and a...head

Translation Words - UST

- head
- throne, enthroned
- throne, enthroned

ULT

¹⁹ There were six steps to the throne and a round head for the throne from behind it. And hands were from this side and from that side toward the place of the seat. And two lions were standing beside the hands.

UST

¹⁹⁻²⁰ There were six steps in front of the throne. There was a statue of a lion on both sides of each step. So altogether there were twelve statues of lions. The back of the throne was rounded at the top. At each side of the throne there was an armrest and alongside each armrest there was a small statue of a lion. No throne like that had ever existed in any other kingdom.

1 Kings 10:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- lions
- kingdoms

Translation Words - UST

- kingdom
- lion, lioness

ULT

²⁰ And 12 lions were standing there on the six steps, from this side and from that side. It was not made so for any kingdoms.

UST

¹⁹⁻²⁰ There were six steps in front of the throne. There was a statue of a lion on both sides of each step. So altogether there were twelve statues of lions. The back of the throne was rounded at the top. At each side of the throne there was an armrest and alongside each armrest there was a small statue of a lion. No throne like that had ever existed in any other kingdom.

1 Kings 10:21

the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon

“the house called the House of the Lebanon Forest.” See how you translated this in [1 Kings 7:2](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- Solomon
- Solomon
- were gold
- were...gold
- the house of
- the Lebanon
- silver
- in the days of

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon's
- Solomon
- Solomon's
- of gold
- were made of gold
- in the Palace
- of Lebanon
- because during the years that
- silver

ULT

²¹ And all the vessels of the drink of [the king Solomon](#) were gold, and all the vessels of [the house of](#) the forest of [the Lebanon](#) were beaten gold. There was no silver, it was not thought to be anything [in the days of Solomon](#).

UST

²¹ All of [Solomon's](#) cups were made of gold, and all the various dishes [in the Palace](#) of the Forest [of Lebanon](#) were made of gold. They did not make things from silver, [because during the years that Solomon](#) ruled silver was not considered to be valuable.

1 Kings 10:22

ivory

Ivory is the hard, white substance from the tusks or teeth of large animals. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 10:18](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

apes and baboons

These animals live wild in Africa. At the ends of their four limbs are what look like human hands and feet, and they have long tails. Some people consider baboons a type of ape. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Tarshish](#)
- [Tarshish](#)
- [was for the king](#)
- [years](#)
- [gold](#)
- [and silver](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The king](#)
- [the places](#)
- [The king](#)
- [years](#)
- [gold](#)
- [silver](#)

ULT

²² For the fleet of [Tarshish was for the king](#) on the sea with the fleet of Hiram. One of three [years](#) the fleet of [Tarshish](#) would come lifting [gold and silver](#), ivory pieces and apes and peacocks.

UST

²² [The king](#) had a fleet of ships that sailed with the ships that King Hiram owned. Every three [years](#) the ships returned from [the places](#) to which they had sailed bringing [gold](#), [silver](#), ivory, monkeys, and baboons.

1 Kings 10:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the kings of
- Solomon
- the earth
- and with respect to wisdom

Translation Words - UST

- King
- king
- Solomon
- and wiser than
- other

ULT

²³ And the king Solomon became greater than all the kings of the earth with respect to riches and with respect to wisdom.

UST

²³ King Solomon became richer and wiser than any other king.

1 Kings 10:24

All the earth

This is a generalization. Alternate translation: “People from everywhere” or “People from many different places” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

sought the presence of Solomon

The presence of the person is a metonym for being able to speak and listen to the person. Alternate translation: “sought an audience with Solomon” or “wanted to visit Solomon” (See: [Metonymy](#))

to hear his wisdom, which God had put in his heart

The heart is a metonym for what a person thinks and is spoken of as if it were a container. Here, **wisdom** is spoken of as if it were an object that could be put in a container and can be translated as an adjective. It can be a metonym for either the person or the words the person speaks. If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **wisdom**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: “to hear his wisdom, which God had given him” or “to hear how wise God had enabled him to be” or “to hear him speak the wise words that God had enabled him to speak” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

²⁴ And all [the earth](#) was seeking the face of [Solomon](#) to hear [his wisdom](#), which [God](#) had given [in his heart](#).

UST

²⁴ [People](#) from all [over the world](#) wanted to come and listen to the [wise things that Solomon said](#), [things that God](#) had put [into his mind](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the earth](#)
- [was seeking](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [his wisdom](#)
- [God](#)
- [in his heart](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [People...wanted to come](#)
- [over the world](#)
- [wise](#)
- [things that Solomon said](#)
- [things that...into his mind](#)
- [God](#)

1 Kings 10:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- his gift
- silver
- gold
- and garments
- horses
- and mules
- year
- by year

Translation Words - UST

- brought presents
- silver
- or gold
- or robes
- or horses
- or mules
- every year
- every year

ULT

²⁵ And they were bringing, a man his gift, vessels of silver and vessels of gold and garments and weapons and spices, horses and mules, a matter of year by year.

UST

²⁵ All the people who came to him brought presents. They brought things made from silver or gold, or robes, or weapons, or spices, or horses, or mules. The people continued to do this every year.

1 Kings 10:26

1,400 chariots and twelve thousand horsemen

“one thousand four hundred chariots and 12,000 horsemen” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- chariotry
- chariots
- the chariotry
- and horsemen
- horsemen
- the king
- in Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- men who rode on
- chariots
- in other cities where...kept...chariots
- the horses
- and some of them
- in Jerusalem
- his

ULT

²⁶ And [Solomon](#) gathered [chariotry and horsemen](#). And there were for him 1,400 [chariots](#) and 12,000 [horsemen](#). And he lead them into the cities of [the chariotry](#) and with [the king](#) in [Jerusalem](#).

UST

²⁶ [Solomon](#) acquired 1,400 [chariots](#) and twelve thousand [men who rode on the horses](#). Solomon put some of them [in Jerusalem and some of them in other cities where he kept his chariots](#).

1 Kings 10:27

The king had silver in Jerusalem, as much as the stones on the ground

The narrator uses exaggeration to emphasize the great amount of silver that was in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “The king had so much silver in Jerusalem, it was like there was as much silver as there was stones on the ground” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the silver
- in Jerusalem
- the cedars

Translation Words - UST

- During the years that Solomon was king
- silver
- in Jerusalem
- from cedar trees

ULT

²⁷ And the king gave the silver in Jerusalem like the stones, and the cedars he gave like the sycamores that are in the lowlands with respect to abundance.

UST

²⁷ During the years that Solomon was king, silver became as common in Jerusalem as stones, and lumber from cedar trees in the foothills of Judah were as plentiful as lumber from fig trees.

1 Kings 10:28

were imported from Egypt

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “that his merchants had bought from people in Egypt” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Kue

This is the name of a region. Some think that Kue was the same as Cilicia, in Asia Minor. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the horses](#)
- [were for Solomon](#)
- [was from Egypt](#)
- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon's](#)
- [horses](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [of Egypt and Kue that were famous for breeding horses](#)

ULT

²⁸ And the going out of [the horses](#) that [were for Solomon was from Egypt](#) and from Kue; the ones who go about for [the king](#) would take from Kue for a price.

UST

²⁸ [Solomon's](#) agents bought [horses](#) and supervised the bringing of them into [Israel](#) from the areas [of Egypt and Kue](#) that [were famous for breeding horses](#).

1 Kings 10:29

Chariots were purchased

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "His merchants purchased chariots" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

six hundred shekels of silver...150 shekels

A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. Alternate translation: "about 6.6 kilograms of silver ... about 1.7 kilograms" (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

six hundred shekels of silver

"600 shekels of silver" (See: [Numbers](#))

150 shekels

"one hundred and fifty shekels" (See: [Numbers](#))

Many of these were then sold

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "His merchants then sold many of these" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a chariot
- from Egypt
- silver
- and a horse
- by their hand
- the kings of
- and to the kings of
- the Hittites
- Aram

Translation Words - UST

- In Egypt
- chariots and horses
- silver
- for each chariot and...for each horse
- They brought them to Israel
- to the kings...and the kings of Aram
- to the kings...and the kings of Aram
- to the kings...and the kings of Aram
- of the Hittite people group

ULT

²⁹ And a chariot went up and went out from Egypt for 600 silver, and a horse for 150, and thus by their hand they brought out to all the kings of the Hittites and to the kings of Aram.

10:8 ^[1]. Many think that was misread as , because the Hebrew words are very similar.

UST

²⁹ In Egypt they bought chariots and horses. They paid six and one-half kilograms of silver for each chariot and one and three-fifths kilograms of silver for each horse. They brought them to Israel. Then they sold many of them to the kings of the Hittite people group and the kings of Aram.

1 Kings 11

1 Kings 11 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This is the end of the story of Solomon. (Chapters 1-11)

Special concepts in this chapter

Intermarriage with Gentiles

God had told the people of Israel in Moses's law never to marry women from the Gentile nations. But Solomon married many women from Gentile countries. This was because their religious beliefs would negatively affect Israel. Solomon, the wisest man, became a fool and his wives persuaded him to worship foolish idols. God became angry and warned he would take away 10 tribes from the kingdom of his son. (See: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [law of God](#), [believe](#), [believer](#), [belief](#), [unbeliever](#), [unbelief](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#) and [fool](#), [foolish](#), [folly](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

1 Kings 11:1

Now King Solomon

The word “Now” is used here to mark a break in the main story line where the narrator starts to tell a new part of the story.

Moabites, Ammonites, Edomites, Sidonians, and Hittites

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Now the king
- Solomon
- loved
- foreign
- Pharaoh
- Moabite women
- Ammonite women
- Edomite women
- Sidonian women
- Hittite women

Translation Words - UST

- King Solomon
- married
- foreign
- the king of
- Egypt
- He also married women from the Heth people group
- and from the Moab
- Ammon
- and Edom people groups
- and from the city of Sidon

ULT

¹ Now the king Solomon loved many foreign women, with the daughter of Pharaoh, Moabite women, Ammonite women, Edomite women, Sidonian women, Hittite women,

UST

¹ King Solomon married many foreign women. First he married the daughter of the king of Egypt. He also married women from the Heth people group and from the Moab, Ammon, and Edom people groups, and from the city of Sidon.

1 Kings 11:2

turn your heart to their gods

To “turn someone’s heart” is to convince that person to change his affection. Alternate translation: “persuade you to worship the gods that they worship” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the nations
- Yahweh
- the sons of
- Israel
- They will...turn
- your heart
- their gods
- Solomon
- for love

Translation Words - UST

- He married them
- Yahweh had commanded
- Israelite people
- Israelite people
- marry people...those areas
- will surely persuade
- you
- worship
- the gods that...worship

ULT

² from the nations that Yahweh had said to the sons of Israel, “You must not enter into them, and they must not enter into you. They will surely turn your heart after their gods.” Solomon clung to them for love.

UST

² He married them even though Yahweh had commanded the Israelite people saying, “Do not marry people from those areas, because if you do that, they will surely persuade you to worship the gods that they worship!”

1 Kings 11:3

seven hundred royal wives and three hundred concubines

“700 royal wives and 300 concubines” (See: [Numbers](#))

turned his heart away

To “turn someone’s heart” is to convince that person to change his affection. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Kings 11:1](#). Alternate translation: “turned his heart away from Yahweh” or “persuaded him to stop worshiping Yahweh” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [princesses](#)
- [and...concubines](#)
- [And...turned](#)
- [his heart](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [who were kings’ daughters](#)
- [wives who were his slaves](#)
- [caused him](#)
- [to stop worshiping God](#)

ULT

³ And there were wives for him, 700 [princesses](#), and 300 [concubines](#). And his wives [turned his heart](#).

UST

³ Solomon married seven hundred women [who were kings’ daughters](#). He also had three hundred [wives who were his slaves](#). And his wives [caused him to stop worshiping God](#).

1 Kings 11:4

his heart was not fully surrendered ... as was the heart of David

To “surrender” your heart refers to giving total allegiance and affection. Alternate translation: “he was not fully devoted ... as was David” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- turned
- his heart
- his heart
- like the heart of
- gods
- Yahweh
- his God
- David
- his father

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- had persuaded him
- to worship
- dedicated
- had been
- the gods
- Yahweh
- his God
- like...David
- his father

ULT

⁴ And it happened that by the time of the old age of [Solomon](#) his wives [turned his heart](#) after other [gods](#). And [his heart](#) was not completely with [Yahweh his God like the heart of David his father](#).

UST

⁴ By the time that [Solomon](#) became old, they [had persuaded him to worship the gods](#) from their countries. He was not completely [dedicated](#) to [Yahweh his God like his father David had been](#).

1 Kings 11:5

Ashtoreth ... Molech

These are the names of false gods. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Sidonians

This is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

he followed Molech

Some version render this as “Milcom.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- Ashtoreth
- the god of
- the Sidonians
- the abomination of
- the Ammonites

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon worshiped
- Asherah
- the goddess that the people of Sidon worshiped
- the disgusting
- god that the
- Ammon people group worshiped

ULT

⁵ And Solomon went after Ashtoreth, the god of the Sidonians, and after Milcom, the abomination of the Ammonites.

UST

⁵ Solomon worshiped Asherah, the goddess that the people of Sidon worshiped, and he worshiped Molech, the disgusting god that the Ammon people group worshiped.

1 Kings 11:6

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The phrase, "in the sight of" refers to someone's opinion. Alternate translation: "what Yahweh considered to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- the evil thing
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- like David
- his father

Translation Words - UST

- Thus Solomon
- that Yahweh
- he did not...as Yahweh
- were evil
- conduct his life as...David had done
- his father

ULT

⁶ And Solomon did the evil thing in the eyes of Yahweh and he did not remain fully after Yahweh like David his father.

UST

⁶ Thus Solomon did many things that Yahweh said were evil. He did not conduct his life as his father David had done; he did not conduct his life as Yahweh wanted him to.

1 Kings 11:7

Chemosh ... Molech

These are the names of false gods. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- a high place
- the abomination of
- the abomination of
- Moab
- Jerusalem
- and for Molech
- the sons of
- Ammon

Translation Words - UST

- the hill
- Jerusalem
- he
- the disgusting god
- the disgusting god that
- Moab
- people group worshiped
- and a place to worship Molech
- the Ammon people group worshiped

ULT

⁷ Then Solomon built a high place for Chemosh, the abomination of Moab, on the hill that is on the face of Jerusalem, and for Molech, the abomination of the sons of Ammon.

UST

⁷ On the hill to the east of Jerusalem he built a place to worship Chemosh, the disgusting god that the Moab people group worshiped, and a place to worship Molech, the disgusting god that the Ammon people group worshiped.

1 Kings 11:8

sacrificed to their gods at them

Here the words “at them” refer to the shrines that Solomon built.

Translation Words - ULT

- foreign
- who were burning incense
- and sacrificing
- to their gods

Translation Words - UST

- foreign
- could burn incense
- and offer sacrifices
- the gods from their own countries

ULT

⁸ And thus he did for all his foreign wives, who were burning incense and sacrificing to their gods.

UST

⁸ He also built places where all his foreign wives could burn incense and offer sacrifices to the gods from their own countries.

1 Kings 11:9

his heart had turned away from him

The words “his heart had turned” refer to his having changed allegiance and affection. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Kings 11:1](#). Alternate translation: “Solomon had stopped worshipping Yahweh” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#))

he had appeared to him twice

Alternate translation: “Yahweh had appeared to Solomon twice”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- with Solomon
- his heart
- had turned
- the God of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- God
- heart
- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Solomon
- turn, turn away, turn back, return

ULT

⁹ And Yahweh became angry with Solomon, for his heart had turned from with Yahweh, the God of Israel, the one who had appeared to him two times.

UST

⁹⁻¹⁰ Even though Yahweh, the God whom the Israelites worshiped, had appeared to Solomon two times, and had commanded him to not worship foreign gods, Solomon refused to obey Yahweh. So Yahweh was angry with Solomon.

1 Kings 11:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And had commanded
- had commanded
- gods
- he did...keep
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry
- Yahweh
- watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

ULT

¹⁰ And had commanded to him concerning this thing, to not go after other gods. But he did not keep what Yahweh had commanded.

UST

⁹⁻¹⁰ Even though Yahweh, the God whom the Israelites worshiped, had appeared to Solomon two times, and had commanded him to not worship foreign gods, Solomon refused to obey Yahweh. So Yahweh was angry with Solomon.

1 Kings 11:11

tear the kingdom from you

To “tear from” is to forcefully remove. This is like a person tears apart a piece of cloth. Alternate translation: “forcefully take the kingdom from you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- to Solomon
- you have...kept
- my covenant
- and my statutes
- I have commanded
- the kingdom
- to your servant

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- You
- covenant
- I made
- I commanded you
- I am certainly
- officials
- to rule

ULT

11 And [Yahweh](#) said [to Solomon](#), “Because this is against you, that [you](#) have not [kept my covenant and my statutes](#) that [I have commanded](#) concerning you. Surely I will tear away [the kingdom](#) from with you and I will give it [to your servant](#).”

UST

11 [Yahweh](#) said to him, “[You](#) have chosen to disobey the [covenant](#) that [I made](#) with you and to disobey what [I commanded you](#). So [I am certainly](#) not going to allow you to rule all of your kingdom. I am going to allow one of your [officials to rule](#).”

1 Kings 11:12

the hand of your son

The word “hand” refers to control, authority and power. Alternate translation: “your son’s control” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- in your days
- David
- your father
- From the hand of
- your son

Translation Words - UST

- father
- David
- are still living
- son...the whole kingdom
- to rule

ULT

¹² However, [in your days](#) I will not do it for the sake of [David, your father](#). [From the hand of your son](#) I will surely tear it away.

UST

¹² But because of what I promised your [father David](#), I will allow you to rule all your kingdom while you [are still living](#). After you die, I will not allow your [son to rule the whole kingdom](#).

1 Kings 11:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the kingdom
- tribe
- to your son
- David
- my servant
- Jerusalem
- I have chosen

Translation Words - UST

- ruling some of
- I will
- to rule
- tribe
- and because I want
- David's descendants to rule
- in Jerusalem, where my temple is located

ULT

¹³ Only I will not tear away all the kingdom. I will give one tribe to your son for the sake of David my servant, and for the sake of Jerusalem, which I have chosen."

UST

¹³ But I will not stop him from ruling some of the kingdom. I will allow him to rule one tribe, because of what I promised to David, who served me well, and because I want David's descendants to rule in Jerusalem, where my temple is located."

1 Kings 11:14

Hadad

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- And...raised up
- an adversary
- against Solomon
- the Edomite
- in Edom
- was from the seed of
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- caused...to rebel
- Hadad
- the Edom people group
- from the family
- of the kings in
- against
- Solomon

ULT

¹⁴ And Yahweh raised up an adversary against Solomon, Hadad the Edomite. He was from the seed of the king in Edom.

UST

¹⁴ Yahweh caused Hadad, from the family of the kings in the Edom people group, to rebel against Solomon.

1 Kings 11:15

General Information:

This begins three verses of background material that happened long before.

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- Edom
- in Edom
- Joab
- the commander of
- to bury

Translation Words - UST

- David
- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- Joab
- bury, buried, burial
- commander

ULT

15 And it had happened when David was with Edom, when Joab the commander of the army went up to bury the pierced ones, that he had struck down every male in Edom.

UST

15-16 What happened was that previously, when David's army had conquered Edom, his army commander Joab had gone there to help bury the Israelite soldiers who had been killed in the battle. Joab and his army remained in Edom for six months, and during that time they killed all the males of that area.

1 Kings 11:16

Connecting Statement:

This continues background material that happened long before.

Joab and all Israel

The words “all Israel” refer to the army of Israel. Alternate translation: “Joab and all of the Israelite army” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joab](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [months](#)
- [he had cut off](#)
- [in Edom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Edom, Edomite, Idumea](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [month, monthly](#)
- [cut off, cut down](#)

ULT

16 For [Joab](#) and all [Israel](#) dwelled there six [months](#) until [he had cut off](#) every male [in Edom](#).

UST

15-16 What happened was that previously, when David's army had conquered Edom, his army commander Joab had gone there to help bury the Israelite soldiers who had been killed in the battle. Joab and his army remained in Edom for six months, and during that time they killed all the males of that area.

1 Kings 11:17

Connecting Statement:

This concludes background material that happened long before.

But Hadad was taken with other Edomites by his father's servants

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. "But the servants of Hadad's father took him with other Edomites" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Edomite
- from the servants of
- his father
- Egypt

Translation Words - UST

- to Egypt
- father's
- servants
- from Edom

ULT

¹⁷ But Adad fled, he and [Edomite](#) men [from the servants of his father](#) with him, to enter [Egypt](#). And Hadad was a little boy.

UST

¹⁷ Hadad was a young child at that time, and he had escaped [to Egypt](#), along with some of his [father's servants from Edom](#).

1 Kings 11:18

They left Midian

Here the word "They" refers to Hadad and the other Edomites mentioned in [1 Kings 11:17](#).

Midian ... Paran ... Egypt

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And they rose up
- from Midian
- and...land
- Paran
- from Paran
- Egypt
- Egypt
- Pharaoh
- the king of
- a house
- and...bread

Translation Words - UST

- They went
- to the region of Midian
- some food regularly
- the desert area at Paran
- there
- other
- Then they all traveled to Egypt and went to
- Then they all traveled to Egypt and went to
- Egypt
- the king of
- some land

ULT

18 And they rose up from Midian and entered Paran. And they took men with them from Paran and entered Egypt, to Pharaoh the king of Egypt. And he gave to him a house and he ordered bread for him and he gave land to him.

UST

18 They went to the region of Midian, and then they went to the desert area at Paran. Some other men joined them there. Then they all traveled to Egypt and went to the king of Egypt. The king gave Hadad some land and ordered his servants to give him some food regularly.

1 Kings 11:19

Tahpenes

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [favor](#)
- [Pharaoh](#)
- [the queen](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The king](#)
- [liked Hadad](#)
- [wife...Tahpenes](#)

ULT

¹⁹ And Hadad found much [favor](#) in the eyes of [Pharaoh](#). And he gave to him a wife, the sister of his wife, the sister of Tahpenes [the queen](#).

UST

¹⁹ [The king liked Hadad](#). As a result he gave him the sister of his own [wife](#), Queen [Tahpenes](#), to be Hadad's wife.

1 Kings 11:20

Tahpenes

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Hadad ... Genubath

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...bore](#)
- [his son](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [in the house of](#) (2)
- [Pharaoh](#)
- [Pharaoh](#)
- [Pharaoh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gave birth](#)
- [to a son](#)
- [the king's sons](#)
- [him in the palace, where he lived](#)
- [the king's sons](#)
- [the king's sons](#)
- [him in the palace, where he lived](#)
- [him in the palace, where he lived](#) (2)

ULT

²⁰ And the sister of Tahpenes [bore](#) for him Genubath, [his son](#), and Tahpenes weaned him in the midst of [the house of Pharaoh](#). And Genubath was [in the house of Pharaoh](#) in the midst of [the sons of Pharaoh](#).

UST

²⁰ Later Hadad's wife [gave birth to a son](#) named Genubath. The sister of Tahpenes raised [him in the palace, where he lived](#) with [the king's sons](#).

1 Kings 11:21

David had lain down with his ancestors

This is a polite way of saying David was dead. Alternate translation: "David had died" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- in Egypt
- David
- his fathers
- Joab
- the commander of
- had died
- Pharaoh
- Send me away
- my land

Translation Words - UST

- was in Egypt
- David
- and that Joab
- the commander
- of David's
- was also dead
- the king of Egypt
- return
- my own country

ULT

²¹ And Hadad heard [in Egypt](#) that [David](#) had laid down with [his fathers](#) and that [Joab, the commander of](#) the army, [had died](#). And Hadad said to [Pharaoh](#), "[Send me away](#), and I will go to [my land](#)."

UST

²¹ While Hadad [was in Egypt](#), he heard that [David](#) had died, [and that Joab, the commander of David's army, was also dead](#). So he said to [the king of Egypt](#), "Please allow me to [return to my own country](#)."

1 Kings 11:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Pharaoh
- are seeking
- your land
- you must send me away

Translation Words - UST

- But the king
- back to...but please just allow me to go
- and he returned to his own country
- and became the king of Edom

ULT

²² And Pharaoh said to him, "But what are you lacking with me that, behold, you **are seeking** to go to **your land**?" And he said, "Nothing, but surely **you must send me away**."

UST

²² But the king said to him, "Why do you want to go **back to** your country? Is there something that you lack that you want me to give to you?" Hadad replied, "No, **but please just allow me to go**." So the king allowed him to leave, **and he returned to his own country and became the king of Edom**.

1 Kings 11:23

Rezon ... Eliada ... Hadadezer

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Zobah

This is the name of a location. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- And...raised up
- an adversary
- the son of
- the king of
- his master

Translation Words - UST

- God
- son
- to rebel
- against Solomon
- his master
- King

ULT

²³ And God raised up an adversary against him, Rezon the son of Eliada, who had fled from with Hadadezer, the king of Zobah, his master.

UST

²³ God also caused another man named Rezon son of Eliada, to rebel against Solomon. Rezon had run away from his master, King Hadadezer of the area of Zobah, north of Damascus.

1 Kings 11:24

Zobah ... Damascus

These are names of locations. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

when David defeated

Here "David" refers to David and his army. Alternate translation: "when David's army overcame" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a commander of
- when...slew
- David
- to Damascus
- in Damascus
- and they reigned

Translation Words - UST

- leader
- of outlaws
- David's army
- went to Damascus
- and the people there
- appointed him to be their king

ULT

²⁴ And he gathered men for himself and he became a commander of a raiding band when David slew them. And they went to Damascus and they dwelled in it and they reigned in Damascus.

UST

²⁴ Rezon then became the leader of a group of outlaws. That happened after David's army had defeated Hadadezer and had also killed all his soldiers. Rezon and his men went to Damascus and started to live there, and the people there appointed him to be their king.

1 Kings 11:25

Aram

This is the name of a location. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

all the days of Solomon

Alternate translation: “during the time that Solomon was alive” or “all the days of Solomon’s life”

Rezon abhorred Israel

Alternate translation: “Rezon hated Israel very much”

Translation Words - ULT

- an adversary
- against Israel
- against Israel
- the days of
- Solomon
- the evil...did
- and he reigned
- Aram

Translation Words - UST

- during the time
- that Solomon was alive
- while Rezon was ruling not only Damascus but all of Aram
- an enemy
- for Israel
- Israel
- and caused trouble
- like Hadad did

ULT

²⁵ And he was an adversary against Israel all the days of Solomon, and the evil that Hadad did. And he felt disgust against Israel and he reigned over Aram.

UST

²⁵ All during the time that Solomon was alive, while Rezon was ruling not only Damascus but all of Aram, he was an enemy of Israel and caused trouble for Israel like Hadad did.

1 Kings 11:26

Jeroboam ... Nebat

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Zeredah

This is the name of a location. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Zeruah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

lifted up his hand against the king

The word “hand” refers to authority, power and control. The phrase “lifted up against” refers to having opposed someone by using authority, power and control. This is a metonym used as a common idiom. Alternate translation: “rebelled against the king” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And Jeroboam](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [an Ephrathite](#)
- [and the name of](#)
- [was a servant](#)
- [of Solomon](#)
- [against the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [was one of his](#)
- [officials](#)
- [named Jeroboam](#)
- [son](#)
- [in the region where the tribe of Ephraim lives](#)
- [His](#)

ULT

²⁶ And Jeroboam the son of Nebat, an Ephrathite from the Zeredah, and the name of his mother was Zeruah, a widow woman, was a servant of Solomon. And he raised a hand against the king.

UST

²⁶ Another man who rebelled against Solomon was one of his officials named Jeroboam son of Nebat. He was from the city of Zeredah in the region where the tribe of Ephraim lives. His mother was a widow named Zeruah.

1 Kings 11:27

Solomon had built up the place located at Millo

Translate "Millo" as in [1 Kings 9:15](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [against the king](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [David](#)
- [his father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon's workers](#)
- [Solomon's workers](#)
- [the city](#)
- [the city](#)

ULT

²⁷ Now this is the matter that he raised a hand [against the king](#): [Solomon](#) had built the Millo, he had closed up the breach of the city of [David his father](#).

UST

²⁷ This is what happened. [Solomon's workers](#) were filling in the land on the east side of Jerusalem and repairing the walls around [the city](#).

1 Kings 11:28

a mighty man of valor

This could mean: (1) “a great warrior” or (2) “a very capable man” or (3) “a wealthy and influential man.”

he gave him command

Alternate translation: “he made him commander”

all the labor

The word “labor” refers to the work that Solomon commanded the people to do for his government. This is a metonym. (See: [Metonymy](#))

the house of Joseph

This refers to the descendants of Joseph who were the people groups of Ephraim and Manasseh. This is a metonym. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jeroboam
- was mighty of
- strength
- Solomon
- the young man
- work
- and he appointed
- the house of
- Joseph

Translation Words - UST

- Jeroboam
- was a very capable
- was a very capable
- young
- Solomon
- he appointed
- supervise
- the men who were forced to work
- in the areas where the tribes of Manasseh and Ephraim live

ULT

²⁸ And the man Jeroboam was mighty of strength. And Solomon saw the young man, that he was one who does work, and he appointed him for all the forced labor of the house of Joseph.

UST

²⁸ Jeroboam was a very capable young man. So, when Solomon saw that he worked very hard, he appointed him to supervise all the men who were forced to work in the areas where the tribes of Manasseh and Ephraim live.

1 Kings 11:29

Ahijah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shilonite

The Shilonites are a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [that Jeroboam](#)
- [from Jerusalem](#)
- [the prophet](#)
- [Ahijah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [the prophet](#)
- [Ahijah](#)

ULT

²⁹ And it happened at that time [that Jeroboam](#) went out [from Jerusalem](#), and [the prophet Ahijah](#) the Shilonite found him in the road. Now he was covering himself with a new cloak and the two of them were by themselves in the field.

UST

²⁹ One day when [Jeroboam](#) was walking alone along the road outside of [Jerusalem](#), [the prophet Ahijah](#) from the city of Shiloh met him. Ahijah was wearing a new robe,

1 Kings 11:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Ahijah

Translation Words - UST

- which he took off

ULT

³⁰ And Ahijah seized the new cloak that was over him and he tore it into 12 pieces.

UST

³⁰ which he took off and tore into twelve pieces.

1 Kings 11:31

He said

Here the word “He” refers to Ahijah.

tear the kingdom out

Here “tear ... out” is a metaphor that refers to the action of forcefully removing. This is like a person tears apart a piece of cloth. See how you translated this phrase in [1 Kings 11:11](#). Alternate translation: “forcefully take the kingdom out” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the hand of Solomon

Here “hand” is a metonym that refers to a person’s authority, control and power. Alternate translation: “Solomon’s control” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Jeroboam](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the kingdom](#)
- [from the hand of](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [the...tribes](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the God](#)
- [whom we Israelites worship](#)
- [the kingdom from](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [and I am going to enable](#)
- [of the tribes of Israel](#)

ULT

³¹ And he said [to Jeroboam](#), “Take for yourself ten pieces. For thus says [Yahweh, the God of Israel](#), ‘Behold, I am about to tear away [the kingdom from the hand of Solomon](#) and I will give the ten [tribes](#) to you.’

UST

³¹ He said to [Jeroboam](#), “Take ten of these pieces for yourself, because [Yahweh, the God whom we Israelites worship](#), says to you, ‘I am going to tear [the kingdom from Solomon, and I am going to enable](#) you to become the ruler of ten [of the tribes of Israel](#).’

1 Kings 11:32

Solomon will have

The name "Solomon" here is a metonym referring to his descendants. Alternate translation: "Solomon's sons will have" or "Solomon's descendants will have" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And...tribe
- the tribes of
- my servant
- David
- Jerusalem
- I have chosen
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- tribe
- the cities in
- I promised
- David, a man who served me very well, and
- Jerusalem
- I have chosen
- Israel to be the city where my people will worship me

ULT

³² And one [tribe](#) will be for him, for the sake of [my servant David](#) and for the sake of [Jerusalem](#) (the city, it which I [have chosen](#) from all the tribes of Israel),

UST

³² Solomon's descendants will still rule one [tribe](#), because of what I [promised David, a man who served me very well, and](#) because of [Jerusalem](#), the city that I [have chosen](#) from all the cities in Israel to be the city where my people will worship me.

1 Kings 11:33

Ashtoreth ... Chemosh ... Molech

These are the names of false gods. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Sidonians ... Moab ... Ammon

These are the names of locations and the people groups that live there. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

what is right in my eyes

“Eyes” here is a metonym for someone’s opinion or idea. This is a commonly used idiom. Alternate translation: “what I consider to be right” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- they have forsaken me
- and they have bowed down
- the upright thing
- or my statutes
- or my judgments
- like David
- his father
- to Ashtoreth
- the god of
- the god of (2)
- the god of (3)
- the Sidonians
- Moab
- the sons of
- Ammon

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon has rejected me
- and has been worshiping
- statutes
- statutes
- and decrees
- as his father
- David
- Asherah
- the goddess
- the god (2)
- the god that (3)
- the people of Sidon worship
- that the Moab people group worships
- the Ammon people group worships
- the Ammon people group worships

ULT

³³ because they have forsaken me and they have bowed down to Ashtoreth, the god of the Sidonians, to Chemosh, the god of Moab, and to Milcom, the god of the sons of Ammon. And they do not walk in my ways, to do the upright thing in my eyes, or my statutes or my judgments, like David his father.

UST

³³ I am going to do this because Solomon has rejected me and has been worshiping Asherah, the goddess that the people of Sidon worship, Chemosh, the god that the Moab people group worships, and Molech, the god that the Ammon people group worships. He has not conducted his life as I wanted him to. He has not obeyed my statutes and decrees, as his father David did.

1 Kings 11:34

I will not take

Here the word "I" refers to Yahweh.

out of Solomon's hand

Here the word "hand" is a metonym that refers to a person's authority, control and power. Alternate translation: "out of Solomon's control" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the kingdom
- from his hand
- and my statutes
- as a leader
- the days of
- his life
- David
- my servant
- I have chosen
- kept
- my commandments

Translation Words - UST

- away from him
- I will enable him to rule Judah
- and laws
- during the years that he
- is alive
- I promised
- to do for
- David
- I chose to be
- obeyed my
- commandments

ULT

³⁴ But I will not take all of [the kingdom from his hand](#). Rather, I will put him [as a leader](#) all [the days of his life](#), for the sake of [David my servant](#), he whom [I have chosen](#), who [kept my commandments and my statutes](#).

UST

³⁴ But I will not take the entire kingdom away from him. I will enable him to rule Judah all [during the years that he is alive](#). I will do that because of what [I promised to do for David](#), whom [I chose to be](#) the king, and who served me well, and who always [obeyed my commandments and laws](#).

1 Kings 11:35

I will give it to you

Here the word "you" refers to Jeroboam.

Translation Words - ULT

- from the hand of
- his son
- the tribes

Translation Words - UST

- tribes of his
- them
- to rule

ULT

³⁵ But I will take the kingship from the hand of his son and I will give it to you, ten of the tribes.

UST

³⁵ But I will take the other ten tribes of his kingdom and give them to you to rule.

1 Kings 11:36

may always have a lamp before me

The word “lamp” is a metonym that refers to a person’s influence and guidance. Alternate translation: “will always have a descendant to rule as an influence and a guide for obeying my covenant with David’s family” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- But to his son
- tribe
- a lamp
- for David
- my servant
- the days
- in Jerusalem
- I have chosen
- my name

Translation Words - UST

- I will
- Solomon’s son
- tribe
- descendants of
- David
- will always rule
- in Jerusalem
- chosen
- be the place where my people worship me

ULT

³⁶ But to his son I will give one tribe so that there may be a lamp for David my servant all the days before my face in Jerusalem, the city that I have chosen for myself, to set my name there.

UST

³⁶ I will allow Solomon’s son to rule one tribe, in order that descendants of David will always rule in Jerusalem, the city that I have chosen to be the place where my people worship me.

1 Kings 11:37

I will take you

Here the word "I" refers to Yahweh and the word "you" refers to Jeroboam.

Translation Words - ULT

- and you shall reign
- your soul
- king
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- to become
- king
- Israel
- the territory

ULT

³⁷ And I will take you, and you shall reign over all that your soul desires. And you shall be king over Israel.

UST

³⁷ I will enable you to become the king of Israel, and you will rule over all the territory that you want to.

1 Kings 11:38

what is right in my eyes

The word “eyes” here is a metonym for someone’s opinion or idea. This is a commonly used idiom. See how you translated this phrase in [1 Kings 11:33](#). (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

build you a sure house

The clause “build a house” is a metaphor for establishing descendants from that time on. Alternate translation: “establish for you a lasting kingdom” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- I command you
- and my commandments
- the upright thing
- to keep
- my statutes
- David
- for David
- my servant
- an...house
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- I command you to
- and commandments
- and conduct your
- I say is right
- laws
- like David
- for David
- I will help you
- that your descendants
- like I promised

ULT

³⁸ And it shall be that if you hear all that I command you and you walk in my ways and you do the upright thing in my eyes, to keep my statutes and my commandments, just as David my servant did, then I will be with you and I will build for you an established house, just as I built for David, and I will give Israel to you.

UST

³⁸ If you obey all that I command you to do, and conduct your life as I want you to, and if you do what I say is right by obeying my laws and commandments like David did, I will help you. I will make sure that your descendants will rule after you die, like I promised to do for David.

1 Kings 11:39

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And I will afflict
- the seed of
- David
- the days

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon's sins
- David's
- descendants
- but I will not continue to punish them forever

ULT

³⁹ And I will afflict the seed of David on account of this, only not all the days."

UST

³⁹ Because of Solomon's sins, I will punish David's descendants, but I will not continue to punish them forever."

1 Kings 11:40

Shishak

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- Solomon
- And...sought
- to put...to death
- the death of
- Jeroboam
- Jeroboam
- And...rose up
- to Egypt
- Egypt
- in Egypt
- the king of

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- Solomon
- found out what Ahijah told
- Jeroboam
- But Jeroboam
- so he tried to kill Jeroboam
- died
- and went
- Egypt
- Egypt, and stayed with him
- after
- the king of

ULT

⁴⁰ And Solomon sought to put Jeroboam to death. And Jeroboam rose up and he fled to Egypt, to Shishak, the king of Egypt. And he was in Egypt until the death of Solomon.

UST

⁴⁰ Solomon found out what Ahijah told Jeroboam, so he tried to kill Jeroboam. But Jeroboam escaped and went to Egypt. He went to Shishak, the king of Egypt, and stayed with him until after Solomon died.

1 Kings 11:41

are they not written in the book of the events of Solomon?

This can be expressed in active form and assumes that the answer is positive. The question is rhetorical and is used for emphasis. Alternate translation: “you can find them in the book of the events of Solomon.” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

the book of the events of Solomon

This book no longer exists.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [and his wisdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that Solomon](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [wise things that](#)

ULT

⁴¹ And the remainder of the words of [Solomon](#) and all that he did [and his wisdom](#) are they not written on the book of the words of [Solomon](#)?

UST

⁴¹ A record of all the other things [that Solomon](#) did, and all the [wise things that](#) he said, was written in the book of the events of [Solomon](#).

1 Kings 11:42

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And the days
- Solomon
- reigned
- in Jerusalem
- Israel
- years

Translation Words - UST

- He
- was king
- in Jerusalem
- and ruled
- Israel
- years

ULT

⁴² And the days that Solomon reigned in Jerusalem over all Israel were 40 years.

UST

⁴² He was king in Jerusalem and ruled over all of Israel for forty years.

1 Kings 11:43

He slept with his ancestors and he was buried

The clause “slept with his ancestors” is a metaphor that expresses as a euphemism the death of a person in more gentle words. Alternate translation: “He died and he was buried with his ancestors” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

he was buried

This can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: “people buried him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [his fathers](#)
- [his father](#)
- [and he was buried](#)
- [David](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [his son](#)
- [And...reigned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Solomon](#)
- [and was buried](#)
- [called the city of David](#)
- [and was buried](#)
- [called the city of David](#)
- [Then his son](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [king](#)

ULT

⁴³ And [Solomon](#) lay down with [his fathers and he was buried](#) in the city of [David his father](#). And [Rehoboam his son](#) [reigned](#) in his place.

UST

⁴³ [Then Solomon](#) died [and was buried](#) in the part of Jerusalem [called the city of David](#). [Then his son Rehoboam](#) became the [king](#).

1 Kings 12

1 Kings 12 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Civil war

This chapter explains how the united kingdom of Israel was split into the two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. This is sometimes called a “civil war.”

Special concepts in this chapter

Israel splits

God’s warning to Solomon came true. In spite of his famous wealth, Solomon had over-taxed his own people and forced them to work for free. When the people requested that King Rehoboam reduce taxes and forced labor, he said that he would be harsher than his father. This caused the 10 northern tribes to revolt and appoint Jeroboam as their king. These northern tribes are now called the kingdom of Israel. Only Judah and Benjamin stayed with Rehoboam. They are called Judah. (See: [appoint](#), [appointed](#))

Jeroboam introduces calf worship

Jeroboam made a terrible mistake. He was afraid that if the people continued to go to Jerusalem to worship in the temple, they would want to return to Rehoboam as their king. So he made two shrines with calves made of gold for the people to worship. This eventually caused the destruction of his whole family. The kingdom of Israel continued worshipping the idols until they were taken slaves by the Assyrians. The northern tribes were unable to truly worship Yahweh without going to Jerusalem in the kingdom of Judah.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

The people used the metaphor of “yoke” for oppressive government: “Your father made our yoke difficult. Now then, make your father’s hard work easier, and lighten the heavy yoke that he put on us.” But Rehoboam promised to increase their oppression with three metaphors: “My little finger is thicker than my father’s waist. So now, although my father burdened you with a heavy yoke, I will add to your yoke. My father punished you with whips, but I will punish you with scorpions.” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [oppress](#), [oppressed](#), [oppression](#), [oppressor](#), [dominate](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#))

1 Kings 12:1

all Israel was coming

Here "Israel" represents all the men of Israel capable of fighting. Here "all Israel" is a generalization which means almost all the men of Israel. Alternate translation: "all the men of Israel were coming" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Rehoboam](#)
- [to Shechem](#)
- [to Shechem](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [to cause...to reign](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [northern Israel](#)
- [to the city of Shechem](#)
- [also went there](#)
- [appoint Rehoboam to be their](#)
- [king](#)

ULT

¹ And [Rehoboam](#) went [to Shechem](#), for all [Israel](#) had come [to Shechem to cause](#) him [to reign](#).

UST

¹ All the people of [northern Israel](#) went [to the city of Shechem](#) in order to [appoint Rehoboam to be their king](#). So Rehoboam [also went there](#).

1 Kings 12:2

It happened that

This phrase is used here to mark where the action starts. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Jeroboam ... Nebat

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jeroboam
- Jeroboam
- the son of
- in Egypt
- in Egypt
- the king
- Solomon

Translation Words - UST

- Jeroboam
- who
- returned
- in Egypt
- Egypt
- about
- he

ULT

² And it happened as soon as [Jeroboam the son of](#) Nebat heard (now he was still [in Egypt](#), where he had fled from the face of [the king Solomon](#), and [Jeroboam](#) dwelled [in Egypt](#)), ^[1]

UST

² When [Jeroboam](#), [who](#) was still [in Egypt](#), heard [about](#) that, [he](#) returned from [Egypt](#) to Israel.

1 Kings 12:3

called him

Here the word "him" refers to Jeroboam.

Translation Words - ULT

- that they sent
- and they called
- Jeroboam
- the assembly of
- Israel
- Rehoboam

Translation Words - UST

- The leaders of the northern tribes
- summoned
- summoned
- and they
- Rehoboam
- They

ULT

³ that they sent and they called for him.
And Jeroboam and all the assembly of Israel came and they spoke to Rehoboam, saying,

UST

³ The leaders of the northern tribes summoned him, and they went together to talk to Rehoboam. They said to him,

1 Kings 12:4

made our yoke heavy

A heavy yoke is a metaphor for very difficult labor and requirements. Alternate translation: “treated us cruelly” or “forced us to work very hard” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Your father
- your father
- our yoke
- and than his...yoke
- than the...work of
- hard
- and we will serve you

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- Your father
- forced us to work
- we will serve
- to work
- we will serve
- faithfully

ULT

4 “Your father caused our yoke to be heavy. But you now, cause it to be lighter than the hard work of your father and than his heavy yoke that he gave on us, and we will serve you.”

UST

4 “Your father Solomon forced us to work very hard, and if you allow us to work less, we will serve you faithfully.”

1 Kings 12:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- days
- and return
- the people

Translation Words - UST

- days from now
- So those leaders and Jeroboam
- left

ULT

⁵ And he said to them, "Go until three days, and return to me." And the people went.

UST

⁵ He replied, "Go away, and come back three days from now and I will give you my answer." So those leaders and Jeroboam left.

1 Kings 12:6

the old men who had stood before Solomon

To “stand before” is an idiom for serving the king in his presence.
Alternate translation: “the old men who counseled Solomon” or “the old men who attended to Solomon” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- Rehoboam
- And...consulted
- are...advising
- the elders
- Solomon
- his father
- alive
- to return
- people

Translation Words - UST

- Then King
- Rehoboam
- consulted
- He asked them
- his older men
- his father
- Solomon
- still living
- answer
- men

ULT

⁶ And the king Rehoboam consulted with the elders, who had been standing ones with the face of Solomon his father while he was alive, saying, “How are you advising to return this people a word?”

UST

⁶ Then King Rehoboam consulted his older men who had advised his father Solomon while he was still living. He asked them, “What should I say to answer these men?”

1 Kings 12:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- a servant
- and you will serve them
- servants
- to...people
- good
- the days

Translation Words - UST

- They
- to serve
- people
- serve
- well
- they will always

ULT

⁷ And they spoke to him, saying, "If today you will be a servant to this people and you will serve them, and you will answer them and will speak good words to them, then they will be servants for you all the days."

UST

⁷ They replied, "If you want to serve these people well, speak kindly to them when you reply to them. If you do that, they will always serve you faithfully."

1 Kings 12:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- But he forsook
- the advice of
- they had advised him
- And he consulted
- the elders

Translation Words - UST

- But he ignored what
- older men
- advised
- him to do
- he consulted

ULT

⁸ But he forsook the advice of the elders that they had advised him. And he consulted with the young men who had grown up with him, who were the ones standing before his face.

UST

⁸ But he ignored what the older men advised him to do. Instead, he consulted the younger men who had grown up with him, who were now his advisors.

1 Kings 12:9

Lighten the yoke that your father put on us

To “lighten the yoke” is a metaphor to represent lifting of the burden. Alternate translation: “Do not treat us as cruelly as your father did” or “Do not force us to work as hard as your father did” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- are...advising
- that we should return
- people
- the yoke
- your father

Translation Words - UST

- should
- answer
- men who are asking
- work
- my father

ULT

⁹ And he said to them, “What word are you [advising that we should return](#) this [people](#) who spoke to me saying, ‘Cause it to be lighter than [the yoke](#) that [your father](#) gave on us?”

UST

⁹ He said to them, “What do you say that I [should answer](#) the [men who are asking](#) me to reduce the [work](#) that [my father](#) required from them?”

1 Kings 12:10

My little finger is thicker than my father's waist

This metaphor means that Rehoboam is more cruel and intimidating than his father. Alternate translation: "What I will do to make your burden heavier is much more than what my father put on you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to...people
- Your father
- my father
- our yoke
- than the loins of

Translation Words - UST

- They
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- my father's
- waist
- yoke, yoked, tied

ULT

¹⁰ And the young men who had grown up with him spoke to him, saying, "Thus you shall say to this [people](#) who spoke to you saying, '[Your father](#) caused [our yoke](#) to be heavy but you must cause it to be lighter than what is on us.' Thus you shall speak to them, 'My little one is thicker [than the loins of my father](#)."

UST

¹⁰ [They](#) replied, "This is what you should tell them: 'My little finger is thicker than [my father's waist](#)."

1 Kings 12:11

My father punished you with whips, but I will punish you with scorpions

This metaphor means that the punishment Rehoboam plans to give will be worse than what his father gave. Alternate translation: "My father used whips to force you to work but I will use even crueler punishment" (See: [Metaphor](#))

punish you with scorpions

The word **scorpions** may refer to: (1) a whip with sharp metal barbs on the end or (2) a spider-like creature that has a poisonous sting.

Translation Words - ULT

- my father
- My father
- a...yoke
- your yoke
- punished
- I will punish

Translation Words - UST

- What I mean is that my father
- my father
- to work
- loads
- It was as though
- whip

ULT

¹¹ And now, [my father](#) loaded on you a heavy [yoke](#), but as for me, I will add onto [your yoke](#). [My father punished](#) you with the whips, but as for me, [I will punish](#) you with the scorpions."

UST

¹¹ [What I mean is that my father](#) required you [to work](#) hard. But I will make those [loads](#) heavier. [It was as though my father](#) whipped you, but I will [whip](#) you with scorpions."

1 Kings 12:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jeroboam
- the people
- Rehoboam
- on...day
- on the...day
- the king
- Return

Translation Words - UST

- days later
- had
- Jeroboam
- leaders
- Rehoboam
- again
- he

ULT

¹² And Jeroboam and all the people came to Rehoboam on the third day, just as the king had spoken, saying, "Return to me on the third day."

UST

¹² So three days later, Jeroboam and all the leaders came to Rehoboam again, which is what he had told them to do.

1 Kings 12:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the people
- And he forsook
- the advice of
- had advised him
- the elders

Translation Words - UST

- The king
- ignored
- the advice
- Israelite
- of the older men
- leaders

ULT

¹³ And the king answered the people harshly. And he forsook the advice of the elders who had advised him.

UST

¹³ The king ignored the advice of the older men and spoke harshly to the Israelite leaders.

1 Kings 12:14

burdened you with a heavy yoke

A heavy yoke is a metaphor for very difficult labor and requirements. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 12:4](#). Alternate translation: “treated you cruelly” or “forced you to work very hard” (See: [Metaphor](#))

My father punished you with whips, but I will punish you with scorpions

This metaphor means that the punishment Rehoboam plans to give will be worse than what his father gave. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 12:11](#). Alternate translation: “My father used whips to force you to work but I will use even crueler punishment” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [according to the advice of](#)
- [My father](#)
- [My father](#)
- [your yoke](#)
- [your yoke](#)
- [punished](#)
- [I will punish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [had advised](#)
- [He said, “My father](#)
- [he](#)
- [work](#)
- [burdens](#)
- [It was as though](#)
- [beat](#)

ULT

14 And he spoke to them [according to the advice of](#) the young men, saying, “[My father](#) caused [your yoke](#) to be heavy, but as for me, I will add onto [your yoke](#). [My father punished](#) you with the whips, but as for me, [I will punish](#) you with the scorpions.”

UST

14 He told them what the younger men [had advised](#). [He said, “My father](#) put heavy [burdens of work](#) on you, but I will put heavier burdens on you. [It was as though he](#) beat you with whips, but I will [beat](#) you with scorpions!”

1 Kings 12:15

it was a turn of events brought about by Yahweh

This is an idiom and can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh caused things to happen like this" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

his word that he had spoken by Ahijah ... to Jeroboam

The idiom "had spoken by" someone refers to giving someone a message to tell others. (See: [Idiom](#))

Ahijah ... Jeroboam ... Nebat

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shilonite

This is the name of a people group from the town of Shiloh. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the people
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- he raised up
- by the hand of
- Ahijah
- Jeroboam
- the son of

Translation Words - UST

- the king
- the Israelite leaders
- Yahweh
- what he had told the
- wanted would occur
- what he had told the
- Ahijah
- Jeroboam becoming king of the ten tribes
- Jeroboam becoming king of the ten tribes

ULT

¹⁵ And the king did not listen to the people, for the turn was from with Yahweh, so that he raised up his word, which Yahweh had spoken by the hand of Ahijah the Shilonite to Jeroboam the son of Nebat.

UST

¹⁵ So the king did not pay any attention to the Israelite leaders. Now all this happened in order that what Yahweh wanted would occur, what he had told the prophet Ahijah about Jeroboam becoming king of the ten tribes.

1 Kings 12:16

all Israel

Here "Israel" represents all the men of Israel capable of fighting. "All Israel" is a generalization which means almost all the men of Israel. Alternate translation: "all the men of Israel" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

What share do we have in David?

"Share" here is a metonym meaning a part, involvement, or interest. This question can be translated as a simple statement. Alternate translation: "We will have no part in the family of David." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metonymy](#))

We have no inheritance in the son of Jesse

"Son of Jesse" here is a metonym for David, a son of Jesse. "Inheritance" is a metonym for the part left for these people from David's successes. Alternate translation: "We will have nothing to do with the descendants of Jesse" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Go to your tents, Israel

"Tents" here is a metonym representing a person's place of residence. Alternate translation: "Go to your homes, people of Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Now see to your own house, David

"House" here is a metonym for David's lineage of power and prestige. Alternate translation: "Now take care of your own kingdom, descendant of David" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- Israel
- Israel
- the king
- the king
- To your tents
- to its tents
- your house
- the people
- and...returned
- with David
- David
- there is...an inheritance
- with the son of
- Jesse

ULT

¹⁶ And all Israel saw that the king had not listened to them, and the people returned the king a word, saying, "What portion is for us with David? And there is not an inheritance with the son of Jesse! To your tents, Israel! Now see your house, David." And Israel went to its tents.

UST

¹⁶ When the Israelite leaders realized that the king did not pay any attention to what they said, they shouted, "We do not want anything to do with this descendant of King David! We will not pay attention to what this grandson of Jesse says! You people of Israel, let us go home! As for this descendant of David, he can rule his own tribe!" So the Israelite leaders returned to their homes.

Translation Words - UST

- When the Israelite
- people of Israel
- the Israelite
- the king
- this descendant of King
- home
- he can rule his own tribe
- what they
- they shouted
- want anything
- David
- As for this descendant of David
- this grandson of Jesse says
- let us
- to their homes

1 Kings 12:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- But as for the sons of
- Israel
- Judah
- Rehoboam
- reigned

Translation Words - UST

- And after that, the only Israelite people
- whom Rehoboam
- ruled over were those
- the tribe of
- Judah

ULT

¹⁷ But as for the sons of Israel, the ones who dwelled in the cities of Judah, Rehoboam reigned over them.

UST

¹⁷ And after that, the only Israelite people whom Rehoboam ruled over were those who lived in the territory of the tribe of Judah.

1 Kings 12:18

Adoniram

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

all Israel

Here "Israel" is a metonym for the people of Israel. "All Israel" is a generalization which means almost all the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "all the people of Israel who were there" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- And the king
- Rehoboam
- Rehoboam (2)
- to Jerusalem
- And...sent
- Israel
- and...stoned
- and he died
- strengthened himself
- in the chariot

Translation Words - UST

- Then King
- King
- Rehoboam
- Rehoboam (2)
- Jerusalem
- went
- But the Israelite people
- killed
- by throwing
- quickly
- his chariot

ULT

¹⁸ And the king Rehoboam sent Adoram, who was over the forced labor, and all Israel stoned him with stone and he died. And the king Rehoboam strengthened himself to go up in the chariot to flee to Jerusalem.

UST

¹⁸ Then King Rehoboam went with Adoniram to talk to the Israelite people. Adoniram was the man who supervised all the men who were forced to work for Rehoboam. But the Israelite people killed him by throwing stones at him. When that happened, King Rehoboam quickly got in his chariot and escaped to Jerusalem.

1 Kings 12:19

the house of David

Here “house” is a metonym that represents family or descendants. Alternate translation: “the kings descended from David” (See: [Metonymy](#))

to this day

“ever since that time.” This refers to the time that the writer was actually writing this.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [And...has rebelled](#)
- [against the house of](#)
- [David](#)
- [day](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [time](#)
- [the people of the northern tribes of Israel](#)
- [have been rebelling against](#)
- [the descendants](#)
- [of King David](#)

ULT

¹⁹ And [Israel has rebelled against the house of David](#) to this [day](#).

UST

¹⁹ Ever since that [time](#), the people of [the northern tribes of Israel have been rebelling against the descendants of King David](#).

1 Kings 12:20

It happened that

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

when all Israel heard

“All Israel” here is a generalization that means the capable men of Israel who represent the rest of the people by a synecdoche.

Alternate translation: “when all the leaders of Israel heard” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

king over all Israel

“Israel” implicitly means the northern ten tribes that rebelled against Rehoboam. Alternate translation: “king over all of the 10 tribes of Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the family of David

Alternate translation: “David’s descendants”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [David](#)
- [the tribe of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [had returned](#)
- [that they sent](#)
- [and called](#)
- [the congregation](#)
- [and they caused...to reign](#)
- [the house of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When the Israelite](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [people](#)
- [to the kings descended from](#)
- [King David](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [returned from Egypt](#)
- [they invited him to come](#)
- [they invited him to come](#)
- [to be the king](#)
- [the tribe of](#)

ULT

²⁰ And it happened as soon as all [Israel](#) heard that [Jeroboam had returned](#), [that they sent and called](#) him to [the congregation and they caused](#) him to [reign](#) over all [Israel](#). One was not after [the house of David](#), except [the tribe of Judah](#) by itself.

UST

²⁰ [When the Israelite people](#) heard that [Jeroboam had returned from Egypt](#), [they invited him to come](#) to a meeting, and there they appointed him [to be the king](#) of [Israel](#). Only the people of [the tribe of Judah continued to be loyal to the kings descended from King David](#).

- Judah continued to be loyal

1 Kings 12:21

all the house of Judah and the tribe of Benjamin

Here “house” is a metonym that represents a tribe or descendants. And, here “tribe” refers specifically to the soldiers from those tribes. Alternate translation: “all the soldiers from the tribes of Judah and Benjamin” (See: [Metonymy](#))

180,000 chosen men

“one hundred eighty thousand chosen men” (See: [Numbers](#))

the house of Israel

Here “house” represents the kingdom made up of the 10 northern tribes of Israel. Alternate translation: “the kingdom of Israel” or “the people of the northern tribes of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Rehoboam](#)
- [to Rehoboam](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [to return](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [and he assembled](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [the tribe of](#)
- [Benjamin](#)
- [were chosen](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When Rehoboam](#)
- [the tribes of his](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [he could rule](#)
- [the tribes of his](#)
- [again](#)
- [he gathered](#)
- [of the best soldiers from the tribes of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [in order that](#)
- [and Benjamin](#)
- [He wanted them](#)
- [of Israel](#)

ULT

²¹ And [Rehoboam](#) entered [Jerusalem](#) and he assembled all the house of [Judah](#) and the tribe of [Benjamin](#), 180,000 [were chosen](#) who make war, to fight against the house of [Israel](#) to return the kingship to [Rehoboam](#) the son of [Solomon](#).

UST

²¹ When [Rehoboam](#) arrived in [Jerusalem](#), he gathered 180,000 of the best soldiers from the tribes of [Judah](#) and [Benjamin](#). He wanted them to fight against the northern tribes of [Israel](#) and defeat them, in order that he could rule all the tribes of his kingdom again.

1 Kings 12:22

the word of God came ... it said

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. Alternate translation: “God spoke this message ... and he said” or “God spoke these words ... and he said” (See: [Idiom](#))

Shemaiah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the man of God

The expression “man of God” is a respectful way of referring to a prophet of Yahweh. Alternate translation: “the man who belongs to God” or “the prophet of God”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the word of God](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God spoke](#)
- [the prophet](#)

ULT

²² And [the word of God](#) was to Shemaiah the man of [God](#), saying,

UST

²² But [God spoke](#) to [the prophet](#) Shemaiah and said this to him:

1 Kings 12:23

all the house of Judah and Benjamin

Here “house” is a metonym that represents a tribe or descendants.
Alternate translation: “all the people from the tribes of Judah and Benjamin” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Rehoboam
- the son of
- Solomon
- the king of
- Judah
- Judah
- the house of
- and Benjamin
- the people

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon's
- son
- Rehoboam
- the king of
- Judah
- in Judah
- all the people of the tribes of Judah
- and Benjamin
- and the people from the northern tribe who live

ULT

²³ “Say to [Rehoboam, the son of Solomon, the king of Judah](#), and to all [the house of Judah and Benjamin](#), and the remainder of [the people](#), saying,

UST

²³ “Go and tell this to [Solomon's son Rehoboam, the king of Judah](#), and to all [the people of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin and the people from the northern tribe who live in Judah](#):

1 Kings 12:24

your brothers the people of Israel

The words “brothers” and “people of Israel” are a doublet that refer to the men of the ten northern tribes and emphasize the family relationship between them and the tribes of Judah and Benjamin. (See: [Doublet](#))

for this thing has been made to happen by me

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “because I have made this thing happen” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- your brothers
- the sons of
- Israel
- Return
- and they turned back
- to his house
- the word of...Yahweh
- according to the word of Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh says
- your own relatives
- your own relatives
- the people of Israel
- commanded them to do, and they went home
- the people of Israel
- go home
- So Shemaiah went and...Yahweh
- What has happened is what Yahweh wanted to happen...commanded them to do, and they went home

ULT

²⁴ ‘Thus says [Yahweh](#): You shall not go up and you shall not fight against [your brothers, the sons of Israel](#). [Return](#), a man [to his house](#), for from with me this thing has been.”’ And they heard [the word of Yahweh and they turned back](#) to go [according to the word of Yahweh](#).

UST

²⁴ ‘[Yahweh says](#) that you must not go to fight against [your own relatives, the people of Israel](#). All of you must [go home](#). [What has happened is what Yahweh wanted to happen](#).”’ So [Shemaiah went and](#) told that to them, and they all listened what [Yahweh had commanded them to do, and they went home](#).

1 Kings 12:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jeroboam
- Shechem
- Ephraim

Translation Words - UST

- Then Jeroboam's workers
- the city of Shechem
- where the descendants of Ephraim

ULT

²⁵ And Jeroboam built Shechem in the hill country of Ephraim, and he dwelled in it. And he went out from there and he built Penuel.

UST

²⁵ Then Jeroboam's workers built walls around the city of Shechem in the hill country where the descendants of Ephraim lived, and he ruled from there for a while. He and his workers then left there and went to the city of Peniel, and they built walls around that city.

1 Kings 12:26

thought in his heart

“Heart” here is a metonym for a person’s inner consciousness, thoughts, motivation, or feelings. Alternate translation: “thought to himself” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the house of David

Here “house” is a metonym representing family or descendants. Alternate translation: “the kings descended from David” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jeroboam](#)
- [in his heart](#)
- [the kingdom](#)
- [will return](#)
- [to the house of](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [David](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

ULT

²⁶ And [Jeroboam](#) said [in his heart](#), “Now [the kingdom will return to the house of David](#).”

UST

²⁶⁻²⁷ Then Jeroboam said to himself, “If my people continue to go to Jerusalem and offer sacrifices to Yahweh at the temple there, soon they will again become loyal to Rehoboam, the king of Judah, and they will kill me.”

1 Kings 12:27

If these people go up

The words “these people” refer to the people of the northern ten tribes of Israel.

the heart of these people

“Heart” here is a metonym for the people’s allegiance and affection. Alternate translation: “the allegiance of these people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

turn again to their master, to Rehoboam king of Judah ... return to Rehoboam king of Judah

These phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined to emphasize Jeroboam’s fear that the people would turn again to Rehoboam as king. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#)
- [people](#)
- [sacrifices](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [And they will slay me](#)
- [in the house of Yahweh](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [the heart of](#)
- [and...will return](#)
- [and will return](#)
- [their master](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [the king of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh’s house](#)
- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [people, people group](#)
- [people, people group](#)

ULT

²⁷ If this [people](#) goes up to make [sacrifices in the house of Yahweh in Jerusalem](#), and [the heart of this people will return to their master](#), to [Rehoboam, the king of Judah](#). [And they will slay me and will return to Rehoboam, the king of Judah.](#)”

UST

²⁶⁻²⁷ Then Jeroboam said to himself, “If my people continue to go to Jerusalem and offer sacrifices to Yahweh at the temple there, soon they will again become loyal to Rehoboam, the king of Judah, and they will kill me.”

- return, turn back
- return, turn back
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- slay, slain, slaughter, kill, murder

1 Kings 12:28

brought you up

“You” here is a metonym for the ancestors of the people. Alternate translation: “brought your ancestors up” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- And...consulted
- calves of
- gold
- to Jerusalem
- your gods
- Israel
- from the land of
- Egypt

Translation Words - UST

- So he consulted
- He told his workers to make
- gold statues of
- calves
- Jerusalem to worship for a long time
- You are making too big an effort to keep going there. You people of Israel, look
- These statues are the gods
- Egypt
- Egypt

ULT

28 And [the king consulted](#) and made two [calves of gold](#). And he said to them, “Going up [to Jerusalem](#) is too much for you. Behold [your gods, Israel](#), who brought you up [from the land of Egypt!](#)”

UST

28 [So he consulted](#) his advisors, and then he did what they suggested. [He told his workers to make gold statues of two calves](#). Then he said to the people, “You have been going to [Jerusalem to worship for a long time](#). You are making too big an effort to keep going there. You people of Israel, look! [These statues are the gods](#) that brought our ancestors up from [Egypt!](#) So you can worship these, here!”

1 Kings 12:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- in Bethel
- in Bethel
- in Bethel
- in Dan

Translation Words - UST

- in the city of Bethel in the south
- in the city of Bethel in the south
- in the city of Bethel in the south
- in the city of Dan in the north

ULT

²⁹ And he set the one in Bethel and the one he gave in Dan.

UST

²⁹ He told his workers to place one of the statues in the city of Bethel in the south and one in the city of Dan in the north.

1 Kings 12:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- a sin
- the people
- Dan

Translation Words - UST

- caused the people
- sin
- Dan

ULT

³⁰ And this thing became a sin, and the people went before the face of the one as far as Dan.

UST

³⁰ So what Jeroboam did caused the people to sin. Some of them went and worshiped the calf at Bethel, and others went and worshiped the other calf at Dan.

1 Kings 12:31

Jeroboam made houses on high places

The workers who did this at Jeroboam's commands are represented by the metonym of the name of Jeroboam himself. Alternate translation: "Jeroboam's workers made houses on high places" (See: [Metonymy](#))

houses on high places

The implied information is that these were houses of worship. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "houses of worship on high places" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

made priests

Alternate translation: "appointed men to be priests"

Translation Words - ULT

- the house of
- high places
- priests
- the people
- from the sons of
- Levi

Translation Words - UST

- Moses had declared that only men from the tribe of Levi would be priests
- Jeroboam also told his workers to build places on the hills where
- Jeroboam also told his workers to build places on the hills where
- they
- tribe
- of Levi

ULT

³¹ And he made the house of high places. And he made priests from the ends of the people, who were not from the sons of Levi.

UST

³¹ Moses had declared that only men from the tribe of Levi would be priests, but Jeroboam also told his workers to build places on the hills where they could worship idols, and then he appointed men who were not from the tribe of Levi to be priests for the idols.

1 Kings 12:32

in the eighth month, on the fifteenth day of the month

This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. The fifteenth day is near the beginning of November on Western calendars. Alternate translation: "on the fifteenth day of the eighth month" (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

went up to the altar

"Went up" here is an idiom for going to a sacred place to worship since these altars were located on high places. Alternate translation: "offered sacrifices on the altar" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jeroboam
- a feast
- like the feast
- to sacrifice
- to the calves
- the priests of
- the high places
- in the...month
- of the month
- day
- was in Judah
- the altar
- at Bethel
- at Bethel
- at Bethel
- at Bethel
- at Bethel

Translation Words - UST

- a celebration
- the celebration of living in temporary shelters
- month
- that occurred
- he
- offered sacrifices
- calves
- priests
- hills where idols were worshiped, where his workers built houses used for idolatry
- day
- in Judah each year
- On the altar
- that they built at Bethel
- that they built at Bethel
- that they built at Bethel
- and he stationed

ULT

³² And Jeroboam made a feast in the eighth month, on the 15th day of the month, like the feast that was in Judah, and he offered up on the altar. Thus he did at Bethel to sacrifice to the calves that he had made. And he caused to stand at Bethel the priests of the high places that he had made.

UST

³² They had a celebration in the eighth month, on the fifteenth day, like the celebration of living in temporary shelters that occurred in Judah each year. On the altar that they built at Bethel, he offered sacrifices to the gold statues of calves that they had made, and he stationed the priests on the hills where idols were worshiped, where his workers built houses used for idolatry.

- and he stationed

1 Kings 12:33

went up to the altar

“Went up” here is an idiom for going to a sacred place to worship since these altars were located on high places. Alternate translation: “offered sacrifices on the altar” (See: [Idiom](#))

in the month he had planned in his own mind

Alternate translation: “in the month that he had determined”

Translation Words - ULT

- the altar
- the altar
- at Bethel
- at Bethel
- at Bethel
- Israel
- to burn incense
- day
- in the...month
- in the month
- a feast
- for the sons of

Translation Words - UST

- that
- that he himself had chosen
- that...that he himself had chosen
- altar
- altar
- people should...that
- festival
- that day in
- month
- There on that
- he burned incense
- people should...that

ULT

³³ And he offered up on [the altar](#) that he had made [at Bethel](#), on the 15th day in the eighth month, in the month that he had devised by him alone. And he made [a feast for the sons of Israel](#) and he offered up on [the altar to burn incense](#).

12:2 ^[1].

UST

³³ Jeroboam went up to [that altar](#) on that day in the eighth month [that he himself had chosen](#). There on that [altar he burned incense](#) to be a sacrifice. And he declared that the [people should](#) celebrate [that festival](#) on that same day every year.

1 Kings 13

1 Kings 13 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter has two parts: The young prophet's warning to Jeroboam (1-10) and the old prophet's deception (11-34). (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Obeying God

People should do what God tells them to do and not what other people tell them is God's will for them. The story of the young prophet and the old prophet is an example of this. (See: [reward](#), [prize](#), [deserve](#) and [will of God](#))

1 Kings 13:1

A man of God came out of Judah by the word of Yahweh to Bethel

The implied information is that Yahweh sent the man of God to Bethel. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Yahweh sent a man of God from Judah to Bethel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

A man of God

This is another title for a prophet. Alternate translation: “A prophet”

came out of Judah

Alternate translation: “came from Judah”

the word of Yahweh

Alternate translation: “the message of Yahweh” or “Yahweh’s message”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- from Judah
- with the word of Yahweh
- Bethel
- Bethel
- Bethel
- And Jeroboam
- the altar
- to burn incense

Translation Words - UST

- obeying
- what Yahweh commanded him to do
- went from Judah
- Bethel
- right at the time that
- Bethel...right at the time that
- Jeroboam
- altar
- to burn incense

ULT

¹ And behold, a man of God came from Judah with the word of Yahweh to Bethel. And Jeroboam was standing by the altar to burn incense.

UST

¹ One day a prophet, obeying what Yahweh commanded him to do, went from Judah north to Bethel. He arrived there right at the time that Jeroboam was standing at the altar, ready to burn incense.

1 Kings 13:2

He cried against the altar

Here “He” refers to the man of God.

cried against the altar

This means he prophesied toward the altar in a loud and condemning voice. Alternate translation: “prophesied loudly toward the altar” (See: [Idiom](#))

Altar, altar

The prophet spoke to the altar as if it were a person who could hear him. He said this twice for emphasis. (See: [Apostrophe](#) and [Personification](#))

a son named Josiah will be born to the family of David

Here the “family of David” refers to the descendants of David. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “a descendant of David will have a son named Josiah” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

they will burn

Here “they” refers to Josiah and the people with him.

Translation Words - ULT

- [And he cried out](#)
- [the altar](#)
- [Altar](#)
- [Altar](#)
- [Josiah](#)
- [shall be his name](#)
- [And he shall sacrifice](#)
- [the priests of](#)
- [the high places](#)
- [the ones who are burning incense](#)
- [a human](#)
- [with the word of Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [a son](#)
- [shall be born](#)
- [to the house of](#)
- [David](#)

ULT

² [And he cried out](#) against [the altar with the word of Yahweh](#) and he said: “[Altar! Altar!](#) Thus says [Yahweh](#), ‘Behold, [a son shall be born to the house of David](#), [Josiah shall be his name](#). And he shall [sacrifice](#) on you [the priests of the high places](#), [the ones who are burning incense](#) on you. And the bones of [a human](#) shall be burned on you.’”

UST

² [Saying what Yahweh](#) told him to say, the prophet shouted, “This is what [Yahweh says about this altar](#), ‘I want you to know that some day [a descendant of King David will be born](#). His name will be Josiah, and he will come here. He will slaughter at this altar the priests who are burning incense for sacrifices on the hills in this area, and he will burn the bones of dead people on this altar.’”

Translation Words - UST

- Saying what
- Yahweh...I want you to know that some day
- Josiah, and he will come here
- He will slaughter
- the priests
- who are burning incense for sacrifices
- the hills in this area
- the bones
- Yahweh says about this
- altar
- altar
- at this altar
- a descendant
- King David
- will be born
- will be born
- His name will be

1 Kings 13:3

the altar will be split apart, and the ashes on it will be poured out

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will split the altar apart and the ashes on it will fall to the ground" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a sign
- is the sign
- on...day
- Yahweh
- the altar

Translation Words - UST

- what will prove
- what will prove
- to you
- Yahweh has said this
- This altar

ULT

³ And he gave a sign on that day, saying, "This is the sign that Yahweh has spoken: 'Behold, the altar shall be torn into pieces, and the ash that is on it shall be poured out.'"

UST

³ Then the prophet also said, "This is what will prove to you that Yahweh has said this: This altar will be split apart, and the ashes that are on it will be scattered."

1 Kings 13:4

the hand with which he had reached out against the man dried up

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh dried up the hand with which he had reached out against the man" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

dried up

Alternate translation: "withered" or "became paralyzed"

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- God
- Seize him
- to return it
- he had cried out
- the altar
- the altar
- at Bethel
- at Bethel
- at Bethel
- Jeroboam
- his hand
- his hand

Translation Words - UST

- When King Jeroboam
- prophet
- But immediately...paralyzed
- the king's
- result that
- said about the altar at
- said about the altar at
- and said
- Bethel
- he pointed his finger at him
- Bethel, he pointed his finger at him
- and said
- arm

ULT

⁴ And it happened as soon as the king heard the word of the man of God that he had cried out against the altar at Bethel, that Jeroboam sent forth his hand from over the altar, saying, "Seize him!" And his hand that he had sent forth against him dried up and he was not able to return it to himself.

UST

⁴ When King Jeroboam heard what the prophet said about the altar at Bethel, he pointed his finger at him and said to his servants, "Seize that man!" But immediately the king's arm became paralyzed, with the result that he could not move it.

1 Kings 13:5

The altar was also split apart

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh also split the altar apart" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

as described by the sign that the man of God had given by the word of Yahweh

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "as the man of God had described by the word of Yahweh as a sign" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the word of Yahweh

Alternate translation: "the message of Yahweh" or "Yahweh's message"

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the altar](#)
- [the altar](#)
- [according to the sign](#)
- [God](#)
- [by the word of Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The altar](#)
- [would happen](#)
- [the prophet](#)
- [that](#)
- [Yahweh had predicted](#)

ULT

⁵ [And the altar](#) was torn into pieces and the ash was poured out from [the altar](#), [according to the sign](#) that the man of [God](#) had given [by the word of Yahweh](#).

UST

⁵ ([The altar](#) split apart, and the ashes spilled out on the ground, which is what [the prophet](#) said [that Yahweh had predicted would happen](#).)

1 Kings 13:6

Plead for the favor of Yahweh your God

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **favor**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: "Plead that Yahweh your God may favor me" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

my hand may be restored to me again

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh may restore my hand" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the king's hand was restored to him again, and it became as it was before

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh restored the king's hand and made it as it was before" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

⁶ And [the king](#) answered and said to the man of [God](#), "Appease, please, the face of [Yahweh your God and pray](#) for me, [so my hand may return](#) to me." And the man of [God](#) appeased the face of [Yahweh](#), and [the hand of the king returned](#) to him, and it became like at the first.

UST

⁶ Then [the king](#) said to [the prophet](#), "Please [pray that Yahweh will be](#) merciful to me [and heal my arm!](#)" So [the prophet prayed](#), and [Yahweh completely healed the king's arm](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [God](#)
- [your God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [and pray](#)
- [so...may return](#)
- [and...returned](#)
- [my hand](#)
- [the hand of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the king](#)
- [will be...completely healed the king's arm](#)
- [the prophet](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the prophet](#)
- [pray that](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [prayed, and Yahweh](#)
- [and heal](#)
- [will be...completely healed the king's arm](#)
- [arm](#)
- [will be...completely healed the king's arm](#)

1 Kings 13:7

Come home with me and refresh yourself

The word “yourself” is a reflexive pronoun. Alternate translation: “Come home with me and eat some food” (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- God
- to the house
- a gift

Translation Words - UST

- Then the king said
- the prophet
- home
- And I will also...a reward...what you have done

ULT

⁷ And the king spoke to the man of God, “Come with me to the house and sustain yourself, and I will give to you a gift.”

UST

⁷ Then the king said to the prophet, “Come home with me and eat some food. And I will also give you a reward for what you have done!”

1 Kings 13:8

half your possessions

Alternate translation: "half of your house"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- the king
- your house
- bread
- water

Translation Words - UST

- But the prophet
- Even...eat or
- of everything
- I will not
- drink anything

ULT

⁸ And the man of God said to the king, "If you would give to me half of your house, I would not go with you, and I would not eat bread and I would not drink water in this place.

UST

⁸ But the prophet replied, "Even if you would promise to give me half of everything that you own, I will not go with you, and I will not eat or drink anything with you here,

1 Kings 13:9

You will eat no bread nor drink water, nor return by the way that you came

Alternate translation: "Do not eat bread, drink water, or return by the way that you came"

Translation Words - ULT

- he has commanded
- by the word of Yahweh
- bread
- water
- you shall...return

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh...I
- to eat
- or drink anything here
- commanded
- to return home

ULT

⁹ For thus he has commanded me by the word of Yahweh, saying, 'You shall not eat bread and you shall not drink water and you shall not return by the road that you went.'

UST

⁹ because Yahweh commanded me not to eat or drink anything here. He also commanded me not to return home on the road on which I came here."

1 Kings 13:10

left another way

Alternate translation: "went a different way"

Translation Words - ULT

- he did...return
- Bethel
- Bethel
- Bethel

Translation Words - UST

- So he started to return home
- Bethel
- Bethel
- Bethel

ULT

¹⁰ And he went by another road and he did not return by the road by which he had come to Bethel.

UST

¹⁰ So he started to return home, but he did not go on the road on which he came to Bethel. He went on a different road.

1 Kings 13:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Now...prophet
- the king
- to their father
- in Bethel
- in Bethel
- in Bethel
- in Bethel
- in Bethel
- his son
- God
- that day

Translation Words - UST

- At that time there was an
- Bethel
- At that time there was an...Bethel
- and they also told him what the prophet had said
- that...and they also told him what the prophet had said
- the king
- the king
- who was also a prophet
- His sons
- prophet from Judah
- day

ULT

¹¹ Now one old prophet was dwelling in Bethel, and his son came and he recounted to him all the news that the man of God had done that day in Bethel, the words that he had spoken to the king, and they recounted them to their father.

UST

¹¹ At that time there was an old man living in Bethel who was also a prophet. His sons came and told him what the prophet from Judah had done there on that day, and they also told him what the prophet had said to the king.

1 Kings 13:12

his sons had seen the way

The implied information is that the sons also told their father which way the man of God went. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their father](#)
- [his sons](#)
- [God](#)
- [from Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Their father said](#)
- [his sons](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [from Judah](#)

ULT

¹² And [their father](#) spoke to them, "Where is this, the road he went?" And [his sons](#) had seen the road that the man of [God](#) had gone when he came [from Judah](#).

UST

¹² [Their father said](#), "On which road did he go?" So [his sons](#) showed him the road on which the [prophet from Judah](#) had gone when he left Bethel.

1 Kings 13:13

Saddle

This means to place a seat on the back of an animal so a person can ride on it.

Translation Words - ULT

- his sons
- the donkey
- the donkey

Translation Words - UST

- his sons
- donkey
- the donkey

ULT

13 And he said to his sons, "Saddle the donkey for me." And they saddled the donkey for him and he mounted on it.

UST

13 Then he said to his sons, "Put a saddle on my donkey." So they did that, and he got on the donkey.

1 Kings 13:14

The old prophet

This refers to the prophet who lived in Bethel.

he said to him

Alternate translation: "the old prophet said to the man of God"

He answered

Alternate translation: "The man of God answered"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- the oak tree
- from Judah

Translation Words - UST

- the prophet from Judah
- prophet
- an oak tree
- from Judah

ULT

¹⁴ And he went after the man of God and he found him sitting under the oak tree. And he said to him, "Are you the man of God, who came from Judah?" And he said, "I am."

UST

¹⁴ He went along the road to find the prophet from Judah. He found him sitting under an oak tree. He said to him, "Are you the prophet who came from Judah?" He replied, "Yes, I am."

1 Kings 13:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- to the house
- bread

Translation Words - UST

- home
- some food

ULT

¹⁵ And he said to him, "Go with me to the house and eat bread."

UST

¹⁵ The old prophet said to him, "Come home with me and eat some food."

1 Kings 13:16

go in with you

Alternate translation: "go into your house"

in this place

Alternate translation: "in Bethel"

Translation Words - ULT

- to return
- bread
- water

Translation Words - UST

- into your house, or
- to eat or
- drink anything

ULT

¹⁶ And he said, "I am not able to return with you or to come with you. And I will not eat bread and will not drink water with you in this place.

UST

¹⁶ He replied, "No, I am not allowed to go with you into your house, or to eat or drink anything with you,

1 Kings 13:17

it was commanded to me by the word of Yahweh

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh commanded me by his word" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the word of Yahweh

Alternate translation: "the message of Yahweh" or "Yahweh's message"

Translation Words - ULT

- [by the word of Yahweh](#)
- [bread](#)
- [water](#)
- [You shall...return](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh...told me](#)
- [eat](#)
- [or drink anything](#)
- [return home](#)

ULT

¹⁷ For a word was to me [by the word of Yahweh](#), 'You shall not eat [bread](#) and you shall not drink [water](#) there. [You shall](#) not [return](#) to go by the road in which you went.'"

UST

¹⁷ because [Yahweh told me](#), 'Do not [eat or drink anything](#) here, and do not [return home](#) on the road on which you came.'"

1 Kings 13:18

an angel spoke to me by the word of Yahweh

Alternate translation: "an angel delivered to me a message from Yahweh"

by the word of Yahweh

Alternate translation: "the message of Yahweh" or "Yahweh's message"

Translation Words - ULT

- am a prophet
- and a messenger
- with the word of Yahweh
- your house
- bread
- water
- He lied

Translation Words - UST

- am a prophet
- Yahweh...I
- sent an angel
- home
- and give you some food
- and drink
- But the old man was lying

ULT

18 And he said to him, "I also **am a prophet** like you, **and a messenger** spoke to me **with the word of Yahweh**, saying, 'Bring him back with you to **your house**, so he may eat **bread** and he may drink **water**.'" (**He lied** to him.)

UST

18 Then the old prophet said to him, "I also **am a prophet**, like you are. **Yahweh sent an angel** to tell me that **I** should take you **home** with me **and give you some food and drink**." **But the old man was lying** when he said that.

1 Kings 13:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And he returned
- bread
- in his house
- water

Translation Words - UST

- But because of what the old prophet said, the prophet from Judah returned
- to his home
- some food
- and drank some water with him

ULT

¹⁹ And he returned with him and he ate bread in his house and he drank water.

UST

¹⁹ But because of what the old prophet said, the prophet from Judah returned with him to his home and ate some food and drank some water with him.

1 Kings 13:20

As they sat at the table

The implied information is that they were still eating and drinking at the table. Alternate translation: “As they were eating and drinking at the table” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the word of Yahweh came to the prophet

The idiom “the word of Yahweh came to” is used to introduce a special message from God. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Kings 6:11](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh gave a message to the prophet” or “Yahweh spoke this message to the prophet” (See: [Idiom](#))

brought him back

Here the word “him” refers to the man of God.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the word of Yahweh](#)
- [the prophet](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh spoke](#)
- [the old man](#)

ULT

²⁰ And it happened that they were sitting at the table. And [the word of Yahweh](#) was to [the prophet](#) who had brought him back.

UST

²⁰ While they were sitting at the table, [Yahweh spoke](#) to [the old man](#).

1 Kings 13:21

came from Judah, saying, “Yahweh

The idiom “the word of Yahweh came to” in the previous verse is used to introduce a special message from God. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Kings 6:11](#). Alternate translation: “came from Judah. He said, ‘Yahweh’ or “came from Judah: ‘Yahweh” (See: [Idiom](#))

he cried to the man of God

Alternate translation: “the prophet spoke loudly to the man of God”

Because you have been disobedient to the word of Yahweh

Alternate translation: “Because you have not obeyed the word of Yahweh”

Translation Words - ULT

- [And he cried out](#)
- [God](#)
- [your God](#)
- [from Judah](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [you have been rebellious against](#)
- [you have...kept](#)
- [the command](#)
- [had commanded you](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then he cried out](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [he](#)
- [from Judah](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [You](#)
- [you](#)
- [have disobeyed](#)
- [have...done](#)
- [to do](#)
- [commanded](#)

ULT

²¹ [And he cried out](#) to the man of [God](#) who had come [from Judah](#), saying, “Thus says [Yahweh](#), ‘Because [you have been rebellious against](#) the mouth of [Yahweh](#) and [you have not kept the command](#) that [Yahweh your God](#) had [commanded you](#),

UST

²¹ [Then he cried out](#) to the [prophet from Judah](#), “This is what [Yahweh](#) says: ‘[You have disobeyed](#) him, and you have not [done](#) what [he commanded you to do](#).

1 Kings 13:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- and you have returned
- bread
- bread
- water
- water
- the grave of
- your fathers

Translation Words - UST

- to eat and drink
- to eat and drink
- As a result, you will be killed
- to eat and drink
- As a result, you will be killed
- where he commanded
- in the grave where your ancestors are buried

ULT

²² and you have returned and you have eaten bread and you have drunk water in the place where he spoke to you, "You shall not eat bread and you shall not drink water," your corpse shall not enter into the grave of your fathers."

UST

²² Instead, you have come back here and had things to eat and drink in a place where he commanded you not to do that. As a result, you will be killed, and your body will not be buried in the grave where your ancestors are buried."

1 Kings 13:23

the prophet saddled the donkey

This means he placed a seat on the back of the donkey so the man of God could ride on it. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 13:13](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- bread
- the donkey
- for the prophet

Translation Words - UST

- When they...finished eating
- on the donkey for...from Judah
- the prophet...from Judah

ULT

²³ And it happened after his eating bread and after his drinking, that he saddled the donkey for him, for the prophet whom he had brought back.

UST

²³ When they had finished eating, the old man put a saddle on the donkey for the prophet from Judah, and the prophet from Judah left.

1 Kings 13:24

his body was left on the road

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “left his body on the road” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

his body

Alternate translation: “his dead body”

Translation Words - ULT

- a lion
- and the lion
- and it put him to death
- and the donkey

Translation Words - UST

- a lion met him
- it, and the lion was also standing beside the corpse
- and killed him
- the donkey

ULT

²⁴ And he went and a lion found him in the road and it put him to death. And his corpse was thrown in the road and the donkey was standing beside it and the lion was standing beside the corpse.

UST

²⁴ But as he was going, a lion met him and killed him. The prophet's corpse was lying on the road; the donkey was standing beside it, and the lion was also standing beside the corpse.

1 Kings 13:25

they came and told it

Here "it" refers to what they had seen on the road. Alternate translation: "they came and told about what they had seen"

Translation Words - ULT

- the lion
- the...prophet

Translation Words - UST

- and the lion
- into Bethel and reported what they had seen

ULT

²⁵ And behold, men were passing by and they saw the corpse thrown in the road, and the lion standing beside the corpse. And they came and spoke in the city in which the old prophet was dwelling.

UST

²⁵ Some men passed by and were surprised to see the corpse on the road and the lion standing next to the corpse. So they went into Bethel and reported what they had seen.

1 Kings 13:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the prophet
- God
- was rebellious against
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- to the lion
- and put him to death
- according to the word of Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- prophet
- prophet
- Yahweh told
- Yahweh allowed
- him to do
- lion to attack
- and kill him
- Yahweh said would happen

ULT

²⁶ And the prophet who had brought him back from the road heard and he said, "He is the man of God who was rebellious against the mouth of Yahweh. And Yahweh gave him to the lion, and it tore him into pieces and put him to death according to the word of Yahweh that he had spoken to him."

UST

²⁶ When the old man who had brought the prophet from Judah to his home heard about it, he said, "That is the prophet who disobeyed what Yahweh told him to do! That is why Yahweh allowed the lion to attack him and kill him. That is what Yahweh said would happen!"

1 Kings 13:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- his sons
- the donkey

Translation Words - UST

- his sons
- donkey

ULT

²⁷ And he spoke to his sons, saying, "Saddle the donkey for me." And they saddled it.

UST

²⁷ Then he said to his sons, "Put a saddle on my donkey." So they did that.

1 Kings 13:28

the body

Alternate translation: "the dead body of the man of God"

left in the road

Alternate translation: "lying in the road"

Translation Words - ULT

- and the donkey
- the donkey
- and the lion
- The lion

Translation Words - UST

- the donkey
- the donkey
- and the lion
- But the lion had

ULT

²⁸ And he went and found the corpse thrown in the road and the donkey and the lion standing beside the corpse. The lion had not eaten the corpse and had not torn the donkey into pieces.

UST

²⁸ Then he rode on the donkey and found the prophet's corpse on the road, and his donkey and the lion were still standing there alongside the corpse. But the lion had not eaten any of the flesh of the prophet and had not attacked the donkey.

1 Kings 13:29

took up

Alternate translation: "lifted up"

the body

Alternate translation: "the dead body"

Translation Words - ULT

- the prophet
- the...prophet
- God
- and he rested it
- the donkey
- and to bury him

Translation Words - UST

- The...man
- of the prophet
- it
- and put it on
- his donkey
- bury his corpse

ULT

²⁹ And the prophet lifted up the corpse of the man of God and he rested it on the donkey and he brought it back. And he entered into the city of the old prophet to wail and to bury him.

UST

²⁹ The old man picked up the corpse of the prophet and put it on his donkey and brought it back to Bethel, in order to mourn for him and to bury his corpse.

1 Kings 13:30

they mourned

Here the word “they” refers to the prophet and his sons.

Woe, my brother!

The word “Woe” here is an expression of great sorrow.

Translation Words - ULT

- And he rested
- in his grave
- my brother

Translation Words - UST

- in the grave where other people...his family...been buried
- had
- my brother

ULT

³⁰ And he rested his corpse in his grave. And they wailed over him, “Alas, my brother!”

UST

³⁰ He buried the prophet’s corpse in the grave where other people in his family had been buried. Then he and his sons mourned about him, saying, “We are very sorry, my brother!”

1 Kings 13:31

he had buried him

Here the word “he” refers to the old prophet and the word “him” refers to the man of God.

Lay my bones beside his bones

Here “my bones” represents his entire body. Alternate translation: “Lay my dead body beside his bones” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- his burying
- then you shall bury
- is buried
- his sons
- When I die
- in the grave
- God
- rest

Translation Words - UST

- buried him
- buried
- Lay
- the old man said to his sons
- When I die, bury my corpse in
- grave where we
- the prophet from Judah
- my

ULT

³¹ And it happened after his burying him that he said to his sons, saying, “When I die, then you shall bury me in the grave in which the man of God is buried. Beside his bones rest my bones.

UST

³¹ After they had buried him, the old man said to his sons, “When I die, bury my corpse in the grave where we buried the prophet from Judah. Lay my corpse next to his corpse.

1 Kings 13:32

houses on the high places

The implied information is that these were houses of worship.
Alternate translation: "houses of worship on the high places" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- he cried out
- by the word of Yahweh
- the altar
- is in Bethel
- is in Bethel
- is in Bethel
- the houses of
- the high places
- Samaria

Translation Words - UST

- say
- altar
- Bethel
- Bethel
- Bethel
- and what Yahweh
- told him to say about...places where they worshiped idols
- the hills around
- Samaria. Those things will surely happen

ULT

³² For the word that he cried out by the word of Yahweh against the altar that is in Bethel and against all the houses of the high places that are in the cities of Samaria will certainly happen."

UST

³² And do not forget what he said, things that Yahweh told him to say about the altar in Bethel, and what Yahweh told him to say about the places where they worshiped idols on the hills around the towns in Samaria. Those things will surely happen."

1 Kings 13:33

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jeroboam
- did...return
- but he returned
- evil
- the people
- priests of
- one of the priests of
- the high places
- the high places

Translation Words - UST

- But King Jeroboam
- stop continuing to do
- still did
- the evil things
- He appointed as priest
- he appointed more priests
- from men
- anyone who
- on the hilltops

ULT

³³ After this matter Jeroboam did not return from his evil way, but he returned and made from the ends of the people priests of the high places. The desiring one, he would fill his hand, and he would become one of the priests of the high places.

UST

³³ But King Jeroboam still did not stop continuing to do the evil things that he was doing. Instead, he appointed more priests from men who were not descended from Levi. He appointed as priest anyone who agreed to become one, in order that he could offer sacrifices on the hilltops.

1 Kings 13:34

This matter became sin to the family of Jeroboam

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Jeroboam's family sinned by doing this thing" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

This matter

This phrase refers to Jeroboam's setting up shrines and appointing priests.

caused his family to be destroyed and to be exterminated

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "because of this God destroyed and exterminated Jeroboam's family" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to be destroyed and to be exterminated

These mean nearly the same thing. Alternate translation: "to be completely destroyed" (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sin of](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [and to annihilate](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sin](#)
- [a few years later God got rid of](#)
- [most of...descendants](#)
- [Jeroboam's](#)

ULT

³⁴ And by this thing it became [the sin of the house of Jeroboam](#), both to efface [and to annihilate](#) from on the face of the ground.

UST

³⁴ Because he committed that [sin](#), [a few years later God got rid of most of Jeroboam's descendants](#) and did not allow them to become kings of Israel.

1 Kings 14

1 Kings 14 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter has two stories. One is the death of Jeroboam's son (1-18). The other is the reign of Rehoboam (20-31).

Special concepts in this chapter

The death of Jeroboam's son

God knows the truth; it is useless to try to fool God's prophet. Jeroboam's son became sick; so the king sent his wife, disguised as a common woman, to the prophet. The prophet was blind, but when Jeroboam's wife arrived he told her, "Come in, wife of Jeroboam." He also told her that her son would die and that all of Jeroboam's family would be killed, because he had caused Israel to worship the golden calves. (See: [true](#), [truth](#) and [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Rehoboam's reign

When Solomon obeyed God, God made him very rich. When the people of Judah began to worship the fertility goddess, Ashtoreth, and to do many evil things, they had to give all of their wealth to the king of Egypt to persuade him not to attack Jerusalem. (See: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#))

1 Kings 14:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Abijah
- the son of
- Jeroboam

Translation Words - UST

- Jeroboam's
- son
- Abijah

ULT

¹ At that time Abijah the son of Jeroboam became sick.

UST

¹ At that time, Jeroboam's son Abijah became very sick.

1 Kings 14:2

disguise yourself

Alternate translation: "change how you appear to others"

you will not be recognized

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "no one will recognize you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jeroboam
- Jeroboam
- they will...know
- to Shiloh
- Ahijah
- the prophet
- as king
- people

Translation Words - UST

- who predicted
- Jeroboam
- will recognize
- to the city of Shiloh, where
- the prophet
- Ahijah lives
- the king
- of Israel

ULT

² And [Jeroboam](#) said to his wife, "Rise now and change yourself, so [they will](#) not [know](#) that you are the wife of [Jeroboam](#). And you will go [to Shiloh](#). Behold, [Ahijah the prophet](#) is there, he himself spoke concerning me [as king](#) over this [people](#)."

UST

² [Jeroboam](#) said to his wife, "Disguise yourself in order that no one [will recognize](#) that you are my wife. Then go [to the city of Shiloh, where the prophet Ahijah lives](#). He is the one [who predicted](#) that I would become [the king of Israel](#)."

1 Kings 14:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- in your hand
- bread loaves
- honey
- He...will tell

Translation Words - UST

- with you
- loaves of bread
- and...of honey
- and give them

ULT

³ And you will take in your hand ten bread loaves and cakes and a jar of honey and go to him. He himself will tell you what will happen to the boy.”

UST

³ Take with you ten loaves of bread and some small flat cakes, and a jar of honey, and give them to him. Tell him about our son, and he will tell you what will happen to him.”

1 Kings 14:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jeroboam
- to Shiloh
- the house of
- Ahijah
- Now Ahijah

Translation Words - UST

- Shiloh
- Ahijah
- Ahijah's
- house
- he

ULT

⁴ And the wife of Jeroboam did so. And she rose and went to Shiloh and she entered the house of Ahijah. (Now Ahijah was not able to see because his eyes stood because of his old age.)

UST

⁴ So his wife went to Shiloh, to Ahijah's house. Ahijah was unable to see, because he was very old and had become blind.

1 Kings 14:5

Look, the wife of Jeroboam

Here the word "Look" means "pay attention."

coming to seek advice from you

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **advice**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: "coming to ask you to advise her" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Say such and such to her

The words "such and such" mean that Yahweh told Ahijah what to say. Alternate translation: "Speak in this way to her" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And Yahweh](#)
- [Ahijah](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [to seek](#)
- [her son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [But before she got there, Yahweh](#)
- [Ahijah](#)
- [Jeroboam's](#)
- [inquire about their](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

⁵ [And Yahweh](#) said to [Ahijah](#), "Behold, the wife of [Jeroboam](#) is coming [to seek](#) a word from with you regarding [her son](#), for he is sick. Like this and like that you shall speak to her. And it will happen as soon as she comes that she will be changing herself."

UST

⁵ [But before she got there, Yahweh](#) told [Ahijah](#) that [Jeroboam's](#) wife was coming to [inquire about their son](#), who was very sick. And Yahweh told Ahijah what he should tell her. When she came to him, she pretended to be another woman.

1 Kings 14:6

Why do you pretend to be someone you are not?

This question shows that Ahijah knew she was disguised. Alternate translation: "Stop pretending to be someone else; I know who you are." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

I have been sent to you with bad news

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh told me to give you bad news" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Ahijah
- Jeroboam
- have been sent

Translation Words - UST

- Ahijah
- of Jeroboam
- Yahweh has given me...tell you

ULT

⁶ And it happened as soon as Ahijah heard the sound of her feet entering in the opening that he said, "Enter, wife of Jeroboam. Why is this, you are changing yourself? Now I have been sent to you with a harsh thing.

UST

⁶ But when Ahijah heard her footsteps as she entered the doorway, he said to her, "Come in, wife of Jeroboam! Why do you pretend that you are someone else? Yahweh has given me bad news to tell you.

1 Kings 14:7

I raised you

Alternate translation: "I exalted you"

Translation Words - ULT

- to Jeroboam
- Yahweh
- the God of
- Israel
- Israel
- I raised you up
- the people
- my people
- as a leader

Translation Words - UST

- Jeroboam
- Yahweh
- the God
- whom we Israelites worship
- my Israelite
- people
- people
- and enabled you
- the king

ULT

⁷ Go, say to Jeroboam, thus says Yahweh, the God of Israel, 'Because I raised you up from the midst of the people and I gave you as a leader over my people Israel,

UST

⁷ Go and tell Jeroboam that this is what Yahweh, the God whom we Israelites worship, says to you: 'I chose you from among the common people and enabled you to become the king of my Israelite people.

1 Kings 14:8

I tore the kingdom away

God forcefully removed most of the kingdom like a person tears a piece of cloth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

followed me

Alternate translation: “obeyed me”

with all his heart

Here the “heart” refers to a person’s will and desire. Alternate translation: “with all his will” or “with complete commitment” (See: [Metonymy](#))

what was right in my eyes

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “what I judged to be right” or “what I considered to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

⁸ and I tore [the kingdom](#) away [from the house of David](#) and I gave it to you, but you are not [like my servant David](#), who [kept my commandments](#) and who walked after me with all [his heart](#), to do only [the upright thing](#) in my eyes.

UST

⁸ I took [most of the kingdom of Israel](#) [away from David's descendants](#) and gave it to you. But you have not been like [David, who served me very well](#). He [obeyed all my commandments](#) very [sincerely, doing only things that I](#) considered to be right.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the kingdom](#)
- [from the house of](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [like my servant](#)
- [kept](#)
- [my commandments](#)
- [his heart](#)
- [the upright thing](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I](#)
- [most of the kingdom](#)
- [of Israel away from](#)
- [David](#)
- [David's descendants](#)
- [who served me very well. He obeyed all](#)
- [commandments](#)
- [commandments](#)
- [very sincerely, doing only things that I](#)

1 Kings 14:9

thrust me behind your back

Jeroboam has disrespected Yahweh like a person throws away something that is not wanted. Alternate translation: “completely rejected me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And you have done evil](#)
- [gods](#)
- [and cast images](#)
- [to provoke me to anger](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [more evil](#)
- [very angry](#)
- [by making metal images](#)
- [gods](#)

ULT

⁹ [And you have done evil](#) by doing more than all who were before your face. And you went and made for yourself other [gods and cast images to provoke me to anger](#) and you have thrown me behind your back.

UST

⁹ But you have done [more evil](#) things than all those who ruled before you. You have rejected me, and you have caused me to become [very angry by making metal images](#) of other [gods](#) so that you and others could worship them.

1 Kings 14:10

look

“pay attention.” This word is added to indicate that what follows is important.

I will cut off ... and will completely remove

These two phrases are very similar in meaning and are repeated for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

cut off from you every male child in Israel

Yahweh speaks of destroying Jeroboam's family and preventing him from having any descendants as if he were cutting them off as one would cut a branch from a tree. Alternate translation: “destroy every one of your male children in Israel” (See: [Metaphor](#))

will completely remove your family, like someone who burns up dung until it is gone

This simile compares the removal of every descendant of Jeroboam with the complete burning up of dung that was mixed with straw, dried, and burned for fuel. (See: [Simile](#))

ULT

¹⁰ Therefore, behold, I am about to bring [evil](#) to [the house of Jeroboam](#), and [I will cut off with respect to Jeroboam](#) one who urinates against a wall, one who is restrained [and one who is let free in Israel](#). And I will burn after [the house of Jeroboam](#) just as the dung burns until it is finished.

UST

¹⁰ So, I am going to cause [terrible things](#) to happen to [your family](#). [I will cause all your male descendants to die, young ones](#) and old ones. [I will completely get rid of your family](#) just like a man completely burns dung to cook his food.

Translation Words - ULT

- [evil](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [with respect to Jeroboam](#)
- [Jeroboam \(2\)](#)
- [and I will cut off](#)
- [and one who is let free](#)
- [in Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [terrible things](#)
- [your family](#)
- [all your male descendants](#)
- [your family \(2\)](#)
- [your family](#)
- [get rid of](#)
- [I will cause...to die, young ones](#)
- [I will completely](#)
- [I will completely](#)

1 Kings 14:11

Anyone who belongs to your family who dies in the city will be eaten by dogs

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Dogs will eat anyone who belongs to your family and who dies in the city" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

anyone who dies in the field will be eaten by the birds of the heavens

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the birds of the heavens will eat anyone who dies in the field" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The one who dies](#)
- [and the one who dies](#)
- [with respect to Jeroboam](#)
- [the heavens](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The corpses of any members of your family](#)
- [who die](#)
- [who die...And the corpses of any members of your family](#)
- [by vultures](#)
- [I, Yahweh](#)

ULT

¹¹ [The one who dies with respect to Jeroboam](#) in the city the dogs will eat, [and the one who dies](#) in the country the birds of [the heavens](#) will eat, for [Yahweh](#) has spoken.'

UST

¹¹ [The corpses of any members of your family who die](#) in cities will be eaten by dogs. [And the corpses of any members of your family who die](#) out in the open fields will be eaten [by vultures](#). This will surely happen because [I, Yahweh](#), have said that it will happen.'

1 Kings 14:12

when your feet enter the city

The word “feet” here is a synecdoche for the whole person. Alternate translation: “when you enter the city” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to your house](#)
- [the child](#)
- [then...will die](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [home](#)
- [your son](#)
- [will die](#)

ULT

¹² And you, rise, go [to your house](#).
When your feet enter the city, then [the child will die](#).

UST

¹² So go back [home](#). And as soon as you enter the city, [your son will die](#).

1 Kings 14:13

All Israel

This is a generalization that means the people of the northern kingdom of Israel. Alternate translation: “The Israelite people” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

go into a grave

Alternate translation: “be buried in a grave”

out of Jeroboam’s house

The word “house” here is a metonym for “family.” Alternate translation: “in all of Jeroboam’s family” (See: [Metonymy](#))

was anything good found in the sight of Yahweh, the God of Israel

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh’s judgment or evaluation. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “did Yahweh, the God of Israel, find anything he judged to be good” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

¹³ And all [Israel](#) will wail for him [and they will bury](#) him. For this one by himself [with respect to Jeroboam](#) will enter into [a grave](#), because in him a [good](#) thing was found for [Yahweh, the God of Israel, in the house of Jeroboam](#).

UST

¹³ All [the Israelite people](#) will mourn for him and bury him. He is the only one of [Jeroboam’s family who will be buried properly](#), because he is the only one of [Jeroboam’s family](#) with whom [Yahweh is at all pleased](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [and they will bury](#)
- [with respect to Jeroboam](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [a grave](#)
- [good](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [in the house of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the Israelite people](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jeroboam’s family](#)
- [Jeroboam’s](#)
- [is at all pleased](#)
- [who will be...properly](#)
- [buried](#)
- [family](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

1 Kings 14:14

cut off the family of Jeroboam

The writer speaks of the new king of Israel destroying Jeroboam's family and preventing him from having any descendants like one would cut a branch from a tree. Alternate translation: "destroy the descendants of Jeroboam" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- And...will raise up
- a king
- Israel
- will cut off
- the house of
- Jeroboam

Translation Words - UST

- Furthermore, Yahweh
- will appoint for himself
- a king to rule over
- Israel
- get rid
- Jeroboam's
- descendants

ULT

¹⁴ And Yahweh will raise up for himself a king over Israel who will cut off the house of Jeroboam this day, and what it will be even now!

UST

¹⁴ Furthermore, Yahweh will appoint for himself a king to rule over Israel who will get rid of Jeroboam's descendants. And that will start to happen today!

1 Kings 14:15

Yahweh will attack Israel as a reed is shaken in the water

The writer here uses a simile to express how Yahweh will bring judgment on the people of Israel. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will attack the people of Israel as a reed is shaken in the water” (See: [Simile](#))

as a reed is shaken in the water

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “like a river of water shakes a reed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

he will root up Israel out of this good land

Yahweh compares Israel with a plant that he will tear out of the ground by its roots. Alternate translation: “he will remove the people of Israel from this good land” (See: [Metaphor](#))

scatter them

Alternate translation: “disperse them”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel
- Israel (2)
- in the waters
- good
- to their fathers
- And he will scatter them
- of the river
- their Asherahs
- which provoked...to anger

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- by worshiping statues of the goddess
- the people of Israel
- the Israelite people (2)
- Asherah
- grow in a stream
- from this good land
- he gave to our ancestors
- He will scatter them
- Euphrates River

ULT

¹⁵ And Yahweh will strike Israel just as the reed sways in the waters, and he will uproot Israel from on this good ground that he gave to their fathers. And he will scatter them from the other side of the river, because they made their Asherahs, which provoked Yahweh to anger.

UST

¹⁵ Yahweh will punish the people of Israel. He will shake them like the wind shakes the reeds that grow in a stream. He will expel the Israelite people from this good land that he gave to our ancestors. He will scatter them into countries east of the Euphrates River, because they have caused him to become very angry by worshiping statues of the goddess Asherah.

- very angry

1 Kings 14:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- Israel
- the sins of
- he sinned
- he caused...to sin
- Jeroboam

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelite people
- the Israelite people
- because of the sins
- sins
- committed
- Jeroboam

ULT

¹⁶ And he will give Israel over on account of the sins of Jeroboam that he sinned and that he caused Israel to sin."

UST

¹⁶ Yahweh will abandon the Israelite people because of the sins that Jeroboam committed, sins which induced the Israelite people to commit them."

1 Kings 14:17

Tirzah

This is the name of the city where king Jeroboam lived. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jeroboam
- to Tirzah
- at the threshold of
- the house
- died

Translation Words - UST

- Jeroboam's
- to the city of Tirzah, the new capital of Israel
- And just as she entered her
- house
- died

ULT

¹⁷ And the wife of [Jeroboam](#) rose and went and came [to Tirzah](#). She was entering [at the threshold of the house](#) and the boy [died](#).

UST

¹⁷ [Jeroboam's](#) wife returned home [to the city of Tirzah, the new capital of Israel](#). And just as she entered her [house](#), her son [died](#).

1 Kings 14:18

All Israel buried him and mourned for him

This is a generalization that means the people of Israel buried him and mourned for him. Alternate translation: "A great number of the people of Israel were present when people buried him, and the people of Israel mourned for him" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

just as it was told to them by the word of Yahweh

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "just as Yahweh told them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

by the word of Yahweh

Alternate translation: "by the message of Yahweh" or "in Yahweh's message"

Translation Words - ULT

- [And they buried](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [according to the word of Yahweh](#)
- [by the hand of](#)
- [his servant](#)
- [Ahijah](#)
- [the prophet](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the Israelite people](#)
- [and buried](#)
- [him](#)
- [which is what](#)
- [Yahweh had told...would happen](#)
- [his servant...Ahijah](#)
- [prophet](#)

ULT

18 [And they buried](#) him and all [Israel](#) wailed for him, [according to the word of Yahweh](#) that he spoke [by the hand of his servant Ahijah the prophet](#).

UST

18 All [the Israelite people](#) mourned for him [and buried him, which is what Yahweh had told his servant, the prophet Ahijah, would happen](#).

1 Kings 14:19

see

Alternate translation: “look” or “see for yourself”

they are written in

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “you can find them written in” or “someone has written about them in” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the book of the events of the kings of Israel

This refers to a book that no longer exists.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jeroboam](#)
- [he reigned](#)
- [the days](#)
- [of the kings of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that Jeroboam did](#)
- [his army fought](#)
- [and how he ruled](#)
- [the Kings of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

¹⁹ And the remainder of the matters of [Jeroboam](#), that he fought and that [he reigned](#), behold, they are written on the book of the matters of [the days of the kings of Israel](#).

UST

¹⁹ Everything else [that Jeroboam did](#), and the record of wars that [his army fought, and how he ruled](#), is written in the book of the events of [the Kings of Israel](#).

1 Kings 14:20

twenty-two years

"22 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

slept with his ancestors

Jeroboam dying is spoken of as if he had fallen asleep. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 2:10](#). Alternate translation: "died" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the days](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [reigned](#)
- [and...reigned](#)
- [years](#)
- [his fathers](#)
- [his son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jeroboam](#)
- [ruled](#)
- [king](#)
- [years](#)
- [Then](#)
- [he](#)
- [and his son](#)

ULT

²⁰ [And the days](#) that [Jeroboam](#) [reigned](#) were 22 [years](#). And he layed down with [his fathers](#) and Nadab [his son](#) [reigned](#) in his place.

UST

²⁰ [Jeroboam](#) [ruled](#) for twenty-two [years](#). [Then he](#) died, [and his son](#) Nadab became [king](#).

1 Kings 14:21

forty-one years old ... seventeen years

“41 years old...17 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

in which to put his name

Here “put his name” is a metonym for “dwell” and refers to the temple where Yahweh was to be worshiped. Alternate translation: “in which to dwell” or “in which to be worshiped” (See: [Metonymy](#))

His mother’s name

Here the word “His” refers to Rehoboam.

Naamah

This is a woman’s name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Now Rehoboam
- Rehoboam
- the son of
- in Jerusalem
- Yahweh
- chose
- his name
- And the name of
- the tribes of
- Israel
- the Ammonite woman
- Solomon
- reigned
- when he reigned
- he reigned
- in Judah
- years
- years

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon’s
- son
- Yahweh
- chose
- tribes of Israel...where he should be worshiped
- to be the place
- tribes of Israel...where he should be worshiped
- tribes of Israel...where he should be worshiped
- Rehoboam
- Rehoboam’s

ULT

²¹ Now Rehoboam, the son of Solomon, reigned in Judah. Rehoboam was a son of 41 years when he reigned. And he reigned 17 years in Jerusalem, the city there where Yahweh chose to put his name from all the tribes of Israel. And the name of his mother was Naamah the Ammonite woman.

UST

²¹ Solomon’s son Rehoboam ruled Judah. He was forty-one years old when he started to rule, and he ruled for seventeen years. He ruled in Jerusalem, which is the city that Yahweh chose out of all the tribes of Israel to be the place where he should be worshiped. Rehoboam’s mother’s name was Naamah. She was from the Ammon people group.

- She was from the Ammon people group
- ruled
- and he ruled
- He ruled
- Judah
- years
- years old when he started to rule
- in Jerusalem

1 Kings 14:22

Judah did

Here “Judah” represents the people of Judah. Alternate translation: “The people of Judah did” (See: [Metonymy](#))

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The “sight” of Yahweh represents Yahweh’s judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 11:6](#). Alternate translation: “what was evil in Yahweh’s judgment” or “what Yahweh considered to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

they provoked him to jealousy

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **jealousy**, you could express the same idea with an adjective. Alternate translation: “they made him jealous” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

their fathers

Alternate translation: “their ancestors”

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- the evil thing
- Yahweh
- And they made...jealous
- their fathers
- with their sins
- they sinned

Translation Words - UST

- people of Judah
- that Yahweh
- were evil
- They caused him...become angry because they committed more
- had committed
- sins
- than their ancestors

ULT

²² And Judah did the evil thing in the eyes of Yahweh. And they made him jealous more than all that their fathers did with their sins that they sinned.

UST

²² The people of Judah did many things that Yahweh said were evil. They caused him to become angry because they committed more sins than their ancestors had committed. They worshiped many other gods instead of worshiping only Yahweh.

1 Kings 14:23

For they also built

The word “they” here refers to the people of Judah.

built for themselves

The words “for themselves” are a metonym for what they will do with the high places. Alternate translation: “built for their own use” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

on every high hill and under every green tree

This is likely to be an exaggeration that indicates there were many places like these for false worship all over the country. Alternate translation: “on the high hills and under the green trees” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- high places
- and pillars
- and asherahs

Translation Words - UST

- places to worship
- hills
- Asherah

ULT

²³ And they, even they built for themselves [high places and pillars and asherahs](#) on every high hill and under every flourishing tree.

UST

²³ They built [places to worship](#) those gods. On high [hills](#) and under big trees they set up pillars and poles for worshiping [Asherah](#).

1 Kings 14:24

cultic prostitutes

“religious prostitutes” or “male prostitutes.” This probably refers to male prostitutes who were associated with idol worship.

the same despicable practices as the nations that

Here the word “nations” represents the people in those nations. Alternate translation: “the same disgusting things that the people did, whom” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a cultic prostitute
- in the land
- the abominations of
- the nations
- Yahweh
- had dispossessed
- the sons of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- there were male prostitutes
- the same disgraceful
- that had been done by the people whom
- Yahweh
- had expelled
- while the Israelites
- while the Israelites
- the land

ULT

²⁴ And also a cultic prostitute was in the land. They did according to all the abominations of the nations that Yahweh had dispossessed from before the face of the sons of Israel.

UST

²⁴ Also, there were male prostitutes at these places of worship. The Israelite people did the same disgraceful things that had been done by the people whom Yahweh had expelled while the Israelites were advancing through the land.

1 Kings 14:25

in the fifth year of King Rehoboam

This refers to the fifth year of Rehoboam's reign as king. Alternate translation: "in the fifth year that Rehoboam was king" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

in the fifth year

"in year 5" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Shishak king of Egypt came up against Jerusalem

"Shishak king of Egypt" represents himself along with the Egyptian army. Alternate translation: "Shishak king of Egypt, and his army with him, came up against Jerusalem" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Shishak

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 11:40](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

came up against

This is an idiom that means marched against or attacked. Alternate translation: "came to attack" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- in the...year
- of the king
- the king of
- Rehoboam
- Egypt
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- When Rehoboam...been ruling
- years
- his army to attack
- King
- Egypt
- Jerusalem

ULT

²⁵ And it happened that in the fifth year of the king Rehoboam, Shishak the king of Egypt went up against Jerusalem.

UST

²⁵ When Rehoboam had been ruling for almost five years, King Shishak of Egypt came with his army to attack Jerusalem.

1 Kings 14:26

He took everything away

This is a generalization that indicates every valuable thing that could be found was taken away. Alternate translation: “He took away many valuable things” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

He took

The word “He” represents Shishak and the soldiers who were with him. Alternate translation: “Shishak and his army took” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

that Solomon had made

Here “Solomon” refers to the craftsmen who worked for Solomon to make the shields. Alternate translation: “that Solomon had his workers make” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

²⁶ And he took away the treasures of [the house of Yahweh](#) and the treasures of [the house of the king](#) and the entirety he took. And he took all [the shields of gold](#) that [Solomon](#) had made.

UST

²⁶ They took away all the valuable things [in the temple](#) and in [the king's palace](#), including the gold shields that [Solomon's workers](#) had made.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the house of Yahweh](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the shields of](#)
- [gold](#)
- [Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in the temple](#)
- [the king's](#)
- [palace](#)
- [including the gold](#)
- [shields](#)
- [Solomon's workers](#)

1 Kings 14:27

King Rehoboam made shields

Here “King Rehoboam” represents the persons who worked for him to make the shields. Alternate translation: “King Rehoboam’s workers made shields” (See: [Metonymy](#))

in their place

Alternate translation: “in place of the shields of gold”

entrusted them into the hands of the commanders

Here “hands” represents care or responsibility. Alternate translation: “made them the responsibility of the commanders” (See: [Metonymy](#))

who guarded the doors to the king’s house

Here “doors” represents the entrance. Alternate translation: “who guarded the entrance to the king’s house” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the king
- Rehoboam
- the house of
- shields of...them
- bronze
- And he assigned
- the hand of
- the commanders of
- the ones who run
- the ones who keep

Translation Words - UST

- King
- king’s
- Rehoboam’s workers
- palace
- bronze
- shields
- and put them into the hands of
- and put them into the hands of
- officers
- who guarded
- who guarded

ULT

²⁷ And [the king Rehoboam](#) made [shields of bronze](#) in their place. [And he assigned them to the hand of the commanders of the ones who run, the ones who keep](#) the opening of the house of the king.

UST

²⁷ [King Rehoboam’s workers](#) made [bronze shields](#) to replace them [and put them into the hands of officers who guarded](#) the entrance to the [king’s palace](#).

1 Kings 14:28

the guards would carry them

Alternate translation: "the guards would carry the shields of bronze"

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the house of Yahweh
- the ones who run
- the ones who run

Translation Words - UST

- the king
- into the temple
- those guards
- they returned the shields

ULT

²⁸ And it happened that as often as the king entered the house of Yahweh, the ones who run lifted them up and they brought them back to the chamber of the ones who run.

UST

²⁸ Every time that the king went into the temple, those guards carried those shields, and when he left the temple they returned the shields to the storeroom.

1 Kings 14:29

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

This can be expressed in active form and assumes that the answer is positive. The question is rhetorical and is used for emphasis. Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah.” or “you can read about them in the book of the events of the kings of Judah.” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

the book of the events of the kings of Judah

This refers to a book that no longer exists.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Rehoboam](#)
- [the days of](#)
- [the kings of](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Rehoboam](#)
- [the Kings of](#)
- [the Kings of](#)
- [Judah](#)

ULT

²⁹ And the remainder of the matters of [Rehoboam](#) and all that he did, are they not written on the book of the matters of [the days of the kings of Judah](#)?

UST

²⁹ Everything else that [Rehoboam](#) did is written in the book of the events of [the Kings of Judah](#).

1 Kings 14:30

There was constant warfare

Alternate translation: "There was continuing war" or "There were constant battles"

warfare between Rehoboam and Jeroboam

The names of the kings represent themselves and their armies.

Alternate translation: "the armies of Rehoboam and Jeroboam fought in battle again and again" or "Rehoboam and his people and Jeroboam and his people engaged in battle continually" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

ULT

³⁰ And there was war between [Rehoboam](#) and [Jeroboam](#) all [the days](#).

UST

³⁰ There were wars [continually](#) between [the armies of Rehoboam](#) and [Jeroboam](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Rehoboam](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [the days](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [continually](#)
- [the armies of Rehoboam](#)
- [and Jeroboam](#)

1 Kings 14:31

slept with his ancestors

Rehoboam dying is spoken of as if he had fallen asleep. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 2:10](#). Alternate translation: “died” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

was buried with them

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “people buried him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Naamah

This is the name of a woman. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 14:21](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Abijah his son

Alternate translation: “Abijah the son of Rehoboam”

became king in his place

The phrase “in his place” is a metaphor meaning “instead of him.” Alternate translation: “became king instead of Rehoboam” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Rehoboam
- his fathers
- his fathers
- and he was buried
- David
- And the name of
- the Ammonite woman
- Abijah
- his son
- And...reigned

Translation Words - UST

- Then Rehoboam
- and he
- his ancestors were buried
- was buried
- David
- His mother's
- the Ammonite woman
- Then his son
- Abijah

ULT

³¹ And Rehoboam layed down with his fathers and he was buried with his fathers in the city of David. And the name of his mother was Naamah the Ammonite woman. And Abijah his son reigned in his place.

UST

³¹ Then Rehoboam died, and he was buried in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David, where his ancestors were buried. His mother's name was Naamah the Ammonite woman. Then his son Abijah became the king.

- king

1 Kings 15

1 Kings 15 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Judah had some bad kings and some good kings. All of the kings in Israel continued to worship the golden calves, so they were all considered to be bad. Judah and Israel continually fought each other.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“But the shrines were not taken away.”

At the shrines, the people worshiped Yahweh. But later, during Hezekiah's reign, it was decided that all sacrifices must be made only at the temple. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

1 Kings 15:1

In the eighteenth year of King Jeroboam son of Nebat

This refers to the eighteenth year of Jeroboam's reign. Alternate translation: "After Jeroboam had been the king of Israel for almost eighteen years" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

In the eighteenth year

"In year 18" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Now in year
- of King
- Jeroboam
- the son of
- Abijah
- reigned
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- After Jeroboam had been
- After Jeroboam had been
- the king of Israel
- years
- Abijah
- became the king
- Judah

ULT

¹ Now in year 18 of King Jeroboam the son of Nebat, Abijah reigned over Judah.

UST

¹ After Jeroboam had been the king of Israel for almost eighteen years, Abijah became the king of Judah.

1 Kings 15:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- years
- he reigned
- in Jerusalem
- And the name of
- was Maacah
- Abishalom

Translation Words - UST

- He ruled for
- years
- in Jerusalem
- His mother's
- name was Maacah
- Abishalom

ULT

² Three years he reigned in Jerusalem.
And the name of his mother was
Maacah the daughter of Abishalom.

UST

² He ruled for three years in Jerusalem.
His mother's name was Maacah, the
daughter of Abishalom.

1 Kings 15:3

He walked in all the sins

Walking represents living, and walking in sins represents committing those sins. Alternate translation: "Abijah continued to practice all the sins" (See: [Metaphor](#))

that his father had committed before his time

Since these verses refer to several kings, it may help to include the name of Abijah's father. This information can be made clear. AT "that his father, Rehoboam, had committed before Abijah's time" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

his time

This phrase represents the time that he was king. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: "before Abijah was king" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

his heart was not devoted ... as the heart of David

The heart represents the whole person. Alternate translation: "Abijah was not devoted ... as David" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sins of
- his father
- his father
- his heart
- like the heart of
- Yahweh
- his God
- David

Translation Words - UST

- sins
- that his father
- as his ancestor
- dedicated
- had been
- Yahweh
- his God
- David

ULT

³ And he walked in all the sins of his father that he had done before his face. And his heart was not completely with Yahweh his God like the heart of David his father.

UST

³ Abijah committed the same kind of sins that his father had committed. He was not fully dedicated to Yahweh his God, as his ancestor David had been.

1 Kings 15:4

gave him a lamp in Jerusalem

The word “lamp” here represents a descendant who would be king as David was. Alternate translation: “gave David a descendant to rule in Jerusalem” (See: [Metaphor](#))

by raising up his son after him

Alternate translation: “by raising up Abijah’s son after him” or “by giving Abijah a son”

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his God](#)
- [a lamp](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [by raising up](#)
- [his son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [his God](#)
- [had promised to David](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [a son](#)
- [to rule](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [from their enemies](#)

ULT

⁴ But for the sake of [David](#), [Yahweh his God](#) gave to him [a lamp in Jerusalem](#) by [raising up his son](#) after him, and by causing [Jerusalem](#) to stand,

UST

⁴ But, because of what Yahweh [his God](#) [had promised to David](#), [Yahweh](#) gave Abijah [a son to rule in Jerusalem](#) after him, and in order to protect [Jerusalem](#) [from their enemies](#).

1 Kings 15:5

what was right in his eyes

The eyes here represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “what Yahweh judges to be right” or “what Yahweh considers to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

for all the days of his life

Alternate translation: “the whole time that David lived” or “throughout David’s whole life”

he had not turned away from anything that he commanded him

Turning away from a command represents disobeying it. Alternate translation: “David did not disobey anything that God commanded him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

except only in the matter of Uriah the Hittite

This is a general way to refer to the situation with Uriah. It can be stated more clearly what this matter was. Alternate translation: “except for what he did to Uriah the Hittite” or “except when he caused Uriah the Hittite to be killed” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

⁵ because [David](#) had done [the upright thing](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#) and [he had not turned](#) from all that [he had commanded him](#) all [the days of his life](#), except in the matter of [Uriah the Hittite](#).

UST

⁵ Yahweh did that because [David](#) had always done what [pleased Yahweh](#) and because David had always [obeyed Yahweh](#). The [only time when he disobeyed Yahweh](#) was when he caused [Uriah](#) to be killed due to his sin with Bathsheba.

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [the upright thing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [he had...turned](#)
- [he had commanded him](#)
- [the days of](#)
- [his life](#)
- [Uriah](#)
- [the Hittite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [pleased](#)
- [Yahweh and](#)
- [obeyed Yahweh](#)
- [only time](#)
- [only time](#)
- [when he disobeyed Yahweh](#)
- [Uriah](#)
- [Uriah](#)

1 Kings 15:6

between Rehoboam and Jeroboam

These kings represent themselves and their armies. Rehoboam was Abijah's father. Alternate translation: "between the armies of Rehoboam and Jeroboam" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

all the days of Abijah's life

Alternate translation: "the whole time that Abijah lived"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Rehoboam](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [the days of](#)
- [his life](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the armies of Rehoboam](#)
- [and Jeroboam](#)
- [during the time](#)
- [that Abijah ruled](#)

ULT

⁶ And war was between [Rehoboam](#) and [Jeroboam](#) all [the days of his life](#).

UST

⁶ There were wars between [the armies of Rehoboam and Jeroboam](#) all [during the time that Abijah ruled](#).

1 Kings 15:7

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Abijah is in this other book. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 14:29](#). If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “someone has written about this in the book of the events of the kings of Judah.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

between Abijah and Jeroboam

The names “Abijah” and “Jeroboam” represent the kings and their armies. Alternate translation: “between the armies of Abijah and Jeroboam” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abijah](#)
- [Abijah](#)
- [the days of](#)
- [the kings of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Abijah](#)
- [Abijah](#)
- [the Kings of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)

ULT

⁷ And the remainder of the matters of [Abijah](#) and all that he did, are they not written on the book of the matters of [the days of the kings of Judah](#)? And war was between [Abijah](#) and [Jeroboam](#).

UST

⁷ Everything else that [Abijah](#) did is written in the book of the events of [the Kings of Judah](#). There was war between [Abijah](#) and [Jeroboam](#).

1 Kings 15:8

Abijah slept with his ancestors

In this euphemism, sleeping represents dying. Alternate translation: “Abijah died as his ancestors had” or “Like his ancestors, Abijah died” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

became king in his place

The phrase “in his place” is a metaphor meaning “instead of him.” Alternate translation: “became king instead of Abijah” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abijam](#)
- [his fathers](#)
- [and they buried](#)
- [David](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [his son](#)
- [And...reigned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Abijah](#)
- [and was buried](#)
- [in the part of Jerusalem called](#)
- [David](#)
- [and his son](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [king](#)

ULT

⁸ Then [Abijam](#) laid down with [his fathers](#) [and they buried](#) him in the city of [David](#). And [Asa](#) his son [reigned](#) in his place.

UST

⁸ [Abijah](#) died [and was buried in the part of Jerusalem called](#) the city of [David](#), [and his son Asa](#) became [king](#).

1 Kings 15:9

In the twentieth year of Jeroboam king of Israel

This refers to the twentieth year of Jeroboam's reign. Alternate translation: "After Jeroboam had been the king of Israel for almost twenty years" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

In the twentieth year

"In year 20" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And in year](#)
- [of Jeroboam](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [as the king of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [reigned](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [After Jeroboam](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [had been](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [years](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [started to rule](#)
- [Judah](#)

ULT

⁹ [And in year 20 of Jeroboam the king of Israel, Asa reigned as the king of Judah.](#)

UST

⁹ [After Jeroboam had been the king of Israel for almost twenty years, Asa started to rule Judah.](#)

1 Kings 15:10

forty-one years

"41 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- he reigned
- years
- in Jerusalem
- And the name of
- was Maacah
- Abishalom

Translation Words - UST

- He ruled
- in Jerusalem
- years
- His grandmother was
- Maacah
- Abishalom

ULT

¹⁰ And he reigned 41 years in Jerusalem. And the name of his mother was Maacah the daughter of Abishalom.

UST

¹⁰ He ruled in Jerusalem for forty-one years. His grandmother was Maacah, the daughter of Abishalom.

1 Kings 15:11

what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

The eyes here represent seeing, and seeing represents judgment. Yahweh saw and approved of Asa's actions. Alternate translation: "what Yahweh judges to be right" or "what Yahweh considers to be right" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Asa
- the upright thing
- Yahweh
- like David
- his father

Translation Words - UST

- Asa
- to Yahweh
- as his ancestor
- David
- had done

ULT

¹¹ And Asa did the upright thing in the eyes of Yahweh like David his father.

UST

¹¹ Asa did what was pleasing to Yahweh, as his ancestor David had done.

1 Kings 15:12

the cultic prostitutes

This probably refers to prostitutes who were associated with idol worship and who were all men. Alternate translation: “religious prostitutes” or “the prostitutes who worked for idols” or “male prostitutes”

Translation Words - ULT

- the cultic prostitutes
- the land
- the idols
- his fathers

Translation Words - UST

- He
- the male prostitutes
- at the places where the people worshiped idols
- idols

ULT

¹² And he caused the cultic prostitutes to pass over from the land. And he removed all the idols that his fathers had made.

UST

¹² He got rid of the male prostitutes who were at the places where the people worshiped idols, and he also got rid of all the idols that his ancestors had made.

1 Kings 15:13

Asa cut down the disgusting figure

Since Asa was king, he may have told his officials to cut down the figure. Alternate translation: “Asa caused the disgusting figure to be cut down” or “Asa made them cut down the disgusting figure” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Maacah](#)
- [from being queen-mother](#)
- [for the Asherah](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [And...cut down](#)
- [Kidron](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [removed his grandmother](#)
- [Maacah](#)
- [made](#)
- [Asherah](#)
- [Asa told his workers to cut down](#)
- [in the Kidron](#)

ULT

¹³ And also [Maacah](#) his mother he removed her [from being queen-mother](#) because she had made a horrid thing [for the Asherah](#). And [Asa cut down](#) her horrid thing and he burned it in the wadi of [Kidron](#).

UST

¹³ He also [removed his grandmother Maacah](#) so that she no longer had influence in the government because of being the mother of a previous king. He did that because she had [made](#) a disgusting wooden statue of the goddess [Asherah](#). [Asa told his workers to cut down](#) the statue and burned it [in the Kidron Valley](#).

1 Kings 15:14

But the high places were not taken away

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "But Asa did not command the people to take away the high places" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Asa's heart was completely devoted

The heart represents the person. Alternate translation: "Asa was completely devoted" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

all his days

Alternate translation: "the whole time that he lived" or "throughout his whole life"

Translation Words - ULT

- But...the high places
- the heart of
- Asa
- Yahweh
- his days

Translation Words - UST

- He
- all the places
- but he continued to be dedicated to
- Yahweh
- during the time that he lived

ULT

¹⁴ But they did not remove the high places. Nevertheless, the heart of Asa was completely with Yahweh all his days.

UST

¹⁴ He was not able to destroy all the places where the people worshiped Yahweh, but he continued to be dedicated to Yahweh all during the time that he lived.

1 Kings 15:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the holy things of
- and his holy things
- his father
- for the house of
- Yahweh
- silver
- and gold

Translation Words - UST

- temple
- temple
- all the items that his father
- things that he had dedicated to God
- had dedicated to God
- and all the gold
- and silver

ULT

¹⁵ And he brought the holy things of his father and his holy things for the house of Yahweh, silver and gold and vessels.

UST

¹⁵ He told his workers to place in the temple all the items that his father had dedicated to God, and all the gold and silver things that he had dedicated to God.

1 Kings 15:16

all their days

This refers to the entire time they reigned as kings. Alternate translation: “the whole time that they reigned over Judah and Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Asa](#)
- [Baasha](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [their days](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Asa](#)
- [and Baasha](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [during the time](#)

ULT

¹⁶ And war was between [Asa](#) and [Baasha the king of Israel](#), all [their days](#).

UST

¹⁶ There were wars between the armies of [Asa and Baasha, the king of Israel](#), all [during the time](#) that they ruled.

1 Kings 15:17

acted aggressively against Judah

Alternate translation: “attacked Judah”

built up Ramah

It is implied that the army of Baasha first captured Ramah. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “captured and fortified Ramah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Baasha
- the king of
- the king of
- Israel
- Judah
- Judah
- the Ramah
- to Asa

Translation Words - UST

- Baasha's army
- Baasha's army
- King
- Baasha's army
- Judah
- in Judah
- the city of Ramah
- Asa ruled

ULT

¹⁷ And [Baasha the king of Israel](#) went up against [Judah](#) and he built up [the Ramah](#), so as not to give going out or coming in [to Asa the king of Judah](#).

UST

¹⁷ [Baasha's army](#) invaded [Judah](#). They captured [the city of Ramah](#) north of Jerusalem. Then they started to build a wall around it in order to prevent people from entering or leaving the area [in Judah](#) that [King Asa ruled](#).

1 Kings 15:18

He put it into the hands of his servants

Putting things in their hands represents giving those things to them. It is implied that they would do with it what he wanted them to do. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "He entrusted it to his servants" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

He said

This means he spoke by means of his servants. Asa told his servants what to say to Ben Hadad and they did. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: "Asa told his servants to say to Ben Hadad" or "Through his servants, Asa said to Ben Hadad" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Asa
- Asa
- the silver
- And...sent them
- the son of (2)
- the son of (3)
- Aram
- in Damascus
- and the gold
- in the storerooms of
- the storerooms of
- the house of Yahweh
- the house of
- the king
- the king
- the king of
- into the hand of
- his servants

Translation Words - UST

- He
- Asa told
- the silver
- Damascus
- king, kingship
- King Ben Hadad who ruled
- He told the officials to say this to Ben Hadad
- Aram
- was son (2)
- and grandson (3)
- and gold
- in the storerooms in the temple
- in the storerooms in the temple

ULT

¹⁸ And Asa took all the silver and the gold that was remaining in the storerooms of the house of Yahweh and the storerooms of the house of the king, and he gave them into the hand of his servants. And the king Asa sent them to Ben Hadad, the son of Tabrimmon, the son of Hezion, the king of Aram, the one who dwelled in Damascus, saying,

UST

¹⁸ So Asa told his workers to take all the silver and gold that was still in the storerooms in the temple and in the palace and gave it to some of his officials. He told them to take it to Damascus and give it to King Ben Hadad who ruled Aram. Ben Hadad was son of Tabrimmon and grandson of Hezion. He told the officials to say this to Ben Hadad:

- in the storerooms in the temple
- and in the palace
- and gave it
- to some of his officials
- to some of his officials

1 Kings 15:19

Let there be a covenant between me and you

A covenant being between two people represents those two people having a covenant with each other. Alternate translation: "Let us have a covenant with each other" or "Let us make a peace treaty" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Look, I

Alternate translation: "As proof that I want a treaty with you, I"

Break your covenant with Baasha king of Israel

Breaking a covenant represents canceling it and not doing what one has promised to do. Alternate translation: "Cancel your covenant with Baasha king of Israel" or "Do not be loyal to Baasha king of Israel as you promised in your covenant with him" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Break your covenant with Baasha king of Israel

Asa wanted Ben Hadad to attack Israel. Ben Hadad could only do that if he broke his covenant with the king of Israel. The meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "Break your covenant with Baasha king of Israel, and attack Israel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Let there be a covenant](#)
- [your covenant](#)
- [my father](#)
- [your father](#)
- [I have sent](#)
- [silver](#)
- [and gold](#)
- [Baasha](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I want there to be a peace treaty](#)
- [treaty](#)
- [my father](#)
- [your father](#)
- [take his soldiers away from attacking mine](#)
- [For that purpose, I am...you this silver](#)
- [and gold](#)
- [Baasha](#)
- [the king of](#)

ULT

¹⁹ "Let there be a covenant between me and you, between my father and your father. Behold, I have sent to you a present of silver and gold. Go, break your covenant with Baasha the king of Israel and he may go up from against me."

UST

¹⁹ "I want there to be a peace treaty between me and you, like there was between my father and your father. For that purpose, I am giving you this silver and gold. So now please cancel the treaty that you made with Baasha, the king of Israel, in order that he will take his soldiers away from attacking mine, because he will be afraid of your army."

- Israel, in order that he will

1 Kings 15:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- Asa
- and he sent
- the commanders of
- the strong ones
- Israel
- Dan
- Kinnereth
- the land of
- Naphtali

Translation Words - UST

- and he did what
- Asa suggested
- the tribe of Naphtali
- He sent
- his army...and their soldiers
- commanders
- Israel
- Dan
- the area near the Sea of Galilee, and
- the land

ULT

²⁰ And Ben Hadad listened to the king Asa and he sent the commanders of the strong ones who were for him against the cities of Israel. And he struck Ijon and Dan and Abel Beth Maacah and all Kinnereth, with all the land of Naphtali.

UST

²⁰ So the officials went and gave the message to Ben Hadad, and he did what Asa suggested. He sent his army commanders and their soldiers to attack some of the towns in Israel. They captured Ijon, Dan, Abel of Beth Maacah, the area near the Sea of Galilee, and all the land of the tribe of Naphtali.

1 Kings 15:21

It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

he stopped building up Ramah

King Baasha did this by telling his workers to do this. Alternate translation: "he had his workers stop building up Ramah" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Tirzah

This is the name of a city. See how you translated it in [1 Kings 14:17](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Baasha](#)
- [the Ramah](#)
- [in Tirzah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When Baasha](#)
- [at Ramah](#)
- [He and his soldiers returned to Tirzah](#)

ULT

²¹ And it happened as soon as [Baasha](#) heard, that he ceased from building up [the Ramah](#) and he dwelled [in Tirzah](#).

UST

²¹ [When Baasha](#) heard about that, he told his soldiers to stop working [at Ramah](#). [He and his soldiers returned to Tirzah](#) and stayed there.

1 Kings 15:22

No one was exempted

This can also be stated positively. Alternate translation: "Every one had to obey King Asa's proclamation"

Translation Words - ULT

- And the king
- the king
- Asa
- Asa
- Judah
- free from obligation
- the Ramah
- Baasha
- Benjamin
- the Mizpah

Translation Words - UST

- Then King
- had been
- Asa
- had been
- and timber they fortified the city of Mizpah north of Jerusalem
- in the territory of the tribe of Benjamin
- in the towns in Judah
- stating that they...were required
- to go to Ramah
- that Baasha's soldiers...using to build a wall

ULT

²² And the king Asa caused all Judah to hear, There was no one free from obligation. And they lifted up the stones of the Ramah and its trees that Baasha had built. And with them the king Asa built Geba of Benjamin and the Mizpah.

UST

²² Then King Asa sent a message to all the people in the towns in Judah, stating that they all were required to go to Ramah and carry away the stones and timber that Baasha's soldiers had been using to build a wall around the city. With those stones and timber they fortified the city of Mizpah north of Jerusalem, and Geba, a town in the territory of the tribe of Benjamin.

1 Kings 15:23

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Abijah is in this other book. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 14:29](#). If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "someone has written about this in the book of the events of the kings of Judah." (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Asa](#)
- [his might](#)
- [the days](#)
- [of the kings of](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Asa](#)
- [the armies that his soldiers defeated](#)
- [the Kings of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [his](#)

ULT

²³ And the remainder of all the matters of [Asa](#) and all [his might](#) and all that he did and the cities that he built, are they not written on the book of the matters of [the days of the kings of Judah](#)? Only at the time of his old age did he become sick in his feet.

UST

²³ Everything else that [Asa](#) did, [the armies that his soldiers defeated](#), and the names of the cities that he caused to be fortified, are all written in the book of the events of [the Kings of Judah](#). But when Asa became old, he got a disease in [his](#) feet.

1 Kings 15:24

Asa slept with his ancestors

Sleeping here is a euphemism which represents dying. Alternate translation: "Asa died as his ancestors had" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

was buried with them

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "they buried him with his ancestors" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

David his father

The word "father" here refers to an ancestor. Alternate translation: "King David, his ancestor"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Asa](#)
- [his fathers](#)
- [his fathers](#) (2)
- [his father](#)
- [and he was buried](#)
- [David](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [his son](#)
- [And...reigned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He](#)
- [and was buried](#)
- [his...were buried](#)
- [ancestors](#) (2)
- [called the city of David](#)
- [called the city of David](#)
- [Then his son](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [king](#)

ULT

²⁴ And [Asa](#) laid down with [his fathers](#) and he was buried with [his fathers](#) in the city of [David his father](#). And [Jehoshaphat his son](#) reigned in his place.

UST

²⁴ He died and was buried where [his ancestors were buried](#) in the part of Jerusalem [called the city of David](#). Then [his son Jehoshaphat](#) became king.

1 Kings 15:25

Connecting Statement:

The rest of chapter 15 and 16 is about the kings of Israel. These events happened while King Asa of Judah was still alive.

the second year of Asa king of Judah

This refers to the second year of Asa's reign. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: "when Asa had been king of Judah for almost two years" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

he reigned over Israel two years

Alternate translation: "Nadab reigned over Israel two years"

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- Jeroboam
- reigned
- And he reigned
- Israel
- Israel
- in year
- two years
- of Asa
- the king of
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- After Asa had been
- the king
- Judah
- years
- for two years
- King Jeroboam's
- son
- started to rule
- He ruled
- Israel
- He ruled

ULT

²⁵ And Nadab the son of Jeroboam reigned over Israel in year two of Asa the king of Judah. And he reigned over Israel two years.

UST

²⁵ After Asa had been the king of Judah for almost two years, King Jeroboam's son Nadab started to rule Israel. He ruled for two years.

1 Kings 15:26

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment. Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

walked in the way of his father

Walking here represents behaving. Alternate translation: "did the same things that his father had done" (See: [Metaphor](#))

in his own sin

Walking in his own sin represents sinning in ways that were different from the ways that his father had sinned. Alternate translation: "he sinned in his own ways" (See: [Metaphor](#))

by which he led Israel to sin

Leading people to do something represents influencing them to do it. Alternate translation: "and by sinning, he influenced Israel to sin" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the evil thing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his father](#)
- [and in his sin](#)
- [he caused...to sin](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that Yahweh](#)
- [were evil](#)
- [his father's behavior had been](#)
- [to sin](#)
- [and what he did induced the people](#)
- [of Israel](#)

ULT

²⁶ And he did [the evil thing](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#). And he walked in the way of [his father and in his sin](#) that [he caused Israel to sin](#).

UST

²⁶ He did many things [that Yahweh](#) said [were evil](#). His behavior was sinful like [his father's behavior had been](#), and [what he did induced the people of Israel to sin](#).

1 Kings 15:27

conspired against Nadab

Alternate translation: “secretly plotted to kill King Nadab”

Gibbethon

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Nadab and all Israel

“The phrase “all Israel” is a generalization that represents the many soldiers of Israel. Alternate translation: “Nadab and the many soldiers of Israel” or “Nadab and the army of Israel” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

were laying siege to Gibbethon

Alternate translation: “were surrounding Gibbethon, so that the people of Gibbethon would surrender to them”

Translation Words - ULT

- Baasha
- Baasha
- the son of
- Ahijah
- of the house of
- Issachar
- is for the Philistines
- Israel
- were laying siege

Translation Words - UST

- A man named Baasha
- to harm him
- from the tribe
- from the tribe
- from the tribe
- Issachar
- and his army
- had surrounded
- region...Philistia

ULT

²⁷ And Baasha the son of Ahijah of the house of Issachar conspired against him, and Baasha struck him down at Gibbethon, which is for the Philistines. And Nadab and all Israel were laying siege against Gibbethon.

UST

²⁷ A man named Baasha, from the tribe of Issachar, planned to harm him. He killed Nadab when Nadab and his army had surrounded the city of Gibbethon in the region of Philistia.

1 Kings 15:28

became king in his place

The phrase “in his place” is a metaphor meaning “instead of him.”

Alternate translation: “became king instead of Nadab” (See:

[Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Baasha
- And...put him to death
- in year
- of Asa
- the king of
- Judah
- And he reigned

Translation Words - UST

- That was when Asa had been
- the king
- ruling Judah for almost
- years
- Then Baasha
- became
- king of Israel

ULT

²⁸ And Baasha put him to death in year three of Asa the king of Judah. And he reigned in his place.

UST

²⁸ That was when Asa had been the king ruling Judah for almost three years. Then Baasha became the king of Israel.

1 Kings 15:29

Baasha killed all the family of Jeroboam. He left none of Jeroboam's descendants breathing.

These two sentences mean the same thing and are combined to emphasize his descendants were all killed. (See: [Parallelism](#))

all the family of Jeroboam

Jeroboam was King Nadab's father.

He left none of Jeroboam's descendants breathing

Breathing represents being alive. Alternate translation: "He left none of Jeroboam's descendants living" (See: [Metonymy](#))

his royal line

Alternate translation: "Jeroboam's royal line"

just as Yahweh had spoken by his servant Ahijah the Shilonite

In [1 Kings 14:10](#) and [1 Kings 14:11](#) Yahweh spoke through his prophet Ahijah and told Jeroboam that he would destroy his family.

Ahijah the Shilonite

Alternate translation: "Ahijah, who was from Shiloh"

Translation Words - ULT

- as soon as he reigned
- the house of
- Jeroboam
- of Jeroboam
- breathing one
- he had annihilated him
- according to the word of Yahweh
- by the hand of
- his servant
- Ahijah

Translation Words - UST

- king
- he commanded
- None of them were left
- his soldiers

ULT

²⁹ And it happened that as soon as he reigned, he struck down all the house of Jeroboam. He did not leave any breathing one of Jeroboam, until he had annihilated him according to the word of Yahweh, which he had spoken by the hand of his servant Ahijah the Shilonite,

UST

²⁹ As soon as he became king, he commanded his soldiers to kill all of Jeroboam's family. Doing what Yahweh had told the prophet Ahijah from Shiloh would happen, they killed all of Jeroboam's family. None of them were left.

- his soldiers
- Jeroboam's
- Jeroboam's family
- Doing what Yahweh...would happen
- Ahijah from Shiloh
- family

1 Kings 15:30

for the sins of Jeroboam which he committed and by which he led Israel to sin

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **sins**, you could express the same idea with the verb “sin.” Alternate translation: “because Jeroboam sinned and led Israel to sin in the same ways” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

by which he led Israel to sin

Leading people to do something represents influencing them to do something. Alternate translation: “by which he influenced Israel to sin” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sins of
- he sinned
- he caused...to sin
- Jeroboam
- Israel
- Israel
- he provoked...to anger
- Yahweh
- the God of

Translation Words - UST

- That happened because Yahweh had become very angry
- That happened because Yahweh had become very angry
- Jeroboam
- and because of the sins
- sins
- committed
- that he had persuaded
- the people of
- Israel to commit

ULT

³⁰ on account of the sins of Jeroboam that he sinned and that he caused Israel to sin, by his anger that he provoked Yahweh, the God of Israel, to anger.

UST

³⁰ That happened because Yahweh had become very angry with Jeroboam because of all the sins that Jeroboam had committed, and because of the sins that he had persuaded the people of Israel to commit.

1 Kings 15:31

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Nadab is in this other book. See how you translated a similar phrase concerning Judah in [1 Kings 14:29](#). This rhetorical question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “someone has written about this in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

³¹ And the remainder of the matters of Nadab and all that he did, are they not written on the book of the matters of [the days of the kings of Israel](#)?

UST

³¹ Everything else that Nadab did is written in Book of the Events of [the Kings of Israel](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the days](#)
- [of the kings of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the Kings of](#)
- [the Kings of](#)
- [Israel](#)

1 Kings 15:32

all their days

This refers to the whole period of time that they reign as kings. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 15:16](#) Alternate translation: “the whole time that they reigned over Judah and Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Asa
- Baasha
- the king of
- Israel
- their days

Translation Words - UST

- King Asa
- and King
- and King
- Baasha
- time

ULT

³² And war was between [Asa](#) and [Baasha the king of Israel](#) all [their days](#).

UST

³² There were wars between the armies of [King Asa and King Baasha](#) all the [time](#) that they ruled.

1 Kings 15:33

Connecting Statement:

Starting in [1 Kings 15:27](#), the author told about how Baasha became king. Here the author begins to tell about what Baasha did as king of Israel.

Tirzah

This is the name of a city. See how you translated it in [1 Kings 14:17](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- In year
- years
- of Asa
- the king of
- Judah
- Baasha
- the son of
- Ahijah
- reigned
- Israel
- in Tirzah

Translation Words - UST

- After Asa had been
- the king of
- Judah
- years
- years
- Baasha
- son
- Ahijah
- started to rule
- Israel
- at the city of Tirzah

ULT

³³ In year three of Asa the king of Judah, Baasha the son of Ahijah reigned over all Israel in Tirzah 24 years.

UST

³³ After Asa had been the king of Judah for almost three years, Baasha son of Ahijah, started to rule Israel at the city of Tirzah. He ruled for twenty-four years.

1 Kings 15:34

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment. Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

walked in the way of Jeroboam

Walking here represents behaving. Alternate translation: "did the same things that Jeroboam had done" (See: [Metaphor](#))

in his sin by which he led Israel to sin

Possible meanings are that **his** and **he** refer to: (1) Baasha or (2) Jeroboam.

by which he led Israel to sin

Leading people to do something represents influencing them to do it. Alternate translation: "and by sinning, he influenced Israel to sin" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the evil thing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [and in his sin](#)
- [he caused...to sin](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that Yahweh](#)
- [were evil](#)
- [just like Jeroboam lived](#)
- [people of Israel that encouraged them to](#)
- [his sins](#)
- [commit sins that were like](#)

ULT

³⁴ And he did [the evil thing](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#). And he walked in the way of [Jeroboam and in his sin](#) that [he caused Israel to sin](#).

UST

³⁴ Baasha did many things [that Yahweh said were evil](#), and he lived a sinful life [just like Jeroboam lived](#). Baasha's sinful life set an example for the [people of Israel that encouraged them to commit sins that were like his sins](#).

1 Kings 16

1 Kings 16 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Incorrect worship

The prophet Jehu warned Baasha, king of Israel, that God would destroy his family for worshiping the idols. But Baasha did not change his ways; so Zimri murdered Baasha's son and all his relatives. Then Omri killed Zimri. Omri's son Ahab brought in the rain god Baal and his wife, the fertility goddess Ashtoreth, as the official religion of Israel. This was very evil. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [god](#), [false god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolater](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#) and [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#))

1 Kings 16:1

The word of Yahweh came

This idiom means God spoke. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 6:11](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke his message” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the word of Yahweh](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Baasha](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the prophet Jehu](#)
- [son](#)
- [gave Baasha](#)
- [that he had received from Yahweh](#)

ULT

¹ And [the word of Yahweh](#) was to [Jehu the son of](#) Hanani, against [Baasha](#), saying,

UST

¹ During the time that Baasha was king of Israel, [the prophet Jehu](#), Hanani's son, [gave Baasha](#) this message [that he had received from Yahweh](#):

1 Kings 16:2

Although I exalted you

This is God's message that Jehu was to give to Baasha. The word "you" refers to Baasha.

I exalted you out of the dust

"I raised you out of the dust." Being in the dust on the ground represents not being important. Exalting someone represents making him important. Alternate translation: "I raised you from a very unimportant position" or "when you had no power or influence over people, I made you important" (See: [Metaphor](#))

you have walked in the way of Jeroboam

Walking represents behaving. Jeroboam and Baasha both sinned. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "you have done the same things that Jeroboam did" or "you have sinned as Jeroboam sinned" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- I raised you up
- as leader
- my people
- my people (2)
- Israel
- Israel
- Jeroboam
- and caused...to sin
- by their sins
- by provoking me to anger

Translation Words - UST

- I caused you to become
- ruler
- my Israelite
- by causing my people
- people
- by causing my people (2)
- very angry
- King Jeroboam
- did
- to sin

ULT

2 "Because I raised you up from the dust and I gave you as leader over my people Israel, and you walked in the way of Jeroboam and caused my people Israel to sin, by provoking me to anger by their sins,

UST

2 "You were very insignificant when I caused you to become the ruler of my Israelite people. But you have caused me to become very angry by doing the kinds of evil things that King Jeroboam did. You have also caused me to become angry by causing my people to sin.

1 Kings 16:3

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues telling Baasha what he will do to him.

See, I will completely sweep away Baasha and his family

Yahweh is speaking to Baasha, and the phrase “his family” refers to Baasha’s family. This can be translated using the words “you” and “your.” Alternate translation: “Listen, Baasha. I will completely sweep away you and your family” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

I will completely sweep away

Sweeping away represents destroying. Alternate translation: “I will completely destroy” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Baasha](#)
- [his house](#)
- [your house](#)
- [like the house of](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [the son of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [get rid of](#)
- [family](#)
- [just like I did to Jeroboam...family](#)
- [you and your](#)
- [just like I did to Jeroboam...family](#)
- [just like I did to Jeroboam...family](#)

ULT

³ behold, I am about to burn after [Baasha](#) and after [his house](#). And I shall make [your house like the house of Jeroboam the son of Nebat](#).

UST

³ So now I will [get rid of you and your family](#). I will do to you [just like I did to Jeroboam](#) and his [family](#).

1 Kings 16:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- The one who dies
- And the one who dies
- of Baasha
- the heavens

Translation Words - UST

- The bodies of those in your family
- who die
- and the bodies of those who die
- by vultures

ULT

⁴ The one who dies of Baasha in the city the dogs shall eat. And the one who dies of him in the field the birds of the heavens shall eat.

UST

⁴ The bodies of those in your family who die in this city will not be buried. They will be eaten by dogs, and the bodies of those who die in the fields will be eaten by vultures."

1 Kings 16:5

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Baasha is in this other book. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 15:31](#). Alternate translation: "they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "someone has written about them in the book of the events of the kings of Israel." (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

⁵ And the remainder of the matters of [Baasha](#) and what he did [and his might](#), are they not written on the book of the matters of the days [of the kings of Israel](#)?

UST

⁵ [The other things that Baasha](#) did during the time that he ruled Israel, [and the great things](#) that his army did, are written in Book of the Events of [the Kings of Israel](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Baasha](#)
- [and his might](#)
- the days
- [of the kings of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The other things that Baasha](#)
- [and the great things](#)
- [the Kings of](#)
- the Kings of
- [Israel](#)

1 Kings 16:6

Baasha slept with his ancestors

Sleeping is a euphemism that represents dying. Alternate translation: “Baasha died as his ancestors had” or “Like his ancestors, Baasha died” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

was buried

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “people buried him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Tirzah

This is the name of a city. See how you translated it in [1 Kings 14:17](#).

became king in his place

The phrase “in his place” is a metaphor meaning “instead of him.” Alternate translation: “became king instead of Baasha” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Baasha](#)
- [his fathers](#)
- [and he was buried](#)
- [in Tirzah](#)
- [his son](#)
- [And...reigned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When Baasha](#)
- [he](#)
- [was buried](#)
- [in Tirzah, the capital city](#)
- [Then his son](#)
- [king](#)

ULT

⁶ And [Baasha](#) laid down with [his fathers](#) and he was buried in [Tirzah](#). And Elah [his son](#) reigned in his place.

UST

⁶ When [Baasha](#) died, he was buried in [Tirzah, the capital city](#). Then his son Elah became [king](#).

1 Kings 16:7

the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 6:11](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

all the evil that he did in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh’s judgment. Alternate translation: “all the things that Baasha that are evil in Yahweh’s judgment” or “all the things that Baasha did that Yahweh considers to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

so as to provoke him to anger

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **anger**, you could express the same idea with the adjective “angry.” Alternate translation: “so as to make Yahweh very angry” or “that made God very angry” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

with the work of his hands

Here Baasha is represented by his “hands.” This speaks of all of his actions as his “work.” Alternate translation: “by the things Baasha had done” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [by the hand of](#)
- [his hands](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [with the work of](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the prophet](#)
- [the word of Yahweh](#)
- [Baasha](#)
- [his house](#)
- [like the house of](#)
- [the evil](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [by provoking him to anger](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh gave that message about Baasha and his...that Yahweh](#)
- [family](#)
- [that King Jeroboam and his family had](#)
- [done previously](#)
- [done previously](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

⁷ And also [by the hand of Jehu the son of Hanani the prophet, the word of Yahweh](#) was to [Baasha](#) and to [his house](#), and against all [the evil](#) that he had done in the eyes of [Yahweh](#), [by provoking him to anger with the work of his hands](#), by being [like the house of Jeroboam](#), and because he had struck him down.

UST

⁷ [Yahweh gave that message about Baasha and his family](#) to the [prophet Jehu](#). [Baasha](#) had [done many deeds that Yahweh said were evil](#), which caused Yahweh to become angry. [Baasha did the same kind of deeds that King Jeroboam and his family had done previously](#). [Yahweh](#) was also angry with [Baasha](#) because he had killed all [of Jeroboam’s family](#).

- of Jeroboam's family
- prophet
- Jehu
- Jehu
- Baasha
- done many deeds
- done previously
- were evil

1 Kings 16:8

Tirzah

This is the name of a city. See how you translated it in [1 Kings 14:17](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- In the year of
- year
- two years
- of Asa
- the king of
- Judah
- the son of
- Baasha
- reigned
- Israel
- in Tirzah

Translation Words - UST

- After Asa had been
- the king of
- Judah
- years
- years
- Elah ruled in Tirzah for only two
- Elah
- Elah
- became the king
- Israel
- Elah ruled in Tirzah for only two

ULT

⁸ In the year of year 26 of Asa the king of Judah, Elah the son of Baasha reigned over Israel in Tirzah, two years.

UST

⁸ After Asa had been the king of Judah for almost twenty-six years, Elah became the king of Israel. Elah ruled in Tirzah for only two years.

1 Kings 16:9

His servant Zimri

Alternate translation: "Elah's servant Zimri"

captain of half his chariots

The word "chariots" here represents the soldiers who drove the chariots. Alternate translation: "captain of half his chariot drivers" (See: [Metonymy](#))

drinking himself drunk

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "drinking so much wine that he was getting drunk" or "getting drunk" (See: [Idiom](#))

who was over the household

Being over the household represents being in charge of the things in King Elah's house. Alternate translation: "who was in charge of the things in the Elah's house" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his servant](#)
- [the commander of](#)
- [the chariotry](#)
- [was in Tirzah](#)
- [in Tirzah](#)
- [drunk](#)
- [in the house of](#)
- [the house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [army officers](#)
- [Elah's army's](#)
- [chariots](#)
- [was in Tirzah](#)
- [at the house of a man named Arza](#)
- [getting drunk](#)
- [king's palace](#)
- [at the house of a man named Arza](#)

ULT

⁹ And [his servant](#) Zimri, [the commander of](#) half of [the chariotry](#), conspired against him. And he [was in Tirzah](#) drinking himself [drunk in the house of](#) Arza, who was over [the house in Tirzah](#).

UST

⁹ A man named Zimri was one of Elah's [army officers](#). He commanded the drivers of half of [Elah's army's chariots](#). He made plans to kill Elah while Elah [was in Tirzah, getting drunk at the house of a man named Arza](#). Arza was the man who took care of the things in the [king's palace](#).

1 Kings 16:10

attacked him and killed him

Alternate translation: "attacked and killed Elah"

became king in his place

The phrase "in his place" is a metaphor meaning "instead of him."

Alternate translation: "became king instead of Elah" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- and he put him to death
- in year
- of Asa
- the king of
- Judah
- And he reigned

Translation Words - UST

- killed Elah
- king of Israel
- That was when Asa had been
- the king of
- Judah for
- years

ULT

¹⁰ And Zimri entered and he struck him down and he put him to death in year 27 of Asa the king of Judah. And he reigned in his place.

UST

¹⁰ Zimri went into Arza's house and killed Elah. Then he became the king of Israel. That was when Asa had been the king of Judah for twenty-seven years.

1 Kings 16:11

He did not leave alive a single male

This means that he killed all the men and boys. Alternate translation: "He did not leave even one male alive"

Translation Words - ULT

- when he reigned
- his throne
- the house of
- Baasha
- or his kinsmen
- or his friend

Translation Words - UST

- king
- of
- Baasha's family
- He killed every male in Baasha's
- family and all of Baasha's
- male friends

ULT

11 And it happened that **when he reigned**, as soon as he sat on **his throne**, he struck down all **the house of Baasha**. He did not leave of him one who urinates on a wall **or his kinsmen or his friend**.

UST

11 As soon as Zimri became **king**, he killed all **of Baasha's family**. He killed **every male in Baasha's family and all of Baasha's male friends**.

1 Kings 16:12

the word of Yahweh

Alternate translation: “the message of Yahweh” or “Yahweh’s message”

which he spoke against Baasha by Jehu the prophet

Speaking “by” a prophet represents telling a prophet to speak and the prophet speaking. Alternate translation: “that Yahweh told Jehu the prophet to speak against Baasha” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...annihilated](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Baasha](#)
- [Baasha](#)
- [according to the word of Yahweh](#)
- [by the hand of](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [the prophet](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [got rid of](#)
- [family](#)
- [Baasha’s](#)
- [Baasha’s](#)
- [family](#)
- [That was just what Yahweh told...would happen](#)
- [the prophet](#)
- [Jehu](#)

ULT

¹² And Zimri [annihilated](#) all [the house of Baasha according to the word of Yahweh](#) that he spoke against [Baasha by the hand of Jehu the prophet](#),

UST

¹² So he [got rid of](#) all of [Baasha’s family](#). [That was just what Yahweh told the prophet Jehu would happen](#).

1 Kings 16:13

they had led Israel to sin

Leading people to do something represents influencing them to do it. Alternate translation: “they had influenced Israel to sin” (See: [Metaphor](#))

they had led Israel to sin

Here the word “Israel” refers to the ten northern tribes of Israel. Baasha and Elah had been their king.

they provoked Yahweh, the God of Israel, to anger with their idols

God became angry with the people because they worshiped idols. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: “they made Yahweh, the God of Israel, angry because they worshiped idols” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the God of Israel

Here the word “Israel” refers to all of the twelve tribes descended from Jacob.

Translation Words - ULT

- the sins of
- and the sins of
- they had sinned
- they caused...to sin
- Baasha
- the God of
- his son
- Israel
- Israel
- by provoking...to anger
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Baasha
- and his son
- had sinned
- to sin
- whom
- the Israelite people worshiped
- and induced
- the Israelite people worshiped
- the Israelite people
- They caused Yahweh
- God

ULT

¹³ concerning all the sins of Baasha and the sins of Elah his son which they had sinned, and because they caused Israel to sin, by provoking Yahweh, the God of Israel, to anger with their vapors.

UST

¹³ Baasha and his son Elah had sinned and induced the Israelite people to sin. They caused Yahweh, the God whom the Israelite people worshiped, to become angry, because they both urged the people to worship worthless idols.

1 Kings 16:14

are they not written ... kings of Israel?

This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Elah is in this other book. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 15:31](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

are they not written ... Israel?

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “someone has written about them in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

¹⁴ And the remainder of the matters of Elah and all that he did, are they not written on the book of the matters of [the days of the kings of Israel](#)?

UST

¹⁴ Everything else that Elah did is written in Book of the Events of [the Kings of Israel](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the days](#)
- [of the kings of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the Kings of](#)
- [the Kings of](#)
- [Israel](#)

1 Kings 16:15

Tirzah

This is the name of a city. See how you translated it in [1 Kings 14:17](#).

the army was camped by Gibbethon

The word “army” refers to the army of the kingdom of Israel.

Gibbethon

This is the name of a city. See how you translated it in [1 Kings 15:27](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- In the year...of
- year
- was for the Philistines
- of...Asa
- the king of
- Judah
- reigned
- days
- in Tirzah
- And the people

Translation Words - UST

- So Zimri became the king of
- Israel after Asa had been king
- people group
- Judah
- for twenty-seven years
- for twenty-seven years
- ruled...for only
- in Tirzah
- days
- Philistine

ULT

¹⁵ In the year of year 27 of Asa the king of Judah, Zimri reigned seven days in Tirzah. And the people were camping against Gibbethon, which was for the Philistines.

UST

¹⁵ So Zimri became the king of Israel after Asa had been king of Judah for twenty-seven years. But Zimri ruled in Tirzah for only seven days. The Israelite army was beseiging Gibeah, a town that belonged to the Philistine people group.

1 Kings 16:16

The army camped there heard it said

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The soldiers who camped there heard someone say" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

all Israel

Both times this phrase is used, it represents the army of Israel. Here the word "all" is a generalization meaning "most." Alternate translation: "all the army of Israel" or "most of the soldiers in the army of Israel" or "the army of Israel" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- the king
- Israel
- Israel
- And...caused...to reign
- Omri
- the commander of
- on...day

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelite army camp
- of Israel
- heard that Zimri had secretly planned
- King Elah
- on that day...chose
- Omri
- the commander
- the king

ULT

16 And [the people](#), the ones who camped, heard, saying, "Zimri has conspired and also has struck down [the king](#)!" And all [Israel](#) caused Omri, the commander of the army, to reign over [Israel](#) on that [day](#) in the camp.

UST

16 The men in [the Israelite army camp](#) heard that Zimri had secretly planned to kill [King Elah](#), and then had killed him. So [on that day](#) the soldiers [chose Omri](#), the commander of their army, to become [the king of Israel](#).

1 Kings 16:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Omri
- Israel
- and they laid seige
- Tirzah

Translation Words - UST

- The Israelite
- army
- they left there
- Tirzah

ULT

¹⁷ And Omri went up from Gibbethon and all Israel with him, and they laid seige against Tirzah.

UST

¹⁷ The Israelite army was camped near Gibbethon. When they heard what Zimri had done, they left there and went to Tirzah, and surrounded the city.

1 Kings 16:18

that the city had been taken

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “that Omri and the army had taken the city” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- had been seized
- the citadel of
- the house of
- the house of
- the king
- the king
- with fire
- and he died

Translation Words - UST

- be captured
- his
- and he
- palace
- palace
- the palace burned down
- died
- in the fire

ULT

18 And it happened as soon as Zimri saw that the city **had been seized**, that he entered into **the citadel of the house of the king**. And he burned **the house of the king** over himself **with fire** and he died,

UST

18 When Zimri realized that the city was about to **be captured**, he went into **his palace** and set it on fire. So **the palace burned down**, and he died in the fire.

1 Kings 16:19

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment. Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

walking in the way of Jeroboam

Here walking represents behaving. Alternate translation: "doing the same things that Jeroboam had done" (See: [Metaphor](#))

so as to lead Israel to sin

Leading people to do something represents influencing them to do it. Alternate translation: "so as to influence Israel to sin" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his sin](#)
- [he had sinned](#)
- [and by his sin](#)
- [by causing...to sin](#)
- [the evil thing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He died because he had sinned](#)
- [He died because he had sinned](#)
- [to sin, and Zimri](#)
- [sinned just like Jeroboam had sinned](#)
- [that Yahweh](#)
- [were evil](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Israelite people](#)

ULT

¹⁹ on account of [his sin](#) that [he had sinned](#) by doing [the evil thing](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#), by walking in the way of [Jeroboam](#), and by [his sin](#) that he did by causing Israel to sin.

UST

¹⁹ [He died because he had sinned](#) by doing many things [that Yahweh](#) said [were evil](#). [Jeroboam](#) had induced the Israelite people to sin, and Zimri sinned just like Jeroboam had sinned.

1 Kings 16:20

the treason that he carried out

This treason refers to Zimri's plot to kill Elah, the king of Israel. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "how he plotted against King Elah" or "how he killed the king of Israel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Zimri is in this other book. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. See how you translated a similar phrase concerning Judah in [1 Kings 14:29](#). Alternate translation: "they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

are they not written ... Israel?

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "someone has written about them in the book of the events of the kings of Israel." (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the days](#)
- [of the kings of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the Kings of](#)
- [the Kings of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

²⁰ And the remainder of the matters of Zimri and his conspiracy that he conspired, are they not written on the book of the matters of [the days of the kings of Israel](#)?

UST

²⁰ All the other things that Zimri did, and the record of how he rebelled against King Elah, are written in Book of the Events of [the Kings of Israel](#).

1 Kings 16:21

followed Tibni ... followed Omri

Here “followed” represents supporting or wanting to make him king. Alternate translation: “supported Tibni son of Ginath, to make him king, and half supported Omri” or “wanted to make Tibni son of Ginath king, and half wanted to make Omri king” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the people of
- the people
- Israel
- the son of
- to cause him to reign
- Omri

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelite people...divided among themselves
- the Israelite people...divided among themselves
- the Israelite people...divided among themselves
- son
- king
- Omri to be the king

ULT

²¹ Then [the people of Israel](#) was divided by the half. Half of [the people](#) were behind Tibni [the son of](#) Ginath, [to cause him to reign](#), but the other half were behind [Omri](#).

UST

²¹ After Zimri died, [the Israelite people](#) were [divided among themselves](#). One group wanted Tibni [son](#) of Ginath, to be their [king](#). The other group wanted [Omri to be the king](#).

1 Kings 16:22

were stronger than the people who followed Tibni

Alternate translation: "overpowered the people who followed Tibni"

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- the people
- Omri
- Omri
- And...became strong against
- the son of
- And...died
- and...reigned

Translation Words - UST

- those
- Those
- Omri
- and Omri became
- were stronger than
- supported...Tibni
- was killed
- king

ULT

²² And **the people** who were behind **Omri became strong against the people** who were behind Tibni **the son of** Ginath. And Tibni **died** and **Omri** **reigned**.

UST

²² **Those** who supported **Omri were stronger than those** who supported Tibni. So **Tibni was killed**, and **Omri became king**.

1 Kings 16:23

Tirzah

This is the name of a city. See how you translated it in [1 Kings 14:17](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- In the year of
- year
- years
- years
- of Asa
- the king of
- Judah
- Omri
- reigned
- he reigned
- Israel
- In Tirzah

Translation Words - UST

- Omri became king when Asa had been
- king
- in Tirzah
- Judah
- for almost thirty-one years
- for almost thirty-one years
- for twelve years
- years
- Omri
- ruled
- he ruled
- Israel

ULT

²³ In the year of year ³¹ of Asa the king of Judah, Omri reigned over Israel 12 years. In Tirzah he reigned six years.

UST

²³ Omri became king when Asa had been king of Judah for almost thirty-one years. Omri ruled Israel for twelve years. For the first six years he ruled in Tirzah.

1 Kings 16:24

Shemer

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

two talents of silver

You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: “about 66 kilograms of silver” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

He built a city

The word “He” refers to Omri. He commanded people to build the city. Alternate translation: “Omri had his people build a city” or “Omri commanded and his workers built a city” (See: [Metonymy](#))

after the name of Shemer

This is an idiom that means “to honor Shemer” or “so that people would remember Shemer.” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Samaria](#)
- [Samaria](#)
- [silver](#)
- [and he called](#)
- [the name of](#)
- [the name of](#)
- [the master of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [silver](#)
- [Then Omri ordered his men](#)
- [to honor](#)
- [Then Omri ordered his men](#)
- [Samaria](#)
- [and he called it](#)
- [man who owned it previously](#)

ULT

²⁴ And he bought the hill [Samaria](#) from with Shemer for two kikkars [silver](#). And he built the hill [and he called the name of](#) the city that he built [Samaria](#), in accordance with [the name of](#) Shemer, [the master of](#) the hill.

UST

²⁴ Then he bought a hill from a man named Shemer and paid him about sixty-six kilograms of [silver](#) for it. [Then Omri ordered his men](#) to build a city on that hill, [and he called it Samaria, to honor](#) Shemer, the [man who owned it previously](#).

1 Kings 16:25

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment. Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Omri
- the evil thing
- and he did...evil
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- But Omri
- that Yahweh
- were evil
- He did more evil deeds

ULT

²⁵ And Omri did the evil thing in the eyes of Yahweh and he did more evil than all who were before him.

UST

²⁵ But Omri did many things that Yahweh said were evil. He did more evil deeds than any of the kings who ruled Israel before he did.

1 Kings 16:26

walked in all the ways of Jeroboam son of Nebat

Walking represents behaving. Alternate translation: “did all the same things that Jeroboam son of Nebat did” (See: [Metaphor](#))

in his sins by which he led Israel to sin

Possible meanings are that **his** and **he** refer to: (1) Baasha or (2) Jeroboam.

in his sins

Possible meanings are walking in his sins represents: (1) sinning as Jeroboam sinned. Alternate translation: “he sinned as Jeroboam sinned” or (2) or sinning habitually. Alternate translation: “he sinned habitually” (See: [Metaphor](#))

by which he led Israel to sin

Leading people to sin represents influencing them to sin. Alternate translation: “his sins, by which he influenced Israel to sin” or “and by sinning like this, he influenced people to sin.

to provoke Yahweh ... to be angry with their worthless idols

God became angry with the people because they worshiped idols. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Kings 16:13](#). Alternate translation: “to make Yahweh, the God of Israel, angry because they worshiped worthless idols” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

their worthless idols

The word “worthless” here reminds people that idols are worthless because they cannot do anything. Alternate translation: “their idols, which are worthless” or “their idols, which are useless” (See: [Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#))

the God of Israel

Here the word “Israel” refers to all of the twelve tribes descended from Jacob.

Translation Words - ULT

- Jeroboam
- the son of
- and in his sins
- he caused...to sin
- Israel
- Israel
- by provoking...to anger
- Yahweh
- the God of

ULT

²⁶ And he walked in all the way of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, and in his sins that he caused Israel to sin by provoking Yahweh, the God of Israel, to anger with their vapors.

UST

²⁶ When Jeroboam was previously the king, he had induced the Israelite people to sin, and Omri committed the same kind of sins that Jeroboam did. The Israelite people caused Yahweh, the God the Israelite people had worshiped, to become very angry, because they worshiped worthless idols.

Translation Words - UST

- When Jeroboam was previously the king
- the Israelite people to sin
- and Omri committed
- that Jeroboam did
- the Israelite people had worshiped
- The Israelite people
- caused Yahweh
- the God
- very angry, because they worshiped

1 Kings 16:27

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Omri is in this other book. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 15:31](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

are they not written ... Israel?

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “someone has written about them in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Omri
- and his might
- the days
- of the kings of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Omri
- victories that his army won
- the Kings of
- the Kings of
- Israel

ULT

²⁷ And the remainder of the matters of [Omri](#), what he did [and his might](#) that he did, are they not written on the book of the matters of [the days of the kings of Israel](#)?

UST

²⁷ Everything that [Omri](#) did, and the record of the [victories that his army won](#), are written in Book of the Events of [the Kings of Israel](#).

1 Kings 16:28

Omri slept with his ancestors

The euphemism “sleeping” here represents dying. Alternate translation: “Omri died as his ancestors had” or “Like his ancestors, Omri died” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

became king in his place

The phrase “in his place” is a metaphor meaning “instead of him.” Alternate translation: “became king instead of Omri” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Omri](#)
- [his fathers](#)
- [and he was buried](#)
- [in Samaria](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [his son](#)
- [And...reigned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [After Omri](#)
- [he](#)
- [was buried](#)
- [in Samaria](#)
- [and his son](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [king](#)

ULT

²⁸ And [Omri](#) laid down with [his fathers](#) and he was buried in [Samaria](#). And [Ahab his son](#) reigned in his place.

UST

²⁸ After [Omri](#) died, [he](#) was buried in [Samaria](#), and [his son Ahab](#) became king.

1 Kings 16:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And Ahab
- Ahab
- the son of
- the son of (2)
- in Samaria
- Omri
- reigned
- And...reigned
- Israel
- Israel
- in the year of
- year
- years
- of Asa
- the king of
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- Ahab became
- Ahab became
- Ahab
- in the city...Samaria
- Ahab became
- Ahab (2)
- king
- Israel
- in the city...Samaria
- when Asa had
- ruled
- ruled
- Judah
- for almost thirty-eight
- years
- years

ULT

²⁹ And Ahab the son of Omri reigned over Israel in the year of year 38 of Asa the king of Judah. And Ahab the son of Omri reigned over Israel in Samaria 22 years.

UST

²⁹ Ahab became king of Israel when Asa had ruled Judah for almost thirty-eight years. Ahab ruled in the city of Samaria for twenty-two years.

1 Kings 16:30

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment. Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Ahab
- the son of
- Omri
- the evil thing
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Ahab
- Ahab
- Ahab
- that Yahweh
- were evil

ULT

³⁰ And [Ahab the son of Omri](#) did [the evil thing](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#), more than all who were before his face.

UST

³⁰ [Ahab](#) did many things [that Yahweh](#) said [were evil](#). He did more evil deeds than any of the kings who ruled Israel before he did.

1 Kings 16:31

It was to Ahab a trivial thing to walk in the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat

This implies that Ahab wanted to commit worse sins. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "It was as if Ahab thought that walking in the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat was not enough" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

It was to Ahab a trivial thing

This is an idiom. The phrase "to Ahab" means that Ahab considered or thought something. Alternate translation: "Ahab considered it a trivial thing" or "Ahab thought that it was not enough" (See: [Idiom](#))

a trivial thing

Alternate translation: "an insignificant thing" or "not enough"

to walk in the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat

Walking in Jeroboam's sins represents sinning as Jeroboam had sinned. Alternate translation: "to sin as Jeroboam son of Nebat had sinned" (See: [Metaphor](#))

worshiped Baal and bowed down to him

These two phrases mean the same thing. The phrase "bowed down to him" describes the posture that people used in worship. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- in the sins of
- Jeroboam
- the son of
- Jezebel
- the king of
- the Sidonians
- and served
- the Baal
- and he bowed down

Translation Words - UST

- He committed the same kind of sins
- that Jeroboam did
- named Jezebel
- the king of
- the king of
- the king of
- the king of

ULT

³¹ And it happened (was his walking in the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat trivial?) that he took a wife, Jezebel the daughter of Ethbaal the king of the Sidonians. And he went and served the Baal and he bowed down to him.

UST

³¹ He committed the same kind of sins that Jeroboam did, but he did things that were worse than the things that Jeroboam did. He married a woman named Jezebel, the daughter of Ethbaal, the king of the city of Sidon. Then Ahab started to worship Baal, the god that the Canaan people group worshiped.

- the city of Sidon. Then Ahab started to worship Baal, the god that the Canaan
- people group worshiped

1 Kings 16:32

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And he raised up
- an altar
- for the Baal
- the Baal
- at the house of
- in Samaria

Translation Words - UST

- a temple
- in Samaria
- to Baal
- in order that...Israelite people could worship Baal there
- and he put an altar there for making sacrifices
- and he put an altar there for making sacrifices

ULT

³² And he raised up an altar for the Baal at the house of the Baal that he had built in Samaria.

UST

³² He built a temple in Samaria in order that the Israelite people could worship Baal there, and he put an altar there for making sacrifices to Baal.

1 Kings 16:33

the God of Israel

Here the word "Israel" refers to the nation of Israel, which consisted of twelve tribes.

the kings of Israel

Here the word "Israel" refers to the kingdom of Israel, which consisted of ten tribes.

Translation Words - ULT

- Ahab
- Ahab
- the Asherah
- to provoke...to anger
- Yahweh
- the God of
- Israel
- Israel (2)
- the kings of

Translation Words - UST

- made...He did more evil things than any of
- He
- an idol that represented Asherah, Baal's wife
- He
- Yahweh
- become angry
- previous kings of Israel
- previous kings of Israel
- previous kings of Israel (2)

ULT

³³ And Ahab made the Asherah and Ahab continued to act, to provoke Yahweh, the God of Israel, to anger more than all the kings of Israel who were before his face.

UST

³³ He also made an idol that represented Asherah, Baal's wife. He did many more things that caused Yahweh to become angry. He did more evil things than any of the previous kings of Israel had done.

1 Kings 16:34

at the cost of the life of Abiram, his firstborn son

The consequence of building the city is spoken of as if it were a cost that Hiel paid. Alternate translation: “and the consequence of his sin was that Abiram, his firstborn son, died” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Segub, his youngest son, lost his life

Dying is spoken of as if he lost his life. Alternate translation: “Segub, his youngest son, died” (See: [Metaphor](#))

while he was building the gates of the city

Alternate translation: “while Hiel was building the gates of the city”

in keeping with the word of Yahweh

Alternate translation: “according to the word of Yahweh”

the word of Yahweh

Alternate translation: “the message of Yahweh” or “Yahweh’s message”

which he spoke by Joshua son of Nun

Speaking “by” someone represents both telling someone to speak and the person doing it. Alternate translation: “which Yahweh caused Joshua son of Nun to speak” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [In his days](#)
- [the Bethelite](#)
- [Jericho](#)
- [his firstborn](#)
- [he founded it](#)
- [according to the word of Yahweh](#)
- [by the hand of](#)
- [Joshua](#)
- [the son of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [years](#)
- [a man from the city of Bethel](#)
- [rebuilt the city of Jericho](#)
- [But when he started to rebuild the city, his oldest son Abiram died](#)
- [the city gates...Yahweh](#)
- [Joshua would happen](#)
- [Joshua would happen](#)

ULT

³⁴ [In his days](#) Hiel [the Bethelite](#) built [Jericho](#). For Abiram [his firstborn he founded it](#), and for Segub his younger one he set up its doors, [according to the word of Yahweh](#) that he spoke [by the hand of Joshua the son of Nun](#).

UST

³⁴ During the [years](#) that Ahab ruled, Hiel, [a man from the city of Bethel](#), [rebuilt the city of Jericho](#). [But when he started to rebuild the city, his oldest son Abiram died](#). And when the city was finished, while Hiel was building [the city gates](#), his youngest son Segub died. They died just as [Yahweh](#) had told [Joshua would happen](#) to the sons [of anyone who would rebuild Jericho](#).

- Joshua would happen
- of anyone who would rebuild Jericho

1 Kings 17

1 Kings 17 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This is the beginning of the story of Elijah. (1 Kings 17 – 2 Kings 2)

Special concepts in this chapter

Baal worship

Ahab had introduced the worship of Baal, the god people thought brought rain, to Israel. Because of this, God caused a drought. Elijah told Ahab that it would not rain or dew until he, Elijah, said so. Elijah had to hide so Ahab would not kill him for bringing the drought. (See: [god](#), [false god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolater](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#))

1 Kings 17:1

the Tishbite

This is the name of a people group from Tishbe. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Tishbe

This is the name of a town in the region of Gilead. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

As Yahweh, the God of Israel lives

This phrase is an oath to emphasize that what he will say is true.

before whom I stand

This is an idiom that means “to serve.” Alternate translation: “whom I serve” (See: [Idiom](#))

dew

drops of water that form on the plants during the night

Translation Words - ULT

- [Elijah](#)
- [Gilead](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [As...is alive](#)
- [years](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Elijah was a prophet](#)
- [lived](#)
- [of Gilead](#)
- [King Ahab](#)
- [Yahweh is](#)
- [the God...and](#)
- [whom we Israelites worship](#)
- [years](#)

ULT

¹ And [Elijah](#) the Tishbite from the Tishbites of [Gilead](#) said to [Ahab](#), “As [Yahweh, the God of Israel is alive](#), before whose face I stand, there will not be dew or rain these [years](#) unless by the mouth of my word.”

UST

¹ [Elijah was a prophet](#) who [lived](#) in the city of Tishbe in the region [of Gilead](#). One day he went to [King Ahab](#) and said to him, “[Yahweh is the God whom we Israelites worship and](#) the God whom I worship and serve. Just as certainly as Yahweh lives, there will be no dew or rain for the next few [years](#), unless I command it to fall.”

1 Kings 17:2

The word of Yahweh came

This idiom means God spoke. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 6:11](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke his message” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the word of Yahweh](#)
- [to him](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Yahweh said to Elijah](#)
- [Then Yahweh said to Elijah](#)

ULT

² And [the word of Yahweh](#) was [to him](#), saying,

UST

² [Then Yahweh said to Elijah](#),

1 Kings 17:3

Kerith

This is the name of a very small stream. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and turn](#)
- [the Jordan](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [where it flows into](#)
- [the Jordan River](#)

ULT

³ “Go from this place [and turn](#) for yourself eastward. And you will be hidden at the wadi of Kerith, which is on the face of [the Jordan](#).

UST

³ “Because you have made the king angry with you, escape from the king and, go to the east, to the Kerith Brook, east of [where it flows into the Jordan River](#).

1 Kings 17:4

It will happen that

This phrase is used to introduce how Yahweh will take care of Elijah during the drought. Alternate translation: "There"

ravens

large, black birds (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- I have commanded

Translation Words - UST

- because I have commanded them to bring food to you

ULT

⁴ And it will happen that you shall drink from the wadi. And I have commanded the ravens to sustain you there."

UST

⁴ You will be able to drink water from the brook, and you will be able to eat what the crows bring to you, because I have commanded them to bring food to you."

1 Kings 17:5

as the word of Yahweh commanded

Here “the word” represents Yahweh himself. Alternate translation: “as Yahweh commanded” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the brook Kerith

This is the name of a very small stream. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 17:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [according to the word of Yahweh](#)
- [the Jordan](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh commanded him](#)
- [Jordan River](#)

ULT

⁵ And he went and did [according to the word of Yahweh](#). And he went and dwelled at the wadi of Kerith, which is on the face of [the Jordan](#).

UST

⁵ So Elijah did what [Yahweh commanded him](#) to do. He went and camped alongside Kerith Brook, east of the [Jordan River](#).

1 Kings 17:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- bread
- and bread

Translation Words - UST

- bread and meat...every morning
- bread and meat...every morning

ULT

⁶ And the ravens were bringing bread and meat to him in the morning, and bread and meat in the evening. And he drank from the wadi.

UST

⁶ Crows brought bread and meat to him every morning and every evening, and he drank water from the brook.

1 Kings 17:7

in the land

Alternate translation: "in that area" or "in that country"

Translation Words - ULT

- in the land

Translation Words - UST

- in the land

ULT

⁷ And it happened from the end of some days that the wadi dried up because rain was not in the land.

UST

⁷ But after a while, the water in the brook dried up, because rain did not fall anywhere in the land.

1 Kings 17:8

The word of Yahweh came

This idiom means God spoke. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 6:11](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke his message” (See: [Idiom](#))

came to him

Here the word “him” refers to Elijah.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the word of Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Yahweh said to Elijah](#)

ULT

⁸ And [the word of Yahweh](#) was to him, saying,

UST

⁸ [Then Yahweh said to Elijah](#),

1 Kings 17:9

Zarephath

This is a town. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Look, I

Alternate translation: "Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: I"

Translation Words - ULT

- [is for Sidon](#)
- [I have commanded](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [city of Sidon](#)
- [I have already told her what to do about that](#)

ULT

⁹ "Rise, go to Zarephath, which [is for Sidon](#), and you shall dwell there.

Behold, [I have commanded](#) a woman, a widow, there to sustain you."

UST

⁹ "Go and live in the village of Zarephath, near the [city of Sidon](#). There is a widow there who will give you food to eat. [I have already told her what to do about that.](#)"

1 Kings 17:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And he called
- water

Translation Words - UST

- He said to her
- me a cup of water

ULT

¹⁰ And he rose and went to Zarephath. And he entered into the opening of the city. And behold, there was a woman, a widow, gathering wood pieces. And he called to her and he said, "Please take to me a little water in the vessel and I will drink."

UST

¹⁰ So Elijah did what God said. He went to Zarephath. As he arrived at the gates of the village, he saw a widow who was gathering sticks. He said to her, "Would you please bring me a cup of water?"

1 Kings 17:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- and he called
- bread
- in your hand

Translation Words - UST

- he called out to her
- me a piece of bread, too
- me a piece of bread, too

ULT

¹¹ As she went to take, and he called to her, and said, "Please take to me a bit of bread in your hand."

UST

¹¹ While she was going to get it, he called out to her, "Bring me a piece of bread, too!"

1 Kings 17:12

As Yahweh your God lives

This phrase is an oath to emphasize that what she will say is true.

only a handful of meal

Alternate translation: "only a little bit of meal"

meal

"flour." This what is used to make bread.

See, I

Alternate translation: "Let me tell you what I am doing: I"

two sticks

This may refer to two sticks or to only a few sticks. (See: [Numbers](#))

that we may eat it, and die

It is implied that they will die because they do not have anymore food. Alternate translation: "that we may eat. Afterwards, we will starve to death" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- your God
- As...is alive
- oil
- and for my son
- and will die

Translation Words - UST

- But she replied
- Your God
- telling you
- olive oil in a jug
- my son
- will die from hunger

ULT

¹² And she said, "As [Yahweh your God is alive](#), there is not for me a bread cake, but only a fullness of a palm of flour in the jar and a little bit of [oil](#) in the jug. And behold, I am gathering two wood pieces and I will enter and I make it for me [and for my son](#). And we will eat it [and will die](#)."

UST

¹² [But she replied](#), "[Your God](#) knows that what I am [telling you](#) is true. I do not have even one piece of bread in my house. I have only a handful of flour in a jar, and a little [olive oil in a jug](#). I was gathering a few sticks to use these to make a fire and cook one more meal, and then after [my son](#) and I eat that, we [will die from hunger](#)."

1 Kings 17:13

afterward make some for you and for your son

It is implicit that there would be enough flour and oil to make more bread. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Elijah](#)
- [Do...fear](#)
- [and for your son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [But Elijah](#)
- [Do not be worried](#)
- [for you and your son](#)

ULT

¹³ And [Elijah](#) said to her, "Do not [fear](#). Come, do according to your word, only make for me from there a little bread cake at the first and bring it out to me. And make for you [and for your son](#) at the later time.

UST

¹³ [But Elijah](#) said to her, "[Do not be worried!](#) Go home and do what you said that you were going to do. But first, bake me a little loaf of bread and bring it to me. After you do that, take what is left and prepare some food [for you and your son](#)."

1 Kings 17:14

Yahweh sends rain

This is an idiom that means Yahweh causes it to rain. Alternate translation: "Yahweh causes rain to fall" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the God of
- Israel
- oil
- the day

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- I know that you will be able
- the God
- whom we Israelites worship
- and olive oil
- the time

ULT

¹⁴ For thus says Yahweh, the God of Israel, 'The jar of flour will not come to an end, and the jug of oil will not lack, until the day Yahweh gives rain on the face of the ground.'

UST

¹⁴ I know that you will be able to do that, because Yahweh, the God whom we Israelites worship, says this, 'There will always be plenty of flour and olive oil left in your containers, until the time when I send rain again and the crops grow again!'

1 Kings 17:15

She and Elijah, along with her household, ate for many days

In the original language it says, "And she and he and her household ate for many days." It is unclear who "he" is. This could mean: (1) Elijah, the widow, and her son ate for many days or (2) the widow, her son, and everyone living in her house ate for many days or (3) Elijah, the widow, and everyone living in her house ate for many days.

along with her household

Possible meanings for **household** are: (1) this refers only to the widow's son or (2) this refers to other people who live in her house but are not named in the story or (3) this refers to her son and others living in her house.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Elijah](#)
- [and her house](#)
- [for days](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [So the woman](#)
- [and Elijah](#)
- [had enough food every day](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And she went and did according to the word of [Elijah](#). And she ate, he and she [and her house for days](#).

UST

¹⁵ [So the woman](#) did exactly what Elijah told her to do. And she and her son [and Elijah had enough food every day](#),

1 Kings 17:16

just as the word of Yahweh had said

Here “word” represents Yahweh himself. Alternate translation: “just as Yahweh had said” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- oil
- according to the word of Yahweh
- by the hand of
- Elijah

Translation Words - UST

- jar
- That happened just like
- Yahweh...that it would happen
- Elijah

ULT

16 The jar of flour did not come to an end, and the jug of oil did not lack, according to the word of Yahweh, which he had spoken by the hand of Elijah.

UST

16 because the flour in the jar was never finished, and the jug of oil was never empty. That happened just like Yahweh had told Elijah that it would happen.

1 Kings 17:17

the woman's son, the woman who owned the house

Alternate translation: "the son of the woman who owned the house"

there was no more breath left in him

This is a polite way of saying the boy died. Alternate translation: "he stopped breathing" or "he died" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the house
- strong
- breath

Translation Words - UST

- Some time later, the woman's
- son
- to get worse
- and finally he died

ULT

¹⁷ And it happened that after these things [the son of](#) the woman, the mistress of [the house](#), became sick, and his sickness became very [strong](#) until [breath](#) did not remain in him.

UST

¹⁷ [Some time later, the woman's son](#) became sick. He continued [to get worse](#), and finally he died.

1 Kings 17:18

man of God

The phrase “man of God” is another title for a prophet.

of my sin

This means sins in general not a specific sin. Alternate translation: “of my sins” (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Elijah](#)
- [God](#)
- [my iniquity](#)
- [and to put...to death](#)
- [my son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Elijah](#)
- [You are a prophet](#)
- [for my sins](#)
- [by causing my son](#)
- [to die](#)

ULT

18 And she said to [Elijah](#), “What is to me and is to you, man of [God](#), that you came to me to cause [my iniquity](#) to be remembered [and to put my son to death](#)?”

UST

18 So the woman went to [Elijah](#) and said to him, “[You are a prophet](#); so why have you done this to me? Have you come here to punish me [for my sins by causing my son to die](#)?”

1 Kings 17:19

where he was staying

Here “he” refers to Elijah.

on his own bed

Here “his” refers to Elijah.

Translation Words - ULT

- your son

Translation Words - UST

- she gave her son

ULT

¹⁹ And he said to her, “Give to me **your son**.” And he took him from her lap and he brought him up to the upper room there where he was dwelling, and he laid him down on his bed.

UST

¹⁹ But Elijah replied, “Give your son to me.” So **she gave her son** to him, and he took the boy’s body from her and carried it up the steps to the room where he stayed. He laid the boy’s body on his bed.

1 Kings 17:20

have you also brought disaster on the widow with whom I am staying, by killing her son?

This could mean: (1) Elijah is truly asking a question. Alternate translation: “why would you cause the widow with whom I am staying to suffer even more by killing her son” or (2) Elijah uses a question to express how sad he is. Alternate translation: “surely, you would not cause the widow with whom I am staying to suffer even more by killing her son” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

have you also brought disaster on the widow

Causing the widow to suffer is spoken of as if “disaster” were an object that is placed on the widow. (See: [Metaphor](#))

also brought disaster

Here “also” means in addition to the disaster that the drought has caused.

Translation Words - ULT

- [And he cried out](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [my God](#)
- [you...cause evil](#)
- [by putting...to death](#)
- [her son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Elijah cried out](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [my God](#)
- [brought this tragedy](#)
- [her son](#)
- [to die](#)

ULT

²⁰ [And he cried out](#) to [Yahweh](#) and said, “[Yahweh, my God](#), will you also [cause evil](#) on the widow with whom I am sojourning, [by putting her son to death](#)?”

UST

²⁰ [Then Elijah cried out](#) to [Yahweh](#), “O [Yahweh my God](#), this widow has kindly allowed me to stay in her home. So why have you [brought this tragedy](#) to her and caused [her son to die](#)?”

1 Kings 17:21

stretched himself on the child

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “lay on top of the child” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the child
- child
- And he cried out
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- my God
- the life of
- let...return

Translation Words - UST

- the boy's body
- this boy
- and called out
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- my God
- to become alive
- again

ULT

21 And he stretched himself out over [the child](#) three times. [And he cried out](#) to [Yahweh](#) and he said, “Yahweh, my God, please let [the life of](#) this [child return](#) on his inner part.”

UST

21 Then Elijah stretched himself on top of [the boy's body](#) and [called out](#) to [Yahweh](#) saying, “Yahweh my God, please allow [this boy to become alive again!](#)” He did this three times.

1 Kings 17:22

Yahweh listened to the voice of Elijah

Here “voice” represents what Elijah prayed. Alternate translation: “Yahweh answered Elijah’s prayer” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the life of the child returned to him, and he revived

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: “the child came back to life” or “the child lived again” (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- the voice of
- Elijah
- the life of
- and he lived
- the child
- And...returned

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Elijah
- prayed
- to become alive
- and he caused the boy
- and he caused the boy
- again

ULT

²² And Yahweh heard the voice of Elijah.
And the life of the child returned on his inner part, and he lived.

UST

²² Yahweh heard what Elijah prayed, and he caused the boy to become alive again.

1 Kings 17:23

his room

Here “his” refers to Elijah.

See, your son is alive

The word “See” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

Translation Words - ULT

- Elijah
- Elijah
- the child
- to the house
- your son
- lives

Translation Words - UST

- carried
- Elijah
- the boy
- the steps and
- your son
- is alive

ULT

²³ And Elijah took the child and he brought him down from the upper room to the house, and he gave him to his mother. And Elijah said, “See, your son lives.”

UST

²³ Elijah carried the boy down the steps and gave him to his mother. He said, “Look, your son is alive!”

1 Kings 17:24

the word of Yahweh in your mouth is true

“the message of Yahweh in your mouth is true.” The word “mouth” represents what Elijah said. Alternate translation: “the message that you spoke from Yahweh is true” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Elijah](#)
- [I know](#)
- [God](#)
- [And the word of Yahweh](#)
- [is truth](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Elijah](#)
- [I know](#)
- [you are a prophet](#)
- [and that the words that...from Yahweh](#)
- [are truly](#)

ULT

²⁴ And the woman said to [Elijah](#), “Now this [I know](#), that you are a man of [God](#). [And the word of Yahweh](#) in your mouth is truth.”

UST

²⁴ The woman said to [Elijah](#), “Now [I know](#) for certain that [you are a prophet](#) and that the words that you speak are truly from Yahweh!”

1 Kings 18

1 Kings 18 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of Elijah continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Baal

God proved himself to all the people of Israel. Elijah went to meet Ahab. He told Ahab to bring the 450 prophets of Baal and all the people to Mount Carmel. Then he proposed an experiment, which was carried out. The prophets of Baal took one bull, killed them, cut them up, and placed them on wood on an altar without lighting the fire. The prophets of Baal danced and prayed to Baal all morning and half the afternoon. After they were exhausted, Elijah built his altar and drenched it with water. Then he prayed. God answered his prayer with fire that burned up the sacrifice, the altar and the water. Then Elijah told the people to seize the prophets of Baal and kill them. After that, Elijah prayed for rain, and it rained very hard. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Humor

Elijah insults the false god Baal. He states, "Perhaps he is thinking, or is relieving himself, or he is traveling on a journey, or perhaps he is sleeping and must be awakened." Baal was too busy in the bathroom to answer the prophets. "Relieving himself" is a euphemism. (See: [god](#), [false god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolater](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#) and [Euphemism](#))

1 Kings 18:1

the word of Yahweh came

This idiom is used to introduce a special message from God. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 6:11](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke his word” (See: [Idiom](#))

send rain on the land

Alternate translation: “cause rain to fall on the land”

Translation Words - ULT

- [days](#)
- [and the word of Yahweh](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [in the...year](#)
- [Ahab](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [For almost](#)
- [years](#)
- [Then Yahweh...I](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [King Ahab](#)

ULT

¹ And it was many [days and the word of Yahweh](#) was to [Elijah in the](#) third [year](#), saying, “Go, appear to [Ahab](#) and I will give rain on the face of the ground.”

UST

¹ [For almost](#) three [years](#) there was no rain in Samaria. [Then Yahweh](#) said this to [Elijah](#): “Go and meet with [King Ahab](#) and tell him that [I](#) will soon send rain.”

1 Kings 18:2

now the famine was severe

The word “now” is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the writer tells background information about how the famine had affected Samaria. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Elijah](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [Now the famine](#)
- [was strong](#)
- [in Samaria](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [So Elijah](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [In Samaria](#)
- [there was almost no food for anyone to eat](#)
- [there was almost no food for anyone to eat](#)

ULT

² And [Elijah](#) went to appear to [Ahab](#).
([Now the famine was strong in Samaria.](#))

UST

² [So Elijah](#) went to talk to [Ahab](#). [In Samaria there was almost no food for anyone to eat.](#)

1 Kings 18:3

Now Obadiah honored Yahweh

The word “Now” is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the writer tells about a new person in the story.

Translation Words - ULT

- Ahab
- And...called
- Obadiah
- Now Obadiah
- the house
- one who feared
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- There was a man there named Obadiah
- revered
- He was in charge
- He was in charge
- king's palace
- revered
- Yahweh

ULT

³ And Ahab called to Obadiah, who was over the house. (Now Obadiah was one who feared Yahweh exceedingly.

UST

³ There was a man there named Obadiah. He was in charge of the king's palace. He greatly revered Yahweh.

1 Kings 18:4

one hundred prophets and hid them by fifties

"100 prophets and hid them in groups of 50" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [when...cut off](#)
- [Jezebel](#)
- [the prophets of](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Obadiah](#)
- [with bread](#)
- [and water](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [One time when Queen Jezebel](#)
- [One time when Queen Jezebel](#)
- [all Yahweh's](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [of them in two caves](#)
- [Obadiah](#)
- [food](#)
- [and water to them](#)

ULT

⁴ And it had happened [when Jezebel cut off the prophets of Yahweh](#), that [Obadiah](#) had taken 100 [prophets](#) and hid them, 50 men in the cave, and he sustained them [with bread and water](#).)

UST

⁴ [One time when Queen Jezebel](#) had tried to kill [all Yahweh's prophets](#), [Obadiah](#) hid a hundred [of them in two caves](#). He put fifty prophets in each cave, and he brought [food and water to them](#).

1 Kings 18:5

save the horses and mules alive ... not lose all the animals

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. Alternate translation: “prevent the horses and mules from dying” (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Ahab
- Obadiah
- in the land
- the springs of
- water
- and we will keep alive
- a horse
- or a mule
- cut off
- some of the livestock

Translation Words - UST

- very severe in Samaria
- So Ahab
- summoned Obadiah
- We must look near every
- spring
- give to some of my horses and mules...will not...die
- give to some of my horses and mules...will not...die
- give to some of my horses and mules...will not...die
- give to some of my horses and mules...will not...die
- give to some of my horses and mules...will not...die

ULT

⁵ And Ahab said to Obadiah, “Go in the land to all the springs of water and to all the wadis. Perhaps we will find grass and we will keep alive a horse or a mule, and not cut off some of the livestock.”

UST

⁵ By this time, the famine had become very severe in Samaria. So Ahab summoned Obadiah and said to him, “We must look near every spring and in every valley to see if we can find enough grass to give to some of my horses and mules, so that they will not all die.”

1 Kings 18:6

Ahab went one way by himself and Obadiah went another way

The phrase “by himself” emphasizes that Ahab and Obadiah went in separate directions, not necessarily that no one was with Ahab. Alternate translation: “Ahab lead a team in one direction and Obadiah lead a team in the other direction” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the land](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [and Obadiah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the land](#)
- [Obadiah went by himself](#)
- [and Ahab](#)

ULT

⁶ And they divided [the land](#) for themselves to pass through it. [Ahab](#) went in the one way by himself [and Obadiah](#) went in the one way by himself.

UST

⁶ So they both started walking through [the land](#). [Obadiah went by himself](#) in one direction, [and Ahab](#) went in another direction by himself.

1 Kings 18:7

master Elijah

Here the word “master” is used as a term of respect.

Translation Words - ULT

- Obadiah
- Elijah
- Elijah
- my master

Translation Words - UST

- While Obadiah
- Elijah coming
- Elijah
- my master

ULT

⁷ And it happened that Obadiah was in the road, and behold, Elijah was to meet him. And he recognized him and fell on his face and said, “Is this you, my master Elijah?”

UST

⁷ While Obadiah was walking along, he saw Elijah coming toward him. Obadiah recognized Elijah and bowed down in front of him and said, “Is it really you, Elijah, my master?”

1 Kings 18:8

Go tell your master, 'Look, Elijah is here.'

Here the word "master" refers to Ahab.

Look, Elijah

Alternate translation: "Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: Elijah"

Translation Words - ULT

- to your master
- Elijah

Translation Words - UST

- Elijah
- your master

ULT

⁸ And he said to him, "It is I. Go, say to your master, 'Here is Elijah.'"

UST

⁸ Elijah replied, "Yes. Now go and tell Ahab your master that I am here."

1 Kings 18:9

How have I sinned ... for him to kill me?

Obadiah asks this question to emphasize the danger to himself because of King Ahab's anger at Elijah. Alternate translation: "I have not wronged you ... for him to kill me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

give your servant into the hand of Ahab

"Hand" is metonymy for power and control. Alternate translation: "deliver your servant to Ahab" (See: [Metonymy](#))

your servant

Obadiah refers to himself as Elijah's servant in order to honor Elijah.

Translation Words - ULT

- [have I sinned](#)
- [your servant](#)
- [into the hand of](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [to put me to death](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Sir, I](#)
- [have not harmed](#)
- [to Ahab](#)
- [to Ahab](#)
- [He will kill me](#)

ULT

⁹ And he said, "How [have I sinned](#), that you are giving [your servant](#) over [into the hand of Ahab](#), to put me to death?"

UST

⁹ Obadiah objected. He said, "[Sir, I have not harmed](#) you at all. So why are you sending me back [to Ahab](#)? [He will kill me!](#)"

1 Kings 18:10

As Yahweh your God lives

This is an oath used to emphasize that what he is saying is true.

there is no nation or kingdom where my master has not sent men

Here “no nation or kingdom” is an exaggeration that means that men have traveled very far and gone to many places to find Elijah. This can be expressed positively. Alternate translation: “my master has sent men to nations and kingdoms near and far” (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Double Negatives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- your God
- As...is alive
- a nation
- the nation
- or a kingdom
- the kingdom
- my master
- has...sent
- to seek you
- then he caused...to swear

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- your God
- swear
- King Ahab has searched
- every kingdom to find
- that the king
- every kingdom to find
- that country
- Elijah is...here
- Ahab demanded that
- the king of

ULT

¹⁰ As [Yahweh your God is alive](#), if there is [a nation or a kingdom](#) there where [my master](#) has not [sent to seek you](#), and they said ‘he is not here,’ [then he caused the kingdom or the nation to swear](#) that it did not find you.

UST

¹⁰ [Yahweh your God](#) knows that I am telling the truth when I solemnly declare that [King Ahab has searched in every kingdom to find](#) you. Each time that some king said to him, ‘[Elijah is not here](#),’ [Ahab demanded that the king of that country solemnly swear that the king](#) was telling the truth.

1 Kings 18:11

Yet now

This phrase is used to emphasize the danger in what Elijah is telling Obadiah to do.

Translation Words - ULT

- to your master
- Elijah

Translation Words - UST

- your master
- that Elijah is here

ULT

11 And now you are saying, 'Go, say to your master, "Here is Elijah."'

UST

11 Now you say to me, 'Go and tell your master that Elijah is here!'

1 Kings 18:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- and the Spirit of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- I will...know
- to tell
- Ahab
- and he will slay me
- And your servant
- has been fearing

Translation Words - UST

- Spirit
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- I tell Ahab
- that you are here and he comes to me and he
- But I
- do not
- to die
- revered

ULT

¹² And it will happen that I myself will go from with you, and the Spirit of Yahweh will lift you to where I will not know. And I will come to tell Ahab and he will not find you and he will slay me. And your servant has been fearing Yahweh from my youth.

UST

¹² But as soon as I leave you, the Spirit of Yahweh will carry you away, and I will not know where he will take you. So when I tell Ahab that you are here and he comes to me and he does not find you here, he will kill me! But I do not deserve to die because I have revered Yahweh since I was a boy.

1 Kings 18:13

Has it not been told to you ... with bread and water?

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Surely you have been told about what I did ... with bread and water!" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

my master

Here the word "master" is a term of respect used to refer to Elijah.

one hundred of Yahweh's prophets by fifties

"100 of Yahweh's prophets in groups of 50" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- it...been told
- bread
- and water
- to my master
- when...slew
- Jezebel
- the prophets of
- from the prophets of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- My master
- not heard about
- when Jezebel wanted
- to kill all of
- prophets
- Yahweh's
- prophets
- of them in two caves
- and took food and water to them
- and took food and water to them

ULT

¹³ Has [it](#) not [been told to my master](#), what I did [when Jezebel slew the prophets of Yahweh](#), and I hid [from the prophets of Yahweh](#) a hundred men, 50 by 50 men in the cave, and I sustained them with [bread and water](#)?

UST

¹³ [My master](#), have you [not heard about](#) what I did [when Jezebel wanted to kill all of Yahweh's prophets](#)? I hid a hundred [of them in two caves and took food and water to them](#).

1 Kings 18:14

Go and tell your master that Elijah is here

See how you translated these words in [1 Kings 18:11](#).

your master

Here “master” refers to King Ahab.

Translation Words - ULT

- [to your master](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [and he will slay me](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [your master](#)
- [that Elijah is here](#)
- [he will kill me](#)

ULT

¹⁴ And now you are saying, ‘Go, say [to your master](#), “Here is [Elijah](#),”’ [and he will slay me.](#)”

UST

¹⁴ Now, sir, you say, ‘Go and tell [your master that Elijah is here](#).’ But if I do that, and he comes and you are not here, [he will kill me!](#)”

1 Kings 18:15

As Yahweh of hosts lives

This is an oath to emphasize that what he will say is true.

before whom I stand

To “stand before” is an idiom for being in someone’s presence and ready to serve him. Alternate translation: “whom I serve” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Elijah](#)
- [Yahweh of hosts](#)
- [As...is alive](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [But Elijah](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh...commander of the angel armies](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And [Elijah](#) said, “As [Yahweh of hosts is alive](#), before whose face I stand, surely today I will appear to him.”

UST

¹⁵ [But Elijah](#) replied, “[Yahweh, commander of the angel armies](#), the one whom I serve, knows that I am telling the truth as I solemnly declare that I will go to meet with Ahab today.”

1 Kings 18:16

told him what Elijah said

Alternate translation: "Obadiah told Ahab what Elijah had told him to say"

Translation Words - ULT

- Obadiah
- Ahab
- Ahab (2)
- and he told

Translation Words - UST

- So Obadiah
- Ahab
- Ahab (2)
- that

ULT

¹⁶ And Obadiah went to meet Ahab, and he told him. And Ahab went to meet Elijah.

UST

¹⁶ So Obadiah went to tell Ahab that Elijah had come. Ahab went to meet with him.

1 Kings 18:17

Is it you? You are the one who brings trouble to Israel!

Ahab asks the question for emphasis to be certain about Elijah's identity. Alternate translation: "So here you are. You are the troublemaker of Israel!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ahab](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [who troubles](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he](#)
- [When he](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [the one who causes trouble for](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

¹⁷ And it happened as soon as [Ahab](#) saw [Elijah](#), that [Ahab](#) said to him, "Are you this one [who troubles Israel](#)?"

UST

¹⁷ [When he](#) saw [Elijah](#), [he](#) said to him, "Is that you, [the one who causes trouble for](#) the people of [Israel](#)?"

1 Kings 18:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- I have...troubled
- Israel
- and the house of
- your father
- by your forsaking
- the commandments of
- Yahweh
- the Baals

Translation Words - UST

- who have caused trouble
- the people of Israel
- your family are the ones who have caused trouble
- your family are the ones who have caused trouble
- You have refused to obey
- Yahweh's
- commands, and
- have worshiped the idols of Baal instead

ULT

¹⁸ And he said, "I have not troubled Israel, but rather you and the house of your father, by your forsaking the commandments of Yahweh and going after the Baals.

UST

¹⁸ Elijah replied, "It is not I who have caused trouble for the people of Israel! You and your family are the ones who have caused trouble! You have refused to obey Yahweh's commands, and you have worshiped the idols of Baal instead.

1 Kings 18:19

all Israel

This is a generalization to refer to the leaders and people who represent the ten tribes of the northern kingdom. (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Metonymy](#))

450 prophets

“four hundred and fifty prophets” (See: [Numbers](#))

four hundred prophets

“400 prophets” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [send](#)
- [gather](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the Carmel](#)
- [the...prophets of](#)
- [and the...prophets of](#)
- [the Baal](#)
- [the Asherah](#)
- [Jezebel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command all](#)
- [the Israelite people](#)
- [come](#)
- [to...Carmel](#)
- [prophets who worship Baal and the](#)
- [prophets who worship Baal and the](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [who worship the goddess Asherah](#)
- [the ones to whom your wife Jezebel](#)

ULT

¹⁹ And now [send, gather](#) to me all [Israel](#) to the mountain of [the Carmel](#), and the 450 [prophets of the Baal and the](#) 400 [prophets of the Asherah](#), those who eat of the table of [Jezebel](#).”

UST

¹⁹ So now, [command all the Israelite people](#) to [come](#) to Mount [Carmel](#), and be sure to bring all the 450 [prophets who worship Baal and the](#) four hundred [prophets who worship the goddess Asherah, the ones to whom your wife Jezebel](#) always invites to eat with her.”

1 Kings 18:20

sent word to ... and gathered

“Word” represents Ahab’s message and is also a metonym for the messenger who delivered the message. This is a common statement used with the meaning understood. Alternate translation: “sent a message to ... and gathered” or “sent a messenger to summon ... to gather” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Ahab
- And...sent
- the sons of
- Israel
- and he gathered
- the prophets
- the Carmel

Translation Words - UST

- Ahab
- summoned
- all his prophets and
- other
- Israelite people
- the top of Mount Carmel
- and Elijah went up there too

ULT

²⁰ And Ahab sent among all the sons of Israel and he gathered the prophets to the mountain of the Carmel.

UST

²⁰ So Ahab summoned all his prophets and all the other Israelite people to the top of Mount Carmel, and Elijah went up there too.

1 Kings 18:21

How long will you keep changing your mind?

Elijah asks this question to urge the people to make a decision. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "You have been indecisive for long enough." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

did not answer him a word

Alternate translation: "did not say anything" or "were silent"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Elijah](#)
- [the people](#)
- [the people](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [is God](#)
- [the Baal](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Elijah stood](#)
- [If Yahweh is God, then worship him](#)
- [If Yahweh is God, then worship him](#)
- [Baal](#)
- [they were afraid of what Jezebel would](#)
- [But the people](#)

ULT

²¹ And [Elijah](#) came near to all [the people](#) and he said, "Until when will you be limping over the two opinions? If [Yahweh is God](#), go after him, but if [the Baal](#), go after him." And [the people](#) did not answer him a word.

UST

²¹ [Then Elijah stood](#) in front of them and said, "How long are you going to be undecided about who is truly God? [If Yahweh is God, then worship him](#). If [Baal](#) is truly God, then worship him!" [But the people](#) said nothing in reply, because [they were afraid of what Jezebel would](#) do to them if they admitted that they worshiped Yahweh.

1 Kings 18:22

I, I alone, am left

The word "I" is repeated for emphasis.

450 men

"four hundred and fifty men" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Elijah](#)
- [the people](#)
- [I...remain](#)
- [a prophet of](#)
- [but the prophets of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the Baal](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Elijah](#)
- [to them](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [of Yahweh](#)
- [who is left](#)
- [but Baal has](#)

ULT

²² And [Elijah](#) said to [the people](#), "I myself [remain a prophet of Yahweh](#) by myself, [but the prophets of the Baal](#) are 450 men.

UST

²² [Then Elijah](#) said [to them](#), "I am the only true [prophet of Yahweh who is left](#), [but Baal has 450 prophets](#).

1 Kings 18:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- bulls
- the...bull
- the...bull
- and let them choose
- but a fire
- but a fire (2)

Translation Words - UST

- the
- bulls
- and lay the pieces
- may choose
- light a fire under
- the wood (2)

ULT

²³ And let them give to us two **bulls**, and **let them choose** for themselves the one **bull**, and let them cut it into pieces. And let them set it on the wood pieces, **but a fire** they will not set. And as for me I will make the one **bull** that I will give on the wood pieces, **but a fire** I will not set.

UST

²³ Bring two **bulls**. The prophets of Baal **may choose the** one that they want. They must kill it and cut it into pieces and lay the pieces on the wood that is on the altar that they made. But they must not **light a fire under the wood**. I will kill the other bull and cut it in pieces **and lay the pieces** on the altar that I make.

1 Kings 18:24

call on the name of your god ... call on the name of Yahweh

"Name" is metonymy for the reputation and honor of someone and "calling on" him represents an appeal. Alternate translation: "call to your god ... call to Yahweh" (See: [Metonymy](#))

all the people answered and said, "This is good."

Alternate translation: "all the people said, 'This is a good thing to do.'"

Translation Words - ULT

- And you will call
- I will call
- on the name of
- on the name of
- is good
- your god
- Yahweh
- the God
- is God
- with fire
- the people

Translation Words - UST

- will call to
- they must call to
- will call to
- they must call to
- good
- their god
- Yahweh
- The god who answers
- is the true God
- by lighting a fire
- the people

ULT

²⁴ And you will call on the name of your god, but as for me, I will call on the name of Yahweh. And it will happen that the God who answers with fire, he is God." And all the people answered and they said, "The thing is good."

UST

²⁴ Then they must call to their god, and I will call to Yahweh. The god who answers by lighting a fire to the wood that is on that altar is the true God!" Then all the people thought that Elijah's suggestion was good.

1 Kings 18:25

prepare it

Alternate translation: "make it ready to be sacrificed"

you are many people

Here the word "you" is plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Elijah](#)
- [to the prophets of](#)
- [the Baal](#)
- [Choose](#)
- [the...bull](#)
- [And call](#)
- [on the name of](#)
- [your god](#)
- [but a fire](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Elijah](#)
- [to the prophets of Baal](#)
- [You call to Baal](#)
- [Choose](#)
- [bulls](#)
- [and then call to](#)
- [and then call to](#)
- [your god](#)
- [light a fire under the wood](#)

ULT

²⁵ And [Elijah](#) said [to the prophets of the Baal](#), "[Choose](#) for yourselves the one [bull](#) and make it first, for you are the most abundant. [And call on the name of your god](#), [but a fire](#) you will not set."

UST

²⁵ [Then Elijah](#) said [to the prophets of Baal](#), "[You call to Baal](#) first, because there are many of you. [Choose](#) one of the [bulls](#) and prepare it, [and then call to your god](#). But do not [light a fire under the wood!](#)"

1 Kings 18:26

They took the bull

Alternate translation: "The prophets of Baal took the bull"

the bull that was given to them

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the bull that someone gave them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

But there was no voice, nor anyone who answered

These two phrases share similar meanings and emphasize that there was no one to respond to the prayers of the false prophets. The word "voice" represents someone speaking. Alternate translation: "But Baal did not say or do anything" (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the bull
- and they called
- on the name of
- the Baal
- The Baal
- voice
- the altar

Translation Words - UST

- bulls and cut it up
- they called out
- they called out
- to Baal
- Baal, answer us
- answered
- altar

ULT

²⁶ And they took [the bull](#) that he gave to them and they made, [and they called on the name of the Baal](#) from the morning and until the midday, saying, "[The Baal](#), answer us!" But there was no [voice](#) and there was no answering. And they limped beside [the altar](#) that he had made.

UST

²⁶ So they killed one of the [bulls and cut it up](#) and placed the pieces on the altar. Then [they called out to Baal](#) all morning. They shouted, "[Baal, answer us!](#)" But no one [answered](#). There was no reply at all. Then they danced wildly around the [altar](#) that they had made.

1 Kings 18:27

Perhaps he is thinking

Alternate translation: "Maybe he is thinking" or "It could be that he is thinking"

relieving himself

This euphemism is a more pleasant way to express a harsh statement. Elijah uses understatement to insult Baal with sarcasm. Alternate translation: "in the bathroom" (See: [Euphemism](#))

must be awakened

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "you must awaken him" or "you must wake him up" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Elijah](#)
- [that...mocked](#)
- [Cry out](#)
- [with a...voice](#)
- [is a god](#)
- [is asleep](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Elijah](#)
- [started to make fun of them](#)
- [a god](#)
- [it seems that you must shout louder](#)
- [it seems that you must shout louder](#)
- [is asleep](#)

ULT

²⁷ And it happened at the midday that [Elijah mocked](#) them and he said, "[Cry out with a great voice](#), for he [is a god](#). Surely he is musing, or surely moving away for himself, or surely a way is for him. Perhaps he is asleep and he will wake up."

UST

²⁷ About noontime, [Elijah started to make fun of them](#). He said, "Surely Baal is [a god](#), so [it seems that you must shout louder](#)! Perhaps he is thinking about something, or perhaps he has gone to the toilet. Or perhaps he is traveling somewhere, or perhaps he is asleep and you need to wake him up!"

1 Kings 18:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And they cried out
- with a...voice
- according to their custom
- with the swords
- and with the spears
- blood

Translation Words - UST

- So they shouted louder
- So they shouted louder
- they slashed themselves with knives
- and swords
- blood
- flowed

ULT

²⁸ And they cried out with a great voice, and they cut themselves, according to their custom, with the swords and with the spears, until a pouring out of blood was on them.

UST

²⁸ So they shouted louder. Then, doing one of the things that they frequently did when they worshiped Baal, they slashed themselves with knives and swords until a lot of blood flowed.

1 Kings 18:29

they were still raving

“they continued their wild behavior.” Prophets often acted in ways that seemed unusual or even crazy. In this case they were calling on Baal while dancing, shouting loudly, and cutting themselves with knives.

of offering of the evening sacrifice

Alternate translation: “to offer the evening sacrifice”

but there was no voice or anyone to answer; there was no one who paid any attention to their pleadings

These phrases share similar meanings and emphasize that no one responded to the prayers of the false prophets. Alternate translation: “but Baal did not say or do anything or even pay attention” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metonymy](#))

there was no voice or anyone to answer

See how you translated this in [1 Kings 18:26](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [that they prophesied](#)
- [the offering up of](#)
- [the grain offering](#)
- [voice](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [They continued calling out to Baal...afternoon](#)
- [They continued calling out to Baal...afternoon](#)
- [all](#)
- [answer](#)

ULT

²⁹ And it happened as soon as the midday passed, [that they prophesied](#) until [the offering up of the grain offering](#), but there was no [voice](#) and there was no answering and there was no attentiveness.

UST

²⁹ [They continued calling out to Baal all afternoon](#). But there was no voice that gave a reply, no [answer](#), no god who paid attention.

1 Kings 18:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Elijah
- the people
- the people
- the...altar of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Then Elijah called
- the people
- around him
- the altar of
- Yahweh

ULT

³⁰ And **Elijah** said to all **the people**,
“Come near to me.” And all **the people**
came near to him. And he repaired the
torn down **altar of Yahweh**.

UST

³⁰ **Then Elijah called** to **the people**
saying, “Come closer!” So they all
crowded **around him**. Then Elijah
repaired **the altar of Yahweh** that had
been ruined by the prophets of Baal.

1 Kings 18:31

twelve stones

"12 stones" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Elijah](#)
- [the tribes of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [the word of Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [your name](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then he](#)
- [each one to represent one of...whose ancestors were the twelve](#)
- [Israelite](#)
- [Israelite](#)
- [tribes](#)
- [sons](#)
- [of Jacob](#)

ULT

³¹ And [Elijah](#) took 12 stones, according to the number of [the tribes of the sons of Jacob](#), to whom was [the word of Yahweh](#), saying, "[Israel](#) shall be [your name](#)."

UST

³¹ Then he took twelve large stones, each one to represent one of the [Israelite tribes](#), whose ancestors were the twelve sons of Jacob.

1 Kings 18:32

in the name of Yahweh

“Name” here is a metonym for honor and reputation. This could mean: (1) “to honor Yahweh” or (2) “with the authority of Yahweh.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

trench

a small waterway to hold water

two seahs of seeds

A seah is a unit of volume equal to about 7.7 liters. Alternate translation: “about 15 liters of seeds” (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [an altar](#)
- [the altar](#)
- [in the name of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [seed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he rebuilt Yahweh's](#)
- [he rebuilt Yahweh's](#)
- [altar](#)
- [Then...the altar he dug](#)
- [liters of water](#)

ULT

³² And he built with the stones [an altar in the name of Yahweh](#). And he made a trench like the house of two seahs of [seed](#) surrounding [the altar](#).

UST

³² With these stones [he rebuilt Yahweh's altar](#). Then around [the altar he dug](#) a little ditch that was large enough to hold about fifteen [liters of water](#).

1 Kings 18:33

He arranged the wood for a fire

“On the altar” where he placed the wood is assumed in this sentence.
Alternate translation: “He put the wood for a fire on the altar” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

four jars

“4 jars” (See: [Numbers](#))

jars

A jar is a container for water.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the bull](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then he said, “Fill four large jars with water, and pour the](#)

ULT

33 And he arranged the wood pieces.
And he cut [the bull](#) into pieces and he set it on the wood pieces.

UST

33 He piled wood on top of the stones.
He killed the bull and cut it in pieces.
Then he laid the pieces on top of the wood. [Then he said, “Fill four large jars with water, and pour the](#) water on top of the pieces of meat and the wood.” So they did that.

1 Kings 18:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- with water
- the burnt up offering

Translation Words - UST

- Do the same thing again
- So they did it again

ULT

³⁴ And he said, "Fill four jars with water, and pour out on the burnt up offering and on the wood pieces." And he said "Do it a second time," and they did it a second time. And he said, "Do it a third time," and they did it a third time.

UST

³⁴ Then he said, "Do the same thing again!" So they did it again. Then he said, "Do it a third time!" So they did it again.

1 Kings 18:35

trench

See how you translated this in [1 Kings 18:30](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the water](#)
- [with water](#)
- [the altar](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the water](#)
- [filled](#)
- [below the altar and](#)

ULT

³⁵ And [the water](#) went around [the altar](#) and even the trench he filled [with water](#).

UST

³⁵ As a result, [the water](#) flowed down [below the altar and filled](#) the ditches.

1 Kings 18:36

It happened

This phrase is used here to reference a significant and meaningful time of the day in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Yahweh, the God of Abraham, of Isaac, and of Israel

Here "Israel" is referring to Jacob. God changed Jacob's name to Israel (Genesis 32:28), and God named the nation of Jacob's descendants "Israel."

let it be known this day

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "make these people know today" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- at the offering up of
- the grain offering
- in Israel
- your servant
- Elijah
- the prophet
- Yahweh
- the God of
- are God
- Abraham
- Isaac
- and Israel
- let it be known

Translation Words - UST

- to offer the evening sacrifices
- to offer the evening sacrifices
- Israelite
- the...people should worship
- I am your servant
- Elijah
- Yahweh
- you who are the God that
- the God whom
- our ancestors Abraham
- and Isaac
- and Jacob worshiped
- prove today that

ULT

³⁶ And it happened at the offering up of the grain offering, that Elijah the prophet came near and he said, "Yahweh, the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Israel, let it be known today that you are God in Israel, and I am your servant, and by your word I have done all these things.

UST

³⁶ When it was time to offer the evening sacrifices, Elijah walked close to the altar and prayed. He said, "Yahweh, you who are the God that our ancestors Abraham and Isaac and Jacob worshiped, prove today that you are the God whom the Israelite people should worship, and prove that I am your servant. Prove that I have done all these things because you told me to do them.

1 Kings 18:37

Hear me ... hear me

This phrase is repeated to emphasize the appeal of Elijah to Yahweh.

turned their heart back again to yourself

The people's "heart" is a metonym for the affection and loyalty of the people. Alternate translation: "caused them to be loyal to you again" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- people
- that...may know
- are God
- have turned around
- their heart

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- you, Yahweh, are
- people
- will know that
- God
- you
- you

ULT

³⁷ Answer me, [Yahweh](#)! Answer me, that this [people may know](#) that you, [Yahweh](#), [are God](#), and you [have turned around their heart](#) backward."

UST

³⁷ [Yahweh](#), answer me! Answer me in order that these [people will know that you, Yahweh, are God](#) and that you have caused them to trust in [you](#) again!"

1 Kings 18:38

the fire of Yahweh fell

Alternate translation: "the fire of Yahweh came down"

licked up

The fire is compared to a thirsty person drinking water. (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the fire of
- Yahweh
- the burnt up offering
- the water

Translation Words - UST

- Immediately a fire from Yahweh
- The fire
- the pieces of meat
- water

ULT

³⁸ And [the fire of Yahweh](#) fell and ate [the burnt up offering](#) and the wood pieces and the stones and the dust. And it licked up [the water](#) that was in the trench.

UST

³⁸ [Immediately a fire from Yahweh](#) flashed down from the sky. [The fire](#) burned up [the pieces of meat](#), the wood, the stones, and the dirt that was around the altar. It even dried up all the [water](#) in the ditch!

1 Kings 18:39

Yahweh, he is God! Yahweh, he is God!

This phrase is repeated for emphasis.

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- is God
- is God

Translation Words - UST

- the people
- Yahweh
- Yahweh is
- is God
- God

ULT

³⁹ And all the people saw and they fell on their faces. And they said, "Yahweh, he is God! Yahweh, he is God!"

UST

³⁹ When the people saw that, they prostrated themselves on the ground and shouted, "Yahweh is God! Yahweh is God!"

1 Kings 18:40

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Elijah
- Elijah
- Seize
- And they seized them
- the prophets of
- the Baal
- and he slaughtered them

Translation Words - UST

- and Elijah
- Then Elijah
- Seize
- the people seized all the prophets of Baal
- all the prophets
- of Baal
- killed them all

ULT

⁴⁰ And **Elijah** said to them, “**Seize the prophets of the Baal**. Do not let a man from them slip away.” **And they seized them**. And **Elijah** brought them down to the wadi Kishon **and he slaughtered them** there.

UST

⁴⁰ Then **Elijah** commanded them, “**Seize all the prophets of Baal!** Do not allow any of them to escape!” So **the people seized all the prophets of Baal**, and took them down the mountain to the river Kishon, **and Elijah killed them all** there.

1 Kings 18:41

there is the sound of much rain

Alternate translation: "it sounds like it is going to rain a lot"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Elijah](#)
- [to Ahab](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Elijah](#)
- [Ahab](#)

ULT

⁴¹ And [Elijah](#) said [to Ahab](#), "Get up, eat and drink, for there is the sound of the roar of the rain."

UST

⁴¹ [Then Elijah](#) said to [Ahab](#), "Go and get something to eat and drink. But do it quickly, because it is soon going to rain very hard!"

1 Kings 18:42

bowed himself down on the earth and put his face between his knees

This describes a posture used for praying.

Translation Words - ULT

- Ahab
- And Elijah
- the head of
- the Carmel
- toward the earth
- his face

Translation Words - UST

- So Ahab and his men
- But Elijah
- Carmel, Mount Carmel
- earth, land
- face, facial
- head

ULT

⁴² And **Ahab** went up to eat and to drink. **And Elijah** went up to **the head of the Carmel**, and he bent down **toward the earth** and he put **his face** between his knees.

UST

⁴² **So Ahab and his men** left to prepare a big meal. **But Elijah** went back up to the top of Mount Carmel and prayed.

1 Kings 18:43

seven times

The word “seven” can be rendered as the numeral “7.” Alternate translation: “7 times” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his young man](#)
- [Return](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [his servant](#)
- [and came back](#)

ULT

⁴³ And he said to [his young man](#), “Go up, now, look toward the way of the sea.” And he went up and he looked and he said, “There is not anything.” And he said, “[Return](#) seven times.”

UST

⁴³ Then he said to [his servant](#), “Go and look out toward the sea, to see if there are any rain clouds.” So his servant went and looked, [and came back](#) and said, “I do not see anything.” This happened six times.

1 Kings 18:44

as small as a man's hand

From a long distance, the cloud could be covered from sight by a man's hand.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ahab](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [King Ahab](#)

ULT

44 And it happened at the seventh time that he said, "Behold, a small cloud like the palm of a man is going up from the sea." And he said, "Go up, say to [Ahab](#), 'Harness and go down so the rain will not stop you.'"

UST

44 But when the servant went the seventh time, he came back and said, "I saw a very small cloud above the sea. As I extend my arm, the cloud is about the size of my hand." Then Elijah shouted to him, "Go and tell [King Ahab](#) to get his chariot ready and go home immediately! If he does not do that, the rain will stop him!"

1 Kings 18:45

It happened

This phrase is used here to mark where a new step in the action starts. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Translation Words - ULT

- that the heavens
- and wind
- Ahab
- to Jezreel

Translation Words - UST

- the sky
- a strong wind
- Ahab
- the city of Jezreel

ULT

⁴⁵ And it happened until here and until there, that the heavens became dark with clouds and wind, and there was a great rain. And Ahab rode and went to Jezreel.

UST

⁴⁵ Very soon the sky was full of black clouds. There was a strong wind, and then it began to rain very hard. Ahab got into his chariot and started to return to the city of Jezreel.

1 Kings 18:46

the hand of Yahweh was on Elijah

Here the word “hand” is a metonym for strength. Alternate translation: “Yahweh gave his power to Elijah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

tucked his robe in his belt

Elijah wrapped his long robe around his waist so that his legs would be free for running.

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the hand of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [and he girded up](#)
- [his loins](#)
- [and he ran](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [Jezreel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [He tucked his cloak](#)
- [into his belt](#)
- [run fast](#)
- [Ahab's chariot all the way](#)
- [to Jezreel](#)

ULT

⁴⁶ [And the hand of Yahweh](#) was to [Elijah](#), and he girded up his loins and he ran before the face of [Ahab](#) as far as your coming into [Jezreel](#).

UST

⁴⁶ [Yahweh](#) gave extra strength to [Elijah](#). He tucked his cloak into his belt in order to run fast, and he ran ahead of [Ahab's](#) chariot all the way to [Jezreel](#).

1 Kings 19

1 Kings 19 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of Elijah continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

The queen was angry that Elijah had killed her prophets of Baal. She promised to kill Elijah. Elijah fled south into the desert south of Judah. He traveled on to Mount Horeb also known as Mount Sinai, the mountain of God. God asked him why he was there. He said he had come to Mount Horeb because Israel had deserted God, killed his prophets, and wanted to kill him. God sent him home to make Hazael the king of Aram, Jehu the king of Israel, and Elisha as the prophet in his place. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#))

1 Kings 19:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Ahab
- And...told
- Jezebel
- Elijah
- he had slain
- the prophets
- with the sword

Translation Words - UST

- When Ahab got home
- he told
- his wife Jezebel
- Elijah
- Elijah had killed
- all the prophets of Baal
- all the prophets of Baal

ULT

¹ And Ahab told Jezebel all that Elijah had done and everthing, that he had slain all the prophets with the sword.

UST

¹ When Ahab got home, he told his wife Jezebel what Elijah had done. He told her that Elijah had killed all the prophets of Baal.

1 Kings 19:2

So may the gods do to me, and more also

This is a comparison used as an emphatic oath. "May the gods kill me and do even more bad things"

if I do not make your life like the life of one of those dead prophets

Alternate translation: "if I do not kill you like you killed those prophets"

Translation Words - ULT

- Jezebel
- And...sent
- a messenger
- Elijah
- the gods
- your life
- as the life of

Translation Words - UST

- Jezebel
- sent
- message
- Elijah
- just like you killed all
- just like you killed all
- I hope the gods will kill me

ULT

² And Jezebel sent a messenger to Elijah, saying, "So may the gods do and so may they add, unless about this time tomorrow I will set your life as the life of one from them."

UST

² So Jezebel sent this message to Elijah, "By this time tomorrow I will have killed you, just like you killed all those prophets of Baal. If I do not do that, I hope the gods will kill me."

1 Kings 19:3

he arose

Alternate translation: "he stood up"

Translation Words - ULT

- his life
- to Beersheba
- to Beersheba
- to Beersheba
- is for Judah
- And he caused...to rest
- his young man

Translation Words - UST

- he fled
- Beersheba
- Beersheba
- Beersheba
- in Judah
- He left
- his servant

ULT

³ And he saw and rose and went for his life and he came to Beersheba, which is for Judah. And he caused his young man to rest there.

UST

³ When Elijah received her message, he was afraid. So taking his servant with him, he fled in order that he would not be killed. He went far south to Beersheba, in Judah. He left his servant there.

1 Kings 19:4

he himself went a day's journey

The word "himself" is used to emphasize that he was alone. Alternate translation: "he walked by himself for a day" (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

broom tree

A "broom tree" is a plant that grows in the desert. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

He requested for himself that he might die

Alternate translation: "He prayed that he would die"

It is enough, now, Yahweh

Alternate translation: "These troubles are too much for me, Yahweh"

Translation Words - ULT

- a day
- into the wilderness
- his life
- my life
- to die
- Yahweh
- am...better
- than my fathers

Translation Words - UST

- further south into the desert
- all day
- to die
- to die
- because for me
- Yahweh
- better than being with my
- ancestors who have died

ULT

⁴ But as for him, he went a road of a day into the wilderness, and he came and sat under one broom shrub. And he requested with respect to his life to die, and he said, "Too much, now, Yahweh; take my life, for I am not better than my fathers."

UST

⁴ Then he went by himself further south into the desert. He walked all day. He sat down under a broom tree and prayed that Yahweh would allow him to die. He said, "Yahweh, I cannot endure anymore. So allow me to die, because for me to live is no better than being with my ancestors who have died."

1 Kings 19:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- and slept
- an angel

Translation Words - UST

- and slept
- an angel

ULT

⁵ And he lay down and slept under one broom shrub. And behold this, an angel was touching him and he said to him, "Get up! Eat!"

UST

⁵ Then he lay down under the broom tree and slept. But while he was sleeping, an angel touched him and woke him up and said to him, "Get up and eat some food!"

1 Kings 19:6

bread that had been baked on coals

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "bread that someone had cooked on hot stones" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

jug of water

Alternate translation: "a container of water"

Translation Words - ULT

- [water](#)
- [and returned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of water](#)
- [again](#)

ULT

⁶ And he looked, and behold, at the place of his head was a bread cake of glowing coals and a jug of [water](#). And he ate and drank [and returned](#) and lay down.

UST

⁶ Elijah looked around and saw some bread which had been baked on hot stones, and he also saw a jar [of water](#). So he ate some bread and drank some water and lay down to sleep [again](#).

1 Kings 19:7

will be too much for you

Alternate translation: "will be too difficult for you."

Translation Words - ULT

- the angel of
- Yahweh
- And...returned

Translation Words - UST

- Then the angel
- who had been sent by Yahweh came
- again

ULT

⁷ And the angel of Yahweh returned a second time and he touched him and he said, "Get up! Eat! For the road will be too much for you."

UST

⁷ Then the angel who had been sent by Yahweh came again and touched him, and said, "Get up and eat some more food, because you need more strength to go on a long journey."

1 Kings 19:8

he traveled in the strength of that food forty days and forty nights

“that food gave him energy to travel for 40 days and 40 nights” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in the strength of](#)
- [days](#)
- [God](#)
- [Horeb](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [strength](#)
- [days](#)
- [Horeb](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

⁸ And he rose and ate and drank. And he went [in the strength of](#) that food 40 [days](#) and 40 nights as far as the mountain of [God](#), [Horeb](#).

UST

⁸ So he got up and ate and drank some more; because he did that, he got enough [strength](#) to travel for forty [days](#) and nights to Mount [Horeb](#), the mountain that was dedicated to [God](#).

1 Kings 19:9

to a cave there

Here the word “there” refers to Mount Horeb. A cave is an opening in a mountainside that leads to a natural room or rooms underground.

the word of Yahweh came to him and said to him, “What

The idiom “The word of Yahweh came to,” is used to introduce a special message from God. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 6:11](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh gave a message to him. He said, ‘What’ or ‘Yahweh spoke this message to him: ‘What’” (See: [Idiom](#))

What are you doing here, Elijah?

Yahweh asks this question to rebuke Elijah and to remind him of his duty. Alternate translation: “This is not where you should be, Elijah.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the word of Yahweh](#)
- [Elijah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Elijah](#)

ULT

⁹ And he entered there into the cave, and he spent the night there. And behold, [the word of Yahweh](#) was to him and he said to him, “What is for you here, [Elijah](#)?”

UST

⁹ He went into a cave there and slept there that night. The next morning, [Yahweh](#) said to him, “[Elijah](#), why are you here?”

1 Kings 19:10

I, only I, am left

Here the word "I" is repeated for emphasis.

Translation Words - ULT

- I have been...zealous
- they have slain
- with the sword
- And I am left
- and they seek
- my life
- for Yahweh
- the God of hosts
- the sons of
- Israel
- have forsaken
- your covenant
- your altars
- your prophets

Translation Words - UST

- I have zealously
- served you
- I am the only one
- whom they have not killed, and now they are trying to kill me, too
- whom they have not killed, and now they are trying to kill me, too
- whom they have not killed, and now they are trying to kill me, too
- am running away from them
- Yahweh, commander of angel
- Yahweh, commander of angel...armies
- But the Israelite people
- But the Israelite people
- the agreement
- They have torn down your altars
- and they have killed all of your prophets

ULT

¹⁰ And he said, "I have been very zealous for Yahweh, the God of hosts, but the sons of Israel have forsaken your covenant, your altars they have torn down, and your prophets they have slain with the sword. And I am left, I by myself, and they seek my life, to take it."

UST

¹⁰ Elijah replied, "I have zealously served you, Yahweh, commander of angel armies. But the Israelite people have rejected the agreement that they made with you. They have torn down your altars, and they have killed all of your prophets. I am the only one whom they have not killed, and now they are trying to kill me, too. So I am running away from them."

1 Kings 19:11

on the mountain before me

"Before me" here is an idiom for standing in front of someone.
Alternate translation: "on the mountain in my presence" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- And a...wind
- was...in the wind
- the wind
- and strong

Translation Words - UST

- me
- Yahweh
- But Yahweh
- was not in the
- Yahweh was
- a strong
- windstorm
- was not in the
- wind

ULT

11 And he said, "Go out and stand on the mountain before the face of [Yahweh](#), and behold, [Yahweh](#) is about to pass over!" [And a great and strong wind](#) was splitting the mountains and shattering rocks before the face of [Yahweh](#). [Yahweh](#) was not [in the wind](#). And after [the wind](#) was an earthquake. [Yahweh](#) was not in the earthquake.

UST

11 [Yahweh](#) said to him, "Go out and stand in front of [me](#) on this mountain while I pass by." So Elijah did that. While he was standing there, [a strong windstorm](#) struck the mountain. As a result, rocks were loosened from the mountainside. [But Yahweh was not in the wind](#). Then there was an earthquake, but [Yahweh was](#) not in the earthquake.

1 Kings 19:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- was a fire
- was...in the fire
- the fire
- Yahweh
- was the voice of

Translation Words - UST

- a fire
- the fire
- Then there was a
- but Yahweh
- sound like

ULT

¹² And after the earthquake **was a fire**. **Yahweh** was not **in the fire**. And after **the fire was the voice of** a thin whisper.

UST

¹² Then there was **a fire**, **but Yahweh** was not in **the fire**. **Then there was a sound like** someone whispering quietly.

1 Kings 19:13

he wrapped his face in his cloak

“he covered his face with his cloak” A cloak is a long robe, a piece of clothing that covers the whole body.

Then a voice came to him

Alternate translation: “Then he heard a voice”

What are you doing here, Elijah?

See how you translated this text in [1 Kings 19:9](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Elijah](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [his face](#)
- [a voice was](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When Elijah](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [face](#)
- [And he heard Yahweh speaking](#)

ULT

13 And it happened as soon as [Elijah](#) heard, that he wrapped [his face](#) in his cloak. And he went out and stood at the opening of the cave. And behold, [a voice was](#) to him and it said, “What is for you here, [Elijah](#)?”

UST

13 [When Elijah](#) heard that, he wrapped his cloak around his [face](#). He went out of the cave and stood at its entrance. [And he heard Yahweh speaking](#) to him, saying again, “[Elijah](#), why are you here?”

1 Kings 19:14

Elijah replied, “I have been very zealous ... and they are also trying to take my life.”

See how you translated this text in [1 Kings 19:10](#).

I, only I, am left

Here the word “I” is repeated for emphasis.

Translation Words - ULT

- I have been...zealous
- they have slain
- with the sword
- And I am left
- and they seek
- my life
- for Yahweh
- the God of hosts
- the sons of
- Israel
- have forsaken
- your covenant
- your altars
- your prophets

Translation Words - UST

- I have zealously
- served you
- killed
- all of your
- prophets
- I am the only one whom they have not killed, and now they are trying to kill me, too
- am running away from them
- Yahweh, commander of angel
- Yahweh, commander of angel...armies
- But the Israelite people
- But the Israelite people
- the agreement
- They have torn down your altars
- killed

ULT

¹⁴ And he said, “I have been very zealous for Yahweh, the God of hosts, but the sons of Israel have forsaken your covenant, your altars they have torn down, and your prophets they have slain with the sword. And I am left, I by myself, and they seek my life, to take it.”

UST

¹⁴ He replied again, “I have zealously served you, Yahweh, commander of angel armies. But the Israelite people have rejected the agreement that they made with you. They have torn down your altars, and they have killed all of your prophets. I am the only one whom they have not killed, and now they are trying to kill me, too. So I am running away from them.”

1 Kings 19:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- return
- toward the wilderness of
- Damascus
- and anoint
- as king
- Aram

Translation Words - UST

- Then Yahweh
- Go
- the wilderness
- near Damascus
- anoint with olive oil
- to be the king
- Aram

ULT

¹⁵ And Yahweh said to him, “Go, return to your way toward the wilderness of Damascus. And you shall come and anoint Hazael as king over Aram.

UST

¹⁵ Then Yahweh told him, “Go back to the wilderness near Damascus. When you arrive there anoint with olive oil a man named Hazael, to appoint him to be the king of Aram.

1 Kings 19:16

prophet in your place

Alternate translation: "prophet instead of you"

Translation Words - ULT

- you shall anoint
- you shall anoint (2)
- Jehu
- the son of
- the son of
- as king
- Israel
- Elisha
- as prophet

Translation Words - UST

- Then anoint
- and also anoint (2)
- Jehu
- son
- son of Shaphat, from
- to be the king
- Israel
- Elisha
- to become my prophet after

ULT

¹⁶ And you shall anoint Jehu the son of Nimshi as king over Israel. And you shall anoint Elisha the son of Shaphat from Abel Meholah as prophet in your place.

UST

¹⁶ Then anoint Jehu son of Nimshi to be the king of Israel, and also anoint Elisha son of Shaphat, from the city of Abel Meholah, to become my prophet after you are gone.

1 Kings 19:17

It will happen

This phrase is used to introduce what will happen when Elijah does what Yahweh has told him to do. "What will happen is"

whoever escapes from the sword of Hazael

"Sword" is metonymy for killing as in battle. Alternate translation: "whomever Hazael does not kill with the sword" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- from the sword of
- from the sword of (2)
- Jehu
- Jehu
- will put to death
- will put to death
- Elisha

Translation Words - UST

- will kill many people
- from being killed by his army (2)
- killed
- killed
- by Jehu's army
- and those...Jehu's army will be
- by Elisha

ULT

17 And it will happen that the one who slips away [from the sword of](#) Hazael, [Jehu will put to death](#). And the one who slips away [from the sword of Jehu](#), [Elisha will put to death](#).

UST

17 Hazael's army [will kill many people](#), and those who escape [from being killed by his army](#) will be [killed by Jehu's army](#), [and those](#) who escape from being killed by [Jehu's army will be killed by Elisha](#).

1 Kings 19:18

I will leave for myself

Here the words “I” and “myself” refer to Yahweh. Alternate translation: “I will save from death” (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

seven thousand people

“7,000 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

whose knees have not bent down to Baal, and whose mouths have not kissed him

“Bending down” and “kissing” are metonymies for actions people did to worship idols. They are combined for emphasis. Alternate translation: “who have not bowed down and kissed Baal” or “who have not worshiped Baal” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in Israel](#)
- [have...bowed](#)
- [to the Baal](#)
- [has...kissed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel](#)
- [have never bowed to worship](#)
- [Baal](#)
- [or kissed](#)

ULT

18 And I have left [in Israel](#) 7000 men, all the knees that have not [bowed to the Baal](#), and every mouth that has not [kissed](#) him.”

UST

18 But you need to know that there are still seven thousand people in [Israel](#) who [have never bowed to worship Baal or kissed](#) his idol.”

1 Kings 19:19

Shaphat

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve yoke of oxen

“12 yoke of oxen” (See: [Numbers](#))

he himself was plowing with the twelfth yoke

The word “himself” indicates that Elisha was plowing with the last yoke, while other men were plowing with the other eleven yokes. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Elisha
- the son of
- was plowing
- Elijah

Translation Words - UST

- Elisha as he was plowing a field with
- Elisha as he was plowing a field with
- plowing with
- in the same field. Elijah went to Elisha

ULT

¹⁹ And he went from there and found [Elisha the son of](#) Shaphat. And he [was plowing](#) with 12 pairs before his face and he was with the 12th. And [Elijah](#) passed over to him and he threw his cloak on him.

UST

¹⁹ So Elijah went to Aram and found [Elisha as he was plowing a field with](#) a team of oxen. There were eleven other men who were in front of him, [plowing with](#) teams of oxen [in the same field](#). [Elijah went to Elisha](#), and took off his own coat and put it on Elisha, to show Elisha that he wanted Elisha to take his place as a prophet. Then he started to walk away.

1 Kings 19:20

he said, "Please

The word "he" refers to Elisha.

Translation Words - ULT

- the cattle
- and he ran
- Elijah
- let me kiss
- my father
- return

Translation Words - UST

- Elisha left
- the oxen
- and ran
- Elijah, and
- kiss
- parents

ULT

²⁰ And he left the cattle and he ran after Elijah and he said, "Please let me kiss my father and my mother, and let me go after you." And he said to him, "Go, return, for what have I done to you?"

UST

²⁰ Elisha left the oxen standing there and ran after Elijah, and said to him, "I will go with you, but first let me kiss my parents goodbye." Elijah replied, "Very well, go home. But do not forget why I have given my cloak to you!"

1 Kings 19:21

he gave it to the people

Elisha gave the cooked meat to the people of his city. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And he returned](#)
- [cattle](#)
- [the cattle](#)
- [and he sacrificed it](#)
- [to the people](#)
- [Elijah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Elisha went back](#)
- [He killed his](#)
- [oxen](#)
- [and used the wood from the plow](#)
- [and they](#)
- [Elijah](#)

ULT

21 [And he returned](#) from after him. And he took the pair of [cattle and he sacrificed it](#) and with the implements of [the cattle](#) he boiled them, the meat. And he gave [to the people](#) and they ate. And he rose and went after [Elijah](#) and he attended him.

UST

21 So [Elisha went back](#) home. [He killed his oxen](#) and cut them in pieces [and used the wood from the plow](#) to build a fire to roast the meat. He distributed the meat to the other people in his town, [and they](#) all ate some. Then he went with [Elijah](#) and became his helper.

1 Kings 20

1 Kings 20 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This is a story of two battles between Aram and Israel.

Special concepts in this chapter

Battle

God had chosen to defeat Ben Hadad, king of Aram. So when he attacked Samaria with a huge army, the tiny army of Israel defeated him. The people of Aram said that Yahweh was the god of the hills, but they could defeat Israel on the plains. So they came again but Israel defeated them again. Then Ben Hadad offered a peace plan and Ahab accepted. But God had wanted him to kill Ben Hadad and was angry at Ahab for making peace with him.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Simile

There were so few Israel soldiers that they were “like two little flocks of goats.” (See: [Simile](#))

1 Kings 20:1

Ben Hadad

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

thirty-two lesser kings

“32 lesser kings” (See: [Numbers](#))

lesser kings

Alternate translation: “kings ruling smaller groups of people”

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- kings
- Aram
- gathered
- his strength
- and horse
- and chariotry
- and laid seige
- Samaria

Translation Words - UST

- the king of
- and he
- Aram
- gathered
- his army
- and horses and
- chariots
- They marched to the city of Samaria
- and surrounded it and

ULT

¹ Now Ben Hadad the king of Aram gathered all his strength and 32 kings with him, and horse and chariotry. And he went up and laid seige against Samaria and he fought against it.

UST

¹ Ben Hadad, the king of Aram, gathered all his army, and he brought thirty-two lesser kings to join him with their armies and horses and chariots. They marched to the city of Samaria, the capital of Israel, and surrounded it and prepared to attack it.

1 Kings 20:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And he sent
- messengers
- Ahab
- the king of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Ben Hadad sent
- messengers
- to King
- Ahab
- This is what King Ben Hadad says

ULT

² And he sent messengers to Ahab the king of Israel at the city.

UST

² Ben Hadad sent messengers into the city to King Ahab, and they said this to him: "This is what King Ben Hadad says:

1 Kings 20:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Your silver
- and your gold
- and your sons
- the good ones

Translation Words - UST

- all your silver
- and gold, your
- good-looking
- and strongest children

ULT

³ And he said to him, 'Thus says Ben Hadad, "Your silver and your gold, it is for me. And your wives and your sons, the good ones, they are for me."

UST

³ 'You must give to me all your silver and gold, your good-looking wives and strongest children.'

1 Kings 20:4

It is as you say

This is an idiom to express agreement. Alternate translation: "I agree with you" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- the king
- Israel
- my master

Translation Words - UST

- The king of
- Tell this to King Ben Hadad
- Israel
- You can have me and everything

ULT

⁴ And [the king of Israel](#) answered and said, "According to your word, [my master the king](#), I and all that is for me is for you."

UST

⁴ [The king of Israel](#) replied to them, "Tell [this to King Ben Hadad](#), 'I agree to do what you requested. [You can have me and everything](#) that I own.'"

1 Kings 20:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the messengers
- And...returned
- I sent
- your silver
- and your gold
- and your sons

Translation Words - UST

- The messengers
- he sent
- them back with another message
- silver
- and gold
- children

ULT

⁵ And the messengers returned and said, "Thus says Ben Hadad, saying, 'Surely I sent to you, saying, your silver and your gold and your wives and your sons you will give to me,

UST

⁵ The messengers told that to Ben Hadad, and he sent them back with another message: "I sent a message to you saying that you must give me all your silver and gold and your wives and your children.

1 Kings 20:6

tomorrow about this time

Alternate translation: "tomorrow at the same time of day that it is now"

whatever pleases their eyes

Here the "eyes" represent the whole person and emphasize them looking at something and desiring it. Alternate translation: "whatever pleases them" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- I will send
- my servants
- your servants
- and they will search
- your house
- the houses of
- precious thing of
- in their hand

Translation Words - UST

- I will
- of your officials
- send some of my officials
- to search
- your palace and
- the houses
- and to bring to me
- everything

ULT

⁶ but rather around this time tomorrow I will send my servants to you, and they will search through your house and the houses of your servants. And it will happen that any precious thing of your eyes they will put in their hand and they will take."

UST

⁶ But in addition to that, about this time tomorrow, I will send some of my officials to search your palace and the houses of your officials, and to bring to me everything that they see is valuable."

1 Kings 20:7

of the land

“The land” represents all the people living there. Alternate translation: “of the people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

take note and see

“Take note” here is an idiom to observe carefully. Alternate translation: “pay close attention to” (See: [Idiom](#))

I have not refused him

This can be expressed positively. Alternate translation: “I have agreed to his demands” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- Israel
- and for my silver
- and for my gold
- And...called
- the elders of
- the land
- know
- is seeking
- evil
- he has sent
- and for my sons

Translation Words - UST

- King Ahab
- summoned
- my silver
- and my gold
- the leaders
- the leaders
- of Israel, and
- cause
- much
- trouble
- He sent me a message insisting
- and my children

ULT

⁷ And the king of Israel called to all the elders of the land. And he said, “Please know and see that this one is seeking evil, for he has sent to me for my wives and for my sons and for my silver and for my gold, and I have not withheld from him.”

UST

⁷ King Ahab summoned all the leaders of Israel, and said to them, “You can see for yourselves that this man is trying to cause much trouble. He sent me a message insisting that I must give him my wives and my children, my silver and my gold, and I agreed to do that.”

1 Kings 20:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the elders
- the people

Translation Words - UST

- The leaders and
- the other people

ULT

⁸ And all the elders and all the people said to him, "Do not listen and do not consent."

UST

⁸ The leaders and all the other people said to him, "Do not pay any attention to him! Do not do what he is requesting!"

1 Kings 20:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- to the messengers of
- the messengers
- to my master
- the king
- you sent
- your servant
- and returned him

Translation Words - UST

- messengers
- So the messengers...they returned
- Tell the king that
- but I
- officials to take anything
- that they want from my palace and from the houses of my officials
- So the messengers...they returned

ULT

⁹ And he said to the messengers of Ben Hadad, "Say to my master the king, 'All that you sent to your servant at the first I will do, but this thing I am not able to do.'" And the messengers went and returned him word.

UST

⁹ So Ahab said to Ben Hadad's messengers, "Tell the king that I agree to give him the things that he first requested, but I do not agree to allow his officials to take anything that they want from my palace and from the houses of my officials." So the messengers reported that to King Ben Hadad, and they returned with another message from Ben Hadad.

1 Kings 20:10

May the gods do so to me and more also

This is an oath with great emphasis. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 19:2](#).

if even the ashes of Samaria will be enough for all the people who follow me to have a handful each

Ben Hadad is threatening that his army will totally destroy everything in Samaria. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...sent](#)
- [gods](#)
- [Samaria](#)
- [the people](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that message](#)
- [your city](#)
- [for each of my soldiers](#)
- [gods will strike me dead](#)

ULT

¹⁰ And Ben Hadad [sent](#) to him and he said, "Thus may [gods](#) do to me and thus may they add, if the dust of [Samaria](#) will be sufficient for handfuls for all [the people](#) who will be at my feet!"

UST

¹⁰ In [that message](#) he said, "We will destroy [your city](#) completely, with the result that there will not be enough ashes left [for each of my soldiers](#) to have one handful! I hope that the [gods will strike me dead](#) if we do not do that!"

1 Kings 20:11

Tell Ben Hadad, 'No one who is just putting on his armor ... as if he were taking it off.'

This is an expression to give advice. "Putting on armor" is metonymy for getting prepared for battle. "Tell Ben Hadad, 'Do not boast as if you have already won a battle that you have not yet fought.'" (See: [Proverbs](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [one about to gird](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [King Ahab](#)
- [King Ben Hadad](#)
- [before he fights it](#)

ULT

¹¹ And [the king of Israel](#) answered and said, "Speak, '[one about to gird](#) should not boast like one who is ungirding.'"

UST

¹¹ [King Ahab](#) replied to the messengers, "Tell [King Ben Hadad](#) this: No one wins a battle [before he fights it](#), so do not boast before you should."

1 Kings 20:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- and the kings
- his servants

Translation Words - UST

- his men
- his men

ULT

¹² And it happened at the hearing of this word as he was drinking, he and the kings in the huts, that he said to his servants, "Set up," and they set up against the city.

UST

¹² Ben Hadad heard that message while he and the other rulers were drinking wine in their temporary shelters. He told his men to prepare to attack the city. So his men did that.

1 Kings 20:13

Then behold

The word “behold” alerts us to the sudden appearance of a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

Have you seen this great army?

Yahweh asks this question to emphasize the size and strength of Ben Hadad's army. Alternate translation: “Look at this great army.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Look, I will place it into your hand today

The word “Look” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

place it into your hand

Here the word “hand” refers to power. Alternate translation: “give you victory over that army” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet
- Ahab
- the king of
- Israel
- Yahweh
- am Yahweh
- into your hand
- and you shall know

Translation Words - UST

- At that moment, a prophet...to
- King
- King
- Ahab
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- know that it is I
- who has done it

ULT

¹³ And behold, one prophet came near to Ahab the king of Israel and he said, “Thus says Yahweh, ‘Have you seen all of this great crowd? Behold, I am about to give it into your hand today, and you shall know that I am Yahweh.’”

UST

¹³ At that moment, a prophet came to King Ahab and said to him, “This is what Yahweh says: ‘Do not be at all afraid of the large enemy army that you see! I will enable your army to defeat them today, and you will know that it is I, Yahweh, who has done it.’”

1 Kings 20:14

By whom?

Ahab leaves out the words 'will you do this' Alternate translation: "By whom will you do this?" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Ahab
- Yahweh
- by the young men of
- the commanders of
- the provinces
- will tie up

Translation Words - UST

- Ahab asked...group of our army will defeat them
- The young soldiers whom
- The young soldiers whom
- the district
- governors command will do it
- lead

ULT

¹⁴ And [Ahab](#) said, "By whom?" And he said, "Thus says [Yahweh](#), [by the young men of the commanders of the provinces](#)." And he said, "Who [will tie up](#) the battle?" And he said, "You."

UST

¹⁴ [Ahab](#) asked, "What [group of our army will defeat them](#)?" The prophet replied, "[The young soldiers whom the district governors command will do it](#)." The king asked, "Who should [lead](#) the attack?" The prophet replied, "You should!"

1 Kings 20:15

Ahab mustered the young officers

Alternate translation: "Ahab assembled the young officers"

all the soldiers, all the army of Israel

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

seven thousand

"7,000" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the young men of
- the commanders of
- the provinces
- the people
- the sons of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- So Ahab gathered the young soldiers
- So Ahab gathered the young soldiers
- the district governors
- There were...of those men
- the Israelite army
- the Israelite army

ULT

¹⁵ And he mustered the young men of the commanders of the provinces, and they were 232. And after them he mustered all the people, all the sons of Israel were 7,000.

UST

¹⁵ So Ahab gathered the young soldiers who were commanded by the district governors. There were 232 of those men. Then he also summoned all the Israelite army. There were only seven thousand soldiers.

1 Kings 20:16

They went out

Here the word "They" refers to the Israelite army.

thirty-two lesser kings

See how you translated this in [1 Kings 20:1](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [drunk](#)
- [and the kings](#)
- [kings](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and the other rulers](#)
- [and the other rulers](#)
- [getting drunk](#)

ULT

16 And they went out at the midday. And Ben Hadad was drinking [drunk](#) in the huts, he [and the kings](#), 32 [kings](#) who helped him.

UST

16 They started to attack at noon, while Ben Hadad [and the other rulers](#) were [getting drunk](#) in their temporary shelters.

1 Kings 20:17

Ben Hadad was informed by scouts that he had sent out

This can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: "Scouts that Ben Hadad had sent out informed him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

scouts

A "scout" is a soldier sent to gather information about the enemy.

Translation Words - ULT

- the young men of
- the commanders of
- the provinces
- And...sent
- and they told
- from Samaria

Translation Words - UST

- The young soldiers advanced
- The young soldiers advanced
- The young soldiers advanced
- Some scouts who had been sent out by
- reported to him
- Samaria

ULT

¹⁷ And the young men of the commanders of the provinces went out at the first. And Ben Hadad sent and they told him, saying, "Men have gone out from Samaria."

UST

¹⁷ The young soldiers advanced first. Some scouts who had been sent out by Ben Hadad reported to him, "There are men coming out of Samaria!"

1 Kings 20:18

Ben Hadad said

It is understood that Ben Hadad is speaking to his soldiers. Alternate translation: "Ben Hadad said to his soldiers" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Whether they have ... take them

Here "they" and "them" refer to the Israelite army.

Translation Words - ULT

- for peace
- seize them
- seize them
- alive
- alive

Translation Words - UST

- It does not matter...they are coming
- Capture them
- It does not matter...they are coming
- but do not kill them
- or to request for peace

ULT

18 And he said, "If they have gone out for peace, seize them alive, and if they have gone out for war, alive seize them."

UST

18 He said, "It does not matter whether they are coming to fight against us or to request for peace. Capture them, but do not kill them!"

1 Kings 20:19

So the young officers ... the army followed

Alternate translation: "The young Israelite officers ... the Israelite army followed"

Translation Words - ULT

- the young men of
- the commanders of
- the provinces
- and the strength

Translation Words - UST

- The young Israelite soldiers
- army
- and the other soldiers
- and the other soldiers

ULT

¹⁹ And these went out from the city, the young men of the commanders of the provinces and the strength that was behind them.

UST

¹⁹ The young Israelite soldiers went out of the city to attack the Aramean army, and the other soldiers in the Israelite army followed them.

1 Kings 20:20

Israel pursued them

“Israel” is synecdoche for all the soldiers of the nation of Israel.
 Alternate translation: “the men of the army of Israel pursued them”
 (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Aram](#)
- [Aram](#) (2)
- [Israel](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [a horse](#)
- [with horsemen](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Aramean soldier](#)
- [But King](#) (2)
- [and the Israelite soldiers](#)
- [But King](#)
- [riding horses](#)
- [riding horses](#)

ULT

²⁰ But they struck down, a man his man.
 And [Aram](#) fled and [Israel](#) pursued them.
 And Ben Hadad [the king of Aram](#)
 slipped away on [a horse with](#)
[horsemen](#).

UST

²⁰ Each Israelite soldier killed an
[Aramean soldier](#). The rest of the
 Aramean army then ran away, [and the](#)
[Israelite soldiers](#) pursued them. [But](#)
[King](#) Ben Hadad escaped riding his
 horse, along with some other men
[riding horses](#).

1 Kings 20:21

the king of Israel went out and attacked

“The king” is synecdoche for the king and all the soldiers serving under him. Alternate translation: “The king of Israel and his soldiers went out and attacked” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- Israel
- the horse
- the chariot
- Aram

Translation Words - UST

- Then the king of
- Israel
- all the other Aramean horses
- and chariots
- Aramean soldiers

ULT

²¹ And [the king of Israel](#) went out and he struck down [the horse](#) and [the chariot](#). And he struck [Aram](#) a great blow.

UST

²¹ Then [the king of Israel](#) went out of the city; he and his soldiers captured [all the other Aramean horses and chariots](#), and also killed a large number of [Aramean soldiers](#).

1 Kings 20:22

strengthen yourself

"Yourself" represents by metonymy the army of the king. Alternate translation: "strengthen your forces" (See: [Metonymy](#))

understand and plan

These two words mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. Alternate translation: "determine" (See: [Doublet](#))

at the return of the year

This could mean: (1) "in the springtime of next year" or (2) "at this time next year."

Translation Words - ULT

- the prophet
- the king of
- the king of
- Israel
- strengthen yourself
- and know
- the year
- Aram

Translation Words - UST

- prophet
- King Ahab and
- and think carefully
- about what will be necessary
- the king of
- his
- Aram will attack with
- year

ULT

²² And the prophet came near to the king of Israel and he said to him, "Go, strengthen yourself, and know and see what you should do, because at the return of the year the king of Aram will be coming up against you."

UST

²² Then that same prophet went to King Ahab and said to him, "Go back and prepare your soldiers, and think carefully about what will be necessary for you to do, because the king of Aram will attack with his army again in the springtime of next year."

1 Kings 20:23

let us fight ... we will be stronger

The words “us” and “we” refer to the servants, the king, and the army all together. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And the servants of
- the king of
- Aram
- are gods of
- Their gods
- they were stronger
- we will be stronger

Translation Words - UST

- After the Aramean army was defeated, Ben Hadad's officials
- After the Aramean army was defeated, Ben Hadad's officials
- After the Aramean army was defeated, Ben Hadad's officials
- The gods that the Israelites worship are
- gods who live in the hills
- able to defeat
- if we fight against them

ULT

23 And the servants of the king of Aram said to him, “Their gods are gods of the mountains. Therefore they were stronger than us. But indeed let us fight them in the plain, surely we will be stronger than them.

UST

23 After the Aramean army was defeated, Ben Hadad's officials said to him, “The gods that the Israelites worship are gods who live in the hills. Samaria is built on a hill, and that is why their soldiers were able to defeat us. But if we fight against them in the plains, we certainly will be able to defeat them.

1 Kings 20:24

Remove all the kings from their positions of authority

Alternate translation: "You must remove the thirty-two kings who are leading your troops"

Translation Words - ULT

- the kings
- governors

Translation Words - UST

- kings who are leading your troops
- with army commanders

ULT

²⁴ And do this thing: remove the kings, a man from his place, and set governors in their places.

UST

²⁴ So, this is what you should do: You must remove the thirty-two kings who are leading your troops and replace them with army commanders.

1 Kings 20:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- should assign
- strength
- like the strength
- will we be stronger
- and a horse
- like the horse
- and a chariot
- like the chariot
- to their voice

Translation Words - UST

- Then
- the army that was defeated
- an army that has as
- defeat them
- Gather
- many horses and
- many horses and
- chariots as the first army had
- chariots as the first army had

ULT

²⁵ And you **should assign** for yourself **strength like the strength** that fell from you, **and a horse like the horse and a chariot like the chariot**, and we will fight them in the plain. Surely **will we be stronger** than them." And he listened **to their voice** and did so.

UST

²⁵ **Then** gather an army like **the army that was defeated**. **Gather an army that has as many horses and chariots as the first army had**. Then we will fight the Israelites in the plains, and we will surely **defeat them**." Ben Hadad agreed with them, and he did what they suggested.

1 Kings 20:26

Aphek

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

to fight against Israel

“Israel” represents the army of Israel. Alternate translation: “to fight against the army of Israel” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the year](#)
- [Aram](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [In the spring of the following year](#)
- [and marched](#)
- [the Israelite army](#)

ULT

²⁶ And it happened at the return of [the year](#), that Ben Hadad mustered [Aram](#). And he went up to Aphek for the battle with [Israel](#).

UST

²⁶ [In the spring of the following year](#), he gathered his soldiers [and marched](#) with them to the city of Aphek east of the Sea of Galilee, to fight against [the Israelite army](#).

1 Kings 20:27

The people of Israel were mustered and supplied

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The Israelite army also gathered together, and the commanders gave the arms that they needed for the battle" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

like two little flocks of goats

This simile compares the Israelite army to two little flocks of goats. Alternate translation: "The Israelite army appeared to be small and weak like two flocks of goats" (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [and Aram](#)
- [the land](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The Israelite army](#)
- [Their army was very small](#)
- [The Israelite army](#)
- [Their army was very small](#)
- [the Aramean army](#)
- [all over the countryside](#)

ULT

²⁷ [And the sons of Israel](#) had been mustered and were sustained and they went to meet them. And [the sons of Israel](#) camped in front of them were like two little flocks of goats, [and Aram](#) filled [the land](#).

UST

²⁷ [The Israelite army](#) was also gathered together, and they were given the things that they needed for the battle. Then they marched out and formed two groups facing the Aramean army. [Their army was very small](#). They resembled two small flocks of goats, whereas [the Aramean army](#) was very large and spread [all over the countryside](#).

1 Kings 20:28

a man of God

This is another title for a prophet. Alternate translation: “a prophet”

place this great army into your hand

Here the word “hand” refers to power. Alternate translation: “give you victory over this great army” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- the king of
- Israel
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- am Yahweh
- Aram
- is a god of
- is...a god of
- into your hand
- and you shall know

Translation Words - UST

- A prophet
- to King Ahab
- done it
- to King Ahab
- and you will
- is what Yahweh
- I, Yahweh, have
- Arameans
- that I am a god
- god
- know that

ULT

28 And a man of [God](#) came near and said to [the king of Israel](#), and he said, “Thus says [Yahweh](#), ‘Because [Aram](#) said “[Yahweh is a god of](#) mountains, but he is not [a god of](#) valleys,” I shall give all of this great crowd [into your hand, and you shall know](#) that I am Yahweh.”

UST

28 [A prophet](#) came [to King Ahab](#) and said to him, “This [is what Yahweh](#) says: ‘The [Arameans](#) say [that I am a god](#) who lives in the hills, and that I am not a [god](#) who lives in the valleys. So I will show that they are wrong by enabling your men to defeat this huge army in the valley, [and you will know that I, Yahweh, have done it.](#)”

1 Kings 20:29

seven days

"7 days" (See: [Numbers](#))

100,000

"one hundred thousand" (See: [Numbers](#))

footmen

A "footman" is a soldier who marches on foot.

Translation Words - ULT

- [days](#)
- [on the...day](#)
- [in...day](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Aram](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [days](#)
- [Then, on the](#)
- [day](#)
- [each other](#)
- [they...The Israelite army](#)
- [Aramean](#)

ULT

²⁹ And they camped, these opposite these, seven [days](#). And it happened [on the](#) seventh [day](#) that the battle approached, and [the sons of Israel](#) struck down [Aram](#), 100,000 on foot in one [day](#).

UST

²⁹ The two armies stayed in their tents for seven [days](#), in groups that faced [each other](#). [Then, on the](#) seventh [day](#), [they](#) started fighting. [The Israelite army](#) killed 100,000 [Aramean](#) soldiers.

1 Kings 20:30

The rest fled to Aphek

The expression “the rest” assumes the words “of the Aramean soldiers.” Alternate translation: “The rest of the Aramean soldiers” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Aphek

This is the name of a town. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twenty-seven thousand

“27,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the ones who were left](#)
- [the ones who were left](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The other Aramean soldiers](#)
- [more](#)

ULT

³⁰ And [the ones who were left](#) fled to Aphek, into the city, and the wall fell on 127,000 men, [the ones who were left](#). And Ben Hadad fled and entered into the city, a room in a room.

UST

³⁰ [The other Aramean soldiers](#) ran away into Aphek. Then the wall of the city collapsed and killed twenty-seven thousand [more](#) Aramean soldiers. Ben Hadad also escaped into the city and hid in the back room of a house.

1 Kings 20:31

Look now

This emphasizes what they will say. Alternate translation: “Listen” or “Pay attention to what we are about to tell you”

put sackcloth around our waists and ropes around our heads

This was a sign of surrender.

Translation Words - ULT

- his servants
- the kings of
- are kings of
- the king of
- he may let...live
- your life
- the house of
- Israel
- Israel (2)
- mercy
- sackcloth
- around our loins
- on our heads

Translation Words - UST

- His
- his slaves...will...you to remain
- the king of Israel
- officials went
- waists
- heads
- alive
- allow
- Israelites...wearing...around our...and...on our
- Israelites...wearing...around our...and...on our
- the king of Israel (2)
- act mercifully
- course sacks

ULT

³¹ And his servants said to him, “Behold, please, we have heard that the kings of the house of Israel, that they are kings of mercy. Please let us put sackcloth around our loins and ropes on our heads, and we will go out to the king of Israel. Perhaps he may let your life live.”

UST

³¹ His officials went to him and said, “We have heard a report that the Israelites act mercifully. So allow us to go to the king of Israel, wearing course sacks around our waists and ropes on our heads to indicate that we will be his slaves. Perhaps if we do that, he will allow you to remain alive.”

1 Kings 20:32

Is he still alive?

Ahab asks this question to express surprise. Alternate translation: "I am surprised that he is still alive!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

He is my brother

"My brother" here is a metaphor for somebody who is a good friend. Alternate translation: "He is like a brother to me" or "He is like family" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And they girded on
- sackcloth
- is my brother
- around their waists
- on their heads
- the king of
- Israel
- Your servant
- let...live
- my life
- alive

Translation Words - UST

- The king permitted them to do that, so they
- wrapped
- coarse sacks
- around their waists and put
- on their heads, and
- the king of
- Israel
- alive
- Please do not kill me
- to me
- He is like a brother

ULT

³² And they girded on sackcloth around their waists and ropes on their heads and they came to the king of Israel. And they said, "Your servant Ben Hadad says, 'Please let my life live.'" And he said, "Is he still alive? He is my brother."

UST

³² The king permitted them to do that, so they wrapped coarse sacks around their waists and put ropes on their heads, and they went to the king of Israel and said to him, "Ben Hadad, who greatly respects you, says, 'Please do not kill me.'" Ahab replied, "Is he still alive? He is like a brother to me!"

1 Kings 20:33

Now the men

The word “Now” does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

for any sign from Ahab

“Sign” is metonymy for an action that gives a meaning. Alternate translation: “for any action from Ahab that would show them that Ahab wanted to be merciful” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Your brother](#)
- [the chariot](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother,” they were](#)
- [the chariot and sit with him](#)

ULT

³³ And the men sought an omen and they hurried and accepted whether it was from him. And they said, “[Your brother](#) is Ben Hadad.” And he said, “Come, bring him!” And Ben Hadad went out to him, and he brought him up on [the chariot](#).

UST

³³ Ben Hadad’s officials were trying to find out if Ahab would act mercifully, and when Ahab said “[brother,” they were](#) optimistic. So they replied, “Yes, he is like your brother!” Ahab said, “Go and bring him to me.” So they went and brought Ben Hadad to him. When Ben Hadad arrived, Ahab told him to get in [the chariot and sit with him](#).

1 Kings 20:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- I will return
- my father
- your father
- my father
- in Damascus
- in Samaria
- by the covenant
- a covenant
- I will send you away
- and he sent him away

Translation Words - UST

- my father's
- your father
- capital, just as my father
- And I will allow
- in Damascus
- did in Samaria your capital
- that, I will not execute you...an agreement with Ben Hadad
- Ahab replied, "Because you agree to do
- that, I will not execute you...an agreement with Ben Hadad
- to go home

ULT

³⁴ And he said to him, "I will return the cities that my father took from with your father, and the outside you may set up for yourself in Damascus, just as my father set up in Samaria. As for me, by the covenant, I will send you away." And he cut a covenant for him and he sent him away.

UST

³⁴ Ben Hadad said to him, "I will give back to you the towns that my father's army took from your father. And I will allow you to set up market areas for your merchants in Damascus my capital, just as my father did in Samaria your capital." Ahab replied, "Because you agree to do that, I will not execute you." So Ahab made an agreement with Ben Hadad, and allowed him to go home.

1 Kings 20:35

one of the sons of the prophets

Alternate translation: "a member of the group of prophets"

the word of Yahweh

Alternate translation: "the message of Yahweh" or "Yahweh's message"

Translation Words - ULT

- from the sons of
- the prophets
- his neighbor
- By the word of Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Then Yahweh spoke to
- a member
- of an association
- of prophets

ULT

³⁵ And one man from the sons of the prophets said to his neighbor, "By the word of Yahweh, please strike me." But the man refused to strike him.

UST

³⁵ Then Yahweh spoke to a member of an association of prophets and told him to request a fellow prophet to strike him. But that man refused to do it.

1 Kings 20:36

you have not obeyed the voice of Yahweh

"The voice" is metonymy for what Yahweh commanded. Alternate translation: "you have not obeyed Yahweh" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to the voice of
- Yahweh
- the lion
- the lion

Translation Words - UST

- Because you...Yahweh
- Because you...Yahweh
- a lion
- And as soon as he left that prophet, a lion

ULT

³⁶ And he said to him, "Because you did not listen [to the voice of Yahweh](#), behold, you are about to go from with me, and [the lion](#) will strike you down." And he went from beside him and [the lion](#) found him and struck him down.

UST

³⁶ So the prophet said to him, "[Because you](#) refused to obey what [Yahweh](#) told you to do, [a lion](#) will kill you as soon as you leave me." [And as soon as he left that prophet, a lion](#) suddenly met him and killed him.

1 Kings 20:37

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

³⁷ And he found one man and said, "Please strike me." And the man struck him, striking and wounding.

UST

³⁷ Then the prophet found another prophet, and said to him, "Strike me!" So that man hit him very hard and injured him.

1 Kings 20:38

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the prophet
- for the king

Translation Words - UST

- Then the prophet
- his

ULT

³⁸ And the prophet went and he stood for the king on the road. And he made himself unrecognizable with the covering over his eyes.

UST

³⁸ Then the prophet put a large bandage over his face so that no one would recognize him. Then he went and stood alongside the road, waiting for the king to come by.

1 Kings 20:39

Your servant went out

The prophet refers to himself in the third person as a sign of respect to the king.

into the heat of the battle

“Heat of the battle” here is an idiom to express the most intense and fierce fighting. Alternate translation: “to where the battle was most intense” (See: [Idiom](#))

your life will be given for his life

Alternate translation: “you will die in his place”

a talent of silver

A talent is a unit of weight equal to about 33 kilograms. Alternate translation: “33 kilograms of silver” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the king
- he...cried out
- Your servant
- turned aside
- Keep
- your life
- his life
- silver

Translation Words - UST

- Your Majesty, after
- When the king
- you will be executed
- the
- prophet
- cried out
- I
- of silver
- do not pay that

ULT

³⁹ And it happened that [the king](#) was passing by and [he](#) himself [cried out](#) to [the king](#). And he said, “[Your servant](#) went out in the middle of the battle, and behold, a man [turned aside](#) and he brought a man to me. And he said, ‘[Keep](#) this man. If he is missing at all, then [your life](#) will be in place of [his life](#) or you must weigh a kikkar of [silver](#).’”

UST

³⁹ [When the king](#) passed by, [the prophet](#) [cried out](#) to him, saying “[Your Majesty](#), [after I](#) was wounded while I was fighting in a battle, a soldier brought to me one of our enemies who he had captured, and said to me, ‘Guard this man! If he escapes, you must pay me thirty-three kilograms [of silver](#); if you [do not pay that](#), [you will be executed](#)!’”

1 Kings 20:40

going here and there

This is an idiom to represent being very busy and preoccupied.
Alternate translation: "doing other things" or "doing this and that"
(See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [your servant](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [is your judgment](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [But while I](#)
- [The king of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [You yourself have said that...be](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ And it happened that [your servant](#) was doing here and there, and he was not there." And [the king of Israel](#) said to him, "Thus [is your judgment](#), you yourself have decided."

UST

⁴⁰ [But while I](#) was busy doing other things, the man escaped!" [The king of Israel](#) said to him, "That is your problem! [You yourself have said that](#) you deserve to [be](#) punished."

1 Kings 20:41

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- Israel
- was from the prophets

Translation Words - UST

- and the king
- Israel
- was one of the prophets

ULT

⁴¹ And he hurried and removed the covering from over his eyes. And **the king of Israel** recognized him, that he **was from the prophets**.

UST

⁴¹ The prophet immediately took off the bandage, **and the king of Israel** recognized that he **was one of the prophets**.

1 Kings 20:42

let go from your hand

Here the word "hand" is metonymy for power. Alternate translation: "released" or "spared the life of" (See: [Metonymy](#))

your life will take the place of his life, and your people for his people

Alternate translation: "you will die in his place, and your people will die in the place of his people"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- you have sent away
- complete destruction
- from hand
- your life
- his life
- and your people
- his people

Translation Words - UST

- to escape
- The
- is what Yahweh
- You have allowed
- I commanded you to be sure to execute him
- his army
- And your army will be destroyed
- because you allowed some of

ULT

⁴² And he said to him, "Thus says Yahweh, 'Because you have sent away a man of complete destruction from hand. And it will be your life in place of his life, and your people in place of his people.'"

UST

⁴² The prophet said to him, "This is what Yahweh says: 'You have allowed that man Ben Hadad to escape after I commanded you to be sure to execute him! Since you did not do that, you will be killed instead. And your army will be destroyed because you allowed some of his army to escape!'"

1 Kings 20:43

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- Israel
- his house
- to Samaria

Translation Words - UST

- The king
- The king
- home to
- Samaria

ULT

⁴³ And the king of Israel went to his house sullen and vexed, and he came to Samaria.

UST

⁴³ The king went back home to Samaria, very angry and depressed.

1 Kings 21

1 Kings 21 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of Elijah continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

God hates oppression but is forgiving to people who are sorry for their sins. Ahab wanted Naboth's vineyard to make into a garden for his palace, but Naboth refused to sell it. So the queen, Ahab's wife, told the civic leaders of Naboth's town to falsely accuse him and execute him. Elijah told Ahab that he would be killed in Naboth's vineyard and all his family destroyed. Ahab repented and showed he was very sorry for what he did, so God said it would not happen to Ahab himself but to his son. (See: [oppress](#), [oppressed](#), [oppression](#), [oppressor](#), [dominate](#), [forgive](#), [forgiven](#), [forgiveness](#), [pardon](#), [pardoned](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [repent](#), [repentance](#))

1 Kings 21:1

Now some time later

This phrase marks the beginning of a new part of the story and indicates that these events happened later, not that Naboth owned the vineyard later. If your language has a way marking the beginning of a new part of a story, you could consider using it here. Alternate translation: "Now this is what happened later" (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

Naboth the Jezreelite

This is the name of a man from Jezreel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

king of Samaria

"Samaria" was the capital city of the kingdom of Israel and here represents the entire nation. Alternate translation: "king of Israel" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a vineyard
- the Jezreelite
- was in Jezreel
- the palace of
- Ahab
- the king of
- Samaria

Translation Words - UST

- King
- King
- Ahab
- a palace
- owned by a man named Naboth
- in the city of Jezreel
- a vineyard

ULT

¹ Now it happened after these things that there was a vineyard of Naboth the Jezreelite, which was in Jezreel, beside the palace of Ahab the king of Samaria.

UST

¹ King Ahab had a palace in the city of Jezreel. Near the palace was a vineyard owned by a man named Naboth.

1 Kings 21:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Ahab
- your vineyard
- a...vineyard
- my house
- better
- it is good (2)
- silver

Translation Words - UST

- One day, Ahab went
- vineyard
- your vineyard
- to my palace. I would like to buy it
- your vineyard
- somewhere else, or if you prefer (2)
- I will pay you for

ULT

² And Ahab spoke to Naboth, saying, "Give to me **your vineyard**, and it will be for me as a garden of herbage, because it is near beside **my house**. And let me give to you in its place a **better vineyard** than it. If **it is good** in your eyes, let me give to you **silver** of the price of this one."

UST

² One day, Ahab went to Naboth and said to him, "Your **vineyard** is close to **my palace**. I would like to buy it, so that I can plant some vegetables there. I will give you in exchange a better vineyard **somewhere else, or if you prefer, I will pay you for your vineyard.**"

1 Kings 21:3

May Yahweh forbid that I should give

This phrase is an oath that emphasizes that what follows will not happen. Alternate translation: "Because Yahweh forbids it, I will never give" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

give the inheritance of my ancestors to you

The land that his ancestors received as a permanent possession is spoken of as if it were an inheritance. Alternate translation: "give to you the land that my ancestors received as an inheritance" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ahab](#)
- [from Yahweh](#)
- [the inheritance of](#)
- [my fathers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [That land belonged to my](#)
- [ancestors...I want to keep it...you](#)
- [ancestors...I want to keep it...you](#)
- [I hope that Yahweh will never allow me](#)

ULT

³ And Naboth said to [Ahab](#), "Far be it for me [from Yahweh](#), from my giving [the inheritance of my fathers](#) to you."

UST

³ But Naboth replied, "[That land belonged to my ancestors](#), so [I want to keep it](#). [I hope that Yahweh will never allow me](#) to give that land to [you](#)!"

1 Kings 21:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Ahab
- his house
- the Jezreelite
- the inheritance of
- my fathers
- his face
- bread

Translation Words - UST

- Ahab became...and
- Naboth
- He went home and
- He turned his face toward
- the wall, and he refused
- the wall, and he refused
- eat anything

ULT

⁴ And Ahab entered into his house sullen and vexed on account of the word that Naboth the Jezreelite had spoken to him. And he said, "I will not give to you the inheritance of my fathers." And he lay down on his bed, and he turned away his face and he did not eat bread.

UST

⁴ So Ahab became very sullen and angry because of what Naboth had said. He went home and lay down on his bed. He turned his face toward the wall, and he refused to eat anything.

1 Kings 21:5

Why is your heart so sad

Here “heart” refers to the entire person and his emotions. Alternate translation: “Why are you so sad” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jezebel
- Your spirit
- bread

Translation Words - UST

- His wife Jezebel came in
- and asked him...Why are
- Why are you refusing to eat anything

ULT

⁵ And [Jezebel](#) his wife came to him and she spoke to him, “What is this? [Your spirit](#) is sullen and you are not eating [bread](#)?”

UST

⁵ His wife Jezebel came in and asked him, “[Why are](#) you so depressed? [Why are you refusing to eat anything](#)?”

1 Kings 21:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Jezreelite
- your vineyard
- a vineyard
- my vineyard
- for silver

Translation Words - UST

- Naboth
- his vineyard
- vineyard
- you another
- buy

ULT

⁶ And he spoke to her, "Because I spoke to Naboth the Jezreelite and I said to him, 'Give your vineyard to me for silver, or if you are desiring, let me give a vineyard to you in its place.' And he said, 'I will not give my vineyard to you.'"

UST

⁶ Ahab replied, "I talked to Naboth, that man from Jezreel. I told him that I wanted his vineyard. I said, 'I will buy it from you, or I will give you another vineyard for it.' But he refused to let me have it."

1 Kings 21:7

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?

Jezebel uses this negative rhetorical question to rebuke Ahab. It can be translated as a positive statement. Alternate translation: “You still rule the kingdom of Israel!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

let your heart be happy

Here “heart” refers to the entire person and his emotions. Alternate translation: “be happy” or “cheer up” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jezebel
- Israel
- bread
- your heart
- the vineyard of

Translation Words - UST

- His wife replied
- of Israel
- want
- some food and
- vineyard for you

ULT

⁷ And Jezebel his wife said to him, “You now, you do the kingship over Israel. Get up! Eat bread and let your heart be good! I myself will give to you the vineyard of Naboth the Jezreelite.”

UST

⁷ His wife replied, “You are the king of Israel, so you can get whatever you want! Get up, and eat some food and do not worry about what Naboth said. I will get Naboth’s vineyard for you.”

1 Kings 21:8

wrote letters in Ahab's name

This could mean: (1) she wrote Ahab's name on the letters. Alternate translation: "wrote letters and signed them with Ahab's name" or (2) the word "name" is a metonym for authority. Alternate translation: "wrote letters on behalf of Ahab" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the wealthy who sat with him

The word "wealthy" refers to wealthy people. Alternate translation: "the wealthy people who sat with Naboth" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- letters
- the letters
- in the name of
- Ahab
- and she sealed them
- with his seal
- And she sent
- the elders
- the nobles

Translation Words - UST

- Jezebel wrote some letters
- and other important men
- and she signed
- She used...seal
- Then...Ahab's
- name on them
- his official
- Then she sent them
- older leaders

ULT

⁸ And she wrote [letters in the name of Ahab](#), and she sealed them with his seal. And she sent the letters to the [elders](#) and to the [nobles](#) who were in his city, the ones who dwelled near Naboth.

UST

⁸ Then [Jezebel wrote some letters](#), and she signed [Ahab's name on them](#). She used his official seal to seal them. Then she sent them to the [older leaders and other important men](#) who lived near Naboth and who decided public matters with him.

1 Kings 21:9

seat Naboth above the people

Having Naboth sit in a place of honor is spoken of as if it were having him sit above the rest of the people who were present. Alternate translation: "have Naboth sit in a place of honor among the people" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in the letters](#)
- [Call](#)
- [a fast](#)
- [at the head](#)
- [the people](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [This is what she wrote in the letters](#)
- [Proclaim a day when](#)
- [all the people will gather together](#)
- [and fast](#)
- [Give to](#)

ULT

⁹ And she wrote [in the letters](#), saying, "[Call a fast](#) and seat Naboth [at the head the people](#)."

UST

⁹ [This is what she wrote in the letters](#): "[Proclaim a day when all the people will gather together and fast](#). [Give to](#) Naboth an important place to sit among them."

1 Kings 21:10

let them testify against him

Alternate translation: "have them accuse him"

Translation Words - ULT

- and let them witness against him
- You cursed
- God
- and the king
- and stone him
- and let him die

Translation Words - UST

- Tell these men to...that
- testify
- God
- and the king
- and kill him
- by throwing stones at him

ULT

¹⁰ And seat two men, sons of worthlessness, in front of him and let them witness against him, saying, 'You cursed God and the king.' And take him out and stone him and let him die."

UST

¹⁰ Then find two men who always cause trouble. Give them places to sit opposite him. Tell these men to testify that they heard Naboth say things that criticized God and the king. Then take Naboth out of the city and kill him by throwing stones at him."

1 Kings 21:11

the wealthy who lived in Naboth's city

The word “wealthy” refers to wealthy people. Alternate translation: “the wealthy people who lived in Naboth's city” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

as was written in the letters

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “as she had written in the letters” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the elders
- and the nobles
- Jezebel
- had sent
- she had sent
- in the letters

Translation Words - UST

- leaders
- received the letters and
- what Jezebel had written in the
- what Jezebel had written in the
- what Jezebel had written in the
- what Jezebel had written in the

ULT

11 And the men of his city, [the elders and the nobles](#), who were the ones dwelling in his city, did just as [Jezebel had sent](#) to them, just as was written [in the letters](#) that [she had sent](#) to them.

UST

11 The [leaders received the letters and](#) did [what Jezebel had written in the](#) letters for them to do.

1 Kings 21:12

seated Naboth above the people

Having Naboth sit in a place of honor is spoken of as if it were having him sit above the rest of the people who were present. See how you translated this idea in [1 Kings 21:9](#). Alternate translation: “had Naboth sit in a place of honor among the people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [They called](#)
- [a fast](#)
- [at the head of](#)
- [the people](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [They declared](#)
- [a day on which the people would all go without food](#)
- [And they gave Naboth](#)
- [in front of the people](#)

ULT

¹² [They called a fast](#) and they seated Naboth [at the head of the people](#).

UST

¹² [They declared a day on which the people would all go without food. And they gave Naboth](#) a seat in a place where honored people sat, [in front of the people](#).

1 Kings 21:13

sat before Naboth

Alternate translation: "sat in front of Naboth"

they carried him out

Here the word "they" refers to the people of the city.

Translation Words - ULT

- and...witnessed against
- the people
- cursed
- God
- and the king
- and they stoned him
- and he died

Translation Words - UST

- stated that they had heard
- God
- and the king
- the people
- seized Naboth
- and killed him
- by throwing stones at him

ULT

13 And the two men, the sons of worthlessness, came and they sat in front of him, and the men of worthlessness **witnessed against** Naboth in front of **the people**, saying, "Naboth **cursed God and the king.**" And they brought him to the outside of the city **and they stoned him** with the stones **and he died.**

UST

13 Two men who always caused trouble sat opposite Naboth. While everyone was listening, they **stated that they had heard** Naboth say things that criticized **God and the king.** So **the people seized Naboth.** They took him outside the city **and killed him by throwing stones at him.**

1 Kings 21:14

Naboth has been stoned and is dead

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "We have stoned Naboth and he is dead" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And they sent
- Jezebel
- has been stoned
- and he has died

Translation Words - UST

- Then those leaders sent a message
- Jezebel
- executed
- Naboth

ULT

¹⁴ And they sent to Jezebel, saying, "Naboth has been stoned and he has died."

UST

¹⁴ Then those leaders sent a message to Jezebel, saying, "We have executed Naboth."

1 Kings 21:15

that Naboth had been stoned and was dead

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "that the people had stoned Naboth and he was dead" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Naboth is not alive, but dead.

These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize Jezebel's statement. Alternate translation: "Naboth is dead!" (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jezebel
- Jezebel
- had been stoned
- and had died
- he has died
- Ahab
- Possess
- the vineyard of
- the Jezreelite
- for silver
- alive

Translation Words - UST

- Jezebel
- she
- that Naboth
- sell...you
- had been killed
- dead
- Ahab
- Naboth
- take possession
- of...vineyard
- that

ULT

¹⁵ And it happened as soon as Jezebel heard that Naboth **had been stoned and had died**, that Jezebel said to Ahab, "Get up! **Possess the vineyard of Naboth the Jezreelite**, which he refused to give to you **for silver**, for Naboth is not **alive**, but **he has died!**"

UST

¹⁵ When Jezebel found out **that Naboth had been killed**, she told Ahab, "Naboth is **dead**. Now you can go and **take possession** of the **vineyard that** he refused to **sell to you.**"

1 Kings 21:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Ahab
- Ahab
- had died
- the vineyard of
- the Jezreelite
- to possess it

Translation Words - UST

- Ahab
- that he now
- Naboth
- dead
- to the vineyard
- owned it

ULT

¹⁶ And it happened as soon as Ahab heard that Naboth had died, that Ahab rose to go down to the vineyard of Naboth the Jezreelite to possess it.

UST

¹⁶ When Ahab heard that Naboth was dead, he got up and went to the vineyard to claim that he now owned it.

1 Kings 21:17

the word of Yahweh came

This idiom means that Yahweh spoke or has sent a message. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 6:11](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the word of Yahweh](#)
- [Elijah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Yahweh...spoke](#)
- [Elijah the prophet](#)

ULT

¹⁷ And [the word of Yahweh](#) was to [Elijah](#) the Tishbite, saying,

UST

¹⁷ [Then Yahweh spoke](#) to [Elijah the prophet](#). He said,

1 Kings 21:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Ahab
- the king of
- Israel
- is in Samaria
- he is in the vineyard of
- to possess it

Translation Words - UST

- Samaria
- and talk to Ahab
- the king of
- Israel
- vineyard
- owns

ULT

¹⁸ "Get up! Go down to meet **Ahab the king of Israel**, who **is in Samaria**. Behold **he is in the vineyard of** Naboth, there where he has gone down **to possess it**.

UST

¹⁸ "Go to **Samaria and talk to Ahab, the king of Israel**. He is in the **vineyard** of a man named Naboth. He has gone there to claim that he now **owns** it.

1 Kings 21:19

Have you killed and also taken possession?

Yahweh asks this question to scold Ahab. Alternate translation: "You have killed Naboth and stolen his vineyard!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

your blood, yes, your blood

This is repeated for emphasis.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- Have you murdered
- taken possession
- the blood of
- your blood

Translation Words - UST

- I, Yahweh
- you (2)
- You have murdered Naboth
- and taken his land
- your blood, too
- and licked up...blood

ULT

19 And you shall speak to him saying, 'Thus says Yahweh, "Have you murdered and also taken possession?"' And you shall speak to him, saying, 'Thus says Yahweh, "In a place where the dogs licked the blood of Naboth, the dogs will lick your blood, even you.'"

UST

19 Tell Ahab that this is what I, Yahweh, say to him, 'You have murdered Naboth and taken his land. So I am telling you this. In the same place where Naboth died and dogs came and licked up Naboth's blood, you will die and the dogs will lick up your blood, too!'

1 Kings 21:20

Have you found me, my enemy?

Ahab uses this question to express anger toward Elijah. That Elijah “found” Ahab likely refers to Elijah discovering Ahab’s actions, not to finding his physical location. Alternate translation: “You have found me, my enemy!” or “You have discovered what I have done, my enemy!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

you have sold yourself to do what is evil

A person being committed to doing what is evil is spoken of as if that person had sold himself to evil. Alternate translation: “you have dedicated yourself to doing what is evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

what is evil in the sight of Yahweh

The phrase, “in the sight of” refers to someone’s opinion. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 11:6](#). Alternate translation: “what Yahweh considers to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

²⁰ And [Ahab](#) said to [Elijah](#), “Have you found me, [my enemy](#)?” And he said, “I have found, on account of you having sold yourself by doing [the evil thing](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#).”

UST

²⁰ [So when Elijah](#) met with [Ahab](#), Ahab said to him, “[You, my enemy](#), have found me!” Elijah answered, “Yes, I have found you. You have never stopped doing the things [that Yahweh](#) says [are wrong](#).”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ahab](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [my enemy](#)
- [the evil thing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [So when Elijah](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [You, my enemy](#)
- [that Yahweh](#)
- [are wrong](#)

1 Kings 21:21

See

Alternate translation: "Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

completely consume and cut off from you every male child and slave and free man in Israel

Yahweh speaks of destroying Ahab's family and preventing him from having any decedents as if he were consuming these people like a fire would consume them, and cutting them off as one would cut a branch from a tree. Alternate translation: "destroy every one of your male children in Israel, whether slave or free" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [evil](#)
- [and I will cut off](#)
- [with respect to Ahab](#)
- [and one who is let free](#)
- [in Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I will soon get rid of you](#)
- [I will soon get rid of you](#)
- [in your household](#)
- [and those who are not slaves](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)

ULT

21 'Behold, I am about to bring [evil](#) on you and I will burn after you, [and I will cut off with respect to Ahab](#) one who urinates on a wall, and one who is restrained, [and one who is let free in Israel](#).

UST

21 So this is what Yahweh says to you, 'I [will soon get rid of you](#). I will kill you, and I will also kill every male [in your household](#), including those who are slaves [and those who are not slaves](#).

1 Kings 21:22

I will make your family like the family of Jeroboam ... and like the family of Baasha

Yahweh will destroy Ahab's family like he destroyed the families of Jeroboam and Baasha.

Translation Words - ULT

- your house
- like the house of
- and like the house of
- Israel
- Jeroboam
- the son of
- the son of
- Baasha
- Ahijah
- you have provoked to anger
- and you have caused...to sin

Translation Words - UST

- Your family will all be killed
- just like the family of
- I will get rid of
- to sin
- King Jeroboam
- King Jeroboam
- and like the family of King
- and like the family of King
- Baasha were killed
- induced
- Israelite people

ULT

²² And I will give over *your house like the house of Jeroboam the son of Nebat and like the house of Baasha the son of Ahijah*, on account of the anger that *you have provoked to anger and you have caused Israel to sin.*'

UST

²² Your family will all be killed, just like the family of King Jeroboam and like the family of King Baasha were killed. I will get rid of you because you have caused me to become very angry, and you have also *induced the Israelite people to sin.*'

1 Kings 21:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- with respect to Jezebel
- Jezebel
- Yahweh
- Jezreel

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Jezebel will be killed
- her body
- in Jezreel will

ULT

²³ And also with respect to Jezebel Yahweh has spoken, saying, 'The dogs will eat Jezebel at the rampart of Jezreel.'

UST

²³ Yahweh has also told me that your wife Jezebel will be killed, and dogs in Jezreel will eat her body.

1 Kings 21:24

Anyone who belongs to Ahab

Alternate translation: "Anyone who belongs to Ahab's family"

Translation Words - ULT

- The one...who dies
- And the one who dies
- of Ahab
- the heavens

Translation Words - UST

- The dead bodies of the members of your family
- who die
- and the bodies of those who die
- by vultures

ULT

²⁴ The one of Ahab who dies in the city, the dogs shall eat. And the one who dies in the field, the bird of the heavens shall eat."

UST

²⁴ The dead bodies of the members of your family who die in this city will not be buried. They will be eaten by dogs, and the bodies of those who die in the fields will be eaten by vultures."

1 Kings 21:25

who sold himself to do what was evil

A person being committed to doing what is evil is spoken of as if that person had sold himself to evil. See how you translated this idea in [1 Kings 21:20](#). Alternate translation: “who dedicated himself to doing what was evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The phrase, “in the sight of” refers to someone’s opinion. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 11:6](#). Alternate translation: “what Yahweh considers to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [one like Ahab](#)
- [the evil thing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jezebel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that Yahweh](#)
- [were evil](#)
- [like Ahab did](#)
- [Jezebel](#)

ULT

²⁵ Surely there was not [one like Ahab](#), who sold himself by doing [the evil thing](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#), he whom [Jezebel](#) his wife incited.

UST

²⁵ There was no man who gave himself as completely to do things [that Yahweh](#) said [were evil like Ahab did](#). But his wife [Jezebel](#) urged him to do many of those things.

1 Kings 21:26

removed before the people of Israel

Here “Israel” refers to all twelve tribes of Israel and not just to the northern kingdom. Alternate translation: “removed from the presence of the people of Israel” or “drove out of the land before the people of Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And he acted...abominably
- the idols
- the Amorite
- Yahweh
- had dispossessed
- the sons of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- The most disgusting thing
- that Ahab did was to worship idols
- Amor people group
- And that is why Yahweh
- took their land
- to...Israelites
- to...Israelites

ULT

²⁶ And he acted very abominably by walking after the idols, like all that the Amorite had done, whom Yahweh had dispossessed from the face of the sons of Israel.

UST

²⁶ The most disgusting thing that Ahab did was to worship idols, just like the Amor people group had done. And that is why Yahweh took their land from them and gave it to the Israelites.

1 Kings 21:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Ahab
- his garments
- sackcloth
- in the sackcloth
- his flesh
- and he fasted

Translation Words - UST

- After Elijah finished talking to Ahab
- to show that he
- He put on
- those rough clothes made from sacks
- rough clothes that were made from sacks, and he
- refused to eat anything

ULT

²⁷ And it happened as soon as Ahab heard these words, that he tore his garments and put sackcloth over his flesh and he fasted. And he lay down in the sackcloth and he walked softly.

UST

²⁷ After Elijah finished talking to Ahab, Ahab tore his clothes to show that he was sorry for all the sins that he had committed. He put on rough clothes that were made from sacks, and he refused to eat anything. He even wore those rough clothes made from sacks when he slept, to show that he was sorry.

1 Kings 21:28

the word of Yahweh came

This idiom means that Yahweh spoke or has sent a message. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 6:11](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the word of Yahweh](#)
- [Elijah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Yahweh...this](#)
- [Elijah](#)

ULT

²⁸ And [the word of Yahweh](#) was to [Elijah](#) the Tishbite, saying,

UST

²⁸ [Then Yahweh](#) said [this](#) to [Elijah](#),

1 Kings 21:29

Do you see how Ahab humbles himself before me?

God uses this question to show Elijah that Ahab's sorrow is genuine.
Alternate translation: "I have seen how Ahab humbles himself before me." or "Look at how Ahab humbles himself before me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

in his days ... in his son's day

Alternate translation: "during his lifetime ... during his son's lifetime"

Translation Words - ULT

- Ahab
- has humbled himself
- he has humbled himself
- the evil thing
- the evil thing
- in his days
- In the days of
- his son
- his house

Translation Words - UST

- I...Ahab is
- now
- while he is still alive
- very sorry for all
- to his family
- the evil things
- Then those things will
- after his son becomes king
- his family

ULT

²⁹ "Have you seen that [Ahab has humbled himself](#) from before my face? Because [he has humbled himself](#) from my face, I will not bring [the evil thing in his days](#). [In the days of his son](#) I will bring [the evil thing](#) on his house."

UST

²⁹ "I have seen that [Ahab is now very sorry for all the evil things](#) that he has done. So the things that I promised to do [to his family](#) will not happen [while he is still alive](#). I will cause them to happen [after his son becomes king](#). [Then those things will](#) happen to [his family](#)."

1 Kings 22

1 Kings 22 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This is the end of the story of Ahab and a continuation of the story of Elijah as he had predicted Ahab's death and the dogs licking his blood.

Special concepts in this chapter

When God has decided a person will die, then they cannot avoid death. Ahab persuaded Jehoshaphat, king of Judah to help him in a battle against the army of Aram. Ahab's false prophets all told him to go because he would be successful. But a randomly shot arrow hit him and he bled to death. They washed his chariot at the pool and the dogs licked up his blood, just as Elijah had said they would. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"However, the shrines were still not taken away. The people were still sacrificing and burning incense at the shrines."

At the shrines, the people worshiped Yahweh. But later, during Hezekiah's reign it was decided that all sacrifices must be made only at the temple. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

1 Kings 22:1

Three years

"3 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [years](#)
- [Aram](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [years](#)
- [Aram](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

¹ And they dwelled three [years](#); there was no war between [Aram](#) and [Israel](#).

UST

¹ For almost three [years](#) there was no war between [Aram](#) and [Israel](#).

1 Kings 22:2

it came about that

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Translation Words - ULT

- in the...year
- Jehoshaphat
- the king of
- the king of
- Judah
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Then King
- King
- Jehoshaphat
- who ruled Judah
- to visit
- Ahab, who ruled Israel

ULT

² And it happened in the third year, that Jehoshaphat the king of Judah went down to the king of Israel.

UST

² Then King Jehoshaphat, who ruled Judah, went to visit King Ahab, who ruled Israel.

1 Kings 22:3

Do you know that Ramoth Gilead is ours, but that we are doing nothing to take it from the hand of the king of Aram?

Ahab asks this question to emphasize that they should have already recaptured Ramoth Gilead. Alternate translation: "Ramoth Gilead is ours, but we have done nothing yet to take it from the hand of the king of Aram." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

to take it from the hand of the king of Aram

Here the word "hand" refers to power. Alternate translation: "to take it from the control of the king of Aram" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- the king of
- Israel
- his servants
- Do you know
- Ramoth Gilead
- from the hand of
- Aram

Translation Words - UST

- Ahab
- his
- the Arameans are
- officials
- Do you realize
- the Arameans are
- still occupying
- city of Ramoth in the region of Gilead

ULT

³ And the king of Israel said to his servants, "Do you know that Ramoth Gilead is for us, but we are staying inactive from taking it from the hand of the king of Aram?"

UST

³ While they were talking, Ahab said to his officials, "Do you realize that the Arameans are still occupying our city of Ramoth in the region of Gilead? And we are doing nothing to retake that city!"

1 Kings 22:4

I am like you, my people are like your people, and my horses are like your horses

Jehoshaphat tells Ahab that he, his people, and his horses belong to Ahab, meaning that Ahab can command them as he pleases.

Alternate translation: "I, my soldiers, and my horses are yours to use in any way you want" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [at Ramoth Gilead](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Like my people](#)
- [like your people](#)
- [Like my horses](#)
- [like your horses](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Jehoshaphat replied, "Certainly! I will do...you](#)
- [the people](#)
- [the people](#)
- [of Ramoth](#)
- [horses](#)
- [horses](#)
- [into battle, also](#)
- [into battle, also](#)

ULT

⁴ And he said to [Jehoshaphat](#), "Will you go with me to war [at Ramoth Gilead](#)?" And [Jehoshaphat](#) said to [the king of Israel](#), "Like me, like you. [Like my people, like your people. Like my horses, like your horses.](#)"

UST

⁴ Then he turned toward [Jehoshaphat](#) and asked, "Will your army join my army to fight against [the people of Ramoth](#) and retake that city?" [Jehoshaphat replied, "Certainly! I will do whatever you want, and you may command my troops. You may take my horses into battle, also."](#)

1 Kings 22:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jehoshaphat
- the king of
- Israel
- seek
- the word of...Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- he
- But we should ask Yahweh first
- find out
- what he wants us to do
- what he wants us to do

ULT

⁵ And Jehoshaphat said to the king of Israel, "Please seek the word of Yahweh at today."

UST

⁵ Then he added, "But we should ask Yahweh first, to find out what he wants us to do."

1 Kings 22:6

four hundred men

"400 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

for the Lord will give it into the hand of the king

Here the word "hand" refers to power. Alternate translation: "for the Lord will allow the king to capture Ramoth Gilead" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- the king
- Israel
- And...gathered
- the prophets
- Ramoth Gilead
- my Lord
- into the hand of

Translation Words - UST

- Ahab
- summoned
- his
- and he
- prophets together
- the people in Ramoth and retake that city
- because God...your army
- will enable

ULT

⁶ And the king of Israel gathered the prophets, about 400 men, and he said to them, "Should I go against Ramoth Gilead to war, or should I refrain?" And they said, "Go up, for my Lord will give into the hand of the king."

UST

⁶ So Ahab summoned about four hundred of his prophets together, and he asked them, "Should my army go to fight the people in Ramoth and retake that city, or not?" They answered, "Yes, go and attack them, because God will enable your army to defeat them."

1 Kings 22:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jehoshaphat
- prophet of
- Yahweh
- so we may seek

Translation Words - UST

- But Jehoshaphat
- prophet
- of Yahweh
- ask

ULT

⁷ And Jehoshaphat said, "Is there still no prophet of Yahweh here so we may seek from him?"

UST

⁷ But Jehoshaphat asked, "Is there no other prophet of Yahweh here whom we can ask?"

1 Kings 22:8

May the king not say that

Jehoshaphat refers to Ahab in the third person to show respect for him. Alternate translation: "You should not say that" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- The king
- Israel
- Jehoshaphat
- Jehoshaphat
- for seeking
- Yahweh
- he does...prophesy
- good
- evil
- the son of

Translation Words - UST

- The king of
- King Ahab
- Israel
- we can ask
- son
- when he prophesies
- Jehoshaphat replied
- good will happen
- me
- predicts
- bad

ULT

⁸ And [the king of Israel](#) responded to [Jehoshaphat](#), "There is still one man [for seeking Yahweh](#) from him, but I myself hate him because [he does](#) not [prophesy good](#) on my account, but rather [evil](#): Micaiah [the son of](#) Imlah." And [Jehoshaphat](#) said, "[The king](#) should not say so."

UST

⁸ [The king of Israel](#) replied, "There is one other man [we can ask](#). His name is Micaiah [son](#) of Imlah. But I hate him, because [when he prophesies](#) he never says that anything [good will happen](#) to [me](#). He always [predicts](#) that [bad](#) things will happen to me." [Jehoshaphat replied](#), "[King Ahab](#), you should not say that!"

1 Kings 22:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- Israel
- And...called
- eunuch
- the son of

Translation Words - UST

- So the king of
- Israel
- one of his officers
- summon
- Micaiah

ULT

⁹ And the king of Israel called to one eunuch. And he said, "Get quickly Micaiah the son of Imlah."

UST

⁹ So the king of Israel told one of his officers to summon Micaiah immediately.

1 Kings 22:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Now the king of
- the king of
- Israel
- the prophets
- were prophesying
- and Jehoshaphat
- Judah
- his throne
- with garments
- by the threshing floor
- the gate of
- Samaria

Translation Words - UST

- The king
- and the king
- The king
- prophets were speaking messages
- prophets were speaking messages
- of Israel
- Judah
- wearing their royal robes
- on thrones
- at a gate in the city wall
- at a gate in the city wall
- of Samaria

ULT

¹⁰ Now the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat the king of Judah were sitting, a man on his throne, clothed with garments, by the threshing floor at the opening of the gate of Samaria. And all the prophets were prophesying before their faces.

UST

¹⁰ The king of Israel and the king of Judah were both wearing their royal robes and sitting on thrones at a gate in the city wall of Samaria. Many prophets were speaking messages to them.

1 Kings 22:11

made himself horns of iron

Alternate translation: "made iron horns for himself"

With these you will push the Arameans until they are consumed

The prophet's actions are a symbolic metaphor that illustrates the way that Ahab would defeat the Arameans. Ahab's army will win with great strength, as a bull attacks another animal. (See: [Symbolic Action](#) and [Metaphor](#))

until they are consumed

Destroying an enemy army is spoken of as if it were consuming them. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "until you consume them" or "until you destroy them" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Zedekiah](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [horns of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Aram](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [One of them, whose name was Zedekiah](#)
- [son](#)
- [something that resembled horns of a bull](#)
- [is what Yahweh](#)
- [Arameans](#)

ULT

11 And [Zedekiah the son of](#) Kenaanah made [horns of](#) iron for him, and he said, "Thus says [Yahweh](#): 'With these you shall gore [Aram](#) until their finishing.'"

UST

11 [One of them, whose name was Zedekiah son](#) of Kenaanah, had made from iron [something that resembled horns of a bull](#). Then he proclaimed to Ahab, "This [is what Yahweh](#) says, 'With horns like these your army will keep attacking the [Arameans](#) as a bull attacks another animal, until you completely destroy them!'"

1 Kings 22:12

given it into the hand of the king

Here the word “hand” refers to power. Alternate translation: “allowed the king to capture it” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the prophets
- were prophesying
- to Ramoth Gilead
- and be successful
- Yahweh
- into the hand of
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- other prophets of Ahab
- other prophets of Ahab
- Ramoth in Gilead
- you will be successful
- because Yahweh
- will enable
- you

ULT

¹² And all the prophets were prophesying thus, saying, “Go up to Ramoth Gilead and be successful, and Yahweh will give into the hand of the king.”

UST

¹² All the other prophets of Ahab agreed. They said, “Yes! If you go up to attack Ramoth in Gilead, you will be successful, because Yahweh will enable you to defeat them!”

1 Kings 22:13

Now look

Alternate translation: "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

the words of the prophets declare good things to the king with one mouth

The prophets all saying the same thing is spoken of as if they all spoke with the same mouth. Alternate translation: "the prophets all declare the same good things to the king" (See: [Metaphor](#))

let your word be like one of them

Here the word "them" refers to "the words of the prophets." Alternate translation: "let what you say agree with what they have said" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the messenger](#)
- [to call](#)
- [the prophets](#)
- [are good](#)
- [good](#)
- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [messenger who went](#)
- [to summon](#)
- [All the other prophets are predicting that](#)
- [the king's army will defeat the Arameans](#)
- [the king's army will defeat the Arameans](#)
- [you agree with them and](#)

ULT

13 [And the messenger](#) who had gone [to call](#) Micaiah spoke to him, saying, "Behold, please, the words of [the prophets](#) as one mouth [are good](#) for [the king](#). Please let your word be like the one word from them and speak [good](#)."

UST

13 Meanwhile, the [messenger who went to summon](#) Micaiah said to him, "Listen to me! [All the other prophets are predicting that the king's army will defeat the Arameans](#). So be sure that [you agree with them and](#) say what will be favorable."

1 Kings 22:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- As...is alive

Translation Words - UST

- As surely as Yahweh lives
- Yahweh tells
- As surely as Yahweh lives

ULT

¹⁴ And Micaiah said, "As **Yahweh is alive**, surely what **Yahweh** will say to me, it I will speak."

UST

¹⁴ But Micaiah replied, "**As surely as Yahweh lives**, I will tell Ahab only what **Yahweh tells** me to say."

1 Kings 22:15

should we go

The word “we” refers to Ahab, Jehoshaphat, and their armies but not to Micaiah. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

will give it into the hand of the king

Here the word “hand” refers to power. Alternate translation: “will allow the king to capture it” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Ramoth Gilead](#)
- [and be successful](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [into the hand of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Ahab](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [you](#)
- [of Ramoth](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [will enable](#)
- [your army](#)

ULT

15 And he came to [the king](#), and [the king](#) said to him, “Micaiah, should we go to [Ramoth Gilead](#) to war, or should we refrain?” And he said to him, “Go up [and be successful](#), and [Yahweh](#) will give [into the hand of the king](#).”

UST

15 When Micaiah came to [Ahab](#), [Ahab](#) asked him, “Micaiah, should we go to fight against the people [of Ramoth](#), or not?” Micaiah replied, “Of course [you](#) should go! [Yahweh will enable your army](#) to defeat them!”

1 Kings 22:16

How many times must I require ... in the name of Yahweh?

Ahab asks this question out of frustration to rebuke Micaiah.

Alternate translation: "Many times I have required ... in the name of Yahweh." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

in the name of Yahweh

Here the word "name" refers to authority. Alternate translation: "as the representative of Yahweh" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- must...cause you to swear
- truth
- in the name of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- realized
- so he
- have told you many...that you must always tell only the truth
- Yahweh
- has revealed

ULT

¹⁶ And the king said to him, "Up to how many times must I cause you to swear that you would not speak concerning me except truth in the name of Yahweh?"

UST

¹⁶ But King Ahab realized that Micaiah was being sarcastic, so he said to Micaiah, "I have told you many times that you must always tell only the truth when you say what Yahweh has revealed to you!"

1 Kings 22:17

I saw all Israel

Here “all Israel” refers to the army of Israel. Alternate translation: “I saw the entire army of Israel” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

like sheep who have no shepherd

The people of the army are compared to sheep that have no one to lead them because their shepherd, the king, has died. (See: [Simile](#))

These have no shepherd

Yahweh speaks of the king as if he were a shepherd. Just like a shepherd is responsible to care for and protect his sheep, the king is responsible to lead and protect his people. Alternate translation: “These people no longer have a leader” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [scattered](#)
- [like a flock](#)
- [a shepherd](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [masters](#)
- [Let them return](#)
- [to his house](#)
- [in peace](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the troops of Israel](#)
- [scattered](#)
- [be like sheep that](#)
- [And Yahweh](#)
- [master](#)
- [has been killed](#)
- [So tell them all to go home](#)
- [So tell them all to go home](#)
- [peacefully](#)

ULT

17 And he said, “I saw all [Israel scattered](#) to the mountains, [like a flock](#) when there is not [a shepherd](#) for them. And [Yahweh](#) said, ‘There are no [masters](#) for these. [Let them return](#), a man [to his house, in peace.](#)’”

UST

17 So Micaiah said to him, “The truth is that in a vision I saw all [the troops of Israel scattered](#) on the mountains. They seemed to [be like sheep that](#) did not have a shepherd. [And Yahweh](#) said, ‘Their [master has been killed](#). [So tell them all to go home peacefully.](#)’”

1 Kings 22:18

Did I not tell you ... but only disaster?

Ahab asks this question to emphasize that he had spoken the truth about Micaiah. Alternate translation: "I told you ... but only disaster!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- Israel
- Jehoshaphat
- he would...prophecy
- good
- evil

Translation Words - UST

- Ahab
- Jehoshaphat
- I told you
- good
- He always predicts that
- bad things will happen to me

ULT

¹⁸ And [the king of Israel](#) said to [Jehoshaphat](#), "Did I not say to you [he would](#) not [prophecy good](#) concerning me, but rather [evil](#)?"

UST

¹⁸ [Ahab](#) said to [Jehoshaphat](#), "I told you that he never predicts that anything [good](#) will happen to me! [He always predicts that bad things will happen to me.](#)"

1 Kings 22:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the word of Yahweh
- Yahweh
- his throne
- the heavens

Translation Words - UST

- to what Yahweh showed...In a vision I
- Yahweh
- throne
- of heaven surrounding him

ULT

¹⁹ And he said, "Therefore hear **the word of Yahweh**: I saw **Yahweh** sitting on **his throne**, and all the host of **the heavens** standing beside him from his right and from his left.

UST

¹⁹ But Micaiah continued, saying, "Listen **to what Yahweh showed** to me! **In a vision I** saw **Yahweh** sitting on his **throne**, with all the armies **of heaven surrounding him**, on his right side and on his left side.

1 Kings 22:20

fall at Ramoth Gilead

Ahab dying in battle is spoken of as if he will fall. Alternate translation: “die at Ramoth Gilead” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

One of them said ... and another one said

“One ... and another” refers to two or more angels in the heavenly host who were responding to Yahweh’s question in the previous verse.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [will deceive](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [at Ramoth Gilead](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [And Yahweh](#)
- [can persuade Ahab to](#)
- [can persuade Ahab to](#)
- [of Ramoth](#)

ULT

²⁰ And [Yahweh](#) said, ‘Who [will deceive Ahab](#), so he may go up and may fall [at Ramoth Gilead](#)?’ And this one said, “In this way,” and this one was saying, “In this way.”

UST

²⁰ And [Yahweh](#) said, ‘Who [can persuade Ahab to](#) go to fight against the people [of Ramoth](#), in order that he may be killed there?’ Some suggested one thing, and others suggested something else.

1 Kings 22:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the spirit
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- I...will deceive him

Translation Words - UST

- Finally one spirit came
- Yahweh and said...I will deceive him
- Yahweh and said...I will deceive him
- Yahweh and said...I will deceive him

ULT

²¹ And the spirit went out, and he stood before the face of Yahweh. And he said, 'I myself will deceive him.' And Yahweh said to him, 'By what means?'

UST

²¹ Finally one spirit came to Yahweh and said, 'I will deceive him!'

1 Kings 22:22

be a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets

Here the word “spirit” refers to the attitudes of the prophets and the words “the mouth” represents what they will say. Alternate translation: “cause all his prophets to speak lies” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a spirit of
- falsehood
- You may deceive
- his prophets

Translation Words - UST

- The spirit replied
- prophets
- to tell lies
- Yahweh said...You...successful; go and do it

ULT

²² And he said, ‘I will go out and I will be a spirit of falsehood in the mouth of all his prophets.’ And he said, ‘You may deceive and also you will be able. Go out and do so.’

UST

²² Yahweh asked him, ‘How will you do it?’ The spirit replied, ‘I will go and inspire all of Ahab’s prophets to tell lies.’ Yahweh said, ‘You will be successful; go and do it!’

1 Kings 22:23

see

Alternate translation: "pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important"

has put a lying spirit in the mouth of all these prophets of yours

Here the word "spirit" refers to the attitudes of the prophets and the words "the mouth" represents what they will say. Alternate translation: "has caused all of your prophets to speak lies" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [And Yahweh](#)
- [a spirit of](#)
- [falsehood](#)
- [prophets of yours](#)
- [evil](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to you. Yahweh has decided that...will happen to you](#)
- [has let all...your prophets lie](#)
- [has let all...your prophets lie](#)
- [has let all...your prophets lie](#)
- [something terrible](#)

ULT

²³ And now, behold, [Yahweh](#) has given [a spirit of falsehood](#) into the mouth of all these [prophets of yours](#). [And Yahweh](#) has spoken [evil](#) against you."

UST

²³ So now I tell you that [Yahweh has let all of your prophets lie to you. Yahweh has decided that something terrible will happen to you.](#)"

1 Kings 22:24

Which way did the Spirit of Yahweh take to go from me to speak to you?

Zedekiah asks this sarcastic question to insult and rebuke Micaiah. Alternate translation: "Do not think that Yahweh's Spirit left me to speak to you!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Zedekiah](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the Spirit of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Zedekiah](#)
- [Zedekiah](#)
- [Yahweh's](#)
- [Spirit](#)

ULT

²⁴ And [Zedekiah the son of](#) Kenaanah came near, and he struck Micaiah on the cheek. And he said, "How is this, [the Spirit of Yahweh](#) has passed over from with me to speak with you?"

UST

²⁴ Then [Zedekiah](#) walked over to Micaiah and slapped him on his face. He said, "Do you think that [Yahweh's Spirit](#) left me in order to speak to you?"

1 Kings 22:25

Look

Alternate translation: "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

you will see

"you will know the answer to your question." If Zedekiah's rhetorical question is translated as a statement, this phrase may be translated to supply implicit information. Alternate translation: "you will know that the Spirit of Yahweh has spoken to me" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- on...day

Translation Words - UST

- to which of us Yahweh's Spirit has truly spoken on the day

ULT

25 And Micaiah said, "Behold, you are about to see on that **day** when you enter a room in a room to hide yourself."

UST

25 Micaiah replied, "You will find out for yourself **to which of us Yahweh's Spirit has truly spoken on the day** when you go into a room of some house to hide from the Aramean troops!"

1 Kings 22:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- the king
- Israel
- and return him
- the commander of
- Joash
- the son of

Translation Words - UST

- King
- his soldiers
- Ahab
- Seize Micaiah and
- the governor
- my son
- Joash

ULT

²⁶ And the king of Israel said, "Take Micaiah and return him to Amon, the commander of the city, and to Joash, the son of the king.

UST

²⁶ King Ahab commanded his soldiers, "Seize Micaiah and take him to Amon, the governor of this city, and to my son Joash.

1 Kings 22:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- in the house of
- imprisonment
- in peace

Translation Words - UST

- I
- in prison
- in prison
- safely from the battle

ULT

²⁷ And you shall say, 'Thus says the king, "Put this one in the house of imprisonment and feed him bread of oppression and water of oppression, until my coming in peace."'"

UST

²⁷ Tell them that I have commanded that they should put this man in prison and give him only bread and water. Do not give him anything else to eat until I return safely from the battle!"

1 Kings 22:28

If you return safely

This describes something that would not happen. Yahweh had already told Micaiah that the king would not return safely. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [you return](#)
- [in peace](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [peoples](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you return](#)
- [safely, it will be clear that](#)
- [it was not Yahweh who told](#)
- [those who were standing there](#)

ULT

²⁸ And Micaiah said, "If indeed [you return in peace](#), [Yahweh](#) has not spoken by me." And he said, "Listen, [peoples](#), all of them."

UST

²⁸ Micaiah replied, "If [you return safely](#), [it will be clear that it was not Yahweh who told](#) me what to say to you!" Then he said to all [those who were standing there](#), "Do not forget what I have said to King Ahab!"

1 Kings 22:29

Ahab, the king of Israel, and Jehoshaphat, the king of Judah, went up

Here the kings represent themselves accompanied by their armies.
Alternate translation: "Ahab, the king of Israel, and Jehoshaphat, the king of Judah led their armies up" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- the king of (2)
- Israel
- and Jehoshaphat
- Judah
- to Ramoth Gilead

Translation Words - UST

- the king of Israel and
- So...the king of (2)
- the king of Israel and
- Judah
- their armies to
- Ramoth in Gilead

ULT

²⁹ And the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat the king of Judah went up to Ramoth Gilead.

UST

²⁹ So the king of Israel and the king of Judah led their armies to Ramoth in Gilead.

1 Kings 22:30

disguise

This means to change the usual appearance so as not to be identified.

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- the king of
- Israel
- Israel
- Jehoshaphat
- your garments

Translation Words - UST

- King
- the king
- King
- So Ahab disguised himself, and they both
- Jehoshaphat
- clothes, in order that

ULT

³⁰ And **the king of Israel** said to **Jehoshaphat**, "I will cause myself to be unrecognizable and come into the battle, but you wear **your garments**." And **the king of Israel** caused himself to be unrecognizable and he came into the battle.

UST

³⁰ **King** Ahab said to **Jehoshaphat**, "I will put on different **clothes, in order that** no one will recognize that I am **the king**. But you should wear your royal robe." **So Ahab disguised himself, and they both** went into the battle.

1 Kings 22:31

thirty-two captains

“32 captains” (See: [Numbers](#))

Do not attack unimportant or important soldiers

By mentioning both “unimportant” and “important soldiers,” the king meant all soldiers. Alternate translation: “Do not attack any of the soldiers” (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Now the king of
- the king of
- Aram
- had commanded
- the commanders of
- the chariotry
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- King
- king of Israel
- of Aram
- of Aram
- of Aram
- men who were driving the chariots
- king of Israel

ULT

³¹ Now the king of Aram had commanded the commanders of the chariotry, which were 32 for him, saying, “You shall not fight with a small one or with a great one, but rather with the king of Israel by himself.”

UST

³¹ The King of Aram had said to his thirty-two men who were driving the chariots, “Attack only the king of Israel!”

1 Kings 22:32

It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Translation Words - ULT

- the commanders of
- the charioty
- Jehoshaphat
- Jehoshaphat
- is the king of
- Israel
- And they turned aside
- and...cried out

Translation Words - UST

- chariots
- Jehoshaphat wearing the
- But when Jehoshaphat
- royal robes
- king
- Israel
- cried
- out

ULT

³² And it happened as soon as the commanders of the charioty saw Jehoshaphat, that they themselves said, "Surely he is the king of Israel." And they turned aside to fight against him, and Jehoshaphat cried out.

UST

³² So when the men who were driving the Aramean chariots saw Jehoshaphat wearing the royal robes, they pursued him. They shouted, "There is the king of Israel!" But when Jehoshaphat cried out,

1 Kings 22:33

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the commanders of
- the chariotry
- was...the king of
- Israel
- that they turned back

Translation Words - UST

- they realized that
- they realized that
- the king of
- Israel
- they stopped...him

ULT

³³ And it happened as soon as the commanders of the chariotry saw that he was not the king of Israel, that they turned back from after him.

UST

³³ they realized that he was not the king of Israel. So they stopped pursuing him.

1 Kings 22:34

drew his bow at random

This could mean: (1) he took aim to shoot a soldier without knowing that it was Ahab or (2) he drew his bow to shoot without any specific target in mind.

Translation Words - ULT

- with the bow
- the king of
- Israel
- to his charioteer
- your hand

Translation Words - UST

- shot an arrow at Ahab
- Ahab
- his
- Turn...around
- the chariot

ULT

³⁴ But a man drew **with the bow** in his innocence and he struck **the king of Israel** between the joints and the body armor. And he said **to his charioteer**, "Turn **your hand** and bring me out from the camp, for I am wounded."

UST

³⁴ But one Aramean soldier **shot an arrow at Ahab**, without knowing that it was Ahab. The arrow struck **Ahab** between the places where the parts of **his** armor joined together. Ahab told the driver of his chariot, "**Turn the chariot around** and take me out of here! I have been severely wounded!"

1 Kings 22:35

the king was held up in his chariot

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "someone held the king up in his chariot" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- on...day
- and the king
- in the chariot
- the chariot
- Aram
- And he died
- the wound

Translation Words - UST

- continued all the day
- his chariot
- of the chariot
- facing the Aramean troops
- his
- wound
- died

ULT

³⁵ And the battle went up on that day and the king was being stood up in the chariot opposite Aram. And he died in the evening and the blood of the wound poured out to the bosom of the chariot.

UST

³⁵ The battle continued all the day. Ahab was sitting propped up in his chariot, facing the Aramean troops. The blood from his wound ran down to the floor of the chariot. And late in the afternoon he died.

1 Kings 22:36

a cry went up

Here “a cry” represents the soldiers who were shouting. Alternate translation: “soldiers began to shout” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Every man should go back to his city; and every man should go back to his region

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the cry
- his land

Translation Words - UST

- The battle is ended
- home

ULT

³⁶ Then the cry passed through in the camp about the going of the sun, saying, “A man to his city and a man to his land!”

UST

³⁶ Just as the sun was going down, someone among the Israelite troops shouted, “The battle is ended! Everyone should return home!”

1 Kings 22:37

was brought to Samaria

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "his soldiers brought his body to Samaria" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

they buried him

Alternate translation: "people buried him"

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the king
- And...died
- to Samaria
- in Samaria
- And they buried

Translation Words - UST

- King Ahab
- his
- died
- Samaria
- body there
- and buried

ULT

³⁷ And [the king died](#) and came [to Samaria](#). [And they buried the king in Samaria](#).

UST

³⁷ So [King Ahab died](#), and they took his body in the chariot to [Samaria and buried his body there](#).

1 Kings 22:38

just as the word of Yahweh had declared

Here “the word of Yahweh” represents Yahweh himself. Alternate translation: “just as Yahweh had declared” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the chariot
- Samaria
- his blood
- and the prostitutes
- according to the word of Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- They...his...the pool in Samaria
- chariot
- where the prostitutes
- blood
- just like Yahweh had predicted would happen

ULT

³⁸ And one rinsed the chariot beside the pool of Samaria. And the dogs licked his blood, and the prostitutes bathed, according to the word of Yahweh that he had spoken.

UST

³⁸ They washed his chariot alongside the pool in Samaria, a pool where the prostitutes bathed. And dogs came and licked the king's blood, just like Yahweh had predicted would happen.

1 Kings 22:39

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

This can be expressed in active form and assumes that the answer is positive. The question is rhetorical and is used for emphasis. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 15:31](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.” or “you can read them in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ahab](#)
- [and the house of](#)
- [the days](#)
- [of the kings of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [happened while Ahab was ruling](#)
- [and about...palace decorated](#)
- [the Kings of](#)
- [the Kings of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

³⁹ And the remainder of the matters of [Ahab](#) and all that he did, [and the house of ivory](#) that he built, and all the cities that he built, are they not written on the book of the matters of [the days of the kings of Israel](#)?

UST

³⁹ The account of the other things that [happened while Ahab was ruling, and about the palace decorated](#) with much ivory that they built for him, and the cities that were built for him, was written in Book of the Events of [the Kings of Israel](#).

1 Kings 22:40

slept with his ancestors

Ahab dying is spoken of as if he had fallen asleep. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 2:10](#). Alternate translation: “died” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ahab](#)
- [his fathers](#)
- [Ahaziah](#)
- [his son](#)
- [And...reigned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When Ahab](#)
- [his ancestors were buried](#)
- [Then his son](#)
- [Ahaziah](#)
- [king](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ And [Ahab](#) lay down with [his fathers](#).
And [Ahaziah his son reigned](#) in his place.

UST

⁴⁰ [When Ahab](#) died, his body was buried where [his ancestors were buried](#). Then [his son Ahaziah](#) became [king](#).

1 Kings 22:41

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And Jehoshaphat
- the son of
- Asa
- reigned
- Judah
- in year
- of Ahab
- the king of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Before King Ahab
- died, when he had been ruling
- Israel
- years
- Asa's
- son
- Jehoshaphat
- started to rule
- in Judah

ULT

⁴¹ And Jehoshaphat the son of Asa reigned over Judah in year four of Ahab the king of Israel.

UST

⁴¹ Before King Ahab died, when he had been ruling in Israel for four years, Asa's son Jehoshaphat started to rule in Judah.

1 Kings 22:42

thirty-five years old

"35 years old" (See: [Numbers](#))

twenty-five years

"25 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [years](#)
- [years](#)
- [when he reigned](#)
- [he reigned](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [And the name of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [years old when he](#)
- [years](#)
- [started to rule](#)
- [and he ruled](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

ULT

⁴² [Jehoshaphat](#) was a son of 35 [years](#) [when he reigned](#), and [he reigned](#) 25 [years in Jerusalem](#). [And the name of](#) his mother was Azubah the daughter of Shilhi.

UST

⁴² [Jehoshaphat](#) was thirty-five [years old](#) [when he started to rule](#), and [he ruled in Jerusalem](#) for twenty-five [years](#). His mother was Azubah, the daughter of Shilhi.

1 Kings 22:43

He walked in the ways of Asa, his father

A person's behavior is spoken of as if that person walked along a path. Alternate translation: "He did the same things that Asa, his father, had done" (See: [Metaphor](#))

what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

Here "eyes" represents seeing and Yahweh's opinion is spoken of as if he were able to see something. Alternate translation: "what Yahweh considered to be right" (See: [Metaphor](#))

the high places were not taken away

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "he did not take away the high places" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Asa
- his father
- he did...turn away
- the upright thing
- Yahweh
- the high places
- at the high places
- The people
- were...sacrificing
- and burning incense

Translation Words - UST

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- Yahweh
- Asa
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- high place
- high place
- incense
- people, people group
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- turn, turn away, turn back, return

ULT

⁴³ And he walked in every way of [Asa his father](#), [he did](#) not [turn away](#) from it, to do [the upright thing](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#). However [the high places](#) they did not remove. [The people](#) were still [sacrificing and burning incense at the high places](#).

UST

⁴³ Jehoshaphat was a good king, just like his father Asa had been. He did things that pleased Yahweh. But while he was king, he did not remove all the pagan altars that had been built upon the hills. So the people continued to offer sacrifices to idols on those altars and burned incense there.

1 Kings 22:44

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jehoshaphat
- And...made peace
- the king of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Jehoshaphat
- king, kingship
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers

ULT

⁴⁴ And Jehoshaphat made peace with the king of Israel.

UST

⁴⁴ Jehoshaphat also made a peace treaty with the king of Israel.

1 Kings 22:45

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

This can be expressed in active form and assumes that the answer is positive. The question is rhetorical and is used for emphasis. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 14:29](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah.” or “you can read them in the book of the events of the kings of Judah.” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [and his mighty things](#)
- [the days of](#)
- [the kings of](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [day](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)

ULT

⁴⁵ And the remainder of the matters of [Jehoshaphat, and his mighty things](#) that he did, and how he fought, are they not written on the book of the matters of [the days of the kings of Judah?](#)

UST

⁴⁵ All the other things that happened while Jehoshaphat was ruling, and the great things that he did and the victories his troops won, are written in Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah.

1 Kings 22:46

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the cultic prostitutes
- in the days of
- Asa
- his father
- the land

Translation Words - UST

- Asa
- day
- earth, land
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- prostitute, harlot, whored

ULT

⁴⁶ And the remainder of the cultic prostitutes who were left in the days of Asa his father, he burned from the land.

UST

⁴⁶ Jehoshaphat removed from the land the male prostitutes that still lived in that region. These were same the male prostitutes who had lived there in the time of his father Asa.

1 Kings 22:47

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And...a king
- was king
- in Edom

Translation Words - UST

- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

ULT

⁴⁷ And there was not a king in Edom, a stationed one was king.

UST

⁴⁷ At that time, there was no king in Edom. A ruler who had been appointed by Jehoshaphat ruled there.

1 Kings 22:48

the ships were wrecked

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the ships wrecked” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Tarshish](#)
- [for gold](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Tarshish](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

ULT

⁴⁸ [Jehoshaphat](#) made ships of [Tarshish](#) to go to Ophir [for gold](#), but he did not go because ships were broken at Ezion Geber.

UST

⁴⁸ Jehoshaphat ordered some Israelite men to build a fleet of ships to sail south to the region of Ophir to get gold. But they were wrecked at Ezion Geber, so the ships never sailed.

1 Kings 22:49

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Ahaziah
- the son of
- Ahab
- Jehoshaphat
- Jehoshaphat
- my servants
- your servants

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Ahab
- Ahaziah
- Jehoshaphat
- Jehoshaphat
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

⁴⁹ Then Ahaziah the son of Ahab said to Jehoshaphat, "Let my servants go with your servants in the ships." But Jehoshaphat was not willing.

UST

⁴⁹ Before the ships were wrecked, Ahab's son Ahaziah suggested to Jehoshaphat, "Allow my sailors to go with your sailors," but Jehoshaphat refused.

1 Kings 22:50

slept with his ancestors

Jehoshaphat dying is spoken of as if he had fallen asleep. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 2:10](#). Alternate translation: “died” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

was buried with them

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “people buried him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [his fathers](#)
- [his fathers](#) (2)
- [his father](#)
- [and he was buried](#)
- [David](#)
- [Jehoram](#)
- [his son](#)
- [And...reigned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [David](#)
- [Jehoram, Joram](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [bury, buried, burial](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#) (2)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

ULT

⁵⁰ And [Jehoshaphat](#) lay down with [his fathers and he was buried](#) with [his fathers](#) in the city of [David his father](#). And [Jehoram his son](#) [reigned](#) in his place.

UST

⁵⁰ When Jehoshaphat died, his body was buried where his ancestors were buried in Jerusalem, the city where King David had ruled. Then Jehoshaphat's son Jehoram became king.

1 Kings 22:51

he reigned two years

“he reigned 2 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Ahaziah
- the son of
- Ahab
- reigned
- And he reigned
- Israel
- Israel
- in Samaria
- in year
- two years
- of Jehoshaphat
- the king of
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- son
- Ahab
- Ahaziah
- Jehoshaphat
- Judah
- Samaria, Samaritan
- year
- year
- king, kingship
- reign, rule
- reign, rule

ULT

⁵¹ Ahaziah the son of Ahab reigned over Israel in Samaria in year 17 of Jehoshaphat the king of Judah. And he reigned over Israel two years.

UST

⁵¹ Before King Jehoshaphat died, when he had been ruling in Judah for seventeen years, Ahab's son Ahaziah began to rule in Israel. Ahaziah ruled in Samaria for two years.

1 Kings 22:52

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

Yahweh's opinion regarding something is spoken of as if Yahweh were seeing that thing. Alternate translation: "what Yahweh considered to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

walked in the way of his father, in the way of his mother, and in the way of Jeroboam son of Nebat

A person's behavior is spoken of as if that person were walking along a path. Alternate translation: "did the same things that his father, mother, and Jeroboam son of Nebat had done" (See: [Metaphor](#))

led Israel to sin

Here the word "Israel" refers to the ten northern tribes that made up the kingdom of Israel.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the evil thing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his father](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [caused...to sin](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

⁵² And he did [the evil thing](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#). And he walked in the way of [his father](#) and in the way of his mother and in the way of [Jeroboam the son of Nebat](#), who [caused Israel to sin](#).

UST

⁵² He did many things that Yahweh said were evil, doing the evil things that his father and mother had done and the evil things that Jeroboam had done—the king who had induced all the Israelite people to sin by worshiping idols.

1 Kings 22:53

He served Baal and worshiped him

The words “served” and “worshiped” mean basically the same thing. (See: [Doublet](#))

the God of Israel

Here the word “Israel” refers to all of the twelve tribes descended from Jacob.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Baal](#)
- [and he bowed down](#)
- [And he provoked...to anger](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [his father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [prostrate, bow down, worship](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Baal](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [provoke, provoked, provocation](#)

ULT

53 And he served [the Baal and he bowed down](#) to him. [And he provoked Yahweh, the God of Israel, to anger](#), according to all that [his father](#) had done.

UST

53 Ahaziah bowed in front of Baal's idol and worshiped it. That caused Yahweh, the God who is the true God of the Israelite people as well as all the world, to become very angry, just as Ahaziah's father had caused Yahweh to become angry.



unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Version 29

Abstract Nouns

Description

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships between those ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. They provide a way of giving names to actions or qualities. With names, people who speak these languages can talk about the concepts as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin."

But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, speakers may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. For example, they would express, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," by using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas. Instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

Examples From the Bible

From **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone was a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers to the lack of speed with which something is done.

He will both bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun. Alternative translations are indented below the Scripture example.

... from **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved** ... Today God **has saved** the people in this house ...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be. (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:52](#); [3:6](#); [4:29](#); [8:23](#); [8:33](#); [9:7](#); [13:6](#); [14:5](#); [14:22](#); [15:30](#); [16:7](#))

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

- Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

- active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the Passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples From the Bible

Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**. (Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
- (3) Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)

The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

- (3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Abstract Nouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: 1 Kings 1:21; 1:52; 2:10; 2:12; 2:15; 2:19; 2:21; 2:29; 2:41; 3:2; 4:6; 5:7; 5:9; 5:14; 7:3; 7:7; 7:8; 7:9; 7:10; 7:14; 7:19; 7:21; 7:22; 7:24; 7:25; 7:26; 7:30; 7:33; 7:35; 7:36; 7:37; 7:47; 7:48; 7:50; 7:51; 8:5; 8:7; 8:15; 8:19; 8:31; 8:33; 8:43; 8:47; 8:51; 8:56; 9:8; 9:13; 10:7; 10:9; 10:10; 10:12; 10:28; 10:29; 11:17; 11:41; 11:43; 12:15; 12:24; 13:1; 13:2; 13:3; 13:4; 13:5; 13:6; 13:17; 13:24; 13:34; 14:2; 14:6; 14:11; 14:13; 14:15; 14:18; 14:19; 14:29; 14:31; 15:7; 15:14; 15:23; 15:24; 15:31; 16:5; 16:6; 16:14; 16:16; 16:18; 16:20; 16:27; 18:13; 18:26; 18:27; 18:36; 19:6; 20:17; 20:27; 21:11; 21:14; 21:15; 22:11; 22:35; 22:37; 22:39; 22:43; 22:45; 22:48; 22:50)

Apostrophe

Description

An apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. He does this to tell his listeners his message or feelings about that person or thing in a very strong way.

This page answers the question: *What is the figure of speech called an apostrophe?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to, or think that the speaker is crazy to talk to things or people who cannot hear.

Examples from the Bible

Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you. (2 Samuel 1:21a ULT)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling these mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

Jerusalem, Jerusalem, who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you. (Luke 13:34a ULT)

Jesus was expressing his feelings for the people of Jerusalem in front of his disciples and a group of Pharisees. By speaking directly to Jerusalem as though its people could hear him, Jesus showed how deeply he cared about them.

He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: “**Altar, altar!** This is what Yahweh says, ‘See, ... on you they will burn human bones.’” (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. But if this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him as he tells **them** his message or feelings about the people or thing that cannot hear him. See the example below.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: “**Altar, altar!** This is what Yahweh says, ‘See, ... on you they will burn human bones.’” (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

He said this about the altar: “This is what Yahweh says **about this altar**. ‘See, ... they will burn people’s bones on **it**.’”

Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on **you**. (2 Samuel 1:21a ULT)

As for these mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on **them**.

(Go back to: [1 Kings 13:2](#))

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples From the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you.
(Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.
>

At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At

the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities, Tyre and Sidon**, than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands** when they eat bread. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**
or:

At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:25; 1:52; 3:19; 6:37; 6:38; 7:13; 7:14; 7:19; 7:30; Notes; 11:3; 12:20; 12:31; 13:1; 13:12; 13:20; 13:32; 14:25; 15:1; 15:3; 15:5; 15:9; 15:16; 15:17; 15:18; 15:19; 15:25; 15:32; 16:2; 16:13; 16:20; 16:26; 16:31; 17:12; 17:13; 19:19; 19:21; 21:3; 21:20; 21:26; 22:13; 22:25](#))

Background Information

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-events\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

Example — The bolded phrases in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because **their village was going to have a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope **they had brought with them** and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day," "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," and "that they had brought with them."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were," rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a feast the next day," and "Peter **was** the best hunter in the village."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

A writer may use background information:

- to help their listeners be interested in the story
- to help their listeners understand something in the story
- to help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- to tell the setting of a story
 - > * Setting includes:
 - > * where the story takes place
 - > * when the story takes place
 - > * who is present when the story begins
 - > * what is happening when the story begins

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

Examples From the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was 86 years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:15-16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

And Jesus himself **was beginning about 30 years old**. He **was the son** (as it was assumed) of Joseph, of Heli, (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story resumes in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Then **it happened on a Sabbath** that he **was going through the grain fields**, and his disciples **were picking and eating the heads of grain, rubbing them in their hands**. But some of the Pharisees said ... (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the phrase, "But some of the Pharisees said"

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kinds of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

- (1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
- (2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

And Jesus himself **was** beginning about 30 years old. He **was** the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph, of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

As here, English sometimes uses the word "and" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.

Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The bolded phrase happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

- (2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.
Abram was 86 years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

"**When Abram was 86 years old**, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

"Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and **he did many other evil things**, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/grammar-connect-words-phrases\]\]](#)

[Introduction of a New Event](#)

(Go back to: [1 Kings 18:2](#))

Biblical Distance

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man's hand.
- The **span** or handspace was the width of a man's hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man's forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **"long" cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as "furlong," which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
"long" cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

Translation Principles

The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.

Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.

Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as ".46 meters" or even as "46 centimeters," readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say "half a meter," "45 centimeters," or "50 centimeters."

Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word "about" to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was 60 stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as "about ten kilometers" from Jerusalem.

When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use "about" in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

Translation Strategies

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half. (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

- (1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half kubits**; its width will be **one kubit and a half**; and its height will be **one kubit and a half**."

- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half cubits (one meter)**; its width will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**; and its height will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**."

- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; ¹ its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; ² and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

The footnotes would look like:

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; ¹ its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; ² and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

The footnotes would look like:

[¹] two and a half cubits
[²] one cubit and a half

(Go back to: [1 Kings 6:2](#); [6:3](#); [6:6](#); [6:10](#); [6:16](#); [6:17](#); [6:23](#); [6:24](#); [7:2](#); [7:6](#); [7:10](#); [7:15](#); [7:16](#); [7:19](#); [7:23](#); [7:27](#); [7:31](#); [7:32](#); [7:35](#); [7:38](#))

Biblical Volume

Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)

Type	Original Measure	Liters
Dry	omer	2 liters
Dry	ephah	22 liters
Dry	homer	220 liters
Dry	cor	220 liters
Dry	seah	7.7 liters
Dry	lethek	114.8 liters
Liquid	metrete	40 liters
Liquid	bath	22 liters
Liquid	hin	3.7 liters
Liquid	kab	1.23 liters
Liquid	log	0.31 liters

Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters,” readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters.”
- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

When the unit of measure is stated

Translation Strategies

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah. (Isaiah 5:10 ULT)

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

"For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one **bat**, and one **homer** of seed will yield only an **efa**."

- (2) Use the measurements given in the UST. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22 liters** and **220 liters** of seed will yield only **22 liters**."

"For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22**, and **ten baskets** of seed will yield only **one basket**."

- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

"For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **six gallons**, and **six and a half bushels** of seed will yield only **20 quarts**."

- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **one bath (six gallons)**, and **one homer (six and a half bushels)** of seed will yield only **an ephah (20 quarts)**."

- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in footnotes.

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only 22 liters¹, and 220 liters² of seed will yield only 22 liters³.”

The footnotes would look like:

- [1] one bath
- [2] one homer
- [3] one ephah

When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULT and UST, add the word “measure.”

When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 measures** of wine, there were only 20. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

Translation Strategies

- (1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
- (2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
- (3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
- (4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty measures** of wine, there were only **20**. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

- (1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.

When you came to a heap of **20** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”

When you came to a heap of **20 amounts** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty amounts** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.

When you came to a heap of **20 baskets** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 jars** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

When you came to a heap for **20 liters** of grain, there were only **ten liters**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 liters** of wine, there were only **20 liters**.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:22](#); [5:11](#); [7:26](#); [7:38](#); [18:32](#))

Biblical Weight

Description

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of weight in the Bible?*

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight,” and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
shekel	1 shekel	11 grams	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	0.57 grams	-
mina	50 shekels	550 grams	1/2 kilogram
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

Translation Principles

The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.

Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.

Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

If you do not use the biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as “.57 grams,” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a gram.”

Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath’s spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as “3300 grams” or “3.3 kilograms,” it can be translated as “about three and one half kilograms.”

When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise, it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

Translation Strategies

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this, you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

■ The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 shekels**. (Exodus 38:29 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

■ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talentes and 2,400 sekeles**."

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

■ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **2,400 kilograms**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

■ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **5,300 pounds**."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

■ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents (2,380 kilograms) and 2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

■ "The bronze from the offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 shekels**. 1"

The footnote would look like:

■ [1] This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

(Go back to: [1 Kings 9:14](#); [9:28](#); [10:10](#); [10:14](#); [10:16](#); [10:17](#); [10:29](#); [16:24](#); [20:39](#))

Direct and Indirect Quotations

Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotations and indirect quotations.

A direct quotation occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: "".

- John said, "I do not know at what time I will arrive."

An indirect quotation occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead and not from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually contains changes in pronouns, and it often includes changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would" to replace the future tense, indicated by "will."

- John said that he did not know at what time he would arrive.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one than the other. There may be a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or as an indirect quotation.

Examples From the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have marked in bold the words that are quoted.

And he commanded him to tell no one, but, "Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."
(Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He commanded him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, "**Go, show yourself to the priest ...**"

And being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God was coming, he answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, 'Look, here it is!' or 'There it is!' For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you." (Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God was coming**,
- Direct quote: he answered them and said, "**The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, 'Look. here it is!' or 'There it is!' For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you.**"
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, '**Look, here it is!**' or, '**There it is!**'

This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-quotations\]\]](#)

Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

- (1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
- (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

And he commanded him to tell no one, but, “**Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.**” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He commanded him to tell no one, but **to go and show himself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for his cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.**

- (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

And he commanded him **to tell no one**, but, “Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He commanded him, “**Tell no one.** But go and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_quotations.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotesinquotes\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:24](#))

Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding

Description

In some languages, phrases that modify a noun can be used with the noun for two different purposes. They can either (1) distinguish the noun from other similar items, or (2) they can give more information about the noun. That information could be new to the reader, or a reminder about something the reader might already know. Other languages use modifying phrases with a noun only for distinguishing the noun from other similar things. When people who speak these languages hear a modifying phrase along with a noun, they assume that its function is to distinguish one item from another similar item.

This page answers the question: *When a phrase is used with a noun, what is the difference between phrases that distinguish the noun from others and phrases that simply inform or remind?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Some languages use a comma to mark the difference between (1) making a distinction between similar items and (2) giving more information about an item. Without the comma, the sentence below communicates that it is making a distinction:

- Mary gave some of the food to **her sister who was very thankful**.
 - If her sister was usually thankful, the phrase “who was thankful” could distinguish this sister of Mary’s from another sister who was not usually thankful.

With the comma, the sentence is giving more information:

- Mary gave some of the food to **her sister, who was very thankful**.
 - This same phrase can be used to give us more information about Mary’s sister. It tells us about how Mary’s sister responded when Mary gave her the food. In this case it does not distinguish one sister from another sister.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Many source languages of the Bible use phrases that modify a noun both for distinguishing the noun from another similar item and also for giving more information about the noun. You (the translator) must be careful to understand which meaning the author intended in each case.
- Some languages use phrases that modify a noun only for distinguishing the noun from another similar item. When translating a phrase that is used for giving more information, translators who speak these languages will need to separate the phrase from the noun. Otherwise, people who read it or hear it will think that the phrase is meant to distinguish the noun from other similar items.

Examples From the Bible

Examples of words and phrases that are used to distinguish one item from other possible items:

(These usually do not cause any problem in translation.)

■ The curtain is to separate **the holy place** from **the most holy place**. (Exodus 26:33b ULT)

The words “holy” and “most holy” distinguish two different places from each other and from any other place.

■ A foolish son is a grief to his father, and bitterness to **the woman who bore him**. (Proverbs 17:25 ULT)

The phrase “who bore him” distinguishes which woman the son is bitterness to. He is not bitterness to all women, but to his mother.

Examples of words and phrases that are used to give added information or a reminder about an item:

(These are a translation issue for languages that do not use these.)

... for **your righteous judgments** are good. (Psalm 119:39b ULT)

The word “righteous” simply reminds us that God’s judgments are righteous. It does not distinguish his righteous judgments from his unrighteous judgments, because all of his judgments are righteous.

How can Sarah, **who is 90 years old**, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17b ULT)

The phrase “who is 90 years old” is the reason that Abraham did not think that Sarah could bear a son. He was not distinguishing one woman named Sarah from another woman named Sarah who was a different age, and he was not telling anyone something new about her age. He simply did not think that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

I will wipe away mankind **whom I have created** from the surface of the earth. (Genesis 6:7 ULT)

The phrase “whom I have created” is a reminder of the relationship between God and mankind. It is the reason God had the right to wipe away mankind. There is not another mankind that God did not create.

Translation Strategies

If readers would understand the purpose of a phrase with a noun, then consider keeping the phrase and the noun together. For languages that use words or phrases with a noun only to distinguish one item from another, here are some strategies for translating phrases that are used to inform or remind.

- (1) Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.
- (2) Use one of your language’s ways for expressing that this is just added information. It may be by adding a small word, or by changing the way the voice sounds. Sometimes changes in the voice can be shown with punctuation marks, such as parentheses or commas.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.

I hate those who serve **worthless** idols (Psalm 31:6 ULT)

By saying “worthless idols,” David was commenting about all idols and giving his reason for hating those who serve them. He was not distinguishing worthless idols from valuable idols.

>

Because idols are worthless, I hate those who serve them.

... for your **righteous** judgments are good. (Psalm 119:39b ULT)

... for your judgments are good **because they are righteous**.

Can Sarah, **who is 90 years old**, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17b ULT)

The phrase “who is 90 years old” is a reminder of Sarah’s age. It tells why Abraham was asking the question. He did not expect that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

>

Can Sarah bear a son **even when she is 90 years old**?

I will call on Yahweh, **who is worthy to be praised**. (2 Samuel 22:4a ULT) There is only one Yahweh. The phrase “who is worthy to be praised” gives a reason for calling on Yahweh.

I will call on Yahweh, because **he is worthy to be praised**

(2) Use one of your language’s ways for expressing that this is just added information.

You are my Son, **whom I love**. I am pleased with you. (Luke 3:22 ULT)

You are my Son. **I love you** and I am pleased with you.

Receiving my love, you are my Son. I am pleased with you.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[*Double Negatives*](#)

(Go back to: [1 Kings 16:26](#))

Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partspeech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not,” such as the bolded parts of these words: “**un**happy,” “**im**possible,” and “**useless**.” Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as “lack” or “reject,” or even “fight” or “evil.”

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

We did this **not** because we have **no** authority ... (2 Thessalonians 3:9a ULT)

And this was **not** done **without** an oath! (Hebrews 7:20a ULT)

Be sure of this—the wicked person will **not** go **un**punished. (Proverbs 11:21a ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent.”
- In some languages, such as French and Spanish, two negative words in a clause do not cancel each other to become a positive. The Spanish sentence, “No vi a nadie,” literally says “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages, a double negative creates a stronger negative statement.
- In some languages, a double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent.”
- In some languages, including the languages of the Bible, a double negative can produce a stronger positive meaning than a simple positive statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is very intelligent.” In this case, the double negative is actually the figure of speech called [litotes](#).

Biblical Greek can do all of the above. So to translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what each double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples From the Bible

The Greek of John 15:5 says:

χωρὶς ἐμοῦ οὐ δύνασθε ποιεῖν οὐδέν

Without me **not** you can do **nothing**

We cannot reproduce this double negative in the English ULT because in English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one. In English, and perhaps in your language, we need to choose only one of the negatives and say either:

Without me, you can do **nothing**.

or:

Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

... in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

This means "in order to be fruitful."

A prophet is **not without** honor (Mark 6:4 ULT)

This means "a prophet is honored."

I do **not** want you to be **ignorant**. (1 Corinthians 12:1)

This means "I want you to be knowledgeable."

Translation Strategies

If the way that the double negative is used in the Bible is natural and has the same meaning as in your language, consider using it in the same way. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.

(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

For we do **not** have a high priest who **cannot** feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15a ULT)

"For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses."

... in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

"... so that they may be fruitful."

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.

χωρὶς ἐμοῦ οὐ δύνασθε ποιεῖν οὐδέεν

Without me **not** you can do **nothing** (John 15:5)

Without me, you can do **nothing**.

or:

Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

...ἰῶτα ἓν ἢ μία κεραία **οὐ μὴ** παρέλθῃ ἀπὸ τοῦ νόμου (Matthew 5:18)

...iota one or one serif **not not** may pass away from the law

...**not even** one iota or one serif may pass away from the law

or:

...**certainly no** iota or serif may pass away from the law

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:9](#); [18:10](#); [20:7](#))

Doublet

Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike [Hendiadys](#), in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

A very similar issue is the repetition of the same word or phrase for emphasis, usually with no other words between them. Because these figures of speech are so similar and have the same effect, we will treat them here together.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples From the Bible

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

The bolded words mean the same thing. Together they mean the people were spread out.

He attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself. (1 Kings 2:32b ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

... like of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, “**Master! Master!** We are perishing!” (Luke 8:24 ULT)

The repetition of “Master” means that the disciples called to Jesus urgently and continually.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

(1) Translate only one of the words or phrases.

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

"You have decided to prepare **false** things to say."

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

"He has one people **very spread out**."

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

... like a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

- English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."

"... like a lamb **without any blemish at all**."

Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, "**Master! Master!** We are perishing!" (Luke 8:24 ULT)

Then they approached {and} woke him up, **urgently shouting, "Master!**
We are perishing!"

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:1](#); [2:4](#); [2:32](#); [7:14](#); [8:28](#); [8:29](#); [8:38](#); [8:45](#); [8:47](#); [8:48](#); [8:49](#); [8:54](#); [8:57](#); [8:66](#); [9:3](#); [9:4](#); [9:6](#); [12:24](#); [13:34](#); [20:22](#); [21:15](#); [22:53](#))

Ellipsis

Description

An ellipsis¹ occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.**
(Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will** sinners **stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

[¹] English has a punctuation symbol which is also called an ellipsis. It is a series of three dots (...) used to indicate an intentional omission of a word, phrase, sentence or more from text without altering its original meaning. This translationAcademy article is not about the punctuation mark, but about the concept of omission of words that normally should be in the sentence.

Two Types of Ellipsis

A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.

An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples From the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis ?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**not as unwise but as wise**. (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not as unwise but **walk** as wise,

Absolute Ellipsis

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

“Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight.”

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinner in the assembly** of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinner will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous.

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight.”

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:2](#); [18:33](#); [20:14](#); [20:18](#); [20:30](#))

Euphemism

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

This page answers the question: *What is a euphemism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

... they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa.
(1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead.” It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples From the Bible

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.
- (2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT) — Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **dig a hole**”

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **have some time alone**”

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

But Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not **slept with a man?**"

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

They found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

"They found Saul and his sons **dead** on Mount Gilboa."

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:21](#); [Notes](#); [2:2](#); [2:10](#); [11:21](#); [11:43](#); [14:20](#); [14:31](#); [15:8](#); [15:24](#); [16:6](#); [16:28](#); [17:17](#); [Notes](#); [18:27](#); [22:20](#); [22:40](#); [22:50](#))

Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

Description

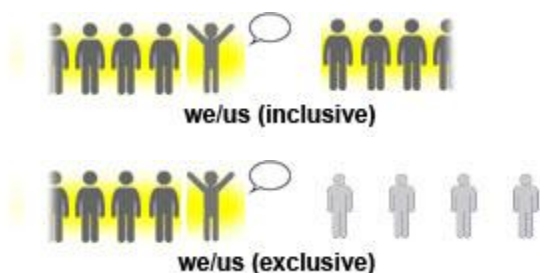
Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an inclusive form that means “I and you” and an exclusive form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

This page answers the question: *What are the exclusive and inclusive forms of “we”?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we,” then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples From the Bible

Exclusive

They said, “There are not more than five loaves of bread and two fish with us—unless **we** go and buy food for all these people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food. They were speaking to Jesus, but Jesus was not going to buy food. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of “we” would use the **exclusive** form there.

We have seen it, and **we** bear witness to it. **We** are announcing to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to **us**. (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the **exclusive** forms in this verse.

Inclusive

The shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15b ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Now it happened that on one of those days, he indeed got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, "Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake." So they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-gendernotations]]

(Go back to: [1 Kings 20:23; 22:15](#))

First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you.”

Description

- First person — This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we.” (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- Second person — This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- Third person — This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it,” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

[Pronouns](#)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

Examples From the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and used “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
“... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “his.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!” (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **mine**?”

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Forms of You](#)

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:27](#); [8:12](#); [8:27](#); [8:29](#); [8:30](#); [16:3](#); [22:8](#))

Forms of You

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-yousingular\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youdual\]\]](#)

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” — Formal or Informal

(Go back to: [1 Kings 18:25](#))

Generic Noun Phrases

Description

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

This page answers the question: *What are generic noun phrases and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

Can **a man** walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?
So is **the man who goes in to his neighbor's wife;**
the one who touches her will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28-29 ULT)

The phrases in bold above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. You (the translator) should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in your language.

Examples From the Bible

The **righteous person** is kept away from trouble and it comes upon **the wicked** instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULT)

The bold phrases above do not refer to a specific person but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

People curse **the man who refuses to sell grain**. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

The phrase “a good man” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase “a man who makes evil plans” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULT to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. If not, here are some strategies you might use.

- (1) Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.
- (2) Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
- (3) Use the word “any,” as in “any person” or “anyone.”
- (4) Use the plural form, as in “people.”

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.

Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

“Yahweh gives favor to **the good man**, but he condemns **the man who makes evil plans**.” (Proverbs 12:2)

(2) Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **a man** who refuses to sell grain.”

(3) Use the word “any,” as in “any person” or “anyone.”

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **any man** who refuses to sell grain.”

(4) Use the plural form, as in “people” (or in this sentence, “men”).

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **men** who refuse to sell grain”

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **whoever** refuses to sell grain.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-gendernotations\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [1 Kings 17:18](#))

Hebrew Months

Description

This page answers the question: *What are the Hebrew months?*

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Aviv, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months that they use.
- Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
- Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
- The Bible may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

Aviv — (This month was called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile.) This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part of April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Aviv 10; the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

Ziv — This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on Western calendars.

Sivan — This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on Western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

Tammuz — This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on Western calendars.

Ab — This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on Western calendars.

Elul — This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on Western calendars.

Ethanim — This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

Bul — This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on Western calendars.

Kislev — This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on Western calendars.

Tebeth — This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on Western calendars.

Shebat — This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rainfall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on Western calendars.

Adar — This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

Examples From the Bible

Today you are going out, in **the month of Aviv**. (Exodus 13:4 ULT)

You must eat unleavened bread from evening of the fourteenth day **in the first month of the year**, until evening of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULT)

Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (See [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#).)

(1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

(2) Use the names for months that people know.

(3) State clearly what season the month occurred in.

(4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the Hebrew name of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the month of Aviv**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt. (Exodus 23:15b ULT)

It will always be a statute for you that in **the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month**, you must humble yourselves and do no work. (Leviticus 16:29a ULT)

(1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the first month of the year**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

(2) Use the months that people know.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the month of March**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

It will always be a statute for you that **on the day I choose in late September** you must humble yourselves and do no work.

(3) State clearly what season the month occurs in.

It will always be a statute for you that **in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month**, you must humble yourselves and do no work.

(4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.

It will always be a statute for you that in **the day I choose in early autumn**¹ you must humble yourselves and do no work.

The footnote would look like:

^[1] The Hebrew says, "the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month."

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

(Go back to: [1 Kings 6:1](#); [6:37](#); [6:38](#); [8:2](#); [12:32](#))

Hendiadys

Description

When a speaker expresses a single idea by using two words that are connected with “and,” it is called a hendiadys. In a hendiadys, the two words work together. Usually one of the words is the primary idea and the other word further describes the primary one.

This page answers the question: *What is hendiadys and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

... his own **kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

Though “kingdom” and “glory” are both nouns, “glory” actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a **kingdom of glory** or **a glorious kingdom**.

Two phrases connected by “and” can also be a hendiadys when they refer to a single person, thing, or event.

while we look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

Titus 2:13 contains two hendiadyses. “The blessed hope” and “appearing of the glory” refer to the same thing and serve to strengthen the idea that the return of Jesus Christ is greatly anticipated and wonderful. Also, “our great God” and “Savior Jesus Christ” refer to one person, not two.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Often a hendiadys contains an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that the second word is further describing the first one.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that only one person or thing is meant, not two.

Examples From the Bible

For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

“A mouth” and “wisdom” are nouns, but in this figure of speech “wisdom” describes what comes from the mouth.

If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

“Willing” and “obedient” are adjectives, but “willing” describes “obedient.”

Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
- (2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
- (3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

(5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

For I will give you **wise words** ...

Walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own glorious kingdom**.

(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

for I will give you **words of wisdom**.

You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own kingdom of glory**.

(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

If you are **willingly obedient** ...

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

The adjective "obedient" can be substituted with the verb "obey."

if you **obey willingly** ...

(4) and (5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

We look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

The noun "glory" can be changed to the adjective "glorious" to make it clear that Jesus' appearing is what we hope for. Also, "Jesus Christ" can be moved to the front of the phrase and "great God and Savior" put into a relative clause that describes the one person, Jesus Christ.

We look forward to receiving **what we are longing for, the blessed and glorious appearing of Jesus Christ, who is our great God and Savior**.

(Go back to: [1 Kings 10:6](#))

How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name first indeed means “king of righteousness,” and then also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples From the Bible

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beer Lahai Roi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me.”

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

Saul was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)

But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.

(5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**.

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you.”

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

She called his name **Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’)**, and she said,
“For out of the water I drew him.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?”
Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

... a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)

... a young man named **Paul** 1

The footnote would look like:

[1] Most versions say “Saul” here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called “Paul.”

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

^[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]

(Go back to: [Introduction to 1 Kings](#); [1 Kings 1:3](#); [1:5](#); [1:7](#); [1:8](#); [1:9](#); [1:11](#); [1:33](#); [1:38](#); [1:44](#); [2:7](#); [2:8](#); [2:39](#); [4:2](#); [4:3](#); [4:4](#); [4:5](#); [4:6](#); [4:8](#); [4:9](#); [4:10](#); [4:11](#); [4:12](#); [4:13](#); [4:14](#); [4:15](#); [4:16](#); [4:17](#); [4:18](#); [4:19](#); [4:31](#); [6:1](#); [6:37](#); [6:38](#); [7:21](#); [7:46](#); [8:2](#); [10:28](#); [11:1](#); [11:5](#); [11:7](#); [11:14](#); [11:18](#); [11:19](#); [11:20](#); [11:23](#); [11:24](#); [11:25](#); [11:26](#); [11:29](#); [11:33](#); [11:40](#); [12:2](#); [12:15](#); [12:18](#); [12:22](#); [14:17](#); [14:21](#); [14:25](#); [14:31](#); [15:27](#); [16:24](#); [17:1](#); [17:3](#); [17:5](#); [17:9](#); [19:19](#); [20:1](#); [20:26](#); [20:30](#); [21:1](#))

Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

It rains here every night.

The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.

The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.

The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount or frequency of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Hyperbole

In hyperbole, a figure of speech that uses exaggeration, a speaker deliberately describes something with an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **stone upon stone in you**. (Luke 19:44b ULT)

This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the wisdom of the Egyptians**. (Acts 7:22a ULT)

This hyperbole means that he had learned everything an Egyptian education could offer.

Generalization

This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame**, but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words**. (Matthew 6:7)

This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.

If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

Examples From the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed ... (Mark 9:43a ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel with 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The bolded phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you **everything** and is true and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27b ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

When they found him, they also said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

Can **any good thing** come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46b ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

A lazy hand causes a person to be poor, but the hand of the diligent person gains riches. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and it reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

- Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

They saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat. (John 6:19b ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

- Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”

> Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways
> and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
- (4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame. (Proverbs 13:18a ULT)

In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

When you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the **Gentiles do**, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7 ULT)

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

Almost all the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.
or:

Many of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:3](#); [1:9](#); [1:31](#); [1:39](#); [1:52](#); [2:15](#); [3:28](#); [4:20](#); [8:2](#); [8:5](#); [8:62](#); [8:63](#); [8:65](#); [10:2](#); [10:24](#); [10:27](#); [12:1](#); [12:16](#); [12:18](#); [12:20](#); [14:13](#); [14:18](#); [14:23](#); [14:26](#); [15:27](#); [16:16](#); [18:10](#); [18:19](#))

Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: “If the sun stopped shining ...” “What if the sun stopped shining ...” “Suppose the sun stopped shining ...” and “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. Hypothetical expressions occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen and so that they will understand why the event was imagined.

This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, are not happening now, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions comprise a phrase that starts with “if.”)

- If he had lived to be 100 years old, he would have seen his grandson’s grandson. (But he did not.)
- If he lived to be 100 years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
- If he lives to be 100 years old, he will see his grandson’s grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
- Translators need to know their own language’s ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

Examples From the Bible

Hypothetical Situations in the Past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

Here in Matthew 11:21, Jesus said that **if** the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles, and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.

Martha then said to Jesus, “Lord, **if you had been here, my brother would not have died.**” (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus would have come sooner so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner and her brother did die.

Hypothetical Situations in the Present

And no man puts new wine into old wineskins. **But if he did do that, the new wine would burst the wineskins, and it would be spilled out, and the wineskins would be destroyed.** (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, **if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out?**” (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

Hypothetical Situation in the Future

Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved. But for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show how bad those days will be—so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

Expressing Emotion About a Hypothetical Situation

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

The Israelites said to them, “**If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.** For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. **I wish that you were either cold or hot!** (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

Translation Strategies

Find out how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_hypo.

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:44](#); [8:46](#); [8:47](#); [8:48](#); [22:28](#))

Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase “come under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

Purpose: An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples From the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

■ The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

■ the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
- (2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

■ Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your **flesh and bone**." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

■ Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

■ Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

■ He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

■ I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

■ I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

- (2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

■ Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

■ **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

■ My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)

■ I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1 General Notes](#); [1:20](#); [1:25](#); [1:49](#); [1:50](#); [2:3](#); [2:4](#); [2:23](#); [2:32](#); [2:33](#); [2:40](#); [3:7](#); [4:29](#); [5:3](#); [6:11](#); [Notes](#); [8:20](#); [8:48](#); [8:58](#); [10:5](#); [10:8](#); [11:2](#); [11:9](#); [11:26](#); [11:33](#); [11:38](#); [12:6](#); [12:15](#); [12:22](#); [12:32](#); [12:33](#); [13:2](#); [13:20](#); [13:21](#); [14:5](#); [14:25](#); [16:1](#); [16:7](#); [16:9](#); [16:12](#); [16:24](#); [16:31](#); [17:1](#); [17:2](#); [17:8](#); [17:14](#); [17:21](#); [18:1](#); [18:15](#); [18:20](#); [19:9](#); [19:11](#); [20:4](#); [20:7](#); [20:39](#); [20:40](#); [21:17](#); [21:28](#); [22:4](#))

Introduction of a New Event

Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages, people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

This page answers the question: *How do we introduce a new event in a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-events\]\]](#)

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

Examples From the Bible

In the days of Herod, king of Judea, **there was a certain priest named Zechariah**, from the division of Abijah. And **his wife was** from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first bolded phrase tells when it happened, and the next two bolded phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “And it happened that” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

And it happened that in his performing as priest before God, in the order of his division, according to the custom of the priesthood, he came up by lot to enter into the temple of the Lord to burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way. His mother, Mary, was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The bolded sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

Now after Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king, behold, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem. (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened **after** Jesus was born.

Now in those days John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea. (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

Then Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to John, to be baptized by him. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**.
This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages, it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

6 Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. 7 Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a statement of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies:

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
- (2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: "another time" or "someone."
- (3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.
- (4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, indicate that the event would actually happen later in the story.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**.
This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

There was a **man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**. One night he came to Jesus.

One night **a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**, came to Jesus.

As he passed by, **he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, sitting** at the tax collector's tent, and he said to him ... (Mark 2:14a ULT)

As he passed by, **Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting** at the tax collector's tent. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

As he passed by, **there was a man sitting** at the tax collector's tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

As he passed by, **there was a tax collector** sitting at the tax collector's tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

(2) If readers would expect certain information, but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as "another time," or "someone."

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT) — If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase "after that" can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.

After that, when Noah was 600 years old, the flood came upon the earth.

Again he began to teach beside the sea. (Mark 4:1a ULT) — In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone's house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the sea.

Another time Jesus began to teach people again beside the sea.

Jesus went to the sea and **began to teach people again** there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT)

Now this is what happened when Noah was 600 years old and the flood came upon the earth.

This part tells about what happened when the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was 600 years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Now this is what happened when Noah was 600 years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because **God had said that the waters of the flood would come.**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Background Information](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-participants]]

(Go back to: [1 Kings 21:1](#))

Litotes

Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by negating a word or phrase that means the opposite of the meaning that he intends. For example, someone could intend to communicate that something is extremely good by describing it as "not bad." The difference between a litotes and a **double negative** is that a litotes heightens the positive meaning beyond what a plain positive statement would do, and a double negative does not. In the example above, the literal meaning of "not bad," taken as a plain double negative, would be "acceptable" or even "good." But if the speaker intended it as a litotes, then the meaning is "very good" or "extremely good."

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

Examples From the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was **very** useful.

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a **lot** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

But you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
are **not the least** among the leaders of Judah,
for from you will come a ruler
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a **very important city**.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

"For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you **did much good**."

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

"Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."

or:

"Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter."

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:4](#); [4:27](#); [8:56](#); [9:5](#))

Merism

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

"I am **the alpha and the omega**," says the Lord God,
"the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty." (Revelation 1:8 ULT)

I am **the alpha and the omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end**.
(Revelation 22:13, ULT)

Alpha and omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

... I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth** ..., (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples From the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This bolded phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means "everywhere."

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The bolded phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means "everyone."

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
- (2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything**.

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

In all places, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth**.

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

He will bless **all those** who honor him, regardless of whether they are **young or old**.

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:25](#); [4:33](#); [5:4](#); [8:29](#); [8:59](#); [22:31](#))

Metaphor

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, “The girl I love is a red rose.”

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer’s task is to understand in what way they are alike.

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[Simile](#)

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love.” This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker’s **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a “passive” metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being “active.” Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these “dead metaphors.” Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table **leg**,” “family **tree**,” “book **leaf**” (meaning a page in

a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction “up” (the Image) often represents the concepts of “more” or “better” (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going **up**,” “A **highly** intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going **down**,” and “I am feeling very **low**.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat **up**.” More is spoken of as up.
- “Let us **go ahead** with our debate.” Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- “You **defend** your theory well.” Argument is spoken of as war.
- “A **flow** of words.” Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see [Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

And he said to them, “Go and tell that fox ...” (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator's special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples From the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you," the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay. You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are “we” and “you,” and the Image(s) are “clay” and “potter.” The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that **neither the clay nor God’s people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees**.” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we did not take bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

- (1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
- (2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
- (3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See [Simile](#).
- (4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
- (5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
- (6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
- (7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
- (8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet**. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him**.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

But Jesus said to them, "He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart**." (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay**. You **are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14b ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick**.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay**. You are our **potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood**. You are our **carver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string**. You are the **weaver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)

I will make you to become **people who gather men**.
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns.

(Go back to: 1 Kings 1:52; 3:3; 3:6; 3:7; 3:14; 3:26; 5:3; 6:12; 7:14; 8:17; 8:18; 8:20; 8:23; 8:25; 8:35; 8:36; 8:38; 8:58; 8:61; 9:4; 9:7; 11:6; 11:11; 11:31; 11:38; 11:43; Notes; 12:4; 12:9; 12:10; 12:11; 12:14; 14:8; 14:9; 14:10; 14:13; 14:14; 14:15; 14:20; 14:22; 14:31; 15:3; 15:4; 15:5; 15:8; 15:11; 15:19; 15:24; 15:26; 15:28; 15:30; 15:34; 16:2; 16:3; 16:6; 16:7; 16:9; 16:10; 16:13; 16:19; 16:21; 16:25; 16:26; 16:28; 16:30; 16:31; 16:34; 17:20; 20:10; 20:32; 21:3; 21:9; 21:12; 21:20; 21:21; 21:25; 22:11; 22:13; 22:17; 22:20; 22:40; 22:43; 22:50; 22:52)

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

... and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples From the Bible

The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

(2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, “**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.” (Luke 22:20 ULT)

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

“The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David.”

or:

“The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David.”

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

“Who warned you to flee from God’s coming **punishment**?”

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies.

(Go back to: 1 Kings 1:13; 1:17; 1:27; 1:30; 1:37; 1:46; 1:48; 2:4; 2:5; 2:6; 2:7; 2:9; 2:12; 2:16; 2:17; 2:20; 2:24; 2:28; 2:31; 2:32; 2:33; 2:34; 2:37; 2:45; 2:46; 3:2; 3:6; 3:11; 3:12; 4:20; 4:25; 5:3; 5:5; 6:1; 6:4; 6:5; 6:6; 6:9; 6:10; 6:12; 6:14; 6:15; 6:16; 6:19; 6:20; 6:21; 6:22; 6:23; 6:27; 6:28; 6:29; 6:30; 6:31; 6:32; 6:33; 6:35; 6:36; 6:38; 7:1; 7:2; 7:7; 7:8; 7:18; 7:21; 7:23; 7:27; 7:36; 7:37; 7:38; 7:39; 7:40; 7:42; 7:44; 7:45; 7:46; 7:47; 7:48; 8:15; 8:16; 8:17; 8:18; 8:20; 8:21; 8:24; 8:25; 8:29; 8:38; 8:44; 8:48; 8:58; 9:3; 9:5; 9:7; 9:16; 9:25; 10:1; 10:7; 10:9; 10:24; 11:2; 11:3; 11:4; 11:9; 11:12; 11:26; 11:28; 11:31; 11:32; 11:33; 11:34; 11:36; 11:38; 12:16; 12:18; 12:19; 12:21; 12:23; 12:26; 12:27; 12:28; 12:31; 13:2; 14:8; 14:13; 14:21; 14:22; 14:23; 14:24; 14:26; 14:27; 15:13; 15:18; 15:21; 15:29; 16:9; 16:24; 16:34; 17:5; 17:16; 17:22; 17:24; 18:9; 18:19; 18:20; 18:24; 18:29; 18:32; 18:37; 18:46; 19:17; 19:18; 20:7; 20:11; 20:13; 20:22; 20:28; 20:33; 20:36; 20:42; 21:8; 22:3; 22:6; 22:12; 22:15; 22:16; 22:22; 22:23; 22:36; 22:38)

Nominal Adjectives

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

The rich man had huge numbers of flocks and herds.
(2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

He will not be rich; his wealth will not last. (Job 15:29a ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

The rich must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15b ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples From the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.

Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

Blessed are **people who are meek**.

(Go back to: [1 Kings 21:8](#); [21:11](#))

Numbers

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words ("five") or as numerals ("5"). Some numbers are very large, such as "two hundred" (200), "twenty-two thousand" (22,000), or "one hundred million" (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was **86** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about **3,000** of the people died. (Exodus 32:28b ULT)

Here the number three thousand (3,000) is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word "about" shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples From the Bible

When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, 800, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands**. (Genesis 24:60b ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

- (1) Write numbers using numerals.
- (2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.
- (3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14a ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for the numbers one through ten and use numerals for all numbers above ten.

When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died.
(Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

(Go back to: [1 Kings 5:15; 5:16; 6:2; 7:20; 7:30; 7:42; 8:63; 8:65; 9:14; 9:23; 9:28; 10:10; 10:14; 10:16; 10:17; 10:26; 10:29; 11:3; 12:21; 14:20; 14:21; 15:1; 15:9; 15:10; 17:12; 18:4; 18:13; 18:19; 18:22; 18:31; 18:33; 18:43; 19:8; 19:18; 19:19; 20:1; 20:15; 20:29; 20:30; 22:1; 22:6; 22:31; 22:42; 22:51](#))

Ordinal Numbers

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

And God has indeed appointed some in the church, **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then miracles. (1 Corinthians 12:28a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples From the Bible

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

- (1) Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim ... **another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim ... **the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **the first** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the second** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the third** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. **The fourth** river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The **last** river is the Euphrates.

- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

They cast **24** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim ... Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [1 Kings 6:1](#); [6:37](#); [6:38](#); [8:2](#); [8:66](#); [12:32](#); [14:25](#))

Parallelism

Description

Parallelism is a poetic device in which two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. The following are some of the different kinds of parallelism.

- The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is called synonymous parallelism.
- The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
- The second completes what is said in the first.
- The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

This article will only discuss synonymous parallelism, the kind in which the two parallel phrases mean the same thing, because that is the kind that presents a problem for translation. Note that we use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term "doublet" for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

In the poetry of the original languages, synonymous parallelism has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and raises it above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or, since it is in the Bible, they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it would be confusing, rather than beautiful. They would not understand that the repetition of the idea in different words serves to emphasize the idea.

Examples From the Bible

Your word is a lamp to my feet
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live. That is the single idea. The words "lamp" and "light" are similar in meaning because they refer to light. The words "my feet" and "my path" are related because they refer to a person walking. Walking is a metaphor for living.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything. "To rule over" is the same idea as putting things "under his feet," and "the works of your [God's] hands" is the same idea as "all things."

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Yahweh sees everything a person does
and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The first phrase and the second phrase mean the same thing. There are three ideas that are the same between these two phrases. "Sees" corresponds to "watches," "everything...does" corresponds to "all the paths...takes," and "a person" corresponds to "he."

Praise Yahweh, all you nations;
exalt him, all you peoples! (Psalm 117:1 ULT)

Both parts of this verse tell people everywhere to praise Yahweh. The words 'Praise' and 'exalt' mean the same thing. The words 'Yahweh' and 'him' refer to the same person. The terms 'all you nations' and 'all you peoples' refer to the same people.

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people,
and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2b ULT)

The two parts of this verse say that Yahweh has a serious disagreement with his people, Israel. These are not two different disagreements or two different groups of people.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."
- (3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like "very," "completely," or "all."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

Until now you have deceived me with your lies.

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The phrase "all the paths he takes" is a metaphor for "all he does."

Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT)

This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet
(Psalm 8:6 ULT)

You have certainly made him to rule over everything that you have created.

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

All you have done is lie to me.

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Personification](#)

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2 General Notes](#); [6:12](#); [8:47](#); [8:50](#); [9:6](#); [9:9](#); [10:13](#); [12:27](#); [14:10](#); [15:29](#); [16:31](#); [17:22](#); [18:5](#); [18:26](#); [18:29](#); [19:18](#); [20:15](#); [22:36](#))

Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1a ULT)

Or sin:

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT)

People also use personification because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things such as wealth as if they were relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples From the Bible

You cannot **serve** God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom **call** out? Does not Understanding **raise her voice**? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they were woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

- (1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
- (2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
- (3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

Sin is at your door, **waiting to attack you**.

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — This can be translated with the word “as.”

Sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does as it waits to attack a person..**

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Even the **winds and the sea obey him**. (Matthew 8:27b ULT) — The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

NOTE: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Apostrophe](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [1 Kings 13:2; 18:38](#))

Pronouns

Description

Pronouns are words that people might use instead of using a noun when referring to someone or something. Some examples are "I," "you," "he," "it," "this," "that," "himself," "someone," and others. The personal pronoun is the most common type of pronoun.

This page answers the question: *What are pronouns, and what kinds of pronouns are in some languages?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show whether the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may provide. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

Person

- First Person — The speaker and possibly others (I, me, we, us)
 - [Exclusive and Inclusive "We"](#)
- Second Person — The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
 - [Forms of You](#)
- Third Person — Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

Number

- Singular — one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural — more than one (we, you, they)
 - Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups
- Dual — two (Some languages have pronouns specifically for two people or two things.)

Gender

- Masculine — he
- Feminine — she
- Neuter — it

Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

Other Types of pronouns

Reflexive Pronouns refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- John saw **himself** in the mirror. The word “himself” refers to John.

Interrogative Pronouns are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: what, which, who, whom, whose.

- **Who** built the house?

Relative Pronouns mark a relative clause. The relative pronouns, who, whom, whose, which and that give more information about a noun in the main part of the sentence. Sometimes, the relative adverbs when and where can also be used as relative pronouns.

- I saw the house **that John built**. The clause “that John built” tells which house I saw.
- I saw the man **who built the house**. The clause “who built the house” tells which man I saw.

Demonstrative Pronouns are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else. The demonstrative pronouns are: this, these, that, and those.

- Have you seen **this** here?
- Who is **that** over there?

Indefinite pronouns are used when no particular noun is being referred to. The indefinite pronouns are: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, and some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

- He does not want to talk to **anyone**.
- **Someone** fixed it, but I do not know who.
- **They** say that **you** should not wake a sleeping dog.

In the last example, “they” and “you” just refer to people in general.

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:13](#); [1:21](#); [1:33](#); [1:36](#); [1:37](#); [1:51](#); [3:6](#); [3:7](#); [3:20](#); [8:28](#))

Proverbs

Description

Proverbs are short sayings that give wise advice or teach something that is generally true about life. People enjoy proverbs because they give a lot of wisdom in few words. Proverbs in the Bible often use metaphor and parallelism. Proverbs should not be understood as absolute and unchangeable laws. Rather, proverbs offer general advice to a person about how to live his life.

This page answers the question: *What are proverbs, and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Metaphor](#)

[Parallelism](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

Hatred stirs up conflicts, but love covers over all offenses. (Proverbs 10:12 ULT)

Here is another example from the book of Proverbs.

Look at the ant, you lazy person, consider her ways, and be wise. It has no commander, officer, or ruler, yet it prepares its food in the summer, and during the harvest it stores up what it will eat. (Proverbs 6:6-8 ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Each language has its own ways of saying proverbs. There are many proverbs in the Bible. They need to be translated in the way that people say proverbs in your language so that people recognize them as proverbs and understand what they teach.

Examples From the Bible

A good name is to be chosen over great riches,
and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

This means that it is better to be a good person and to have a good reputation than it is to have a lot of money.

Like vinegar on the teeth and smoke in the eyes,
so is the sluggard to those who send him. (Proverbs 10:26 ULT)

This means that a lazy person is very annoying to those who send him to do something.

The way of Yahweh protects those who have integrity,
but it is destruction for the wicked. (Proverbs 10:29 ULT)

This means that Yahweh protects people who do what is right, but he destroys those who are wicked.

Translation Strategies

If translating a proverb literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

- (1) Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.
- (2) If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them

with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.

(3) Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.

(4) Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.

A good name is to be chosen over great riches,
and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

Here are some ideas for ways that people might say a proverb in their language.

It is better to have a good name than to have great riches,
and to be favored by people than to have silver and gold.
Wise people choose a good name over great riches,
and favor over silver and gold.
Try to have a good reputation rather than great riches.
Will riches really help you?
I would rather have a good reputation.

(2) If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.

Like **snow in summer** or rain in harvest,
so a fool does not deserve honor. (Proverbs 26:1 ULT)
It is not natural for **a cold wind to blow in the hot season** or for it to rain
in the harvest season;
And it is not natural to honor a foolish person.

(3) Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.

Do not boast about tomorrow,
for you do not know what a day may bring. (Proverbs 27:1a ULT)
Do not count your chickens before they hatch.

(4) Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

There is a generation that curses their father
and does not bless their mother.
There is a generation that is pure in their own eyes,

and yet they are not washed of their filth. (Proverbs 30:11-12 ULT)

People who do not respect their parents think that they are righteous,
and they do not turn away from their sin.

(Go back to: [1 Kings 20:11](#))

Reflexive Pronouns

Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using reflexive pronouns. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: "myself," "yourself," "himself," "herself," "itself," "ourselves," "yourselves," and "themselves." Other languages may have other ways to show this.

This page answers the question: *What are reflexive pronouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone did something alone
- To show that someone or something was alone

Examples From the Bible

Reflexive pronouns are used to show the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence.

If **I** should testify about **myself**, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULT)

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and **many** went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to purify **themselves**. (John 11:55 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence.

Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2 ULT)

So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, just as he was, in the boat. There also were other boats with him. Then a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full of water. But **Jesus himself** was in the stern, asleep on the cushion. (Mark 4:36-38a ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone did something alone.

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone or something was alone.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. **It** was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

- (1) In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
- (2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
- (3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
- (4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”
- (5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) In some languages people modify the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

If I should testify about **myself** alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31)

“If I should **self-testify** alone, my testimony would not be true.”

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to **purify themselves**. (John 11:55)

“Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out from country before the Passover in order to **self-purify**.”

- (2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

He himself took our sickness and bore our diseases. (Matthew 8:17 ULT)

“**It was he who** took our sickness and bore our diseases.”

Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2)

“**It was not Jesus who** was baptizing, but his disciples were.”

- (3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

But Jesus said this to test Philip, for he **himself** knew what he was going to do. (John 6:6)

- (4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15)

“When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again **alone** up the mountain.”

- (5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)

“He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up and lying **in its own place.**”

(Go back to: [1 Kings 13:7](#); [14:23](#); [19:4](#); [19:18](#); [19:19](#))

Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes\]\]](#)

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

But those who stood by said, **“Are you insulting the high priest of God?”**(Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking if he was insulting God's high priest. Rather, they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purposes: of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples From the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that, since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord would come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden ... (Luke 13:18b-19a ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Add the answer after the question.
- (2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
- (3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
- (4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Add the answer after the question.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? **Of course not!** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed. (Luke 13:18-19a ULT)

This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed ...

Are you insulting the high priest of God? (Acts 23:4b ULT) (Acts 23:4 ULT)

You should not insult God's high priest!

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone?**

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:6](#); [1:11](#); [1:13](#); [2:22](#); [2:42](#); [2:43](#); [3:9](#); [8:27](#); [9:13](#); [11:41](#); [12:16](#); [14:6](#); [14:29](#); [15:7](#); [15:23](#); [15:31](#); [16:5](#); [16:14](#); [16:20](#); [16:27](#); [17:20](#); [18:9](#); [18:17](#); [18:21](#); [19:9](#); [20:13](#); [20:32](#); [21:7](#); [21:19](#); [21:20](#); [21:29](#); [22:3](#); [22:16](#); [22:18](#); [22:24](#); [22:39](#); [22:45](#))

Simile

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. The simile focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than.”

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged, **like sheep not having a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as the serpents** and harmless **as the doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep; Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with both of the items being compared.

Examples From the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier** of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

Just as the lightning flashing from a place under the sky shines to another place under the sky, so will the Son of Man be. (Luke 17:24b ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But in context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lightning flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**.

- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith **as a grain of mustard** ... (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metaphor](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:29](#); [7:26](#); [7:41](#); [14:10](#); [14:15](#); [Notes](#); [20:27](#); [22:17](#))

Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their heads up and down to mean “yes” or turn their heads from side to side to mean “no.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In other cultures it means “yes.”

In the Bible, people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible, we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture today.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples From the Bible

And behold, a man came whose name was Jairus, and he was a ruler of the synagogue. And **falling at the feet of Jesus**, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into him and will eat with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

- (1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.
- (2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT) — Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) — Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: [1 Kings 22:11](#))

Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

■ **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

■ So **the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?” (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example From the Bible

■ Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

■ **“My soul** magnifies the Lord.” (Luke 1:46b ULT)

■ **“I** magnify the Lord.”

So **the Pharisees** said to him ... (Mark 2:24a ULT)

■ **A representative of the Pharisees** said to him ...

Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metonymy](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]

(Go back to: 1 Kings 1:20; 2:9; 2:44; 8:32; 8:52; 9:3; 9:10; 9:17; 9:26; 10:12; 10:16; 10:17; 10:18; 11:16; 11:24; 12:1; 12:16; 12:20; 13:31; 14:12; 14:25; 14:26; 14:30; 15:3; 15:6; 15:7; 15:14; 15:27; 16:7; 16:16; 18:6; 18:20; 18:26; 20:6; 20:20; 20:21; 20:26; 21:1; 21:5; 21:7; 22:17; 22:29)

Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: “How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?”

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

They said to him, “We have nothing here except five loaves of **bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God’s commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples From the Bible

So I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals**. (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep’s clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

They offered him wine mixed with **myrrh**, but he did not drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

■ Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

- (1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
- (2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
- (3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
- (4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.
- (5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

■ Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are inwardly they are **ravenous wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

■ Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **inwardly they are very hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

■ "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

■ We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish.

- (2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

■ Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

■ Your sins ... will be white like **milk**.

■ Your sins ... will be white like **the moon**.

- (3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) — People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word “medicine.”

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

“We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT) — People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

We have nothing here except five loaves of **baked crushed seed bread** and two fish.

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **wild dogs**

“We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked food** and two fish.

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

to him who made **the sun and the moon**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate\]\]](#)

[How to Translate Names](#)

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:23](#); [4:33](#); [5:18](#); [6:15](#); [10:11](#); [10:18](#); [10:22](#); [17:4](#); [19:4](#))



unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Version 32

Abiathar

Definition:

Abiathar was a high priest for the nation of Israel during the time of King David.

- When King Saul killed the priests, Abiathar escaped and went to David in the wilderness.
- Abiathar and another high priest named Zadok served David faithfully throughout his reign.
- After David's death, Abiathar helped Adonijah try to become king instead of Solomon.
- Because of this, King Solomon removed Abiathar from the priesthood.

(See also: [Zadok](#), Saul (OT), [David](#), [Solomon](#), [Adonijah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:32-34
- 1 Kings 1:7
- 1 Kings 2:22-23
- 2 Samuel 17:15
- Mark 2:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0054, G00080

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:7](#); [1:19](#); [1:25](#); [1:42](#); [2:22](#); [2:26](#); [2:27](#); [2:35](#); [4:4](#))

Abijah

Facts:

Abijah was a king of Judah who reigned from 915 to 913 B.C. He was a son of King Rehoboam. There were also several other men named Abijah in the Old Testament:

- Samuel's sons Abijah and Joel were leaders over the people of Israel at Beersheba. Because Abijah and his brother were dishonest and greedy, the people asked Samuel to appoint a king to rule them instead.
- Abijah was one of the temple priests during the time of King David.
- Abijah was one of King Jeroboam's sons.
- Abijah was also a chief priest who returned with Zerubbabel to Jerusalem from the Babylonian captivity.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:3
- 1 Samuel 8:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:2
- 2 Chronicles 13:19
- Luke 1:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0029, G00070

(Go back to: [1 Kings 14:1](#); [14:31](#); [15:1](#); [15:7](#); [15:8](#))

Abner

Definition:

Abner was a cousin of King Saul in the Old Testament.

- Abner was the chief commander of Saul's army, and introduced young David to Saul after David killed Goliath the giant.
- After King Saul's death, Abner appointed Saul's son Ishbosheth as king in Israel, while David was appointed king in Judah.
- Later, Abner was treacherously killed by David's chief commander, Joab.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 26:26-28
- 1 Kings 2:5-6
- 1 Kings 2:32
- 1 Samuel 17:55-56
- 2 Samuel 3:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0074

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:5](#); [2:32](#))

abomination, abominable

Definition:

The term “abomination” is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

- The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an “abomination.” This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and didn’t want to associate with them or be near them.
- Some of the things that the Bible calls “an abomination to Yahweh” include lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
- In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an “abomination of desolation” that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “abomination” could also be translated by “something God hates” or “something disgusting” or “disgusting practice” or “very evil action.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase “is an abomination to” could include “is greatly hated by” or “is disgusting to” or “is totally unacceptable to” or “causes deep disgust.”
- The phrase “abomination of desolation” could be translated as “defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed” or “disgusting thing that causes great sorrow.”

(See also: adultery, desecrate, desolate, [false god](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Ezra 9:1-2
- Genesis 46:34
- Isaiah 1:13
- Matthew 24:15
- Proverbs 26:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0887, H6292, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, G09460

(Go back to: [1 Kings 11:5](#); [11:7](#); [14:24](#); [21:26](#))

Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), Chaldea, Sarah, [Isaac](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 3:8
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:4
- Genesis 22:2
- James 2:23
- Matthew 1:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **5:4** Then God changed **Abram's** name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **5:5** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **6:1** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **6:4** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:2** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0087, H0085, G00110

(Go back to: [1 Kings 18:36](#))

Absalom

Facts:

Absalom was the third son of King David. He was known for his handsome appearance and fiery temperament.

- When Absalom's sister Tamar was raped by their half-brother, Amnon, Absalom made a plan to have Amnon killed.
- After the murder of Amnon, Absalom fled to the region of Geshur (where his mother Maacah was from) and stayed there three years. Then King David sent for him to come back to Jerusalem, but did not allow Absalom to come into his presence for two years.
- Absalom turned some of the people against King David and led a revolt against him.
- David's army fought against Absalom and killed him. David was very grieved when this happened.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Geshur, Amnon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:1-3
- 1 Kings 1:6
- 2 Samuel 15:2
- 2 Samuel 17:1-4
- 2 Samuel 18:18
- Psalm 3:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0053

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:6](#); [2:7](#); [2:28](#); [15:2](#); [15:10](#))

Adam

Facts:

Adam was the first person whom God created. He and his wife Eve were made in the image of God.

- God formed Adam from dirt and breathed life into him.
- Adam's name sounds similar to the Hebrew word for "red dirt" or "ground."
- The name "Adam" is the same as the Old Testament word for "mankind" or "human being."
- All people are descendants of Adam and Eve.
- Adam and Eve disobeyed God. This separated them from God and caused sin and death to come into the world.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [death](#), descendant, Eve, image of God, [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 2:14
- Genesis 3:17
- Genesis 5:1
- Genesis 11:5
- Luke 3:38
- Romans 5:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:9** Then God said, "Let us make human beings in our image to be like us."
- **1:10** This man's name was **Adam**. God planted a garden where **Adam** could live, and put him there to care for it.
- **1:12** Then God said, "It is not good for man to be alone." But none of the animals could be **Adam's** helper.
- **2:11** And God clothed **Adam** and Eve with animal skins.
- **2:12** So God sent **Adam** and Eve away from the beautiful garden.
- **49:8** When **Adam** and Eve sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- **50:16** Because **Adam** and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0120, G00760

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:31](#); [8:38](#); [8:39](#); [8:46](#); [13:2](#))

Adonijah

Definition:

Adonijah was the fourth son of King David.

- Adonijah tried to take over as king of Israel after the deaths of his brothers Absalom and Amnon.
- God, however, had promised that David's son Solomon would be king, so Adonijah's plot was overthrown and Solomon was made king.
- When Adonijah tried a second time to make himself king, Solomon put him to death.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0138

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:5](#); [1:7](#); [1:8](#); [1:9](#); [1:11](#); [1:13](#); [1:18](#); [1:24](#); [1:25](#); [1:41](#); [1:42](#); [1:43](#); [1:49](#); [1:50](#); [1:51](#); [2:13](#); [2:19](#); [2:21](#); [2:22](#); [2:23](#); [2:24](#); [2:28](#))

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- The term “adversary” may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:14
- Isaiah 9:11
- Job 6:23
- Lamentations 4:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G04760, G04800, G21890, G21900, G52270

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:11](#); [5:4](#); [8:33](#); [8:37](#); [8:44](#); [8:46](#); [8:48](#); [11:14](#); [11:23](#); [11:25](#); [21:20](#))

advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, to “counsel” could be translated as to “advise” or to “make suggestions” or to “exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: exhort, Holy Spirit, [wise](#))

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H6440, H6963, H6098, H7592, H8458, G10110, G10120, G11060, G48230, G48250

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:12](#); [12:6](#); [12:8](#); [12:9](#); [12:13](#); [12:14](#); [12:28](#))

afflict, affliction, distress

Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- Sometimes God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships with the intention for them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to suffer from some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.
- In some Old Testament contexts, the idea of “afflicting oneself” or “afflicting one’s soul” means to abstain from eating food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “afflict” someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- A phrase like “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.”
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See also: [leprosy](#), [plague](#), [suffer](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 1:6
- Amos 5:12
- Colossians 1:24
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G23460, G23470, G38040

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:26](#); [8:35](#); [11:39](#))

Ahab

Facts:

Ahab was a very evil king who reigned over the northern kingdom of Israel from 875 to 854 BC.

- King Ahab influenced the people of Israel to worship false gods.
- The prophet Elijah confronted Ahab and told him there would be a severe drought for three and a half years as punishment for the sins that Ahab caused Israel to commit.
- Ahab and his wife Jezebel did many other evil things, including using their power to kill innocent people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Baal](#), [Elijah](#), [Jezebel](#), kingdom of Israel, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:1-2
- 1 Kings 20:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 21:6
- 2 Kings 9:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:2** Elijah was a prophet when **Ahab** was king over the kingdom of Israel. **Ahab** was an evil man who encouraged people to worship a false god named Baal.
- **19:3 Ahab** and his army looked for Elijah, but they could not find him.
- **19:5** After three and a half years, God told Elijah to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with **Ahab** because he was going to send rain again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0256

(Go back to: [1 Kings 16:28; 16:29; 16:30; 16:33; 17:1; 18:1; 18:2; 18:3; 18:5; 18:6; 18:9; 18:12; 18:16; 18:17; 18:20; 18:41; 18:42; 18:44; 18:45; 18:46; 19:1; 20:2; 20:13; 20:14; 21:1; 21:2; 21:3; 21:4; 21:8; 21:15; 21:16; 21:18; 21:20; 21:21; 21:24; 21:25; 21:27; 21:29; 22:20; 22:39; 22:40; 22:41; 22:49; 22:51](#))

Ahaziah

Facts:

Ahaziah was the name of two kings: one ruled over the kingdom of Israel, and the other ruled over the kingdom of Judah.

- Judah's King Ahaziah was the son of King Jehoram. He reigned for one year (841 B.C.) and then was killed by Jehu. Ahaziah's young son Joash eventually took his place as king.
- Israel's King Ahaziah was the son of King Ahab. He reigned for two years (850-49 B.C.). He died from injuries suffered in a fall at his palace, and his brother Joram became king.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jehu](#), [Ahab](#), [Jeroboam](#), [Joash](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 22:39-40
- 2 Chronicles 22:2
- 2 Chronicles 25:23-24
- 2 Kings 11:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0274

(Go back to: [1 Kings 22:40](#); [22:49](#); [22:51](#))

Ahijah

Facts:

Ahijah was the name of several different men in the Old Testament. The following are some of these men:

- Ahijah was the name of a priest in the time of Saul.
- A man named Ahijah was a secretary during the reign of King Solomon.
- Ahijah was the name of a prophet from Shiloh who predicted that the nation of Israel would be divided into two kingdoms.
- The father of King Baasha of Israel was also named Ahijah.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Baasha](#), [Shiloh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:27-28
- 1 Kings 21:21-22
- 1 Samuel 14:19
- 2 Chronicles 10:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0281

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:3](#); [11:29](#); [11:30](#); [12:15](#); [14:2](#); [14:4](#); [14:5](#); [14:6](#); [14:18](#); [15:27](#); [15:29](#); [15:33](#); [21:22](#))

alien, foreigner, sojourn

Definition:

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.” To sojourn is to live temporarily as a foreigner.

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- A sojourner is another word for a temporary foreign resident.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 2:17
- Acts 7:29-30
- Deuteronomy 1:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:27
- Luke 17:18
- Matthew 17:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0312, H0628, H0776, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3937, H4033, H5236, H5237, H6154, H8453, G02410, G02450, G05260, G09150, G18540, G35810, G39270, G39410

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:41](#); [8:43](#); [11:1](#); [11:8](#))

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, [false god](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:9
- James 2:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:9** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:6** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G10410, G23790

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:50](#); [1:51](#); [1:53](#); [2:28](#); [2:29](#); [3:4](#); [6:20](#); [6:22](#); [7:48](#); [8:22](#); [8:31](#); [8:54](#); [8:64](#); [9:25](#); [12:32](#); [12:33](#); [13:1](#); [13:2](#); [13:3](#); [13:4](#); [13:5](#); [13:32](#); [16:32](#); [18:26](#); [18:30](#); [18:32](#); [18:35](#); [19:10](#); [19:14](#))

amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded

Definition:

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean “struck with amazement” or “standing outside of (oneself).” These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be “extremely surprised” or “very shocked.”
- Related words include “marvelous” (amazing, wonderful), “amazement,” and “astonishment.”
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: [miracle](#), sign)

Bible References:

- Acts 8:9-11
- Acts 9:20-22
- Galatians 1:6
- Mark 2:10-12
- Matthew 7:28
- Matthew 15:29-31
- Matthew 19:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0926, H2865, H3820, H4159, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H8074, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, G06390, G15680, G15690, G16050, G16110, G18390, G22840, G22850, G22960, G22970, G22980, G40230, G45920, G50590

(Go back to: [1 Kings 9:8](#))

Ammon, Ammonite

Facts:

The “people of Ammon” or the “Ammonites” were a people group that lived on the east side of the Jordan River across from the Israelites.

- The book of Genesis reports that the Ammonite nation was descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.
- The term “Ammonitess” refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as “Ammonite woman.”
- At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow him to do it.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [curse](#), [Jordan River](#), Lot)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 19:1-3
- Ezekiel 25:2
- Genesis 19:38
- Joshua 12:1-2
- Judges 11:27
- Zephaniah 2:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5983, H5984, H5985

(Go back to: [1 Kings 11:1](#); [11:5](#); [11:7](#); [11:33](#); [14:21](#); [14:31](#))

Amorite

Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who inhabited the land of Canaan and lived on both sides of the Jordan River.

- Their name means “high one,” which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The book of Genesis reports that the Amorites were descended from Canaan, the grandson of Noah.
- The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the “sin of the Amorites,” which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

Bible References:

- Amos 2:9
- Ezekiel 16:3
- Genesis 10:16
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 9:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:7** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- **15:8** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them.
- **15:9** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**.
- **15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0567

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:19](#); [9:20](#); [21:26](#))

ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, [son](#), Son of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:2
- Acts 7:32
- Acts 7:45
- Acts 22:3
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 7:4-6
- John 4:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 3:7
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 1:7
- Matthew 3:9
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 4:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0001, H0002, H0025, H0369, H0539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G05400, G10800, G37370, G39620, G39640, G39660, G39670, G39700, G39710, G39950, G42450, G42690, G46130

(Go back to: 1 Kings 1:6; 1:21; 2:10; 2:12; 2:24; 2:26; 2:31; 2:32; 2:44; 3:3; 3:6; 3:7; 3:14; 5:1; 5:3; 5:5; 6:12; 7:14; 7:51; 8:1; 8:15; 8:17; 8:18; 8:20; 8:21; 8:24; 8:25; 8:26; 8:34; 8:40; 8:48; 8:53; 8:57; 8:58; 9:4; 9:5; 9:9; 11:4; 11:6; 11:12; 11:17; 11:21; 11:27; 11:33; 11:43; 12:4; 12:6; 12:9; 12:10; 12:11; 12:14; 13:11; 13:12; 13:22; 14:15; 14:20; 14:22; 14:31; 15:3; 15:8; 15:11; 15:12; 15:15; 15:19; 15:24; 15:26; 16:6; 16:28; 18:18; 19:4; 19:20; 20:34; 21:3; 21:4; 22:40; 22:43; 22:46; 22:50; 22:52; 22:53)

angel, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh,” has more than one possible meaning: (1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” (2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh, who looked like an angel.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: chief, [head](#), [messenger](#), Michael, [ruler](#), [servant](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 2:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 2:13
- Mark 8:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 1:20
- Zechariah 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:3** The **angel** responded to Zechariah, "I was sent by God to bring you this good news."
- **23:6** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God.
- **25:8** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** "I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G00320, G07430, G24650

(Go back to: [1 Kings 19:5](#); [19:7](#))

anoint, anointed, anointing

Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. In biblical times, there were several reasons for anointing someone with oil.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God. (This and the other uses are symbolic actions, see [Symbolic Action](#).)
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.
- In biblical times, a woman might anoint herself with perfume to make herself more sexually attractive.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: Christ, consecrate, high priest, King of the Jews, [priest](#), [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:20
- 1 John 2:27
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 4:27-28
- Amos 6:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 5:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0430, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4397, H4398, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, H8136, G00320, G02180, G07430, G14720, G20250, G34620, G55450, G55480

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:34](#); [1:39](#); [1:45](#); [5:1](#); [19:15](#); [19:16](#))

appoint, appointed

Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 8:11
- Acts 3:20
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 3:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0561, H0977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G03220, G06060, G12990, G13030, G19350, G25250, G27490, G42870, G42960, G43840, G49290, G50210, G50870

(Go back to: [1 Kings 11:28](#); [Notes](#))

Arabia, Arabian

Facts:

Arabia is the largest peninsula in the world, covering nearly 3,000,000 square kilometers. It is located southeast of Israel, and is bordered by the Red Sea, the Arabian Sea, and the Persian Gulf.

- The term “Arabian” is used to refer to someone who lives in Arabia or to something that is connected with Arabia.
- The earliest people to live in Arabia were grandchildren of Shem. Other early inhabitants of Arabia included Abraham’s son Ishmael and his descendants, as well as descendants of Esau.
- The desert region where the Israelites wandered for 40 years was located in Arabia.
- After becoming a believer in Jesus, the apostle Paul spent a few years in the desert of Arabia.
- In his letter to the Christians in Galatia, Paul mentioned that Mt. Sinai was located in Arabia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Esau, Galatia, Ishmael, Shem, [Sinai](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:14-15
- Acts 2:11
- Galatians 1:15-17
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Jeremiah 25:24-26
- Nehemiah 2:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6152, H6153, H6163, G06880, G06900

(**Go back to:** [1 Kings 10:15](#))

Aram, Aramean, Aramaic, Aram of Damascus

Definition:

"Aram" was the name of two men in the Old Testament. It was also the name of a region northeast of Canaan, where modern-day Syria is located.

- The people living in Aram became known as "Arameans" and spoke "Aramaic." Jesus and other Jews of his time also spoke Aramaic.
- One of Shem's sons was named Aram. Another man named Aram was a cousin of Rebekah. It is probable that the region of Aram was named after one of these two men.
- Aram later became known by the Greek name "Syria."
- The term "Paddan Aram" means "plain of Aram" and this plain was located in the northern part of Aram.
- Some of Abraham's relatives lived in the city of Haran, which was located in "Paddan Aram."
- In the Old Testament, sometimes the terms "Aram" and "Paddan Aram" refer to the same region.
- The term "Aram Naharaim" may mean "Aram of Two Rivers." This region was located in the northern part of Mesopotamia and was to the east of "Paddan Aram."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Mesopotamia, Paddan Aram, Rebekah, Shem, Syria)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:17-19
- 2 Samuel 8:6
- Amos 1:5
- Ezekiel 27:16
- Genesis 31:19-21
- Hosea 12:12
- Psalm 60:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0130, H0726, H0758, H0761, H0762, H0763, H1834, H7421

(Go back to: [1 Kings 10:29](#); [11:25](#); [15:18](#); [19:15](#); [20:1](#); [20:20](#); [20:21](#); [20:22](#); [20:23](#); [20:26](#); [20:27](#); [20:28](#); [20:29](#); [22:1](#); [22:3](#); [22:11](#); [22:31](#); [22:35](#))

ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh

Definition:

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron's staff and a jar of manna.

- The term "ark" here could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God's covenant with them.
- The ark of the covenant was located in the "most holy place."
- God's presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
- During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
- Many English versions translate the term "covenant decrees" literally as "testimony." This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God's covenant with his people. It is also translated as "covenant law."

(See also: ark, [covenant](#), atonement, [holy place](#), [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 6:15
- Exodus 25:10-11
- Hebrews 9:5
- Judges 20:27
- Numbers 7:89
- Revelation 11:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0727, H1285, H3068

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:26](#); [3:15](#); [6:19](#); [8:1](#); [8:3](#); [8:4](#); [8:5](#); [8:6](#); [8:7](#); [8:9](#); [8:21](#))

Asa

Facts:

Asa was a king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah for forty years, from 913 B.C. to 873 B.c.

- King Asa was a good king who removed many idols of false gods and caused the Israelites to start worshiping Yahweh again.
- Yahweh gave King Asa success in his warfare against other nations.
- Later in his reign, however, King Asa stopped trusting Yahweh and became sick with a disease that eventually killed him.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:14-16
- 1 Kings 15:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 14:3
- Jeremiah 41:9
- Matthew 1:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0609

(Go back to: [1 Kings 15:8](#); [15:9](#); [15:11](#); [15:13](#); [15:14](#); [15:16](#); [15:17](#); [15:18](#); [15:20](#); [15:22](#); [15:23](#); [15:24](#); [15:25](#); [15:28](#); [15:32](#); [15:33](#); [16:8](#); [16:10](#); [16:15](#); [16:23](#); [16:29](#); [22:41](#); [22:43](#); [22:46](#))

Asher

Facts:

Asher was Jacob's eighth son. He was Zilpah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Asher" or "Asher."
- His name sounds similar to a Hebrew word meaning "blessed, happy."
- The tribe of Asher settled in the northwest corner of Canaan, on the Mediterannian Sea. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Asher" refers to the land given to the tribe of Asher.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), Zilpah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:13
- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 4:16
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Luke 2:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0836

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:16](#))

Asherah, Asherah pole, Ashtoreth

Definition:

Asherah was the name of a goddess that was worshiped by Canaanite people groups during Old Testament times. "Ashtoreth" may be another name for "Asherah," or it could be the name of a different goddess that was very similar.

- The term "Asherah poles" refers to carved wooden images or carved trees that were made to represent this goddess.
- Asherah poles were often set up near altars of the false god Baal, who was thought of as Asherah's husband. Some people groups worshiped Baal as the sun god and Asherah or Ashtoreth as the moon goddess.
- God commanded the Israelites to destroy all the carved images of Asherah.
- Some Israelite leaders such as Gideon, King Asa, and King Josiah obeyed God and led the people in destroying these idols.
- But other Israelite leaders such as King Solomon, King Manasseh, and King Ahab did not get rid of the Asherah poles and influenced the people to worship these idols.

(See also: [false god](#), [Baal](#), Gideon, [image](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:4
- 2 Kings 21:3
- Isaiah 27:9
- Judges 3:7-8
- Micah 5:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0842, H6252, H6253

(Go back to: [1 Kings 11:5](#); [11:33](#); [14:15](#); [14:23](#); [15:13](#); [16:33](#); [18:19](#))

asleep, fall asleep, sleep, sleeper, sleepless

Definition:

These terms can have figurative meanings relating to death.

- To “sleep” or “be asleep” can be a metaphor meaning to “be dead.” (See: Metaphor)
- The expression “fall asleep” means start sleeping, or, figuratively, die.
- To “sleep with one’s fathers” means to die, as one’s ancestors have, or to be dead, as one’s ancestors are.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “fall asleep” could be translated as to “suddenly become asleep” or to “start sleeping” or to “die,” depending on its meaning.
- Note: It is especially important to keep the figurative expression in contexts where the audience did not understand the meaning. For example, when Jesus told his disciples that Lazarus was “sleeping” they thought he meant that Lazarus was just sleeping naturally. In this context, it would not make sense to translate this as “he died.”
- Some project languages may have a different expression for death or dying which could be used if the expressions “sleep” and “asleep” do not make sense.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:27-29
- 1 Thessalonians 4:14
- Acts 7:60
- Daniel 12:2
- Psalms 44:23
- Romans 13:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1957, H3462, H3463, H7290, H7901, H8139, H8142, H8153, H8639, G08790, G18520, G18530, G25180, G28370, G52580

(Go back to: [1 Kings 19:5](#))

assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [hyperbole](#))
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: council)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:14
- Acts 7:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 4:20-21
- Nehemiah 8:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G15770, G38310, G48630, G48640, G48710, G49050

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:1](#); [8:2](#); [8:5](#); [8:14](#); [8:22](#); [8:55](#); [8:65](#); [12:3](#); [12:20](#); [12:21](#); [18:19](#); [18:20](#); [20:1](#); [22:6](#))

assign, assigned, assignment, reassign

Facts:

The term “assign” or “assigned” refers to appointing someone to do a specific task or designating something to be provided to one or more people.

- The prophet Samuel foretold that King Saul would “assign” the best young men of Israel to serve in the military.
- Moses “assigned” to each of the twelve tribes of Israel a portion of the land of Canaan for them to live on.
- Under the Old Testament law, certain tribes of Israel were assigned to serve as priests, artists, singers and builders.
- Depending on the context, “assign” could be translated as “give” or “appoint” or “choose for the task of.”
- The term “assigned” could be translated as “appointed” or “given the task.”

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [appoint](#), Samuel, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:48
- Daniel 12:13
- Jeremiah 43:11
- Joshua 18:2
- Numbers 4:27-28
- Psalms 78:55

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2506, H3335, H4487, H4941, H5157, H5307, H5414, H5596, H5975, H6485, H7760, G33070

(Go back to: [1 Kings 14:27](#); [20:25](#))

ax

Definition:

An ax is tool used for cutting or chopping trees or wood.

- An ax usually has a long wooden handle with a large metal blade attached to the end.
- If your culture has a tool that is similar to an ax, the name of that tool could be used to translate “ax.”
- Other ways to translate this term could include “tree-cutting tool” or “wooden tool with blade” or “long-handled wood-chopping tool.”
- In one Old Testament event, the blade of an ax fell into a river, so it is best if the tool that is described has a blade that can come loose from the wooden handle.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:7-8
- 2 Kings 6:5
- Judges 9:48-49
- Luke 3:9
- Matthew 3:10
- Psalm 35:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1631, H4621, H7134, G05130

(Go back to: [1 Kings 6:7](#))

Azariah

Facts:

Azariah was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- One Azariah is best known by his Babylonian name, Abednego. He was one of many Israelites from Judah who were captured by Nebuchadnezzar's army and taken to live in Babylon. Azariah and his fellow Israelites Hananiah and Mishael refused to worship the Babylonian king, so he had them thrown into a blazing furnace as punishment. But God protected them and they were not harmed at all.
- Uzziah king of Judah was also known as "Azariah."
- Another Azariah was an Old Testament high priest.
- In the time of the prophet Jeremiah, a man named Azariah wrongly urged the Israelites to disobey God by leaving their homeland.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Babylon, Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, Jeremiah, Uzziah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:38
- 1 Kings 4:2
- 2 Chronicles 15:1
- Daniel 1:6-7
- Jeremiah 43:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5838

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:2](#); [4:5](#))

Baal

Facts:

“Baal” means “lord” or “master” and was the name of the primary false god that was worshiped by the Canaanites.

- There were also local false gods that had “Baal” as part of their names, such as “Baal of Peor.” Sometimes all these gods together are referred to as “the Baals.”
- Some people had names that included the word “Baal” in them.
- The worship of Baal included evil practices such as sacrificing children and using prostitutes.
- At different time periods throughout their history, the Israelites also became deeply involved in Baal worship, following the example of the pagan nations around them.
- During the reign of King Ahab, God’s prophet Elijah set up a test to prove to the people that Baal does not exist and that Yahweh is the only true God. As a result, the prophets of Baal were destroyed and the people started worshiping Yahweh again.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Asherah](#), [Elijah](#), [false god](#), [prostitute](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:31
- 1 Samuel 7:3-4
- Jeremiah 2:7-8
- Judges 2:11
- Numbers 22:41

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:2** Ahab was an evil man who encouraged people to worship a false god named **Baal**.
- **19:6** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 prophets of **Baal**, came to Mount Carmel. Elijah said to the people, “How long will you keep changing your mind? If Yahweh is God, serve him! If **Baal** is God, serve him!”
- **19:7** Then Elijah said to the prophets of **Baal**, “Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire.”
- **19:8** Then the prophets of **Baal** prayed to **Baal**, “Hear us, O **Baal**!”
- **19:12** So the people captured the prophets of **Baal**. Then Elijah took them away from there and killed them.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1120, G08960

(Go back to: [1 Kings 16:31](#); [16:32](#); [18:18](#); [18:19](#); [18:21](#); [18:22](#); [18:25](#); [18:26](#); [18:40](#); [19:18](#); [22:53](#))

Baasha

Facts:

Baasha was one of Israel's evil kings, who influenced the Israelites to worship idols.

- Baasha was the third king of Israel and reigned for twenty-four years, during the time when Asa was king of Judah.
- He was a military commander who became king by killing the previous king, Nadab.
- During Baasha's reign there were many wars between the kingdoms of Israel and Judah, especially with King Asa of Judah.
- Baasha's many sins caused God to eventually remove him from office by his death.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asa](#), [false god](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:17
- 2 Kings 9:9
- Jeremiah 41:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1201

(Go back to: [1 Kings 15:16](#); [15:17](#); [15:19](#); [15:21](#); [15:22](#); [15:27](#); [15:28](#); [15:32](#); [15:33](#); [16:1](#); [16:3](#); [16:4](#); [16:5](#); [16:6](#); [16:7](#); [16:8](#); [16:11](#); [16:12](#); [16:13](#); [21:22](#))

barley

Definition:

The term “barley” refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

- The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
- Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
- When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
- Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
- If barley is not known, this could be translated as “grain called barley” or “barley grain.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: grain, [thresh](#), [wheat](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:12-14
- Job 31:40
- Judges 7:14
- Numbers 5:15
- Revelation 6:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8184, G29150, G29160

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:28](#))

Bashan

Facts:

Bashan was a region of land east of the Sea of Galilee. It covered an area that is now part of Syria and the Golan Heights.

- An Old Testament city of refuge called “Golan” was located in the region of Bashan.
- Bashan was a very fertile region known for its oak trees and pasturing animals.
- Genesis 14 records that Bashan was the site of a war between several kings and their nations.
- During Israel's wanderings in the desert after their escape from Egypt, they took possession of part of the region of Bashan.
- Years later, King Solomon obtained supplies from that region.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [oak](#), [Sea of Galilee](#), Syria)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:13
- Amos 4:1
- Jeremiah 22:20-21
- Joshua 9:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1316

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:13](#); [4:19](#))

Bathsheba

Facts:

Bathsheba was the wife of Uriah, a soldier in King David's army. After Uriah's death, she became the wife of David, and the mother of Solomon.

- David committed adultery with Bathsheba while she was married to Uriah.
- When Bathsheba became pregnant with David's child, David caused Uriah to be killed in battle.
- David then married Bathsheba and she gave birth to their child.
- God punished David for his sin by causing the child to die several days after he was born.
- Later, Bathsheba gave birth to another son, Solomon, who grew up to become king after David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [Solomon](#). [Uriah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:4-5
- 1 Kings 1:11
- 2 Samuel 11:3
- Psalm 51:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:10** One day, when all of David's soldiers were away from home fighting battles, he got up from an afternoon nap and saw a beautiful woman bathing. Her name was **Bathsheba**.
- **17:11** A short time later **Bathsheba** sent a message to David saying that she was pregnant.
- **17:12** **Bathsheba's** husband, a man named Uriah, was one of David's best soldiers.
- **17:13** After Uriah was killed, David married **Bathsheba**.
- **17:14** Later, David and **Bathsheba** had another son, and they named him Solomon.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1339

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:11](#); [1:15](#); [1:16](#); [1:28](#); [1:31](#); [2:13](#); [2:18](#); [2:19](#))

bear, bearer, carry

Facts:

The term “bear” literally means “carry” something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means “give birth to” a child.
- To “bear a burden” means to “experience difficult things.” These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
- A common expression in the Bible is “bear fruit,” which means “produce fruit” or “have fruit.”
- The expression “bear witness” means “testify” or “report what one has seen or experienced.”
- The statement that “a son will not bear the iniquity of his father” means that he “will not be held responsible for” or “will not be punished for” his father’s sins.
- In general, this term could be translated as “carry” or “be responsible for” or “produce” or “have” or “endure,” depending on the context.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [burden](#), [Elisha](#), endure, fruit, [iniquity](#), [report](#), [sheep](#), [strength](#), [testimony](#), [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- Lamentations 3:27

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H3201, H3205, H5375, H5445, H5449, H6030, H6509, H6779, G01420, G04300, G09410, G10800, G16270, G25920, G31400, G41600, G47220, G48280, G50410, G50880, G53420, G54090, G55760

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:6](#); [3:17](#); [3:18](#); [3:21](#); [11:20](#); [13:2](#))

beast

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “beast” is often just another way of saying “animal.”

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term “livestock” is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include “creature” or “created thing” or “animal” or “wild animal,” depending on the context.

(See also: authority, Daniel, [livestock](#), [nation](#), power, reveal, Beelzebul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Samuel 17:44
- 2 Chronicles 25:18
- Jeremiah 16:1-4
- Leviticus 7:21
- Psalms 49:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0338, H0929, H1165, H2123, H2416, H2423, H2874, H3753, H4806, H7409, G22260, G23410, G23420, G29340, G49680, G50740

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:33](#))

Beersheba

Facts:

In Old Testament times, Beersheba was a city located about 45 miles southwest of Jerusalem in a desert area that is now called the Negev.

- The desert surrounding Beersheba was the wilderness area where Hagar and Ishmael wandered after Abraham sent them away from his tents.
- The name of this city means “well of the oath.” It was given this name when Abraham swore an oath to not punish King Abimelech’s men for seizing control of one of Abraham’s wells.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Abimelech, [Abraham](#), Hagar, Ishmael, [Jerusalem](#), [oath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 3:20
- 2 Samuel 17:11
- Genesis 21:14
- Genesis 21:31
- Genesis 46:1
- Nehemiah 11:30

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0884

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:25](#); [19:3](#))

believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

4. unbelief

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”

- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: [believe](#), apostle, Christian, disciple, faith, trust)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:6
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 9:16-18
- Habakkuk 1:5-7
- Mark 6:4-6
- Mark 1:14-15
- Luke 9:41
- John 1:12
- Acts 6:5
- Acts 9:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 3:3
- 1 Corinthians 6:1
- 1 Corinthians 9:5
- 2 Corinthians 6:15
- Hebrews 3:12
- 1 John 3:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:4** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **4:8** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:6** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”
- **43:1** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:3** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:6** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:1** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:9** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus.
- **46:9** It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called “Christians.”
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0539, H0540, G05430, G05440, G05690, G05700, G05710, G39820, G41000, G41020, G41030, G41350

(Go back to: [1 Kings 10:7](#); [Notes](#))

Benaiah

Definition:

Benaiah was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- Benaiah son of Jehoiada was one of David's mighty men. He was a skilled warrior and was put in charge of David's bodyguards.
- When Solomon was being made king, Benaiah helped him overthrow his enemies. He eventually became commander of the Israelite army.
- Other men in the Old Testament named Benaiah include three Levites: a priest, a musician, and a descendant of Asaph.

(See also: Asaph, [Jehoiada](#), [Levite](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 4:36
- 1 Kings 1:8
- 2 Samuel 23:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1141

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:8](#); [1:10](#); [1:26](#); [1:32](#); [1:36](#); [1:38](#); [1:44](#); [2:25](#); [2:29](#); [2:30](#); [2:34](#); [2:35](#); [2:46](#); [4:4](#))

Benjamin, Benjaminite

Facts:

Benjamin was Jacob's twelfth son. He was Rachel's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Benjamin" or "Benjamin" or the "Benjaminites."
- In Hebrew, the name Benjamin means "son of my right hand."
- The tribe of Benjamin settled just northwest of the Dead Sea, north of Jerusalem.
- King Saul was from the tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), Rachel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 2:8
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:18
- Genesis 42:4
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 3:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G09580

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:8](#); [4:18](#); [12:21](#); [12:23](#); [15:22](#))

Beth Shemesh

Facts:

Beth Shemesh was the name of a Canaanite city approximately 30 kilometers west of Jerusalem.

- The Israelites captured Beth Shemesh during the time of Joshua's leadership.
- Beth Shemesh was a city that was set aside as a place for the Levite priests to live.
- When the Philistines were taking the captured ark of the covenant back to Jerusalem, Beth Shemesh was the first city where they stopped with it.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [Canaan](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Joshua](#), [Levite](#), [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:9
- 1 Samuel 6:9
- Joshua 19:20-22
- Judges 1:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1053

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:9](#))

Bethel

Facts:

Bethel was a city located just north of Jerusalem in the land of Canaan. It was formerly called "Luz."

- After receiving God's promises for the first time, Abram (Abraham) built an altar to God near Bethel. The actual name of the city was not yet Bethel at that time, but it was usually referred to as "Bethel," which was better known.
- When fleeing from his brother Esau, Jacob stayed overnight near this city and slept outdoors on the ground there. While he was sleeping, he had a dream showing angels going up and down a ladder to heaven.
- This city did not have the name "Bethel" until after Jacob named it that. To make this clear, some translations may translate it as "Luz (later called Bethel)" in the passages about Abraham, as well as when Jacob first arrives there (before he changed the name).
- Bethel is mentioned often in the Old Testament and was a place where many important events happened.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [altar](#), [Jacob](#), [Jerusalem](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 35:1
- Hosea 10:15
- Judges 1:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1008

(Go back to: [1 Kings 12:29](#); [12:32](#); [12:33](#); [13:1](#); [13:4](#); [13:10](#); [13:11](#); [13:32](#); [16:34](#))

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:3
- James 1:25
- Luke 6:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 9:5
- Romans 4:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:7** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **1:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **1:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **4:4** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **4:7** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”

- **7:3** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0833, H0835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G17570, G21270, G21280, G21290, G31060, G31070, G31080, G60500

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:47](#); [1:48](#); [2:45](#); [Notes](#); [5:7](#); [8:14](#); [8:15](#); [8:55](#); [8:56](#); [8:66](#); [10:9](#))

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body. In the Bible, the term “blood” is often used figuratively to mean “life” and/or several other concepts.

- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: [bloodshed](#); [flesh](#); [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 2:20
- Acts 5:28
- Colossians 1:20
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 4:11
- Psalms 16:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:3** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:3** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:5** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **13:9** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.”
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G01290, G01300, G01310

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:32](#); [2:37](#); [18:28](#); [21:19](#); [22:35](#); [22:38](#))

bloodshed

Definition:

The term “bloodshed” refers to the death of human beings due to murder, war, or some other violent act.

- This term literally means “shedding of blood,” which refers to when blood comes out of a person’s body from an open wound.
- The term “bloodshed” is often used to refer to widespread killing of people.
- It is also used as a general reference to the sin of murder.

Translation Suggestions:

- “The bloodshed” could be translated as “the killing of people” or “the many people who were killed.”
- “Through bloodshed” could also be translated as “by killing people.”
- “Innocent bloodshed” could be translated as “killing innocent people.”
- “Bloodshed follows bloodshed” could be translated as “they keep killing people” or “the killing of people goes on and on” or “they have killed many people and continue to do that” or “people keep killing other people.”
- Another figurative use, “bloodshed will pursue you,” could be translated as “your people will continue to experience bloodshed” or “your people will keep being killed” or “your people will continue to be at war with other nations and people will keep dying.”

(See also: [blood](#); [slaughter](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 22:6-8
- Genesis 9:5-7
- Hebrews 9:21-22
- Isaiah 26:21
- Matthew 23:29-31

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:5](#); [2:31](#); [2:33](#))

Boaz

Facts:

Boaz was an Israelite man who lived during the time when there were judges ruled Israel. He married a Moabite woman named Ruth and became both the great grandfather of King David and an ancestor of Jesus Christ.

- He was a relative of an Israelite woman named Naomi who had returned to Israel after her husband and sons died in Moab.
- Boaz “redeemed” Naomi’s widowed daughter-in-law Ruth by marrying her and giving her a future with a husband and children.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Moab](#), redeem, Ruth)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:12
- 2 Chronicles 3:17
- Luke 3:30-32
- Matthew 1:5
- Ruth 2:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1162

(Go back to: [1 Kings 7:21](#))

bow and arrow, a bow

Definition:

This is a type of weapon that consists of shooting arrows from a stringed bow. In Bible times it was used for fighting against enemies and for killing animals for food.

- The bow is made out of wood, bone, metal, or other hard material, such as a deer's antler. It has a curved shape and is strung tightly with a string, cord, or vine.
- An arrow is a thin shaft with a sharp, pointed head on one end. In ancient times, the arrows could be made of a variety of materials such as wood, bone, stone, or metal.
- Bows and arrows are commonly used by hunters and warriors.
- The term "arrow" is also sometimes used figuratively in the Bible to refer to enemy attacks or divine judgment.

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:16
- Habakkuk 3:9-10
- Job 29:20-22
- Lamentations 2:4
- Psalms 58:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2671, H7198, G51150

(Go back to: [1 Kings 22:34](#))

bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:18
- Exodus 20:5
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:5
- Matthew 2:11
- Revelation 3:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0086, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G11200, G25780, G28270, G40980

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:16](#); [1:31](#); [8:54](#); [19:18](#))

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called “unleavened bread” in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate “unleavened bread” during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#)) Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”
- The phrase “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The term “bread from heaven” refers to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”

(See also: Passover, tabernacle, [temple](#), unleavened bread, yeast)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 9:13
- Mark 6:38
- Matthew 4:4
- Matthew 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G01060, G07400, G42860

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:22](#); [5:9](#); [7:48](#); [11:18](#); [13:8](#); [13:9](#); [13:15](#); [13:16](#); [13:17](#); [13:18](#); [13:19](#); [13:22](#); [13:23](#); [14:3](#); [17:6](#); [17:11](#); [18:4](#); [18:13](#); [21:4](#); [21:5](#); [21:7](#))

breath, breathe

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “breathe” and “breath” are often used figuratively to refer to giving life or having life.

- The Bible teaches that God “breathed into” Adam the breath of life. It was at that point that Adam became a living soul.
- When Jesus breathed on the disciples and told them to “receive the Spirit,” he was probably literally breathing out air onto them to symbolize the Holy Spirit coming to them.
- Sometimes the terms “breathing” and “breathing out” are used to refer to speaking.
- The figurative expression “breath of God” or “breath of Yahweh” often refers to God’s wrath being poured out on rebellious or godless nations. It communicates his power.

Translation Suggestions

- The expression “breathed his last” is a figurative way of saying “he died.” It could also be translated as “he took his last breath” or “he stopped breathing and died” or “he breathed in air one last time.”
- Describing the Scriptures as “God-breathed” means that God spoke or inspired the words of the Scriptures which human authors then wrote down. It is probably best, if possible, to translate “God-breathed” somewhat literally since it is difficult to communicate the exact meaning of this.
- If a literal translation of “God-breathed” is not acceptable, other ways to translate this could include “inspired by God” or “authored by God” or “spoken by God.” It could also be said that “God breathed out the words of Scripture.”
- The expressions “put breath in” or “breathe life into” or “gives breath to” could be translated as “cause to breathe” or “make alive again” or “enable them to live and breathe” or “give life to.”
- If possible, it is best to translate “breath of God” with the literal word that is used for “breath” in the language. If God cannot be said to have “breath,” this could be translated as “God’s power” or “God’s speech.”
- The expression “catch my breath” or “get my breath” could be translated as “relax in order to breathe more slowly” or “stop running in order to breathe normally.”
- The expression “is only a breath” means “lasts a very short time.”
- Similarly the expression “man is a single breath” means “people live a very short time” or “the lives of human beings are very short, like a single breath” or “compared to God, the life of a person seems as short as the time it takes to breathe in one breath of air.”

(See also: [Adam](#), Paul, [word of God](#), [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 17:17
- Ecclesiastes 8:8
- Job 4:9
- Revelation 11:11
- Revelation 13:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3307, H5301, H5396, H5397, H7307, G17200, G41570

(Go back to: [1 Kings 10:5](#); [15:29](#); [17:17](#))

bronze

Definition:

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: armor, tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 7:16
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 2:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Revelation 1:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G54700, G54740, G54750

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:13](#); [7:14](#); [7:15](#); [7:16](#); [7:27](#); [7:30](#); [7:38](#); [7:45](#); [7:47](#); [8:64](#); [14:27](#))

brother

Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 3:1
- Philippians 4:21
- Revelation 1:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0251, H0252, H0264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G00800, G00810, G23850, G24550, G25000, G46130, G53600, G55690

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:9](#); [1:10](#); [2:7](#); [2:15](#); [2:21](#); [2:22](#); [9:13](#); [12:24](#); [13:30](#); [20:32](#); [20:33](#))

burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 3:6-9
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Galatians 6:3
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H5450, H6006, G00040, G09160, G09220, G23470, G25990, G26550, G54130

(Go back to: [1 Kings 5:15](#))

burnt offering, offering by fire

Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), atonement, [ox](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 3:5
- Mark 12:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G36460

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:4](#); [3:15](#); [8:64](#); [9:25](#); [10:5](#); [18:34](#); [18:38](#))

bury, buried, burial

Definition:

The term “bury” refers to putting an object (usually a dead body) into a hole or other burial place and then covering it with dirt or stones, etc. The term “burial” is the act of burying something, or it can be used to describe a place where something has been buried.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” always refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: [Jericho](#), [tomb](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 9:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:33
- Luke 16:22
- Matthew 27:7
- Psalm 79:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6900, H6912, H6913, G17790, G17800, G22900, G49160, G50270

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:10](#); [2:31](#); [2:34](#); [11:15](#); [11:43](#); [13:29](#); [13:31](#); [14:13](#); [14:18](#); [14:31](#); [15:8](#); [15:24](#); [16:6](#); [16:28](#); [22:37](#); [22:50](#))

call, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#), [cry](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 1:9
- Ephesians 4:1
- Galatians 1:15
- Matthew 2:15
- Philippians 3:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G01540, G03630, G14580, G15280, G19410, G19510, G20280, G20460, G25640, G28210, G28220, G28400, G29190, G30040, G31060, G33330, G33430, G36030, G36860, G36870, G43160, G43410, G43770, G47790, G48670, G54550, G55370, G55810

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:9](#); [1:10](#); [1:19](#); [1:25](#); [1:26](#); [1:28](#); [1:32](#); [1:41](#); [1:49](#); [2:36](#); [2:42](#); [7:21](#); [8:43](#); [9:13](#); [12:3](#); [12:20](#); [16:24](#); [17:10](#); [17:11](#); [18:3](#); [18:24](#); [18:25](#); [18:26](#); [20:7](#); [21:9](#); [21:12](#); [22:9](#); [22:13](#))

camel

Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: [burden](#), clean)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:21
- 2 Chronicles 9:1-2
- Exodus 9:1-4
- Mark 10:25
- Matthew 3:4
- Matthew 19:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1581, G25740

(Go back to: [1 Kings 10:2](#))

Canaan, Canaanite

Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ham, Promised Land)

Bible References:

- Acts 13:19-20
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 9:18
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:7
- Genesis 47:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:5** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **4:6** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **4:9** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **5:3** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **7:8** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G54780

(Go back to: [1 Kings 9:16](#))

captive, captivate, captivity, catch

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to people who have been captured and forced to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylon for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: Babylon, exile, [prison](#), [seize](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:5
- Isaiah 20:4
- Jeremiah 43:3
- Luke 4:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G01610, G01620, G01630, G01640, G22210

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:46](#); [8:47](#); [8:48](#); [8:50](#))

Carmel, Mount Carmel

Facts:

“Mount Carmel” refers to a mountain range that was located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea just north of the Plain of Sharon. Its highest peak is 546 meters high.

- There was also a town called “Carmel” located in Judah, south of the Salt Sea.
- The wealthy landowner Nabal and his wife Abigail lived near the town of Carmel where David and his men helped guard Nabal’s sheep shearers.
- On Mount Carmel, Elijah challenged the prophets of Baal to a contest in order to prove that Yahweh is the only true God.
- To make it clear that this wasn’t just a single mountain, “Mount Carmel” could be translated as “mountain on the Carmel mountain range” or “Carmel mountain range.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Baal](#), [Elijah](#), [Judah](#), Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 1 Samuel 15:12
- Jeremiah 46:18
- Micah 7:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3760, H3761, H3762

(Go back to: [1 Kings 18:19](#); [18:20](#); [18:42](#))

cast out, driving out, throw out

Definition:

To “cast out” or “drive out” someone or something means to force that person or thing to go away.

- The term “cast” means the same thing as “throw.” To cast a net means to throw the net into the water.
- In a figurative sense, “cast out” or “cast away” someone can mean to reject that person and send him away.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, “force out” or “send away” or “get rid of.”
- To “cast out demons” could be translated as “cause the demons to leave” or “drive the evil spirits out” or “expel the demons” or “command the demon to come out.”
- To “cast out” someone from a synagog or church could be translated as “banish them” or “put them out.”

(See also: demon, demon-possessed, lots)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:17-19
- Mark 3:13-16
- Mark 9:29
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Matthew 9:32-34
- Matthew 12:24
- Matthew 17:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1272, H1644, H1920, H3423, H7971, H7993, G15440

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:27](#))

cedar, cedarwood

Definition:

The term "cedar" refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

- The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
- Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
- It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: fir, pure, [sacrifice](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:1-2
- 1 Kings 7:1-2
- Isaiah 2:13
- Zechariah 11:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0730

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:33](#); [5:6](#); [5:8](#); [5:10](#); [6:9](#); [6:10](#); [6:15](#); [6:16](#); [6:18](#); [6:20](#); [6:36](#); [7:2](#); [7:3](#); [7:7](#); [7:11](#); [7:12](#); [9:11](#); [10:27](#))

chariot, charioteers

Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:22
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Acts 8:29
- Acts 8:38
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:25
- Genesis 41:43

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:10** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2021, H4817, H4818, H7393, H7395, H7398, G07160, G44800

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:5](#); [4:26](#); [7:33](#); [9:19](#); [9:22](#); [10:26](#); [10:29](#); [12:18](#); [16:9](#); [20:1](#); [20:21](#); [20:25](#); [20:33](#); [22:31](#); [22:32](#); [22:33](#); [22:34](#); [22:35](#); [22:38](#))

cherub

Definition:

The term “cherub,” and its plural form “cherubim,” refer to a special type of heavenly being that God created. The Bible describes cherubim as having wings and flames.

- The cherubim display the glory and power of God and seem to be guardians of sacred things.
- After Adam and Eve sinned, God placed cherubim with flaming swords at the east side of the Garden of Eden so that people could no longer get to the tree of life.
- God commanded the Israelites to carve two cherubim facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant.
- He also told them to weave pictures of the cherubim into the curtains of the tabernacle.
- In some passages, these creatures are also described as having four faces: of a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle.
- Cherubim are sometimes thought of as being angels, but the Bible does not clearly state that.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cherubim” could be translated as “creatures with wings” or “guardians with wings” or “winged spiritual guardians” or “holy, winged guardians.”
- A “cherub” should be translated as the singular of cherubim, as in, “creature with wings” or “winged spiritual guardian,” for example.
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “angel.”
- Also consider how this term is translated or written in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [angel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:6
- 1 Kings 6:23-26
- Exodus 25:15-18
- Ezekiel 9:3
- Genesis 3:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3742, G55020

(Go back to: [1 Kings 6:23](#); [6:24](#); [6:25](#); [6:26](#); [6:27](#); [6:28](#); [6:29](#); [6:32](#); [6:35](#); [7:29](#); [7:36](#); [8:6](#); [8:7](#))

children, child, offspring

Definition:

The term “child” (plural “children”) refers to the offspring of a man and woman. The term is often used more generally to refer to anyone who is young in age and is not yet a fully grown adult. The term “offspring” is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- Often in the Bible, “offspring” has the same meaning as “children” or “descendants.”
- The term “seed” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
 - children of the light
 - children of obedience
 - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to the Church. For example, sometimes the New Testament refers to people who believe in Jesus as “children of God.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: descendant, [seed](#), [promise](#), [son](#), [spirit](#), [believe](#), beloved)

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:28
- 3 John 1:4
- Galatians 4:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 8:34-35
- Nehemiah 5:5
- Acts 17:29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:7
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 5:25
- Luke 3:7
- Matthew 12:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5209, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H6363, H6529, H6631, H7908, H7909, H7921, G07300, G08150, G10250, G10640, G10810, G10850, G14710, G34390, G35150, G35160, G38080, G38120, G38130, G38160, G50400, G50410, G50420, G50430, G50440, G52060, G52070, G53880

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:25](#); [3:26](#); [3:27](#); [14:12](#); [17:21](#); [17:22](#); [17:23](#))

chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

Definition:

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones)” or “the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: [appoint](#), Christ)

Bible References:

- 2 John 1:1
- Colossians 3:12
- Ephesians 1:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:7
- Matthew 24:19-22
- Romans 8:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0970, H0972, H0977, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G01380, G01400, G15860, G15880, G15890, G19510, G37240, G44000, G44010, G47580, G48990, G55000

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:8](#); [8:16](#); [8:44](#); [8:48](#); [11:13](#); [11:32](#); [11:34](#); [11:36](#); [12:21](#); [14:21](#); [18:23](#); [18:25](#))

clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments

Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, “clothed with” means to be endowed or equipped with something. To “clothe” oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are “clothed” with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To “clothe yourself with kindness” means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be “clothed with power from on high” means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as “clothed with shame” or “clothed with terror.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, “clothe yourselves with.” Another way to translate this could be “put on” if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate “clothed with” could be “showing” or “manifesting” or “filled with” or “having the quality of.”
- The term “clothe yourself with” could also be translated as “cover yourself with” or “behave in a way that shows.”

Bible References:

- Luke 24:49

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0899, H3680, H3736, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4374, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G02940, G14630, G15620, G17370, G17420, G17460, G19020, G20660, G22240, G24390, G24400, G40160, G47490, G55090

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:1](#); [10:25](#); [21:27](#); [22:10](#); [22:30](#))

column, pillar

Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: [foundation](#), [false god](#), [image](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:4
- Exodus 13:21
- Exodus 33:9
- Genesis 31:45
- Proverbs 9:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H0547, H2106, H2553, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G47690

(Go back to: [1 Kings 6:31](#); [7:2](#); [7:3](#); [7:6](#); [7:15](#); [7:16](#); [7:17](#); [7:18](#); [7:19](#); [7:20](#); [7:21](#); [7:22](#); [7:41](#); [7:42](#); [14:23](#))

command, commandment

Definition:

The term "command" means to order someone to do something. The term "commandment" refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term "commandment" sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the "Ten Commandments."
- A command can be positive ("Honor your parents") or negative ("Do not steal").
- To "take command" means to "take control" or "take charge" of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, "law." Also compare with the definitions of "decree" and "statute."
- Some translators may prefer to translate "command" and "commandment" with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, [statute](#), law, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Luke 1:6
- Matthew 1:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 1:17-19
- Romans 7:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H0560, H0565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G12630, G12910, G12960, G12970, G12990, G16900, G17780, G17810, G17850, G20030, G20040, G20080, G20360, G27530, G30560, G37260, G38520, G38530, G43670, G44830, G44870, G55060

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:35](#); [2:1](#); [2:3](#); [2:43](#); [2:46](#); [3:14](#); [5:6](#); [5:17](#); [6:12](#); [8:58](#); [8:61](#); [9:4](#); [9:6](#); [11:10](#); [11:11](#); [11:34](#); [11:38](#); [13:9](#); [13:21](#); [14:8](#); [15:5](#); [17:4](#); [17:9](#); [18:18](#); [22:31](#))

commander

Definition:

The term "commander" refers to a leader of an army who is responsible for leading and commanding a certain group of soldiers.

- A commander could be in charge of a small group of soldiers or a large group, such as a thousand men.
- This term is also used to refer to Yahweh as the commander of angel armies.
- Other ways to translate "commander" could include, "leader" or "captain" or "officer."
- The term to "command" an army could be translated as to "lead" or to "be in charge of."

(See also: [command](#), [ruler](#), centurion)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 11:11-12
- Daniel 2:14
- Mark 6:21-22
- Proverbs 6:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2710, H2951, H1169, H4929, H5057, H6346, H7101, H7262, H7218, H7227, H7229, H7990, H8269, G55060

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:19](#); [1:25](#); [2:5](#); [2:32](#); [9:22](#); [9:23](#); [11:15](#); [11:21](#); [11:24](#); [14:27](#); [15:20](#); [16:9](#); [16:16](#); [20:14](#); [20:15](#); [20:17](#); [20:19](#); [22:26](#); [22:31](#); [22:32](#); [22:33](#))

companion, fellow worker, friend

Facts:

The term “companion” refers to a person who goes with someone else or who is associated with someone else, such as in a friendship or marriage. The term “fellow worker” refers to someone who works with another person.

- Companions go through experiences together, share meals together, and support and encourage each other.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “friend” or “fellow traveler” or “supporting-person who goes with” or “person who works with.”

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 37:16
- Hebrews 1:9
- Proverbs 2:17
- Psalms 38:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0251, H0441, H2269, H2270, H2273, H2278, H3674, H3675, H4828, H7453, H7462, H7464, G28440, G33530, G48980, G49040

(Go back to: [1 Kings 16:11](#))

compassion, compassionate

Definition:

The term "compassion" refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A "compassionate" person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word "compassion" refers to caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways of translating "compassion" could include, "deep caring" or "pity" or "helpful mercy."
- The term "compassionate" could also be translated as "caring and helpful" or "deeply loving and merciful."

Bible References:

- Daniel 1:8-10
- Hosea 13:14
- James 5:9-11
- Jonah 4:1-3
- Mark 1:41
- Romans 9:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2550, H7349, H7355, H7356, G16530, G33560, G36270, G46970, G48340, G48350

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:26](#); [8:50](#))

concubine

Definition:

A concubine is a woman who is a secondary wife for a man who already has a wife. Usually a concubine is not legally married to the man.

- In the Old Testament, concubines were often female slaves.
- A concubine could be acquired by purchase, through military conquest, or in payment of a debt.
- For a king, having many concubines was a sign of power.

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 3:7
- Genesis 22:24
- Genesis 25:5-6
- Genesis 35:21-22
- Genesis 36:12
- Judges 19:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3904, H6370

(Go back to: [1 Kings 11:3](#))

confess, confession

Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: faith, [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8-10
- 2 John 1:7-8
- James 5:16
- Leviticus 5:5-6
- Matthew 3:4-6
- Nehemiah 1:6-7
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Psalms 38:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3034, H8426, G18430, G36700, G36710

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:33](#); [8:35](#))

court, courtyard

Definition:

The terms “courtyard” and “court” refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term “court” also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase “king’s court” can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh’s dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “courtyard” could be translated as “enclosed space” or “walled-in land” or “temple grounds” or “temple enclosure.”
- Sometimes the term “temple” may need to be translated as “temple courtyards” or “temple complex” so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” could be translated as “place where Yahweh lives” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped.”
- The term used for a king’s court could also be used to refer to Yahweh’s court.

(See also: Gentile, judge, [king](#), tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:4-5
- Exodus 27:9
- Jeremiah 19:14-15
- Luke 22:55
- Matthew 26:69-70
- Numbers 3:26
- Psalms 65:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1508, H2691, H5835, H7339, H8651, G08330, G42590

(Go back to: [1 Kings 6:36](#); [7:8](#); [7:9](#); [7:12](#); [8:64](#))

covenant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “covenant” refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term “new covenant” refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God’s “new covenant” was explained in the part of the Bible called the “New Testament.”
- This new covenant is in contrast to the “old” or “former” covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people’s sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts of those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term “new covenant” could be translated as “new formal agreement” or “new pact” or “new contract.”
- The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 9:12
- Genesis 17:7
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26

- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:24
- Luke 1:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 7:8
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 3:6
- Galatians 3:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:9** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **5:4** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **6:4** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **7:10** "The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:4** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:5** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G08020, G12420, G49340

(Go back to: [1 Kings 5:12](#); [8:21](#); [8:23](#); [11:11](#); [15:19](#); [19:10](#); [19:14](#); [20:34](#))

covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love

Definition:

In biblical times, the term translated as “covenant faithfulness” was used to describe the kind of faithfulness, loyalty, kindness, and love that was both expected and demonstrated between people who were closely related to one another, either by marriage or by blood. This same term is used often in the Bible to describe the way God relates to his people, especially his commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to them.

- The way this term is translated can depend on how each of the individual terms “covenant” and “faithfulness” are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term might include: “faithful love;” “loyal, committed love;” or “loving dependability.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [faithful](#), grace, [Israel](#), people of God, [promise](#))

Bible References:

- Ezra 3:11
- Numbers 14:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2617

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:7](#); [3:6](#); [8:23](#))

cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

Definition:

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [yoke](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 1:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:3
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 1:9
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:5
- Hebrews 9:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0441, H0504, H0929, H1165, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H6499, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8450, G10160, G11510, G23530, G29340, G34470, G34480, G41650, G50220

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:9](#); [1:19](#); [1:25](#); [4:23](#); [7:25](#); [7:29](#); [7:44](#); [8:5](#); [8:63](#); [12:28](#); [12:32](#); [18:23](#); [18:25](#); [18:26](#); [18:33](#); [19:20](#); [19:21](#))

cry, cry out, outcry

Definition:

The terms “cry” or “cry out” usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase “cry out” can also mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- It can also mean to pray.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: [call](#), plead, [pray](#))

Bible References:

- Job 27:9
- Mark 5:5-6
- Mark 6:48-50
- Psalm 22:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8663, G03100, G03490, G08630, G09940, G09950, G19160, G20190, G27990, G28050, G28960, G29050, G29060, G29290, G43770, G54550

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:28](#); [8:43](#); [8:52](#); [13:2](#); [13:4](#); [13:21](#); [13:32](#); [17:20](#); [17:21](#); [18:27](#); [18:28](#); [20:39](#); [22:32](#); [22:36](#))

cupbearer

Definition:

In Old Testament times, a “cupbearer” was a king’s servant who was given the task of bringing the king his cup of wine, usually tasting the wine first to make sure it had not been poisoned.

- In English, the term cupbearer literally means “cup bringer” or “someone who brings the cup.”
- A cupbearer was known for being very trustworthy and loyal to his king.
- Because of his trusted position, a cupbearer would often have influence in the decisions the ruler made.
- Nehemiah was the cupbearer for King Artaxerxes of Persia during the time when some of the Israelites were in captivity in Babylon.

(See also: Artaxerxes, Babylon, [captive](#), Persia, [Pharaoh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:3-5
- Nehemiah 1:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8248

(Go back to: [1 Kings 10:5](#))

curse, cursed, cursing

Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Galatians 3:10
- Galatians 3:14
- Genesis 3:14
- Genesis 3:17
- James 3:10
- Numbers 22:6
- Psalms 109:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:9** God said to the snake, “You are **cursed!**”
- **2:11** “Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food.”
- **4:4** “I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you.”
- **39:7** Then Peter vowed, saying, “May God **curse** me if I know this man!”
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0422, H0423, H0779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G03310, G03320, G06850, G19440, G25510, G26520, G26530, G26710, G26720, G60350

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2 General Notes](#); [2:8](#); [8:31](#); [21:10](#); [21:13](#))

curtain

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “curtain” refers to a very thick, heavy piece of material used in the making of the tabernacle and the temple.

- The tabernacle was built using four layers of curtains for the top and sides. These curtain coverings were made of cloth or animal skins.
- Cloth curtains were also used to form a wall surrounding the tabernacle courtyard. These curtains were made out of “linen” which was a kind of cloth made out of the flax plant.
- In both the tabernacle and temple building, a thick cloth curtain hung between the holy place and the most holy place. It was this curtain that was miraculously torn into two parts when Jesus died.

Translation Suggestions:

- Since modern-day curtains are very different from the curtains used in the Bible, it may be more clear to use a different word or to add words that describe the curtains.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “curtain covering” or “covering” or “piece of thick cloth” or “animal skin covering” or “hanging piece of cloth.”

(See also: [holy place](#), tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Hebrews 10:20
- Leviticus 4:17
- Luke 23:45
- Matthew 27:51
- Numbers 4:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1852, H3407, H4539, H6532, H7050, G26650

(Go back to: [1 Kings 6:34](#))

cut off, cut down

Definition:

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, to “cut off” could be translated as to “destroy” or to “send away” or to “separate from” or to “destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:14
- Judges 21:6
- Proverbs 23:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G06090, G08510, G15810

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:4](#); [8:25](#); [9:5](#); [9:7](#); [11:16](#); [14:10](#); [14:14](#); [15:13](#); [18:4](#); [18:5](#); [21:21](#))

cypress

Definition:

The term “cypress” refers to a kind of fir tree that was plentiful in the regions where people lived in Bible times, especially countries bordering the Mediterranean Sea.

- Cyprus and Lebanon are two places that are specifically mentioned in the Bible as having many cypress trees.
- The wood that Noah used to build the ark may have been cypress.
- Because cypress wood is sturdy and long-lasting, it was used by ancient peoples for building boats and other structures.

(See also: ark, Cyprus, fir, [Lebanon](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 11:19-21
- Genesis 6:14
- Hosea 14:8
- Isaiah 44:14
- Isaiah 60:13
- Zechariah 11:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8645

(Go back to: [1 Kings 5:8](#); [5:10](#); [6:15](#); [6:34](#); [9:11](#))

Damascus

Facts:

Damascus is the capital city of the country of Syria. It is still in the same location as it was in Bible times.

- Damascus is one of the oldest, continuously inhabited cities in the world.
- During the time of Abraham, Damascus was the capital of the Aram kingdom (located in what is now Syria).
- Throughout the Old Testament, there are many references to the interactions between the inhabitants of Damascus and the people of Israel.
- Several biblical prophecies predict the destruction of Damascus. These prophecies may have been fulfilled when Assyria destroyed the city during Old Testament times, or there may be also be a future, more complete destruction of this city.
- In the New Testament, the Pharisee Saul (later known as Paul) was on his way to arrest Christians in the city of Damascus when Jesus confronted him and caused him to become a believer.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Aram](#), Assyria, [believe](#), Syria)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 24:23-24
- Acts 9:1-2
- Acts 9:3
- Acts 26:12
- Galatians 1:15-17
- Genesis 14:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1834, G11540

(Go back to: [1 Kings 11:24](#); [15:18](#); [19:15](#); [20:34](#))

Dan

Facts:

Dan was Jacob's fifth son. He was Bilhah's first son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- His name sounds similar to the Hebrew word for "judge."
- The tribe of Dan settled in the northern part of Canaan. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Dan" refers to the land given to the tribe of Dan.
- "Dan" was also the name an Israelite city located about 60 miles north of Jerusalem. In the Old Testament times, the city of Dan served as a landmark for the northern boundary of the country of Israel, opposite the city of Beersheba as a landmark for the southern boundary.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), Bilhah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 12:35
- 1 Kings 4:25
- Exodus 1:1-5
- Genesis 14:14
- Genesis 30:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1835, H1839, H2051

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:25](#); [12:29](#); [12:30](#); [15:20](#))

David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Goliath, [Philistines](#), Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 5:2
- 2 Timothy 2:8
- Acts 2:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 1:32
- Mark 2:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **17:3** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **17:4** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **17:5** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **17:6** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **17:9** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G11380

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:1](#); [1:8](#); [1:11](#); [1:13](#); [1:28](#); [1:31](#); [1:32](#); [1:37](#); [1:38](#); [1:43](#); [1:47](#); [2:1](#); [2:10](#); [2:11](#); [2:12](#); [2:24](#); [2:26](#); [2:32](#); [2:33](#); [2:44](#); [2:45](#); [3:1](#); [3:3](#); [3:6](#); [3:7](#); [3:14](#); [5:1](#); [5:3](#); [5:5](#); [5:7](#); [6:12](#); [7:51](#); [8:1](#); [8:15](#); [8:16](#); [8:17](#); [8:18](#); [8:20](#); [8:24](#); [8:25](#); [8:26](#);

8:66; 9:4; 9:5; 9:24; 11:4; 11:6; 11:12; 11:13; 11:15; 11:21; 11:24; 11:27; 11:32; 11:33; 11:34; 11:36; 11:38; 11:39; 11:43;
12:16; 12:19; 12:20; 12:26; 13:2; 14:8; 14:31; 15:3; 15:4; 15:5; 15:8; 15:11; 15:24; 22:50)

day

Definition:

The term "day" generally refers to the time it takes for the alternating periods of light and darkness in the sky to complete one cycle (that is, 24 hours). However, in the Bible the same term is often used to refer to a shorter period of time (such as the time between sunrise and sunset) or a longer period of time that is often not specified.

- "Day" is sometimes used in contrast to "night." In these cases, the term refers to the period of time when the sky is light.
- The term may also refer to a specific point in time, such as "today."
- Sometimes the term "day" is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the "day of Yahweh" or "last days." Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate "day" non-figuratively.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally as "day" or "daytime" using the word in your language that refers to the part of the day when there is light.
- Other translations of "day" could include "daytime," "time," "season," "occasion" or "event," depending on the context.

(See also: time, judgment day, last day)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:6
- Daniel 10:4
- Ezra 6:15
- Ezra 6:19
- Matthew 9:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H3118, H6242, G22500

(Go back to: 1 Kings 1:30; 2:1; 2:8; 2:11; 2:26; 2:37; 2:38; 2:42; 3:2; 3:6; 3:11; 3:13; 3:14; 3:18; 4:21; 4:22; 5:1; 8:2; 8:8; 8:16; 8:24; 8:29; 8:40; 8:59; 8:61; 8:64; 8:65; 8:66; 9:3; 9:13; 9:21; 10:12; 10:14; 10:21; 11:12; 11:25; 11:34; 11:36; 11:39; 11:42; 12:5; 12:7; 12:12; 12:19; 12:32; 13:3; 13:11; 14:19; 14:20; 14:29; 14:30; 15:5; 15:6; 15:7; 15:14; 15:16; 15:23; 15:31; 15:32; 16:14; 16:15; 16:16; 16:20; 16:27; 16:34; 17:14; 17:15; 18:1; 19:4; 19:8; 20:29; 21:29; 22:25; 22:35; 22:39; 22:45; 22:46)

deceive, lie, deception, illusions

Definition:

The term "deceive" means to cause someone to believe something that is not true, often by telling a "lie." The act of deceiving someone is called "lying," "deceit," or "deception."

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a "deceiver." For example, Satan is called a "deceiver." The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- To "lie" is to say something that is not true.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as "deceptive."
- The terms "deceit" and "deception" have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms "deceitful" and "deceptive" have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "deceive" could include "lie to" or "cause to have a false belief" or "cause someone to think something that is not true."
- The term "deceived" could also be translated as "caused to think something false" or "lied to" or "tricked" or "fooled" or "misled."
- "Deceiver" could be translated as "liar" or "one who misleads" or "someone who deceives."
- Depending on the context, the terms "deception" or "deceit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "falsehood" or "lying" or "trickery" or "dishonesty."
- The terms "deceptive" or "deceitful" could be translated as "untruthful" or "misleading" or "lying" to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8
- 1 Timothy 2:14
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 6:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G05380, G05390, G13860, G13870, G13880, G18180, G38840, G41050, G41060, G41080, G54220, G54230

(Go back to: [1 Kings 13:18](#); [22:20](#); [22:21](#); [22:22](#); [22:23](#))

dedicate, dedication, established, devoted

Definition:

To dedicate is to set apart or commit something for a special purpose or function.

- David dedicated his gold and silver to the Lord.
- Often the word “dedication” refers to a formal event or ceremony to set apart something for a special purpose.
- The dedication of the altar included offering a sacrifice to God.
- Nehemiah led the Israelites in a dedication of Jerusalem’s repaired walls with a renewed promise to serve only Yahweh and to take care of his city. This event included giving thanks to God with musical instruments and singing.
- The term “dedicate” could also be translated as “specially assign a special purpose” or “commit something to be used for a specific use” or “commit someone to do a special task.”

(See also: commit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:11-12
- 1 Corinthians 6:9-11
- 1 Kings 7:51
- 1 Timothy 4:5
- 2 Chronicles 2:4-5
- John 17:18-19
- Luke 2:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2596, H2597, H2598, H2764, H4394, H6942, H6944, G14560, G14570

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:63](#))

deer, doe, fawns, roebuck

Definition:

A deer is a large, graceful, four-legged animal that lives in forests or on mountains. The male animal has large horns or antlers on its head.

- The term “doe” refers to a female deer and a “fawn” is the name of a baby deer.
- The term “buck” refers to a male deer.
- A “roebuck” is the male of the specific variety called “roedeer.”
- Deer have strong, thin legs that help them jump high and run fast.
- Their feet have split hooves which help them walk or climb easily on most any terrain.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 22:34
- Genesis 49:21
- Job 39:2
- Psalms 18:33
- Song of Songs 2:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0354, H0355, H0365, H3180, H3280, H6643, H6646

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:23](#))

delight

Definition:

The term "delight" means great pleasure or great joy.

- To "delight in" something means to "to take pleasure in" or "take joy in" or "be happy about" it. If a person "delights in" something, it means that he enjoys it very much.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called "delightful."
- The expression "my delight is in the law of Yahweh" could be translated as "the law of Yahweh gives me great joy" or "I love to obey the laws of Yahweh" or "I am happy when I obey Yahweh's commands."
- The phrases "take no delight in" and "have no delight in" could be translated as "not at all pleased by" or "not happy about."
- The phrase "delight himself in" means "he enjoys doing" something or "he is very happy about" something or someone.
- The term "delights" refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as "pleasures" or "things that give joy."
- An expression such as "I delight to do your will" could also be translated as "I enjoy doing your will" or "I am very happy when I obey you."

Bible References:

- Proverbs 8:30
- Psalm 1:2
- Psalms 119:69-70
- Song of Songs 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H2530, H2531, H2532, H2654, H2655, H2656, H2836, H4574, H5276, H5727, H5730, H6026, H6027, H7306, H7381, H7521, H7522, H8057, H8173, H8191, H8588, H8597

(Go back to: [1 Kings 9:1](#); [9:11](#); [10:9](#))

desert, wilderness

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as "deserted place" or "remote place" or "uninhabited place."

Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 4:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 3:14
- Luke 1:80
- Luke 9:12-14
- Mark 1:3
- Matthew 4:1
- Matthew 11:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G20470, G20480

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:34](#); [9:18](#); [19:4](#); [19:15](#))

destroy, destruction, annihilate

Definition:

The term “destroy” means to completely make an end to something, so that it no longer exists.

- The term “destroyer” means “a person who destroys.”
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as “the destroyer of the firstborn.” This could be translated as “the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males.”
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called “the Destroyer.” He is the “one who destroys” because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: [angel](#), [Egypt](#), [firstborn](#), [Passover](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 6:26
- Judges 16:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H0007, H0622, H0398, H1104, H1197, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2000, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H4191, H4229, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5595, H5642, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7667, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8316, H8552, G03550, G03960, G06220, G08530, G13110, G18420, G20490, G25060, G25070, G26470, G26730, G27040, G30890, G36450, G41990, G53510, G53560

(Go back to: [1 Kings 13:34](#); [15:29](#); [16:12](#); [20:42](#))

die, dead, deadly, death

Definition:

The term “death” refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to “die” may be expressed as to “not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to “pass away” in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “eternal death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: [nominal adjective](#))
- The expression “put to death” could also be translated as “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), faith, [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 2:15
- Colossians 2:20
- Genesis 2:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 5:10

- Romans 5:12
- Romans 6:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **2:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **7:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:8** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:7** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:2** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G03360, G03370, G05200, G05990, G06150, G06220, G16340, G19350, G20790, G22530, G22860, G22870, G22880, G22890, G23480, G28370, G29660, G34980, G34990, G35000, G44300, G48800, G48810, G50530, G50540

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:51; 1:52; 2:1; 2:8; 2:24; 2:25; 2:26; 2:30; 2:34; 2:37; 2:42; 2:46; 3:19; 3:20; 3:21; 3:22; 3:23; 3:26; 3:27; 11:21; 11:40; 12:18; 13:24; 13:26; 13:31; 14:11; 14:12; 14:17; 15:28; 16:4; 16:10; 16:18; 16:22; 17:12; 17:18; 17:20; 18:9; 19:4; 19:17; 21:10; 21:13; 21:14; 21:15; 21:16; 21:24; 22:35; 22:37](#))

discern, discernment, distinguish

Definition:

The term “discern” means to be able to understand something, especially being able to know whether something is right or wrong.

- The term “discernment” refers to understanding and deciding wisely about a certain matter.
- It means to have wisdom and good judgment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “discern” could also be translated as “understand” or “know the difference between” or “distinguish good and evil” or “judge rightly about” or “perceive right from wrong.”
- “Discernment” could be translated as “understanding” or “ability to distinguish good and evil.”

(See also: [judge](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 3:7-9
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Proverbs 1:5
- Psalms 19:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0995, H2940, H4209, H5234, H8085, G03500, G12520, G12530, G29240

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:9](#); [3:11](#); [3:12](#))

disperse, dispersion, scatter, distributed

Definition:

The terms “disperse” and “dispersion” refer to the scattering of people or things into many different directions.

- In the Old Testament, God talks about “dispersing” people, causing them to have to separate and live in different places apart from each other. He did this to punish them for their sin. Perhaps being dispersed would help them repent and start worshiping God again.
- The term “dispersion” is used in the New Testament to refer to Christians who had to leave their homes and move to many different locations to escape persecution.
- The phrase “the dispersion” could be translated as “believers in many different places” or “the people who moved away to live in different nations.”
- The term “disperse” could be translated as “send away into many different places” or “scatter abroad” or “cause to move away to live in different countries.”

(See also: [believe](#), persecute, [captive](#), exile)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:1
- Ezekiel 12:15
- Ezekiel 30:23
- Psalms 18:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2219, H5310, H6327, H6340, H6504, H8600, G12870, G12900, G46500

(Go back to: [1 Kings 14:15](#); [22:17](#))

dominion

Definition:

The term "dominion" refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan's dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ's death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "authority" or "power" or "control."
- The phrase "have dominion over" could be translated as "rule over" or "manage."

(See also: authority, power)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:10-11
- Colossians 1:13
- Jude 1:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1166, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4915, H7287, H7300, H7980, H7985, G26340, G29040, G29610, G29630

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:24](#); [5:16](#); [9:19](#); [9:23](#))

donkey, mule

Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:32-34
- 1 Samuel 9:4
- 2 Kings 4:21-22
- Deuteronomy 5:12-14
- Luke 13:15
- Matthew 21:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G36780, G36880, G52680

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:33](#); [1:38](#); [1:44](#); [2:40](#); [10:25](#); [13:13](#); [13:23](#); [13:24](#); [13:27](#); [13:28](#); [13:29](#); [18:5](#))

doorpost

Definition:

The “doorpost” is a vertical beam on either side of a door, which supports the top of the door frame.

- Just before God helped the Israelites escape from Egypt, he instructed them to kill a lamb and put its blood on their doorposts.
- In the Old Testament, a slave who desired to serve his master the rest of his life would place his ear on the doorpost of his master’s house to have a nail hammered through his ear into the doorpost.
- This could also be translated as “wooden post on either side of a door” or “sides of a wooden doorframe” or “wood beams on the sides of a doorway.”

(See also: [Egypt](#), Passover)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:31-32
- Deuteronomy 11:20
- Exodus 12:7
- Isaiah 57:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H4201

(Go back to: [1 Kings 6:31](#); [6:33](#); [7:5](#))

dream

Definition:

A dream is something that people see or experience in their minds while they are sleeping.

- Dreams often seem like they are really happening, but they are not.
- Sometimes God causes people to dream about something so they can learn from it. He may also speak directly to people in their dreams.
- In the Bible, God gave special dreams to certain people to give them a message, often about something that would happen in the future.
- A dream is different from a vision. Dreams happen while a person is asleep, but visions usually happen when a person is awake.

(See also: vision)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:16-17
- Daniel 1:17-18
- Daniel 2:1
- Genesis 37:6
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Matthew 2:13
- Matthew 2:19-21

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:2** Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had **dreamed** that he would be their ruler.
- **8:6** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two **dreams** that disturbed him greatly. None of his advisors could tell him the meaning of the **dreams**.
- **8:7** God had given Joseph the ability to interpret **dreams**, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. Joseph interpreted the **dreams** for him and said, "God is going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine."
- **16:11** So that night, Gideon went down to the camp and heard a Midianite soldier telling his friend about something he had **dreamed**. The man's friend said, "This **dream** means that Gideon's army will defeat the Midianite army!"
- **23:1** He (Joseph) did not want to shame her (Mary), so he planned to quietly divorce her. Before he could do that, an angel came and spoke to him in a **dream**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1957, H2472, H2492, H2493, G17970, G17980, G36770

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:5](#); [3:15](#))

drunk, drunkard

Facts:

The term “drunk” means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A “drunkard” is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an “alcoholic.”
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God’s Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate “drunk” could include “inebriated” or “intoxicated” or “having too much alcohol” or “filled with fermented drink.”

(See also: wine)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:11-13
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- Jeremiah 13:13
- Luke 7:34
- Luke 21:34
- Proverbs 23:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5433, H7301, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G31780, G31820, G31830, G31840, G36300, G36320

(Go back to: [1 Kings 16:9; 20:16](#))

earth, land

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world on which human beings and other living things live. In the Bible, this term is sometimes translated as “land” when used in a general way to refer to the ground or the soil, or when used in a specific way to refer to a particular geographical area, usually a country or nation.

- In the Bible, the term “earth” is often paired with the term “heaven” as a way of indicating the abode of humankind on the earth in contrast with the abode of God in heaven.
- This term is usually translated “land” when paired with the name of people group to denote the territory belonging to those people, such as “the land of Canaan.”
- The term “earthly” is sometimes used to refer to things that are physical and/or visible in contrast to things that are non-physical and/or invisible.
- This term can be used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth or what the earth contains, such as in “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: world, [heaven](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- Daniel 4:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 6:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 6:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0127, H0772, H0776, H0778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G10930, G19190, G27090, G28860, G36250, G45780, G55170

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:23](#); [1:31](#); [1:40](#); [1:52](#); [2:2](#); [4:10](#); [4:19](#); [4:21](#); [4:34](#); [6:1](#); [8:9](#); [8:21](#); [8:23](#); [8:27](#); [8:36](#); [8:37](#); [8:41](#); [8:43](#); [8:46](#); [8:47](#); [8:48](#); [8:53](#); [8:60](#); [9:8](#); [9:9](#); [9:11](#); [9:13](#); [9:18](#); [9:19](#); [9:21](#); [9:26](#); [10:6](#); [10:13](#); [10:15](#); [10:23](#); [10:24](#); [11:18](#); [11:21](#); [11:22](#); [12:28](#); [14:24](#); [15:12](#); [15:20](#); [17:7](#); [18:5](#); [18:6](#); [18:42](#); [20:7](#); [20:27](#); [22:36](#); [22:46](#))

Edom, Edomite, Idumea

Facts:

Edom was another name for Esau. The region where he lived also became known as “Edom” and later, “Idumea.” The “Edomites” were his descendants.

- The region of Edom changed locations over time. It was mostly located to the south of Israel and eventually extended into southern Judah.
- During New Testament times, Edom covered the southern half of the province of Judea. The Greeks called it “Idumea.”
- The name “Edom” means “red,” which may refer to the fact that Esau was covered with red hair when he was born. Or it may refer to the red lentil stew that Esau traded his birthright for.
- In the Old Testament, the country of Edom is often mentioned as an enemy of Israel.
- The entire book of Obadiah is about the destruction of Edom. Other Old Testament prophets also spoke negative prophecies against Edom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [adversary](#), birthright, Esau, [Obadiah](#), [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:30
- Genesis 32:3
- Genesis 36:1
- Isaiah 11:14-15
- Joshua 11:16-17
- Obadiah 1:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0123, H0130, H8165, G24010

(**Go back to:** [1 Kings 9:26](#); [11:1](#); [11:14](#); [11:15](#); [11:16](#); [11:17](#); [22:47](#))

Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 4:7-9
- Acts 7:10
- Exodus 3:7
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 2:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:4** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **8:8** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **8:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to *_Egypt_* to buy food.
- **8:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **9:1** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4713, H4714, G01240, G01250

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:1](#); [4:21](#); [4:30](#); [6:1](#); [8:9](#); [8:16](#); [8:21](#); [8:51](#); [8:53](#); [8:65](#); [9:9](#); [9:16](#); [10:28](#); [10:29](#); [11:17](#); [11:18](#); [11:21](#); [11:40](#); [12:2](#); [12:28](#); [14:25](#))

elder, older, old

Definition:

The term “elder” or “older” refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

- The term “elder” came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish “elders” continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian “elders” gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as “older men” or “spiritually mature men leading the church.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 3:1-3
- 1 Timothy 4:14
- Acts 5:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G10870, G31870, G42440, G42450, G48500

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:1](#); [8:3](#); [12:6](#); [12:8](#); [12:13](#); [20:7](#); [20:8](#); [21:8](#); [21:11](#))

Elijah

Facts:

Elijah was one of the most important prophets of Yahweh. Elijah prophesied during the reigns of several kings of Israel and Judah, including King Ahab.

- God did many miracles through Elijah, including raising a dead boy back to life.
- Elijah rebuked King Ahab for worshiping the false god Baal.
- He challenged the prophets of Baal to a test that proved that Yahweh is the only true God.
- At the end of Elijah's life, God miraculously took him up to heaven while he was still alive.
- Hundreds of years later, Elijah, along with Moses, appeared with Jesus on a mountain, and they talked together about Jesus' coming suffering and death in Jerusalem.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [miracle](#), [prophet](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 17:1
- 2 Kings 1:3-4
- James 5:16-18
- John 1:19-21
- John 1:24-25
- Mark 9:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:2 Elijah** was a prophet when Ahab was king over the kingdom of Israel.
- **19:2 Elijah** said to Ahab, "There will be no rain or dew in the kingdom of Israel until I say so."
- **19:3** God told **Elijah** to go to a stream in the wilderness to hide from Ahab who wanted to kill him. Every morning and every evening, birds would bring him bread and meat.
- **19:4** But they took care of **Elijah**, and God provided for them so that their flour jar and their bottle of oil never became empty.
- **19:5** After three and a half years, God told **Elijah** to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with Ahab because he was going to send rain again.
- **19:7** Then **Elijah** said to the prophets of Baal, "Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire."
- **19:12** Then **Elijah** said, "Do not let any of the prophets of Baal escape!"
- **36:3** Then Moses and the prophet **Elijah** appeared. These men had lived hundreds of years before this. They talked with Jesus about his death that would soon happen in Jerusalem.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0452, G22430

(Go back to: [1 Kings 17:1](#); [17:2](#); [17:13](#); [17:15](#); [17:16](#); [17:18](#); [17:22](#); [17:23](#); [17:24](#); [18:1](#); [18:2](#); [18:7](#); [18:8](#); [18:11](#); [18:14](#); [18:15](#); [18:17](#); [18:21](#); [18:22](#); [18:25](#); [18:27](#); [18:30](#); [18:31](#); [18:36](#); [18:40](#); [18:41](#); [18:42](#); [18:46](#); [19:1](#); [19:2](#); [19:9](#); [19:13](#); [19:19](#); [19:20](#); [19:21](#); [21:17](#); [21:20](#); [21:28](#))

Elisha

Facts:

Elisha was a prophet in Israel during the reigns of several kings of Israel: Ahab, Ahaziah, Jehoram, Jehu, Jehoahaz, and Jehoash.

- God told the prophet Elijah to anoint Elisha as prophet.
- When Elijah was taken to heaven in a fiery chariot, Elisha became God's prophet to the kings of Israel.
- Elisha did many miracles, including healing a man from Syria who had leprosy and raising from the dead the son of a woman from Shunem.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Elijah](#), Naaman, [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:15-16
- 2 Kings 3:15
- 2 Kings 5:8
- Luke 4:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0477

(Go back to: [1 Kings 19:16](#); [19:17](#); [19:19](#))

Ephraim, Ephraimite

Facts:

Ephraim was the younger son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the tribes of Israel.

- The name Ephraim sounds like the Hebrew word meaning “to make fruitful.”
- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel).

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Joseph](#), [Manasseh](#), kingdom of Israel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:66-69
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- Ezekiel 37:16
- Genesis 41:52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- John 11:54

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0669, H0673, G21870

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:8](#); [12:25](#))

Ephrath, Ephrathah

Facts:

The terms “Ephrath” and “Ephrathah” are probably derived from the name “Ephraim,” who was one of the sons of Joseph and became the patriarch of one of the 12 tribes of Israel. Different

- “Ephrathah” is the name of the region where Rachel died, near the city of Bethel.
- There is a woman named “Ephrath” in the OT, who was the wife of Caleb.
- Both cities of Bethlehem and Kirjath-Jearim are also called “Ephrathah,” even though both cities are in a different region than described above (near Bethel).

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, [Boaz](#), Caleb, [David](#), [Israel](#))

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0672, H0673

([Go back to: 1 Kings 11:26](#))

epistle, letter

Definition:

A letter is a written message sent to a person or group of persons who are usually a distance away from the writer. An epistle is a special type of letter, often written in a more formal style, for a special purpose, such as teaching.

- In New Testament times, epistles and other types of letters were written on parchment made from animal skins or on papyrus made from plant fibers.
- The New Testament epistles from Paul, John, James, Jude, and Peter were letters of instruction that they wrote to encourage, exhort, and teach the early Christians in various cities throughout the Roman Empire.
- Ways to translate this term could include “written message” or “written down words” or “writing.”

(See also: encourage, exhort, teach)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:27
- 2 Thessalonians 2:15
- Acts 9:1-2
- Acts 28:21-22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0104, H0107, H3791, H4385, H5406, H5407, H5612, G11210, G19920

(Go back to: [1 Kings 21:8](#); [21:9](#); [21:11](#))

eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [reign](#), [life](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:8
- Genesis 48:4
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 3:28-30
- 1 Kings 2:32-33
- Job 4:20-21
- Psalms 21:4
- Isaiah 9:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 7:18

- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46
- Romans 5:21
- Hebrews 6:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 1:2
- 1 John 5:12
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?"
- **28:1** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God's laws."
- **28:10** Jesus answered, "Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name's sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G01260, G01650, G01660, G13360

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:31](#); [2:33](#); [2:45](#); [8:13](#); [9:3](#); [9:5](#); [10:9](#))

eunuch

Definition:

Usually the term “eunuch” refers to a man who has been castrated. The term later became a general term to refer to any government official, even those without the deformity.

- Jesus said that some eunuchs were born that way, perhaps because of damaged sex organs or because of not being able to function sexually. Others chose to live like eunuchs in a celibate lifestyle.
- In ancient times, eunuchs were often kings’ servants who were set as guards over the women’s quarters.
- Some eunuchs were important government officials, such as the Ethiopian eunuch who met the apostle Philip in the desert.

(See also: Philip)

Bible References:

- Acts 8:27
- Acts 8:36
- Acts 8:39
- Isaiah 39:7-8
- Jeremiah 34:17-19
- Matthew 19:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5631, G21340, G21350

(Go back to: [1 Kings 22:9](#))

Euphrates River, the River

Facts:

The Euphrates is the name of one of the four rivers that flowed through the Garden of Eden. It is the river that is most often mentioned in the Bible.

- The modern day river named Euphrates is located in the Middle East and is the longest and most important river in Asia.
- Together with the Tigris River, the Euphrates borders a region of land known as Mesopotamia.
- The ancient city of Ur where Abraham came from was at the mouth of the Euphrates River.
- This river was one of the boundaries of the land that God promised to give to Abraham (Genesis 15:18).
- Sometimes the Euphrates is simply called "the River."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 9:25-26
- Exodus 23:30-33
- Genesis 2:13-14
- Isaiah 7:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5104, H6578, G21660

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:21](#); [4:24](#); [14:15](#))

evil, wicked, unpleasant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 6:10
- 3 John 1:10
- Genesis 2:17
- Genesis 6:5-6
- Job 1:1
- Job 8:20
- Judges 9:57
- Luke 6:22-23
- Matthew 7:11-12
- Proverbs 3:7
- Psalms 22:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **4:2** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **8:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:1** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:8** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:2** They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!”

- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G00920, G01130, G04590, G09320, G09870, G09880, G14260, G25490, G25510, G25540, G25550, G25560, G25570, G25590, G25600, G26350, G26360, G41510, G41890, G41900, G41910, G53370

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:52](#); [2:44](#); [3:9](#); [5:4](#); [8:32](#); [8:47](#); [9:9](#); [11:6](#); [11:25](#); [13:33](#); [Notes](#); [14:9](#); [14:10](#); [14:22](#); [15:26](#); [15:34](#); [Notes](#); [16:7](#); [16:19](#); [16:25](#); [16:30](#); [17:20](#); [20:7](#); [21:20](#); [21:21](#); [21:25](#); [21:29](#); [22:8](#); [22:18](#); [22:23](#); [22:52](#))

ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 8:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 2:14
- Luke 15:5
- Mark 6:34
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:2** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:8** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G41650, G42620, G42630

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:9](#); [1:19](#); [1:25](#); [4:23](#); [8:5](#); [8:63](#))

exalt, exalted, exaltation

Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: praise, [worship](#), [glory](#), boast, proud)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 5:31
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Psalms 18:46

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G18690, G52290, G52510, G53110, G53120

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2 General Notes](#))

face, facial

Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings in the Bible.

- In the Bible, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean a person’s presence, the front of an object, or the surface of something.
- When referring to a person, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean the action of seeing, which can represent that person’s knowledge, perception, notice, attention, or judgment.
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole land” or “living throughout the land.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 5:4
- Genesis 33:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0600, H0639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G37990, G43830, G47500

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:15](#); [8:14](#); [18:42](#); [19:13](#); [21:4](#))

faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [believe](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:7
- Joshua 2:14
- Judges 2:16-17
- 1 Samuel 2:9
- Psalm 12:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 1:26
- Jeremiah 9:7-9
- Hosea 5:7
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 1:7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:24
- 3 John 1:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:9** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **35:12** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’”
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:4** “If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0529, H0530, H0539, H0540, H0571, H0898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G05690, G05710, G41030

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:6](#); [8:26](#); [Notes](#))

famine

Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
- In the Bible, God sometimes caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 7:11
- Genesis 12:10
- Genesis 45:6
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 4:25
- Matthew 24:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G30420

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:37](#); [18:2](#))

fast, fasting

Definition:

The term to “fast” means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb to “fast” can also be translated as to “refrain from eating” or to “not eat.”
- The noun “fast” could be translated as “time of not eating” or “time of abstaining from food.”

(See also: Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 20:3
- Acts 13:1-3
- Jonah 3:4-5
- Luke 5:34
- Mark 2:19
- Matthew 6:18
- Matthew 9:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:1** Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he **fasted** for forty days and forty nights.
- **34:8** “For example, I **fast** two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.”
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were **fasting** and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G35210, G35220

(Go back to: [1 Kings 21:9](#); [21:12](#); [21:27](#))

favor, favorable, favoritism

Definition:

The term “favor” generally means approval. Someone who favors another person regards that person positively and approves of them.

- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means that both God and others approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.
- A “favor” can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.
- The term “favoritism” means an attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include “approval” or “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite,” which means to prefer above all others.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:7
- 2 Corinthians 1:11
- Acts 24:27
- Genesis 41:16
- Genesis 47:25
- Genesis 50:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7521, H7522, H7965, G11840, G36850, G43800, G43820, G54850, G54860

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:28](#); [8:30](#); [8:33](#); [8:38](#); [8:45](#); [8:47](#); [8:49](#); [8:52](#); [8:54](#); [8:59](#); [9:3](#); [11:19](#))

fear, afraid, frighten

Definition:

The terms "fear" refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term "fear" can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "fear" can be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "be afraid;" "deeply respect;" or "deep respect;" "revere;" or "reverence;" or perhaps "be in awe of."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;" or "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;" or "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."

(See also: awe, [Yahweh](#), [Lord](#), [marvel](#), power)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- Acts 2:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 6:14
- Jonah 1:9
- Luke 12:5
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0367, H0926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G08700, G11670, G11680, G11690, G16300, G17190, G21240, G21250, G29620, G53980, G53990, G54000, G54010

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:50](#); [1:51](#); [3:28](#); [8:40](#); [8:43](#); [17:13](#); [18:3](#); [18:12](#))

feast, feasting

Definition:

The term “feast” is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: festival, banquet)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 1:12-13
- Luke 2:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G00260, G10620, G11730, G18590, G21650, G49100

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:15](#); [8:2](#); [8:65](#); [12:32](#); [12:33](#))

fig

Definition:

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

Bible References:

- Habakkuk 3:17
- James 3:12
- Luke 13:7
- Mark 11:14
- Matthew 7:17
- Matthew 21:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H1690, H6291, H8384, G36530, G48080, G48100

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:25](#))

fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- Fire could also refer to lightning in the context of a storm or it being from heaven.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: pure)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 1:10
- 2 Thessalonians 1:8
- Acts 7:29-30
- John 15:6
- Luke 3:16
- Matthew 3:12
- Nehemiah 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0215, H0217, H0398, H0784, H0800, H0801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G04390, G04400, G10670, G27410, G44420, G44430, G44470, G44480, G44510, G53940, G54570

(Go back to: [1 Kings 9:16](#); [16:18](#); [18:23](#); [18:24](#); [18:25](#); [18:38](#); [19:12](#))

firstborn

Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “first-born” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- Other ways to translate this term could include “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: [inherit](#), [sacrifice](#), [son](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:15
- Genesis 4:3-5
- Genesis 29:26-27
- Genesis 43:33
- Luke 2:6-7
- Revelation 1:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G44160, G52070

(Go back to: [1 Kings 16:34](#))

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:16
- 2 John 1:7
- Ephesians 6:12
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 2:24
- John 1:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 8:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G29070, G45590, G45600, G45610

(Go back to: [1 Kings 21:27](#))

flock, herd

Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.

Translation Suggestions

- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both groups of sheep and cattle, then you may need to say “groups of sheep” where the Bible says only “flocks,” and “groups of cattle” where the Bible says only “herds.” Alternatively, if the Biblical context does not demand differentiation (if the text simply says “flocks and herds,” meaning all their domesticated animals) you may just use the one word once.

(See also: goat, [cow](#), pig, [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 2:8-9
- Matthew 8:30
- Matthew 26:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G00340, G41670, G41680

(Go back to: [1 Kings 22:17](#))

flute, pipe

Definition:

In Bible times, pipes were musical instruments made of bone or wood with holes to allow the sound to come out. A flute was a kind of pipe.

- Most pipes had reeds made out of a kind of thick grass that vibrated as air was blown over it.
- A pipe without any reeds was often called a “flute.”
- A shepherd played a pipe to calm his flocks of sheep.
- Pipes and flutes were used for playing sad or joyful music.

(See also: [flock](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 14:7
- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- Daniel 3:3-5
- Luke 7:31-32
- Matthew 9:23
- Matthew 11:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4953, H5748, H2485, H2490, G08320, G08340, G08360

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:40](#))

fool, foolish, folly

Definition:

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “fool” could be translated as “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: [wise](#))

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 1:17
- Ephesians 5:15
- Galatians 3:3
- Genesis 31:28
- Matthew 7:26
- Matthew 25:8
- Proverbs 13:16
- Psalms 49:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0191, H0196, H0200, H1198, H1984, H2973, H3684, H3687, H3688, H3689, H3690, H5014, H5034, H5036, H5039, H5528, H5529, H5530, H5531, H6612, H8417, H8602, H8604, G04530, G04540, G07810, G08010, G08770, G08780, G27570, G31500, G31540, G34710, G34720, G34730, G34740, G39120

(Go back to: [1 Kings 11 General Notes](#))

forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. "Forgiveness" is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean "cancel," as in the expression "forgive a debt."
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term "pardon" means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as "forgive" but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "forgive" could be translated as "pardon" or "cancel" or "release" or "not hold against" (someone).
- The term "forgiveness" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "practice of not resenting" or "declaring (someone) as not guilty" or "the act of pardoning."
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate "pardon."

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 5:17-19
- Psalms 25:11
- Psalms 25:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:2
- Luke 5:21
- Acts 8:22
- Ephesians 4:31-32
- Colossians 3:12-14
- 1 John 2:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **7:10** But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- **13:15** Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- **17:13** David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.

- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- **29:1** One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?"
- **29:8** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins."

Word Data:

- H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G85900, G86300, G54830

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:30](#); [8:34](#); [8:36](#); [8:39](#); [8:50](#); [Notes](#))

forsake, forsaken, leave

Definition:

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 71:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G06460, G06570, G08630, G14590, G26410

(Go back to: [1 Kings 6:13](#); [8:57](#); [9:9](#); [11:33](#); [12:8](#); [12:13](#); [18:18](#); [19:10](#); [19:14](#))

found, founder, foundation

Definition:

The verb “found” means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase “founded on” means supported by or based on. A “foundation” is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: cornerstone, create)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:29
- Matthew 13:35
- Matthew 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0134, H0787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H8356, G23100, G23110, G26020

(Go back to: [1 Kings 6:37](#); [7:9](#); [7:10](#); [16:34](#))

fountain, source, spring

Definition:

The terms “fountain” and “spring” usually refer to a large amount of water that flows out naturally from the ground.

- These words are also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to blessings flowing from God or to refer to something that cleanses and purifies.
- In modern times, a fountain is often a manmade object that has water flowing out of it, such as a drinking fountain. Make sure that the translation of this term refers to a natural source of flowing water.
- Compare the translation of this term with how the term “flood” is translated.

(See also: flood)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:17
- Genesis 7:11
- Genesis 8:2
- Genesis 24:13
- Genesis 24:42
- James 3:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0953, H1530, H1543, H3222, H4002, H4161, H4456, H4599, H4726, H5033, H5869, H5927, H6524, H6779, H8444, H8666, G02420, G40770

(Go back to: [1 Kings 18:5](#))

free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty

Definition:

The terms “free” or “freedom” refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for “freedom” is “liberty.”

- The expression to “set someone free” or to “free someone” means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having “liberty” or “freedom” can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “free” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “not bound” or “not enslaved” or “not in slavery” or “not in bondage.”
- The term “freedom” or “liberty” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the state of being free” or “the condition of not being a slave” or “not being bound.”
- The expression to “set free” could be translated as to “cause to be free” or to “rescue from slavery” or to “release from bondage.”
- A person who has been “set free” has been “released” or “taken out of” bondage or slavery.

(See also: bind, enslave, [servant](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:26
- Galatians 5:1
- Isaiah 61:1
- Leviticus 25:10
- Romans 6:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6362, H7342, H7971, G04250, G05250, G05580, G06290, G06300, G08590, G13440, G14320, G16570, G16580, G16590, G18490, G30890, G39550, G45060, G54830

(Go back to: [1 Kings 14:10](#); [15:22](#); [21:21](#))

furnace

Facts:

A furnace was a very large oven used for heating objects to a high temperature.

- In ancient times, most furnaces were used for melting metals to make objects such as cooking pots, jewelry, weapons, and idols.
- Furnaces were also used in the making of clay pottery.
- Sometimes a furnace is referred to figuratively to explain that something is very hot.

(See also: [false god](#), [image](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:51
- Genesis 19:28
- Proverbs 17:3
- Psalms 21:9
- Revelation 9:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0861, H3536, H3564, H5948, H8574, G25750

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:51](#))

Galilee, Galilean

Facts:

Galilee was the most northern region of Israel, just north of Samaria. A “Galilean” was a person who lived in Galilee or who lived in Galilee.

- Galilee, Samaria, and Judea were the three main provinces of Israel during New Testament times.
- Galilee is bordered on the east by a large lake called the “Sea of Galilee.”
- Jesus grew up and lived in the town of Nazareth in Galilee.
- Most of the miracles and teachings of Jesus took place in the region of Galilee.

(See also: Nazareth, [Samaria](#), [Sea of Galilee](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 9:32
- Acts 13:31
- John 2:1-2
- John 4:3
- Luke 13:3
- Mark 3:7
- Matthew 2:22-23
- Matthew 3:13-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:10** The prophet Isaiah said the Messiah would live in **Galilee**, comfort broken-hearted people, and proclaim freedom to captives and release to prisoners.
- **26:1** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of the Holy Spirit to the region of **Galilee** where he lived.
- **39:6** Finally, the people said, “We know that you were with Jesus because you both are from **Galilee**.”
- **41:6** Then the angel told the women, “Go and tell the disciples, ‘Jesus has risen from the dead and he will go to **Galilee** ahead of you.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1551, G10560, G10570

(Go back to: [1 Kings 9:11](#))

gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Definition:

The term “gate” refers to an access point in a fence, wall, or other kind of barrier that surrounds a house, property, city, etc.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A “bar” for a gate refers to a wood or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the doors of the gate cannot be opened from the outside.
- In Bible times, a city gate was often the social center for that town or city. It was a place where news of current events was exchanged between people, where business transactions occurred, and where civil judgments were made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

- Acts 9:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:1
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 7:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G23740, G44390, G44400

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:13](#); [8:37](#); [22:10](#))

Gath, Gittite

Facts:

Gath was one of the five major cities of the Philistines. It was located north of Ekron and east of Ashdod and Ashkelon.

- The Philistine warrior Goliath was from the city of Gath.
- During the time of Samuel, the Philistines stole the ark of the covenant from Israel and took it to their pagan temple at Ashdod. It was then moved to Gath and later to Ekron. But God punished the people of those cities with disease, so they sent it back to Israel again.
- When David was escaping from King Saul, he fled to Gath and lived there awhile with his two wives and with six hundred men who were his loyal followers.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, [Gaza](#), Goliath, [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 2:39
- 1 Samuel 5:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 26:6-8
- Joshua 11:21-22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1661, H1663

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:39](#); [2:40](#); [2:41](#))

Gaza

Facts:

During Bible times, Gaza was a prosperous Philistine city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, about 38 kilometers south of Ashdod. It was one of the Philistines' five major cities.

- Because of its location, Gaza was a key seaport where commercial activities took place between many different people groups and nations.
- Today, the city of Gaza is still an important seaport in the Gaza Strip, which is a region of land located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea bordered by Israel on the north and east, and by Egypt on the south.
- Gaza was the city that the Philistines took Samson to after they had captured him.
- Philip the evangelist was walking along the desert road to Gaza when he met an Ethiopian eunuch.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ashdod, Philip, [Philistines](#), Ethiopia, [Gath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:24-25
- Acts 8:26
- Genesis 10:19
- Joshua 10:40-41
- Judges 6:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5804, H5841, G10480

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:24](#))

Gibeon, Gibeonite

Facts:

Gibeon was a city that was located about 13 kilometers northwest of Jerusalem. The people living in Gibeon were the Gibeonites.

- When the Gibeonites heard about how the Israelites had destroyed the cities of Jericho and Ai, they were afraid.
- So the Gibeonites came to the leaders of Israel at Gilgal and pretended to be people from a far-away country.
- The Israelite leaders were deceived and made an agreement with the Gibeonites that they would protect them and not destroy them.

(See also: Gilgal, [Jericho](#), [Jerusalem](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 8:29
- 1 Kings 3:4-5
- 2 Samuel 2:12-13
- Joshua 9:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:6** But one of the Canaanite people groups, called the **Gibeonites**, lied to Joshua and said they were from a place far from Canaan.
- **15:7** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the Amorites, heard that the **Gibeonites** had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked **Gibeon**.
- **15:8** So Joshua gathered the Israelite army and they marched all night to reach the **Gibeonites**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1391, H1393

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:4](#); [3:5](#); [9:2](#))

gift

Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:1
- 2 Samuel 11:8
- Acts 8:20
- Acts 10:4
- Acts 11:17
- Acts 24:17
- James 1:17
- John 4:9-10
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 8:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5078, H5083, H5379, H7810, H8641, G03340, G13900, G13940, G14310, G14340, G14350, G33110, G54860

(Go back to: [1 Kings 10:25](#); [13:7](#))

Gilead, Gileadite

Definition:

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region was also referred to as the “hill country of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead.”
- “Gilead” was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Gad, Jephthah, [Manasseh](#), Reuben, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:22
- 1 Samuel 11:1
- Amos 1:3
- Deuteronomy 2:36-37
- Genesis 31:21
- Genesis 37:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1568, H1569

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:7](#); [4:13](#); [4:19](#); [17:1](#))

gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around

Definition:

The term “gird” means to fasten something around something else. It often refers to using a belt or sash around the waist to keep a robe or tunic in place.

- The common biblical phrase, “gird up the loins” refers to tucking the bottom of a garment into a belt to allow a person to move more freely, usually to do work.
- This phrase can also mean “get ready to work” or to be prepared to do something difficult.
- The expression “gird up the loins” could be translated using an expression in the target language that has the same meaning. Or it could be translated figuratively as “prepare yourself for action” or “get yourself ready.”
- The term “girded with” could be translated as “encircled by” or “wrapped with” or “belted with.”

(See also: [loins](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:13
- Job 38:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0640, H0247, H2290, H2296, H8151, G03280, G12410, G40240

(Go back to: [1 Kings 18:46](#); [20:11](#); [20:14](#); [20:32](#))

glory, glorious, glorify

Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God’s character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh’s presence in a particular location.

New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: [honor](#), majesty, [exalt](#), obey, praise)

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:2

- Luke 18:43
- Luke 2:9
- John 12:28
- Acts 3:13-14
- Acts 7:1-3
- Romans 8:17
- 1 Corinthians 6:19-20
- Philippians 2:14-16
- Philippians 4:19
- Colossians 3:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 2:5
- James 2:1-4
- 1 Peter 4:15-16
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:6** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:1** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- **37:8** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0142, H0155, H0215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G13910, G13920, G17400, G17410, G27440, G48880

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:11](#))

God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: create, [false god](#), God the Father, Holy Spirit, [false god](#), Son of God, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 4:10
- Colossians 1:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 3:1-2
- Genesis 1:2
- Hosea 4:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 2:20
- Jeremiah 5:5
- John 1:3
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Lamentations 3:43
- Micah 4:5
- Philippians 2:6
- Proverbs 24:12

- Psalms 47:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **1:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **5:3** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **9:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:2** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:7** "You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:9** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:7** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:1** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:9** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0136, H0305, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G01120, G05160, G09320, G09350, G10960, G11400, G20980, G21240, G21280, G21500, G21520, G21530, G22990, G23040, G23050, G23120, G23130, G23140, G23150, G23160, G23170, G23180, G23190, G23200, G33610, G37850, G41510, G52070, G53770, G54630, G55370, G55380

(Go back to: 1 Kings 1:17; 1:30; 1:36; 1:47; 1:48; 2:3; 2:23; 3:5; 3:7; 3:11; 3:28; 4:29; 5:3; 5:4; 5:5; 8:15; 8:17; 8:20; 8:23; 8:25; 8:26; 8:27; 8:28; 8:57; 8:59; 8:60; 8:61; 8:65; 9:9; 10:9; 10:24; 11:4; 11:9; 11:23; 11:31; 12:22; 13:1; 13:4; 13:5; 13:6; 13:7; 13:8; 13:11; 13:12; 13:14; 13:21; 13:26; 13:29; 13:31; 14:7; 14:13; 15:3; 15:4; 15:30; 16:13; 16:26; 16:33; 17:1; 17:12; 17:14; 17:18; 17:20; 17:21; 17:24; 18:10; 18:21; 18:24; 18:36; 18:37; 18:39; 19:2; 19:8; 20:28; 21:10; 21:13; 22:53)

god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), [Asherah](#), [Baal](#), [Molech](#), demon, [image](#), [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:2
- Exodus 32:1
- Psalms 31:6
- Psalms 81:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 7:41
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 2:22
- Galatians 4:8-9
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:2** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0367, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G14930, G14940, G14950, G14960, G14970, G22990, G27120

(Go back to: [1 Kings 9:6](#); [11:2](#); [11:4](#); [11:5](#); [11:8](#); [11:10](#); [11:33](#); [12:28](#); [14:9](#); [15:12](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [18:24](#); [18:25](#); [18:27](#); [20:10](#); [20:23](#); [20:28](#); [21:26](#))

gold, golden

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [false god](#), [silver](#), tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:7
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 1:15
- Acts 3:6
- Daniel 2:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G55520, G55530, G55540, G55570

(Go back to: [1 Kings 6:20; 6:21; 6:22; 6:28; 6:30; 6:32; 6:35; 7:48; 7:49; 7:50; 7:51; 9:11; 9:14; 9:28; 10:2; 10:10; 10:11; 10:14; 10:16; 10:17; 10:18; 10:21; 10:22; 10:25; 12:28; 14:26; 15:15; 15:18; 15:19; 20:3; 20:5; 20:7; 22:48](#))

good, right, pleasant, better, best

Definition:

The term “good” generally refers to a positive evaluation of the quality of something or someone, often in a moral or emotional sense. However, the term conveys various nuances throughout the Bible depending on the context.

- Something that is “good” could be emotionally pleasant, morally right, excellent, helpful, suitable, or profitable.
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone or “cause someone to prosper.”
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [righteous](#), [prosper](#), [evil](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 5:22-24
- Genesis 1:12
- Genesis 2:9
- Genesis 2:17
- James 3:13
- Romans 2:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:4** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **1:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.
- **1:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **8:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:1** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0145, H0155, H0202, H0239, H0410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G00140, G00150, G00180, G00190, G05150, G07440, G08650, G09790, G13800, G20950, G20970, G21060, G21070, G21080, G21090, G21140, G21150, G21330, G21400, G21620, G21630, G21740, G22930, G25650, G25670, G25700, G25730, G28870, G29860, G31400, G36170, G37760, G41470, G46320, G46740, G48510, G52230, G52240, G53580, G55420, G55430, G55440

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:6](#); [1:42](#); [1:47](#); [2:18](#); [2:32](#); [2:38](#); [2:42](#); [3:9](#); [3:10](#); [8:36](#); [8:56](#); [8:66](#); [9:12](#); [10:7](#); [12:7](#); [14:13](#); [14:15](#); [18:24](#); [19:4](#); [20:3](#); [21:2](#); [22:8](#); [22:13](#); [22:18](#))

govern, governor, proconsul, Tirshatha

Definition:

A “governor” is a person who rules over a large area of land (such as a territory, region, or province) within a nation or empire.

- In the Old Testament, the term “Tirshatha” is a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Persian province.
- In the New Testament, the term “proconsul” is a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A “government” consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “governor” can also be translated as “ruler” or “overseer” or “regional leader” or “one who rules over a small territory.”
- Depending on the context, the term “govern” could also be translated as “rule over” or “lead” or “manage” or “supervise.”
- The term “governor” should be translated differently than the terms for “king” or “emperor”, since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term “proconsul” could also be translated as “Roman governor” or “Roman provincial ruler.”

(See also: authority, [king](#), power, [province](#), Rome, [ruler](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 23:22
- Acts 26:30
- Mark 13:9-10
- Matthew 10:18
- Matthew 27:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0324, H1777, H2280, H4951, H5148, H5460, H6346, H6347, H6486, H7989, H8269, H8660, G04450, G04460, G07460, G14810, G22320, G22330, G22300, G42320

(Go back to: [1 Kings 10:15](#); [20:24](#))

grain offering

Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), guilt offering, [sacrifice](#), sin offering)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:27-29
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Judges 13:19
- Leviticus 2:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4503, H8641

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:64](#); [18:29](#); [18:36](#))

grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#), [death](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 2:29-31
- Genesis 23:6
- Genesis 50:5
- John 19:41
- Luke 23:53
- Mark 5:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 3:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:4** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:6** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **37:7** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **40:9** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **41:4** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **41:5** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G34180, G34190, G50280

(Go back to: [1 Kings 13:22](#); [13:30](#); [13:31](#); [14:13](#))

hand

Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. This term is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- The term “hand” can be used figuratively to refer to the position of being “beside” a person, an object, or a location.
- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.” To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: power, right hand, [honor](#), [bless](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:25
- Acts 8:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 9:5
- Genesis 14:20
- John 3:35
- Mark 7:32
- Matthew 6:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G07100, G11880, G14480, G14510, G21760, G29020, G40840, G44740, G54950, G54960, G54970

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:25; 2:46; 8:15; 8:24; 8:42; 8:53; 8:56; 10:13; 10:29; 11:12; 11:31; 11:34; 11:35; 12:15; 13:4; 13:6; 14:3; 14:18; 14:27; 15:18; 15:29; 16:7; 16:12; 16:34; 17:11; 17:16; 18:9; 18:46; 20:6; 20:13; 20:28; 20:42; 22:3; 22:6; 22:12; 22:15; 22:34](#))

hard, harden, hardness

Definition:

The term “hard” generally refers to something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

- The use of “hard” (in various forms) with “heart” refers to people being stubbornly unrepentant or disobedient (usually) to God.
- When used as a modifier, its meaning is similar to “great effort.”

Translation Suggestions

- The term “hard” could also be translated as “difficult” or “stubborn” or “challenging,” depending on the context.
- The terms “hardness” or “hardness of heart” or “hard heart” could be translated as “stubbornness” or “persistent rebellion” or “rebellious attitude” or “stubborn disobedience” or “stubbornly not repenting.”
- The term “hardened” could also be translated as “stubbornly unrepentant” or “refusing to obey.”
- “Do not harden your heart” could be translated as “do not refuse to repent” or “do not stubbornly keep disobeying.”
- Other ways to translate “hard-headed” or “hard-hearted” could include “stubbornly disobedient” or “continuing to disobey” or “refusing to repent” or “always rebelling.”
- In expressions such as “work hard” or “try hard,” the term “hard” could be translated as “with perseverance” or “diligently.”
- The expression “press hard against” could also be translated as “shove with force” or “push strongly against.”
- To “oppress people with hard labor” could be translated as “force people to work so hard that they suffer” or “cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work.”
- A different kind of “hard labor” is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: disobey, [evil](#), [heart](#), labor pains, stiff-necked)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 11:23
- Deuteronomy 15:7
- Exodus 14:4
- Hebrews 4:7
- John 12:40
- Matthew 19:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0553, H1692, H2388, H2389, H2420, H2864, H3021, H3332, H3513, H3515, H3966, H4165, H4522, H5450, H5647, H5797, H5810, H5980, H5999, H6089, H6381, H6635, H7185, H7186, H7188, H7280, H8068, H8307, H8631, G09170, G14190, G14210, G14220, G14230, G22050, G25320, G25530, G28720, G28730, G34250, G34330, G40530, G41830, G44560, G44570, G46410, G46420, G46430, G46450, G49120

(Go back to: [1 Kings 12:4](#))

harp, harpist

Definition:

A harp is a stringed musical instrument, that usually consists of a large open frame with vertical strings.

- In Bible times, fir wood was used to make harps and other musical instruments.
- Harps were often held in the hands and played while walking.
- In many places in the Bible, harps are mentioned as instruments that were used to praise and worship God.
- David wrote several psalms which were set to harp music.
- He also played a harp for King Saul, to soothe the king's troubled spirit.

(See also: [David](#), fir, psalm, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:16-18
- Amos 5:23-24
- Daniel 3:5
- Psalm 33:1-3
- Revelation 5:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3658, H5035, H5059, H7030, G27880, G27890, G27900

(Go back to: [1 Kings 10:12](#))

head

Definition:

The word “head” refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including “top,” “first,” “beginning,” “source,” and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term “head” include:

- The expression “no razor will ever touch his head” means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression “head of a mountain” refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term “head” refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase “You have made me the head over nations” means “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over....”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as “authority” or “ruler” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include “top” or “beginning” or “source” or “leader.”

(See also: chief, grain)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:51-54
- 1 Kings 8:1-2
- 1 Samuel 9:22
- Colossians 2:10
- Colossians 2:19
- Numbers 1:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G03460, G07550, G27750, G27760, G47190

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:32](#); [2:33](#); [2:37](#); [2:44](#); [7:16](#); [7:17](#); [7:18](#); [7:19](#); [7:22](#); [7:35](#); [7:41](#); [8:1](#); [8:8](#); [8:32](#); [10:19](#); [18:42](#); [20:31](#); [20:32](#); [21:9](#); [21:12](#))

heart

Definition:

The term “heart” refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: [hard](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:17
- 1 Thessalonians 2:4
- 2 Thessalonians 3:13-15
- Acts 8:22
- Acts 15:9
- Luke 8:15
- Mark 2:6
- Matthew 5:8
- Matthew 22:37

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G06740, G12820, G12710, G21330, G25880, G25890, G46410, G46980, G55900

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:4; 2:44; 3:6; 3:9; 3:12; 4:29; 8:17; 8:18; 8:23; 8:38; 8:39; 8:47; 8:48; 8:58; 8:61; 8:66; 9:3; 9:4; 10:2; 10:24; 11:2; 11:3; 11:4; 11:9; 12:26; 12:27; 14:8; 15:3; 15:14; 18:37; 21:7](#))

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Deuteronomy 9:1
- Ephesians 6:9
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 7:11
- John 3:12
- John 3:27
- Matthew 5:18
- Matthew 5:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G09320, G20320, G33210, G37700, G37710, G37720

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:22](#); [8:23](#); [8:27](#); [8:30](#); [8:32](#); [8:34](#); [8:35](#); [8:36](#); [8:39](#); [8:43](#); [8:45](#); [8:49](#); [8:54](#); [14:11](#); [16:4](#); [18:45](#); [21:24](#); [22:19](#))

Hebron

Facts:

Hebron was a city located in the high, rocky hills about 20 miles south of Jerusalem.

- The city was built around 2000 BC during the time of Abram. It was mentioned many times in the historical accounts given in the Old Testament.
- Hebron had a very important role in King David's life. Several of his sons, including Absalom, were born there.
- The city was destroyed around AD 70 by the Romans.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Absalom](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 2:10-11
- Genesis 13:18
- Genesis 23:1-2
- Genesis 35:27
- Genesis 37:12-14
- Judges 1:10
- Numbers 13:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2275, H2276

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:11](#))

high place

Definition:

The term “high places” refers to the altars and shrines that were used for worshiping idols. They were usually built on higher ground, such as on a hill or mountainside.

- Many of the kings of Israel sinned against God by building altars to false gods on these high places. This led the people to become deeply involved in worshiping idols.
- It often happened that when a God-fearing king started ruling in Israel or Judah, often he would remove the high places or altars in order to stop the worship of these idols.
- However, some of these good kings were careless and did not remove the high places, which resulted in the entire nation of Israel would continue to worship idols.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “elevated places for idol worship” or “hilltop idol shrines” or “idol altar mounds.”
- Make sure it is clear that this term refers to the idol altars, not just to the high place where those altars were located.

(See also: [altar](#), [false god](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 9:12-13
- 2 Kings 16:4
- Amos 4:13
- Deuteronomy 33:29
- Ezekiel 6:1-3
- Habakkuk 3:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1116, H1181, H1354, H2073, H4791, H7311, H7413

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:2](#); [3:3](#); [3:4](#); [11:7](#); [12:31](#); [12:32](#); [13:2](#); [13:32](#); [13:33](#); [14:23](#); [15:14](#); [22:43](#))

Hittite

Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: descendant, Esau, [foreigner](#), Ham, [mighty](#), [Solomon](#), [Uriah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:20-21
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 23:11
- Genesis 25:10
- Joshua 1:4-5
- Nehemiah 9:8
- Numbers 13:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2850

(Go back to: [1 Kings 9:20](#); [10:29](#); [11:1](#); [15:5](#))

Hivite

Facts:

The Hivites were one of seven major people groups living in the land of Canaan.

- All these groups, including the Hivites, were descended from Canaan, who was Noah's grandson.
- Shechem the Hivite raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, and her brothers killed many Hivites in revenge.
- When Joshua led the Israelites to take over the land of Canaan, the Israelites were tricked into making a treaty with the Hivites instead of conquering them.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), Hamor, Noah, [Shechem](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 8:7-8
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 34:2
- Joshua 9:1-2
- Judges 3:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2340

(Go back to: [1 Kings 9:20](#))

holy place

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “the holy place” and “the most holy place” refer to the two parts of the tabernacle or temple building.

- The “holy place” was the first room, and it contained the altar of incense and the table with the special “bread of the presence” on it.
- The “most holy place” was the second, innermost room, and it contained the ark of the covenant.
- A thick, heavy curtain separated the outer room from the inner room.
- The high priest was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy place.
- Sometimes “holy place” refers to both the building and courtyard areas of either the temple or tabernacle. It could also refer generally to any place that is set apart for God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “holy place” could also be translated as “room set apart for God” or “special room for meeting God” or “place reserved for God.”
- The term “most holy place” could be translated as “room that is the most set apart for God” or “most special room for meeting God.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the general expression “a holy place” could include “a consecrated place” or “a place that God has set apart” or “a place in the temple complex, which is holy” or “a courtyard of God’s holy temple.”

(See also: altar of incense, [ark of the covenant](#), [bread](#), consecrate, [courtyard](#), [curtain](#), [holy](#), [set apart](#), tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:16-18
- Acts 6:12-15
- Exodus 26:33
- Exodus 31:10-11
- Ezekiel 41:1
- Ezra 9:8-9
- Hebrews 9:1-2
- Leviticus 16:18
- Matthew 24:15-18
- Revelation 15:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1964, H4720, H4725, H5116, H6918, H6944, G00400, G00400, G34850, G51170

(Go back to: [1 Kings 6:16](#); [7:50](#); [8:6](#); [8:8](#); [8:10](#))

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was oftentimes used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, consecrate, sanctify, [set apart](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 3:2
- Lamentations 4:1
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 7:6

- Mark 8:38
- Acts 7:33
- Acts 11:8
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 1:22
- 1 Thessalonians 3:13
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **9:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:1** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:5** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:5** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:2** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G00370, G00380, G00400, G00400, G00410, G00420, G04620, G18590, G21500, G24120, G24130, G28390, G37410, G37420

(Go back to: [1 Kings 7:51](#); [8:4](#); [15:15](#))

honey, honeycomb

Definition:

"Honey" is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God's words and decrees are said to be "sweeter than honey." (See also: [Simile](#), [Metaphor](#))
- Sometimes a person's words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: John (the Baptist), [Jonathan](#), [Philistines](#), Samson)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 6:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 5:6
- Proverbs 5:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G31920

(Go back to: [1 Kings 14:3](#))

honor

Definition:

The terms “honor” and to “honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term to “honor” could be translated as to “show special respect to” or to “cause to be praised” or to “show high regard for” or to “highly value.”

(See also: dishonor, [glory](#), [glory](#), praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:8
- Acts 19:17
- John 4:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 6:4
- Matthew 15:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G08200, G13910, G13920, G17840, G21510, G25700, G31700, G44110, G45860, G50910, G50920, G50930, G53990

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:13](#))

Horeb

Definition:

Mount Horeb is another name for Mount Sinai, where God gave Moses the stone tablets with the ten commandments.

- Mount Horeb is called the “mountain of God.”
- Horeb was the place where Moses saw the burning bush when he was tending sheep.
- Mount Horeb was the place where God revealed his covenant to the Israelites by giving them the stone tablets with his commandments written on them.
- It was also the place where God later told Moses to strike a rock to provide water for the Israelites as they were wandering in the desert.
- The exact location of this mountain is not known, but it may have been in the southern part of what is now the Sinai Peninsula.
- It is possible that “Horeb” was the actual name of the mountain and that “Mount Sinai” simply means “mountain of Sinai,” referring to the fact that Mount Horeb was located in the desert of Sinai.

(See also: [covenant](#), [Israel](#), [Moses](#), [Sinai](#), Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 5:9-10
- Deuteronomy 1:2
- Exodus 3:1-3
- Psalms 106:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2722

(Go back to: [1 Kings 19:8](#))

horn, horned

Facts:

Horns are permanent, hard, pointed growths on the heads of many types of animals, including cattle, sheep, goats, and deer.

- The horn of a ram (male sheep) was made into a musical instrument called a “ram’s horn” or “shofar,” which was blown for special events such as religious festivals.
- God told the Israelites to make a horn-shaped projection on each of the four corners of the incense and brazen altars. Although these projections were called “horns,” they were not actually animal horns.
- The term “horn” was sometimes used to refer to a “flask” that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king, as Samuel did with David.
- This term should be translated with a word that is different from the word that refers to a trumpet.
- The term “horn” is also used figuratively as a symbol of strength, power, authority, and royalty.

(See also: authority, [cow](#), [deer](#), goat, power royal, [sheep](#), trumpet)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:27-28
- 1 Kings 1:39
- 2 Samuel 22:3
- Jeremiah 17:1
- Psalms 22:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3104, H7160, H7161, H7162, H7782, G27680

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:34](#); [1:39](#); [1:41](#); [1:50](#); [1:51](#); [2:28](#); [22:11](#))

horse, warhorse, horseback

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for war and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.

(See also: [chariot](#), [donkey](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:4
- 2 Kings 2:11
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 6:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G24620

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:26](#); [4:28](#); [10:25](#); [10:28](#); [10:29](#); [18:5](#); [20:1](#); [20:20](#); [20:21](#); [20:25](#); [22:4](#))

horseman

Definition:

In Bible times, the term “horsemen” referred to men who rode horses into battle.

- Warriors who rode in horse-pulled chariots may also have been called “horsemen,” though this term usually refers to men who were actually riding on horses.
- Yahweh commanded the Israelites not to have many horsemen because having a strong army would cause them to trust their own strength rather than Yahweh in battle.
- This term could also be translated as “horse riders” or “men on horses.”

(See also: [chariot](#), [horse](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:5
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Genesis 50:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6571, H7395, G24600

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:5](#); [9:19](#); [9:22](#); [10:26](#); [20:20](#))

house of God, Yahweh's house

Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases "house of God" (God's house) and "house of Yahweh (Yahweh's house)" refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes "God's house" is used to refer to the people of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as "a house for worshiping God" or "a place for worshiping God."
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as "the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped" (or "where God is present" or "where God meets with his people").
- The word "house" may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God "dwells" there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: people of God, tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 3:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- Ezra 5:13
- Genesis 28:17
- Judges 18:30-31
- Mark 2:26
- Matthew 12:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0426, H0430, H1004, H1005, H3068, G23160, G36240

(Go back to: [1 Kings 6:1](#); [6:3](#); [6:4](#); [6:5](#); [6:6](#); [6:7](#); [6:8](#); [6:9](#); [6:10](#); [6:12](#); [6:14](#); [6:15](#); [6:16](#); [6:17](#); [6:18](#); [6:19](#); [6:21](#); [6:22](#); [6:27](#); [6:29](#); [6:30](#); [6:37](#); [6:38](#); [Notes](#); [7:12](#); [7:39](#); [7:40](#); [7:45](#); [7:48](#); [7:50](#); [7:51](#); [8:6](#); [8:10](#); [8:11](#); [8:13](#); [8:16](#); [8:17](#); [8:18](#); [8:19](#); [8:20](#); [8:27](#); [8:29](#); [8:31](#); [8:33](#); [8:38](#); [8:42](#); [8:43](#); [8:44](#); [8:48](#); [8:63](#); [8:64](#); [9:1](#); [9:10](#); [9:15](#); [10:5](#); [10:12](#); [12:27](#); [14:26](#); [14:28](#); [15:18](#))

house, household

Definition:

The term "house" refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as "household" or "descendants," etc.

- Sometimes the term "house" means "household," referring to all the people who live together in one house or multi-structure home compound (whether buildings or tents), including family members and all their servants.
- Sometimes the term "house" means "family" or "descendants," referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase "house of Israel" can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
- The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
- The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells." The phrase "house of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: descendant, [house of God](#), tabernacle, [temple](#), house of David, kingdom of Israel)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:42
- Acts 7:49
- Genesis 39:4
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 8:39
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 15:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, G36090, G36130, G36140, G36240

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:53; 2:24; 2:27; 2:31; 2:33; 2:34; 2:36; 3:1; 3:2; 3:17; 3:18; 4:6; 4:7; 5:3; 5:5; 5:9; 5:11; 5:14; 5:17; 5:18; 6:2; 7:1; 7:2; 7:8; 9:1; 9:3; 9:7; 9:8; 9:10; 9:15; 9:24; 9:25; 10:4; 10:12; 10:17; 10:21; 11:18; 11:20; 11:28; 11:38; 12:16; 12:19; 12:20; 12:21; 12:23; 12:24; 12:26; 12:31; 13:2; 13:7; 13:8; 13:15; 13:18; 13:19; 13:32; 13:34; 14:4; 14:8; 14:10; 14:12; 14:13; 14:14; 14:17; 14:26; 14:27; 15:15; 15:18; 15:27; 15:29; 16:3; 16:7; 16:9; 16:11; 16:12; 16:18; 16:32; 17:15; 17:17; 17:23; 18:3; 18:18; 20:6; 20:31; 20:43; 21:2; 21:4; 21:22; 21:29; 22:17; 22:27; 22:39](#))

humble, humbled, humility

Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one’s weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: proud)

Bible References:

- James 1:21
- James 3:13
- James 4:10
- Luke 14:11
- Luke 18:14
- Matthew 18:4
- Matthew 23:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **34:10** “God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G08580, G42360, G42390, G42400, G50110, G50120, G50130, G53910

(Go back to: [1 Kings 21:29](#))

image, carved image, cast metal images, figure, carved figure, statue

Definition:

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term “image” is a shortened form of “carved image.”

- A “carved image” or “carved figure” is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A “cast metal figure” is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term “image” when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to an idol, the term “image” could also be translated as “statue” or “engraved idol” or “carved religious object.”
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as “carved image” or “cast metal figure,” even in places where only the term “image” or “figure” is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: [false god](#), [God](#), [false god](#), image of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:9-10
- Acts 7:43
- Isaiah 21:8-9
- Matthew 22:21
- Romans 1:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0457, H1544, H2553, H4541, H4676, H4853, H4906, H5257, H5262, H5566, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6754, H6755, H6816, H8403, H8544, H8655, G15040, G51790

(Go back to: [1 Kings 14:9](#))

incense

Definition:

The term “incense” refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that is burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

- God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
- The incense had to be made by mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
- The “altar of incense” was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
- The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
- The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
- Other ways to translate “incense” could include “fragrant spices” or “good-smelling plants.”

(See also: altar of incense, [burnt offering](#), frankincense)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 3:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:10-11
- 2 Kings 14:4
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 1:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2553, H3828, H4196, H4289, H5208, H6988, H6999, H7002, H7004, H7381, G23680, G23690, G23700, G23790, G30310

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:3](#); [9:25](#); [11:8](#); [12:33](#); [13:1](#); [13:2](#); [22:43](#))

inherit, inheritance, heir

Definition:

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after a parent dies. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An “inheritance” is the things that are received, and an “heir” is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “inherited blessings.”

(See also: heir, [Canaan](#), Promised Land, [possess](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- 1 Peter 1:4
- 2 Samuel 21:3
- Acts 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 5:21
- Genesis 15:7
- Hebrews 9:15
- Jeremiah 2:7
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 79:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**.”
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?”
- **35:3** “There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, ‘Father, I want my **inheritance** now!’ So the father divided his property between the two sons.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G28160, G28170, G28190, G28200

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:36](#); [8:51](#); [8:53](#); [12:16](#); [21:3](#); [21:4](#))

iniquity

Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), [transgress](#), trespass)

Bible References:

- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 2:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 3:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G00920, G00930, G04580, G38920, G41890

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:47](#); [17:18](#))

Isaac

Facts:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name “Isaac” means “he laughs.” When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham’s faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac’s son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), descendant, [eternity](#), fulfill, [Jacob](#), Sarah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:28-29
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:19
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:8
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 31:18
- Matthew 8:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:4** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him **Isaac**.”
- **5:6** When **Isaac** was a young man, God tested Abraham’s faith by saying, “Take **Isaac**, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of **Isaac**.
- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, **Isaac**, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, **Isaac**.
- **6:5** **Isaac** prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **7:10** Then **Isaac** died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to **Isaac** now passed on to Jacob.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3327, H3446, G24640

(Go back to: [1 Kings 18:36](#))

Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. Often it refers to the nation that is descended from him.

- The name Israel probably means "He struggles with God."
- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "sons of Israel" or the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, [nation](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1
- 1 Kings 8:2
- Acts 2:36
- Acts 7:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 27:9
- Philippians 3:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **9:3** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **9:5** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:1** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *_Israel_* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:9** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave _Israel_ peace along all its borders.*
- **16:16** So God punished *_Israel_* again for worshipping idols.
- **43:6** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G09350, G24740, G24750

(Go back to: Introduction to 1 Kings; 1 Kings 1:3; 1:20; 1:30; 1:34; 1:35; 1:48; 2:4; 2:5; 2:11; 2:15; 2:32; 3:28; 4:1; 4:7; 5:13; 6:1; 6:13; 8:1; 8:2; 8:3; 8:5; 8:9; 8:14; 8:15; 8:16; 8:17; 8:20; 8:22; 8:23; 8:25; 8:26; 8:30; 8:33; 8:34; 8:36; 8:38; 8:41; 8:43; 8:52; 8:55; 8:56; 8:59; 8:62; 8:63; 8:65; 9:5; 9:7; 9:20; 9:21; 9:22; 10:9; 11:2; 11:9; 11:16; 11:25; 11:31; 11:32; 11:37; 11:38; 11:42; 12:1; 12:3; 12:16; 12:17; 12:18; 12:19; 12:20; 12:21; 12:24; 12:28; 12:33; 14:7; 14:10; 14:13; 14:14; 14:15; 14:16; 14:18; 14:19; 14:21; 14:24; 15:9; 15:16; 15:17; 15:19; 15:20; 15:25; 15:26; 15:27; 15:30; 15:31; 15:32; 15:33; 15:34; 16:2; 16:5; 16:8; 16:13; 16:14; 16:16; 16:17; 16:19; 16:20; 16:21; 16:23; 16:26; 16:27; 16:29; 16:33; 17:1; 17:14; 18:17; 18:18; 18:19; 18:20; 18:31; 18:36; 19:10; 19:14; 19:16; 19:18; 20:2; 20:4; 20:7; 20:11; 20:13; 20:15; 20:20; 20:21; 20:22; 20:26; 20:27; 20:28; 20:29; 20:31; 20:32; 20:40; 20:41; 20:43; 21:7; 21:18; 21:21; 21:22; 21:26; 22:1; 22:2; 22:3; 22:4; 22:5; 22:6; 22:8; 22:9; 22:10; 22:17; 22:18; 22:26; 22:29; 22:30; 22:31; 22:32; 22:33; 22:34; 22:39; 22:41; 22:44; 22:51; 22:52; 22:53)

Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. Often it refers to the nation that is descended from him.

- The name Israel probably means "He struggles with God."
- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "sons of Israel" or the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, [nation](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1
- 1 Kings 8:2
- Acts 2:36
- Acts 7:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 27:9
- Philippians 3:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **9:3** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **9:5** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:1** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *_Israel_* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:9** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave _Israel_ peace along all its borders.*
- **16:16** So God punished *_Israel_* again for worshipping idols.
- **43:6** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G09350, G24740, G24750

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:20](#); [4:25](#); [8:66](#))

Issachar

Facts:

Issachar was Jacob's ninth son. He was Leah's fifth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Issachar" or "Issachar."
- The meaning of the name is unknown, but it is similar to a Hebrew word meaning "reward, hire."
- The tribe of Issachar settled in central Canaan, southwest of the Sea of Galilee. Issachar's land was bordered by the lands of Naphtali, Zebulun, Manasseh, and Gad.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), Leah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:18
- Exodus 1:1-5
- Ezekiel 48:23-26
- Joshua 17:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3485, G24660

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:17](#); [15:27](#))

Jacob, Israel

Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac by Rebekah. God changed his name to "Israel." His descendants became the nation of Israel.

- Jacob is the last of the three patriarchs of the Israelite nation: Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. The descendants of Jacob's twelve sons became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The name Jacob is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "heel." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau. In the Old Testament times, the heel was a body part associated both with attack and with the rear part of a person's body. The Hebrew name Jacob was probably associated with the idea of attacking someone from behind.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which probably means "He struggles with God."
- Jacob married Laban's two daughters, Leah and Rachel, as well as each of their servants, Zilpah and Bilhah. These four women mothered the twelve sons who became the ancestral fathers of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- In the New Testament, a different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), twelve tribes of Israel, Leah, Rachel, Zilpah, Bilhah, [deceive](#), Esau, [Isaac](#), Rebekah, Laban)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:11
- Acts 7:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 4:4-5
- Matthew 8:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **7:1** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **7:7** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **7:8** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **7:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **8:1** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G23840

(Go back to: [1 Kings 18:31](#); [18:36](#))

jealous, jealousy

Definition:

The terms “jealous” and “jealousy” refer to a strong desire to protect the purity of a relationship. They can also refer to a strong desire to keep possession of something or someone.

- These terms are often used to describe the angry feeling that a person has toward a spouse who has been unfaithful in their marriage.
- When used in the Bible, these terms often refer to God’s strong desire for his people to remain pure and unstained by sin.
- God is also “jealous” for his name, desiring that it be treated with honor and reverence.
- Another meaning of jealous involves being angry that someone else is successful or more popular. This is close in meaning to the word “envious.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “jealous” could include “strong protective desire” or “possessive desire.”
- The term “jealousy” could be translated as “strong protective feeling” or “possessive feeling.”
- When talking about God, make sure the translation of these terms does not give a negative meaning of being resentful of someone else.
- In the context of people’s wrong feelings of anger toward other people who are more successful, the terms “envious” and “envy” could be used. But these terms should not be used for God.

(See also: envy)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 12:20
- Deuteronomy 5:9
- Exodus 20:5
- Ezekiel 36:5
- Joshua 24:19
- Nahum 1:2-3
- Romans 13:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7067, H7068, H7072, G22050, G38630

(Go back to: [1 Kings 14:22](#))

Jebus, Jebusite

Facts:

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham's son Canaan.

- The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, and its name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
- Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), Ham, [Jerusalem](#), Melchizedek)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:14
- 1 Kings 9:20-21
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 10:16
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Judges 1:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2982, H2983

(Go back to: [1 Kings 9:20](#))

Jehoiada

Facts:

Jehoiada was a priest who helped hide and protect King Ahaziah's son Joash until he was old enough to be declared king.

- Jehoiada arranged for hundreds of bodyguards to protect young Joash as he was proclaimed king by the people in the temple.
- Jehoiada led the people in getting rid of all the altars of the false god Baal.
- For the rest of his life, Jehoiada the priest advised King Joash to help him obey God and rule the people wisely.
- Another man named Jehoiada was the father of Benaiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaziah](#), [Baal](#), [Benaiah](#), [Joash](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 11:4
- 2 Kings 12:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3077

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:8](#); [1:26](#); [1:32](#); [1:36](#); [1:38](#); [1:44](#); [2:25](#); [2:29](#); [2:34](#); [2:35](#); [2:46](#); [4:4](#))

Jehoram, Joram

Facts:

“Jehoram” was the name of two kings in the Old Testament. Both kings were also known as “Joram.”

- One King Jehoram ruled over the kingdom of Judah for eight years. He was the son of King Jehoshaphat. This is the king that is most commonly known as Jehoram.
- The other King Jehoram ruled over the kingdom of Israel for twelve years. He was the son of King Ahab.
- King Jehoram of Judah reigned during the time that the prophets Jeremiah, Daniel, Obadiah, and Ezekiel were prophesying in the kingdom of Judah.
- The King Jehoram also reigned during some of the time that his father King Jehoshaphat was reigning over Judah.
- Some translations may choose to consistently use the name “Jehoram” when this king of Israel is mentioned and the name “Joram” for the king of Judah.
- Another way to clearly identify each one would be to include the name of his father.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Jehoshaphat](#), [Joram](#), [Judah](#), kingdom of Israel, [Obadiah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 22:48-50
- 2 Chronicles 21:3
- 2 Kings 11:1-3
- 2 Kings 12:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3088, H3141, G24960

(Go back to: [1 Kings 22:50](#))

Jehoshaphat

Facts:

Jehoshaphat was the name of at least two men in the Old Testament.

- The best known man by this name was King Jehoshaphat who was the fourth king to rule over the kingdom of Judah.
- He restored peace between Judah and Israel and destroyed the altars of false gods.
- Another Jehoshaphat was a "recorder" for David and Solomon. His job included writing documents for the king to sign and recording the history of the important events that happened in the kingdom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [altar](#), [David](#), [false god](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:10-12
- 1 Kings 4:17
- 2 Chronicles 17:1
- 2 Kings 1:17
- 2 Samuel 8:15-18
- Matthew 1:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3092, G24980

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:3](#); [4:17](#); [15:24](#); [22:2](#); [22:4](#); [22:5](#); [22:7](#); [22:8](#); [22:10](#); [22:18](#); [22:29](#); [22:30](#); [22:32](#); [22:41](#); [22:42](#); [22:44](#); [22:45](#); [22:48](#); [22:49](#); [22:50](#); [22:51](#))

Jehu

Facts:

Jehu was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- Jehu son of Hanani was a prophet during the reigns of King Ahab of Israel and King Jehoshaphat of Judah.
- Jehu son (or descendant) of Jehoshaphat was a general in the Israelite army who was anointed king by order of the prophet Elisha.
- King Jehu killed two evil kings, King Joram of Israel and King Ahaziah of Judah.
- King Jehu also killed all the relatives of the former King Ahab and had the evil queen Jezebel killed.
- King Jehu destroyed all the places of Baal worship in Samaria and killed all the prophets of Baal.
- King Jehu served the only true God, Yahweh, and was king over Israel for twenty-eight years.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Ahaziah](#), [Baal](#), [Elisha](#), [Jehoshaphat](#), [Jehu](#), [Jezebel](#), [Joram](#), [Judah](#), [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 4:35
- 1 Kings 16:2
- 2 Chronicles 19:1-3
- 2 Kings 10:9
- Hosea 1:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3058

(Go back to: [1 Kings 16:1](#); [16:7](#); [16:12](#); [19:16](#); [19:17](#))

Jericho

Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Jordan River](#), [Joshua](#), [miracle](#), Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:78
- Joshua 2:1-3
- Joshua 7:2-3
- Luke 18:35
- Mark 10:46-48
- Matthew 20:29-31
- Numbers 22:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:1** Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of **Jericho**.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of **Jericho**.
- **15:5** Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3405, G24100

(Go back to: [1 Kings 16:34](#))

Jeroboam

Facts:

Jeroboam son of Nebat was the first king of the northern kingdom of Israel around 900-910 BC. Another Jeroboam, son of King Jehoash, ruled over Israel about 120 years later.

- Yahweh gave Jeroboam son of Nebat a prophecy that he would become king after Solomon and that he would rule ten tribes of Israel.
- When Solomon died, the ten northern tribes of Israel rebelled against Solomon's son Rehoboam and instead made Jeroboam their king, leaving Rehoboam as king of only the southern two tribes, Judah and Benjamin.
- Jeroboam became a wicked king who led the people away from worshiping Yahweh and instead set up idols for them to worship. All the other kings of Israel followed Jeroboam's example and were evil like he was.
- Almost 120 years later, another King Jeroboam began ruling the northern kingdom of Israel. This Jeroboam was the son of King Jehoash and was wicked like all the previous kings of Israel had been.
- In spite of the Israelite's wickedness, God had mercy on them and helped this King Jeroboam to gain land and establish boundaries for their territory.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [false god](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:16-17
- 1 Kings 12:2
- 2 Chronicles 9:29
- 2 Kings 3:1-3
- Amos 1:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **18:8** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named **Jeroboam** to be their king.
- **18:9 Jeroboam** rebelled against God and caused the people to sin. He built two idols for his people to worship instead of worshiping God at the Temple in the kingdom of Judah.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3379

(Go back to: [1 Kings 11:26; 11:28; 11:29; 11:31; 11:40; 12:2; 12:3; 12:12; 12:15; 12:20; 12:25; 12:26; 12:32; 13:1; 13:4; 13:33; 13:34; 14:1; 14:2; 14:4; 14:5; 14:6; 14:7; 14:10; 14:11; 14:13; 14:14; 14:16; 14:17; 14:19; 14:20; 14:30; 15:1; 15:6; 15:7; 15:9; 15:25; 15:29; 15:30; 15:34; 16:2; 16:3; 16:7; 16:19; 16:26; 16:31; 21:22; 22:52](#))

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: Babylon, Christ, [David](#), [Jebusites](#), Jesus, [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:26-27
- John 2:13
- Luke 4:9-11
- Luke 13:5
- Mark 3:7-8
- Mark 3:20-22
- Matthew 3:6
- Matthew 4:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:5** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:2** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:2** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G24140, G24150, G24190

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:11](#); [2:36](#); [2:38](#); [2:41](#); [3:1](#); [3:15](#); [8:1](#); [9:15](#); [9:19](#); [10:2](#); [10:26](#); [10:27](#); [11:7](#); [11:13](#); [11:29](#); [11:32](#); [11:36](#); [11:42](#); [12:18](#); [12:21](#); [12:27](#); [12:28](#); [14:21](#); [14:25](#); [15:2](#); [15:4](#); [15:10](#); [22:42](#))

Jesse

Facts:

Jesse was the father of King David and the grandson of Ruth and Boaz.

- Jesse was from the tribe of Judah.
- He was an “Ephrathite,” which means he was from the region of Ephrathah. The town of Bethlehem was located in the region of Ephrathah.
- The prophet Isaiah prophesied about a “shoot” or “branch” that would come from the “root of Jesse” and bear fruit. This refers to Jesus, who was a descendant of Jesse.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, [Boaz](#), descendant, Jesus, [king](#), [prophet](#), Ruth, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:12
- 1 Kings 12:16
- 1 Samuel 16:1
- Luke 3:32
- Matthew 1:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3448, G24210

(Go back to: [1 Kings 12:16](#))

Jezebel

Facts:

Jezebel was the wicked wife of King Ahab of Israel.

- Jezebel influenced Ahab and the rest of Israel to worship idols.
- She also killed many of God's prophets.
- Jezebel caused an innocent man named Naboth to be killed so that Ahab could steal Naboth's vineyard.
- Jezebel was finally killed due to all the evil things she had done. Elijah prophesied about how she would die and it happened exactly as he had predicted.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Elijah](#), [false god](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:31-33
- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 2 Kings 9:7
- 2 Kings 9:31
- Revelation 2:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0348, G24030

(Go back to: [1 Kings 16:31](#); [18:4](#); [18:13](#); [18:19](#); [19:1](#); [19:2](#); [21:5](#); [21:7](#); [21:11](#); [21:14](#); [21:15](#); [21:23](#); [21:25](#))

Jezreel, Jezreelite

Definition:

Jezreel was an important Israelite city in the territory of the Issachar tribe, located southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The city of Jezreel is one of the western points in the Plain of Megiddo, which is also called the “Valley of Jezreel.”
- Several kings of Israel had their palaces in the city of Jezreel.
- Naboth's vineyard was located near King Ahab's palace in Jezreel. The prophet Elijah prophesied against Ahab there.
- Ahab's evil wife Jezebel was killed in Jezreel.
- Many other significant events happened in this city, including several battles.

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Elijah](#), [Issachar](#), [Jezebel](#), [palace](#), Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:12
- 1 Samuel 25:43-44
- 2 Kings 8:28-29
- 2 Samuel 2:1-3
- Judges 6:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3157, H3158, H3159

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:12](#); [18:45](#); [18:46](#); [21:1](#); [21:4](#); [21:6](#); [21:15](#); [21:16](#); [21:23](#))

Joab

Definition:

Joab was an important military leader for King David throughout David's entire reign.

- Before David became king, Joab had already been one of his loyal followers.
- Later, during David's reign as king over Israel, Joab became the commander of King David's army.
- Joab was also King David's nephew, since his mother was one of David's sisters.
- When David's son Absalom betrayed him by trying to take over his kingship, Joab killed Absalom in order to protect the king.
- Joab was a very aggressive fighter and killed many people who were enemies of Israel.

(See also: [Absalom](#), [David](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:16-17
- 1 Kings 1:7
- 1 Samuel 26:6-8
- 2 Samuel 2:18
- Nehemiah 7:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3097

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:7](#); [1:19](#); [1:41](#); [2:5](#); [2:22](#); [2:28](#); [2:29](#); [2:30](#); [2:31](#); [2:33](#); [11:15](#); [11:16](#); [11:21](#))

Joash

Facts:

Joash was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- One Joash was the father of the Israelite deliverer Gideon.
- Another man named Joash was a descendant of Jacob's youngest son, Benjamin.
- The most well-known Joash became king of Judah at the age of seven. He was the son of Ahaziah, king of Judah, who had been murdered.
- When Joash was a very young child, his aunt saved him from being killed by hiding him away until he was old enough to be crowned king.
- King Joash was a good king who at first obeyed God. But he did not remove the high places, and the Israelites started worshiping idols again.
- King Joash ruled Judah during some of the years that King Jehoash was ruling Israel. They were two distinct kings.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaziah](#), [altar](#), [Benjamin](#), [false god](#), [Gideon](#), [high places](#), [false god](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:10-12
- 2 Chronicles 18:25-27
- 2 Kings 11:3
- Amos 1:1
- Judges 6:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3101, H3135

(Go back to: [1 Kings 22:26](#))

Jonathan

Facts:

Jonathan was the name of at least ten men in the Old Testament. The name means “Yahweh has given.”

- David’s best friend, Jonathan, is the most well-known Jonathan in the Bible with this name. This Jonathan was King Saul’s oldest son.
- Other Jonathans mentioned in the Old Testament include a descendant of Moses; a nephew of King David; several priests, including a son of Abiathar; and an Old Testament scribe in whose house the prophet Jeremiah was imprisoned.

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abiathar](#), [David](#), [Moses](#), Jeremiah, [priest](#), Saul (OT), [scribe](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:41-42
- 1 Samuel 14:1
- 1 Samuel 20:2
- 2 Samuel 1:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3083, H3129

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:42](#); [1:43](#))

Jordan River, Jordan

Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as “the Jordan.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), Salt Sea, [Sea of Galilee](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 1:26-28
- John 3:25-26
- Luke 3:3
- Matthew 3:6
- Matthew 3:13-15
- Matthew 4:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:2** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **19:14** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3383, G24460

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:8](#); [7:46](#); [17:3](#); [17:5](#))

Joseph (OT)

Facts:

Joseph was Jacob's eleventh son. He was Rachel's first son. The descendants of his two sons Ephraim and Manasseh became two of the tribes of Israel.

- The Hebrew name Joseph is similar to both the Hebrew word meaning "to add, increase" and the Hebrew word meaning "to gather, take away."
- A large portion of the book of Genesis is dedicated to the story of Joseph, how he remained faithful to God throughout his many difficulties and forgave his brothers who had sold him to be a slave in Egypt.
- Eventually God raised Joseph to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save the people of Egypt and the surrounding nations in a time when there was little food. Joseph helped save his own family from starving and brought them to live with him in Egypt.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Ephraim](#), [Manasseh](#), [Jacob](#), Rachel)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 4:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:2 Joseph's** brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **8:4** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **8:5** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **8:7** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- **8:9 Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **9:2** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3084, H3130, G25000, G25010

(Go back to: [1 Kings 11:28](#))

Joshua

Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
- Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Haggai](#), [Jericho](#), [Moses](#), [Promised Land](#), [Zechariah \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 7:25-27
- Deuteronomy 3:21
- Exodus 17:10
- Joshua 1:3
- Numbers 27:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:4** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.
- **14:6** Immediately Caleb and **Joshua**, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **14:8** "Except for **Joshua** and Caleb, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land."
- **14:14** Moses was now very old, so God chose **Joshua** to help him lead the people.
- **14:15** **Joshua** was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told **Joshua** how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3091, G24240

(Go back to: [1 Kings 16:34](#))

Josiah

Facts:

Josiah was a godly king who reigned over the kingdom of Judah for thirty-one years. He led the people of Judah to repent and worship Yahweh.

- After his father King Amon was killed, Josiah became king over Judah at eight years of age.
- In the eighteenth year of his reign, King Josiah ordered Hilkiah the high priest to rebuild the temple of the Lord. While this was being done, the books of the Law were found.
- When the books of the Law were read to Josiah, he was grieved at how his people were disobeying God. He ordered that all the places of idol worship be destroyed and that the priests of the false gods be killed.
- He also ordered the people to start celebrating the Passover feast again.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [false god](#), [Judah](#), [law](#), [Passover](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 33:24-25
- 2 Chronicles 34:3
- Jeremiah 1:3
- Matthew 1:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2977, G25020

(Go back to: [1 Kings 13:2](#))

joy, joyful, rejoice, glad

Definition:

joy

The term “joy” refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: [metonymy](#))

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 8:10
- Psalm 48:2
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 2:9-10
- Luke 15:7
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 3:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 5:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 5:23
- Philippians 4:10-13

- 1 Thessalonians 1:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:16
- Philemon 1:4-7
- James 1:2
- 3 John 1:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:4** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:7** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G00200, G00210, G21650, G21670, G27440, G46400, G47960, G49130, G54630, G54790

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:40](#); [1:45](#); [4:20](#); [5:7](#); [8:66](#))

Judah

Facts:

Judah was Jacob's fourth son. He was Leah's fourth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Judah" or "Judah."
- His name sounds similar to the Hebrew word meaning "praise."
- The tribe of Judah settled in the southern part of Canaan, including the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah.
- In the Old Testament, the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Ephraim is sometimes used to refer to the whole northern kingdom).
- King David, King Solomon, and all the kings of the southern kingdom were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Judah (kingdom), Jew, Judea, [Jacob](#), Leah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 1:9
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:2
- Luke 3:33
- Ruth 1:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:9](#); [1:35](#); [2:32](#); [4:20](#); [4:25](#); [12:17](#); [12:20](#); [12:21](#); [12:23](#); [12:27](#); [12:32](#); [13:1](#); [13:12](#); [13:14](#); [13:21](#); [14:21](#); [14:22](#); [14:29](#); [15:1](#); [15:7](#); [15:9](#); [15:17](#); [15:22](#); [15:23](#); [15:25](#); [15:28](#); [15:33](#); [16:8](#); [16:10](#); [16:15](#); [16:23](#); [16:29](#); [19:3](#); [22:2](#); [22:10](#); [22:29](#); [22:41](#); [22:45](#); [22:51](#))

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right. However, these terms can also refer to actions performed by a person as the result of a decision, usually in the context of deciding that something is bad, wrong, or evil.

- The terms “judge” and “judgment” can also mean “to cause harm to” (usually because God has decided a person or nation’s actions are wicked).
- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, [just](#), law, [law](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:17
- 1 Kings 3:9
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 3:14
- James 2:4
- Luke 6:37
- Micah 3:9-11
- Psalm 54:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?”

- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G01440, G03500, G09680, G11060, G12520, G13410, G13450, G13480, G13490, G29170, G29190, G29200, G29220, G29230, G42320

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:3](#); [3:9](#); [3:28](#); [6:12](#); [7:7](#); [8:32](#); [8:58](#); [9:4](#); [11:33](#); [20:40](#))

just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

Definition:

“Just” and “justice” refer to treating people fairly according to God’s laws. Human laws that reflect God’s standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be “just” is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God’s eyes.
- To act “justly” means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God’s laws.
- To receive “justice” means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term “just” has the broader meaning of “righteous” or “following God’s laws.”

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

The terms “justify” and “justification” refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- “Justification” refers to what God does when he forgives a person’s sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “just” could include “morally right” or “fair.”
- The term “justice” could be translated as “fair treatment” or “deserved consequences.”
- To “act justly” could be translated as “treat fairly” or “behave in a just way.”
- In some contexts, “just” could be translated as “righteous” or “upright.”
- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- Other ways to translate “justify” could include “declare (someone) to be righteous” or “cause (someone) to be righteous.”
- The term “justification” could be translated as “being declared righteous” or “becoming righteous” or “causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “resulting in justification” could be translated as “so that God justified many people” or “which resulted in God causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “for our justification” could be translated as “in order that we could be made righteous by God.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16
- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 4:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:3
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 3:8
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:3
- Luke 18:8
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:4
- Romans 4:1-3
- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:11
- Galatians 5:3-4
- Titus 3:6-7
- Hebrews 6:10
- James 2:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:9** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H2555, H3477, H4941, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G00910, G00930, G00940, G13420, G13440, G13450, G13460, G13470, G17380

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:11](#); [3:28](#); [8:45](#); [8:49](#); [8:59](#); [10:9](#))

Kerethites

Facts:

The Kerethites were a people group who were probably part of the Philistines. Some versions write this name as "Cherethites."

- The "Kerethites and Pelethites" were a special group of soldiers from King David's army who were especially devoted to him as his bodyguards.
- Benaiah, son of Jehoiada, a member of David's administrative corps, was the leader of the Kerethites and Pelethites.
- The Kerethites remained with David when he had to flee Jerusalem because of Absalom's revolt.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Absalom](#), [Benaiah](#), [David](#), [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

- Zephaniah 2:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3774

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:38](#); [1:44](#))

Kidron Valley

Facts:

The Kidron Valley is a deep valley just outside the city of Jerusalem, between its eastern wall and the Mount of Olives.

- The valley is over 1,000 meters deep and about 32 kilometers long.
- When King David was fleeing from his son Absalom, he went through the Kidron Valley to get to the Mount of Olives.
- King Josiah and King Asa of Judah ordered that the high places and altars of false gods be smashed and burned; the ashes were thrown into the Kidron Valley.
- During the reign of King Hezekiah, the Kidron Valley was where the priests threw everything impure that they removed from the temple.
- The evil queen Athaliah was killed in this valley because of the wicked things she had done.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Absalom](#), [Asa](#), [Athaliah](#), [David](#), [false god](#), [Hezekiah](#), [high places](#), [Josiah](#), [Judah](#), [Mount of Olives](#))

Bible References:

- John 18:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5674, H6939, G27480, G54930

(Go back to: [1 Kings 15:13](#))

kin, kinfolk, kindred, kinsman

Definition:

The term “kin” refers to a person’s blood relatives, considered as a group. The word “kinsman” refers specifically to a male relative.

- “Kin” can only refer to a person’s close relatives, such as parents and siblings, or it can also include more distant relatives, such as an aunts, uncles, or cousins.
- In ancient Israel, if a man died, his nearest male relative was expected to marry his widow, manage his property, and help carry on his family name. This relative was called a “kinsman-redeemer.”
- This term “kin” could also be translated as “relative” or “family member.”

Bible References:

- Romans 16:9-11
- Ruth 2:20
- Ruth 3:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0251, H1350, H4129, H4130, H7138, H7607, G47730

(Go back to: [1 Kings 16:11](#))

king, kingship

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, [kingdom](#), kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 6:15-16
- 2 Kings 5:18
- 2 Samuel 5:3
- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 5:35
- Matthew 14:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:1** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:5** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:6** God's prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G09350, G09360

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:1](#); [1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:4](#); [1:9](#); [1:13](#); [1:14](#); [1:15](#); [1:16](#); [1:18](#); [1:19](#); [1:20](#); [1:21](#); [1:22](#); [1:23](#); [1:24](#); [1:25](#); [1:27](#); [1:28](#); [1:29](#); [1:31](#); [1:32](#); [1:33](#); [1:34](#); [1:36](#); [1:37](#); [1:38](#); [1:39](#); [1:43](#); [1:44](#); [1:45](#); [1:47](#); [1:48](#); [1:51](#); [1:53](#); [2:17](#); [2:18](#); [2:19](#); [2:20](#); [2:22](#); [2:23](#); [2:25](#); [2:26](#); [2:29](#); [2:30](#); [2:31](#); [2:35](#); [2:36](#); [2:38](#); [2:39](#); [2:42](#); [2:44](#); [2:45](#); [2:46](#); [3:1](#); [3:4](#); [3:13](#); [3:16](#); [3:22](#); [3:23](#); [3:24](#); [3:25](#); [3:26](#); [3:27](#); [3:28](#); [4:1](#); [4:5](#); [4:7](#); [4:19](#); [4:24](#); [4:27](#); [4:34](#); [5:1](#); [5:13](#); [5:17](#); [6:2](#); [7:13](#); [7:14](#); [7:40](#); [7:45](#); [7:46](#); [7:51](#); [8:1](#); [8:2](#);

8:5; 8:14; 8:62; 8:63; 8:64; 8:66; 9:1; 9:10; 9:11; 9:14; 9:15; 9:16; 9:26; 9:28; 10:3; 10:6; 10:9; 10:10; 10:12; 10:13; 10:15; 10:16; 10:17; 10:18; 10:21; 10:22; 10:23; 10:26; 10:27; 10:28; 10:29; 11:1; 11:14; 11:18; 11:23; 11:26; 11:27; 11:37; 11:40; 12:2; 12:6; 12:12; 12:13; 12:15; 12:16; 12:18; 12:23; 12:27; 12:28; 13:4; 13:6; 13:7; 13:8; 13:11; 14:2; 14:14; 14:19; 14:25; 14:26; 14:27; 14:28; 14:29; 15:1; 15:7; 15:9; 15:16; 15:17; 15:18; 15:19; 15:20; 15:22; 15:23; 15:25; 15:28; 15:31; 15:32; 15:33; 16:5; 16:8; 16:10; 16:14; 16:15; 16:16; 16:18; 16:20; 16:23; 16:27; 16:29; 16:31; 16:33; 19:15; 19:16; 20:1; 20:2; 20:4; 20:7; 20:9; 20:11; 20:12; 20:13; 20:16; 20:20; 20:21; 20:22; 20:23; 20:24; 20:28; 20:31; 20:32; 20:38; 20:39; 20:40; 20:41; 20:43; 21:1; 21:10; 21:13; 21:18; 22:2; 22:3; 22:4; 22:5; 22:6; 22:8; 22:9; 22:10; 22:12; 22:13; 22:15; 22:16; 22:18; 22:26; 22:27; 22:29; 22:30; 22:31; 22:32; 22:33; 22:34; 22:35; 22:37; 22:39; 22:41; 22:44; 22:45; 22:47; 22:51)

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, [king](#), kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, [Judah](#), Judah, [priest](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:12
- 2 Timothy 4:17-18
- Colossians 1:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 3:24
- Matthew 4:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **18:4** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:8** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G09320

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:12](#); [2:46](#); [4:21](#); [9:5](#); [10:20](#); [11:11](#); [11:13](#); [11:31](#); [11:34](#); [12:26](#); [14:8](#); [18:10](#))

kiss

Definition:

A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

- Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
- A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
- The expression to "kiss someone farewell" means to say goodbye with a kiss.
- Sometimes the word "kiss" is used to mean "say goodbye to." When Elisha said to Elijah, "Let me first go and kiss my father and mother," he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:25-28
- Genesis 27:26-27
- Genesis 29:11
- Genesis 31:28
- Genesis 45:15
- Genesis 48:10
- Luke 22:48
- Mark 14:45
- Matthew 26:48

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5390, H5401, G27050, G53680, G53700

(Go back to: [1 Kings 19:18](#); [19:20](#))

know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

The term “know” and “knowledge” means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression “to make known” means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”
- When used of a man and a woman to “know” is often an euphemism that refers to having sexual intercourse.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as “distinguish.” When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition “between.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), reveal, [understand](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 2:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 2:15
- 2 Peter 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Genesis 19:5
- Luke 1:77

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G00500, G00560, G10970, G11070, G11080, G14920, G19210, G19220, G19870, G24670, G25890, G42670, G48940

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:4](#); [1:11](#); [1:18](#); [1:27](#); [2:5](#); [2:9](#); [2:15](#); [2:32](#); [2:37](#); [2:42](#); [2:44](#); [3:7](#); [5:3](#); [5:6](#); [7:14](#); [8:38](#); [8:39](#); [8:43](#); [8:60](#); [9:27](#); [14:2](#); [17:24](#); [18:12](#); [18:36](#); [18:37](#); [20:7](#); [20:13](#); [20:22](#); [20:28](#); [22:3](#))

labor, laborer, work, hard work

Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word “labor” is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include “work” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or to “work hard.”

(See also: [hard](#), labor pains)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:9
- 1 Thessalonians 3:5
- Galatians 4:10-11
- James 5:4
- John 4:38
- Luke 10:2
- Matthew 10:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3018, H3021, H3022, H3205, H4522, H4639, H5447, H5450, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H6635, G00750, G20380, G20400, G20410, G28720, G28730, G48660, G49040

(Go back to: [1 Kings 12:4](#))

lamp

Definition:

The term “lamp” generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

The type of lamp that was used in Bible times is a small container with a fuel source, usually oil, that gives light when it burns.

- An ordinary oil lamp usually consisted of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
- For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
- An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
- In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.

(See also: [lampstand](#), [life](#), light)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:36
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 8:16-18
- Matthew 5:15
- Matthew 6:22
- Matthew 25:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3940, H3974, H4501, H5215, H5216, G29850, G30880

(Go back to: [1 Kings 7:49](#); [11:36](#); [15:4](#))

lampstand

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lampstand” generally refers to a structure on which a lamp is placed in order to provide light to a room.

- A simple lampstand usually held one lamp and was made of clay, wood, or metal (such as bronze, silver, or gold.)
- In the Jerusalem temple there was a special gold lampstand which had seven branches for holding seven lamps.

Translation Suggestions

- This term could be also translated as “lamp pedestal” or “structure for holding a lamp” or “lamp holder.”
- For the temple lampstand, this could be translated as “seven-lamp lampstand” or “gold pedestal with seven lamps.”
- It would also be helpful in a translation to include pictures of a simple lampstand and a seven-branch lampstand in the relevant Bible passages.

(See also: [bronze](#), [gold](#), [lamp](#), light, [silver](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Daniel 5:5-6
- Exodus 37:17
- Mark 4:21-23
- Matthew 5:15-16
- Revelation 1:12-13
- Revelation 1:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4501, G30870

(Go back to: [1 Kings 7:49](#))

law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God

Definition:

Most simply, the term “law” refers to a rule or instruction that should be followed. In the Bible, the term “law” is often used generally to refer to anything and everything God wants his people to obey and do. The specific term “law of Moses” refers to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
 - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
 - all the laws given to Moses
 - the first five books of the Old Testament
 - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
 - all of God’s instructions and will
- The phrase “the Law and the Prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The term “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: instruct, [Moses](#), Ten Commandments, lawful, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 15:6
- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 7:25-26
- Galatians 2:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 5:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 3:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:7** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed **God’s law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **16:1** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God’s laws**.

- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **27:1** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- **28:1** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G23160, G35510, G35650

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:3](#); [Notes](#))

Lebanon

Facts:

Lebanon is a beautiful mountainous region located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, north of Israel. In Bible times this region was thickly wooded with fir trees, such as cedar and cypress.

- King Solomon sent workers to Lebanon to harvest cedar trees for use in building God's temple.
- Ancient Lebanon was inhabited by Phoenician people, who were skilled builders of ships that were used for a successful trading industry.
- The cities of Tyre and Sidon were located in Lebanon. It was in these cities that a valuable purple dye was first used.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [cedar](#), [cypress](#), fir, Phoenicia)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:32-34
- 2 Chronicles 2:8-10
- Deuteronomy 1:7-8
- Psalms 29:3-5
- Zechariah 10:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3844

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:33](#); [5:6](#); [5:9](#); [5:14](#); [7:2](#); [9:19](#); [10:17](#); [10:21](#))

Levi, Levite

Definition:

Levi was Jacob's third son. He was Leah's third son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Levi" or the "Levites."
- The name Levi is similar to the Hebrew word for "join to."
- Unlike the other tribes, the tribe of Levi did not inherit a unified area of land in Canaan. Instead, they inherited various cities scattered throughout the regions belonging to the other tribes.
- The tribe of Levi was responsible for taking care of the tabernacle (and later, the temple) and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers for the Israelite people.
- In the Old Testament, it is not always clear whether the term "Levite" refers generally to a descendant of Levi or specifically to a person who served in the temple helping the priests.
- The Old Testament law prescribed that all priests were to be chosen from the tribe of Levi. The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named "Levi" were ancestors of Jesus. Their names are listed in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus' disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#), [Jacob](#), Leah, Matthew)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 8:3-5
- Acts 4:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3878, H3879, H3881, G30170, G30180, G30190, G30200

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:4](#); [12:31](#))

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

The term “life” refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

1. Physical life

- A “life” can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives” could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term “life” could be translated in the following ways: “eternal life” or “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:3
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 2:7
- Genesis 7:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:2
- John 1:4
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 7:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were *_living_* in the world.
- **8:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:9** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:5** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G01980, G02220, G02270, G08060, G05900

(Go back to: 1 Kings 1:12; 1:25; 1:29; 1:31; 1:34; 1:39; 2:23; 2:24; 3:11; 3:22; 3:23; 3:25; 3:26; 3:27; 4:21; 8:40; 11:34; 12:6; 15:5; 15:6; 17:1; 17:12; 17:21; 17:22; 17:23; 18:5; 18:10; 18:15; 19:2; 19:3; 19:4; 19:10; 19:14; 20:18; 20:31; 20:32; 20:39; 20:42; 21:15; 22:14)

lion, lioness

Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [David](#), leopard, Samson, [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
- 1 Kings 7:29
- Proverbs 19:12
- Psalms 17:12
- Revelation 5:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0738, H0739, H0744, H3715, H3833, H3918, H7826, H7830, G30230

(Go back to: [1 Kings 7:29](#); [7:36](#); [10:20](#); [13:24](#); [13:25](#); [13:26](#); [13:28](#); [20:36](#))

livestock, animals

Facts:

The term “livestock” refers to animals which are raised to provide food and other useful products. Some types of livestock are also trained as work animals.

- Kinds of livestock include sheep, cattle, goats, horses, and donkeys.
- In Biblical times, wealth was partly measured by how much livestock a person had.
- Livestock are used to produce items such as wool, milk, cheese, housing materials, and clothing.
- This term could also be translated as “farm animals.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [cow](#), [ox](#), [donkey](#), goat, [horse](#), [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 3:15-17
- Genesis 30:29
- Joshua 1:14-15
- Nehemiah 9:36-37
- Numbers 3:41

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0929, H4399, H4735

(Go back to: [1 Kings 18:5](#))

locust

Facts:

The term “locust” refers to a type of large, flying grasshopper that sometimes flies with many other of its kind in a very destructive swarm that eats all vegetation.

- Locusts and other grasshoppers are large, straight-winged insects with long, jointed back legs that give them the ability to jump a long distance way.
- In the Old Testament, swarming locusts were referred to figuratively as a symbol or picture of the overwhelming devastation that would come as a result of Israel's disobedience.
- God sent locusts as one of the ten plagues against the Egyptians.
- The New Testament says that locusts were a main source of food for John the Baptist while he was living in the desert.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [captive](#), [Egypt](#), [Israel](#), John (the Baptist), [plague](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:28
- Deuteronomy 28:38-39
- Exodus 10:3-4
- Mark 1:6
- Proverbs 30:27-28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0697, H1357, H1462, H1501, H2284, H3218, H5556, H6767, G02000

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:37](#))

loins, waist

Definition:

The term “loins” refers to the part of the body of an animal or person that is between the lower ribs and the hip bones, also known as the lower abdomen.

- The expression “gird up the loins” refers to preparing to work hard. It comes from the custom of tucking the bottom of one’s robe into a belt around the waist in order to move with ease.
- The term “loins” is often used in the Bible to refer to the lower back part of an animal that was sacrificed.
- In the Bible, the term “loins” often refers figuratively and euphemistically to a man’s reproductive organs as the source of his descendants. (See: [euphemism](#))
- The expression “will come from your loins” could also be translated as “will be your offspring” or “will be born from your seed” or “God will cause to come from you.” (See: [euphemism](#))
- When referring to a part of the body, this could also be translated as “abdomen” or “hips” or “waist,” depending on the context.

(See also: descendant, [gird](#), [children](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:13
- 2 Chronicles 6:9
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Genesis 37:34
- Job 15:27

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2504, H3409, H3689, H4975, G37510

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:5](#); [8:19](#); [12:10](#); [18:46](#); [20:31](#); [20:32](#))

lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [ruler](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:2
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Psalms 86:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Lamentations 2:2

- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 9:9
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Malachi 3:1
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 6:23
- Ephesians 6:9
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Colossians 3:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 2:1
- 1 Peter 1:3
- Jude 1:5
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:5** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:7** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:3** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:5** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:3** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0113, H0136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G02030, G06340, G09620, G12030, G29620

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:2](#); [1:11](#); [1:13](#); [1:17](#); [1:18](#); [1:20](#); [1:21](#); [1:24](#); [1:27](#); [1:31](#); [1:33](#); [1:36](#); [1:37](#); [1:43](#); [1:47](#); [2:26](#); [2:38](#); [3:10](#); [3:17](#); [3:26](#); [8:53](#); [11:23](#); [12:27](#); [16:24](#); [18:7](#); [18:8](#); [18:10](#); [18:11](#); [18:13](#); [18:14](#); [20:4](#); [20:9](#); [22:6](#); [22:17](#))

love, beloved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULT, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.

The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:7
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 Thessalonians 4:10
- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:6
- Jeremiah 2:2

- John 3:16
- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 9:32-34
- Philippians 1:9
- Song of Songs 1:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:8** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:5** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- **47:1** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:1** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:3** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:4** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:7** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:9** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0157, H0158, H0159, H0160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G00250, G00260, G53600, G53610, G53620, G53630, G53650, G53670, G53680, G53690, G53770, G53810, G53820, G53830, G53880

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:3](#); [5:1](#); [10:9](#); [11:1](#); [11:2](#))

lute, lyre

Definition:

A lute and a lyre are small, stringed, musical instruments that were used by the Israelites to worship God.

- A lyre looks like a small harp, having strings strung across an open frame.
- A lute is very similar to a modernday acoustic guitar, having a wooden sound box and an extended neck on which strings are strung.
- In playing a lute or a lyre, certain strings are held down with the fingers of one hand while these and other strings are plucked or strummed with the other hand.
- The lute, lyre, and harp are all played by strumming or plucking the strings.
- The number of strings varied, but the Old Testament specifically mentions instruments that had ten strings.

(See also: [harp](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:11-12
- 1 Samuel 10:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 5:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3658, H5035, H5443

(Go back to: [1 Kings 10:12](#))

Maacah

Facts:

Maacah (or Maakah) was one of the sons of Abraham's brother Nahor. Other people in the Old Testament also had this name.

- The city of Maacah or Beth Maacah was located in the far north of Israel, in the region occupied by the tribe of Naphtali.
- It was an important city and was attacked by enemies on several occasions.
- Maacah was the name of several women, including the mother of David's son Absalom.
- King Asa removed his grandmother Maacah from being queen because she had promoted Asherah worship.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asa](#), [Asherah](#), Nahor, [Naphtali](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4601

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:39](#); [15:2](#); [15:10](#); [15:13](#))

Manasseh

Facts:

Manasseh was the older son of Joseph. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The name Manasseh is similar to the Hebrew word meaning “to forget.”
- The tribe of Manasseh was often called the “half-tribe of Manasseh” because only part of the tribe settled in the land of Canaan, on the west side of the Jordan River. The other part of the tribe settled on the east side of the Jordan.
- One of the kings of Judah was also named Manasseh. King Manasseh was an evil king who sacrificed his own children as burnt offerings to false gods.
- God punished King Manasseh by allowing him to be captured by an enemy army. Manasseh turned back to God and destroyed the altars where idols were worshiped.
- Three other men named Manasseh are mentioned in the Old Testament. One of them was the grandfather of some Danites who were priests for false gods. The other two were men who lived during the time of Ezra and were required to divorce their pagan wives, who had influenced them to worship false gods.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Joseph](#), [Ephraim](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 15:9
- Deuteronomy 3:12-13
- Genesis 41:51
- Genesis 48:1-2
- Judges 1:27-28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4519, H4520, G31280

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:13](#))

mercy, merciful

Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See also: [compassion](#), [forgive](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:3-5
- 1 Timothy 1:13
- Daniel 9:17
- Exodus 34:6
- Genesis 19:16
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 2:13
- Luke 6:35-36
- Matthew 9:27
- Philippians 2:25-27
- Psalms 41:4-6
- Romans 12:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **19:17** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **20:12** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **27:11** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **32:11** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”
- **34:9** “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2551, H2603, H2604, H2616, H2617, H2623, H3722, H3727, H4627, H4819, H5503, H5504, H5505, H5506, H6014, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, G16530, G16550, G16560, G24330, G24360, G36280, G36290, G37410, G46980

(Go back to: [1 Kings 20:31](#))

messenger

Facts:

The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: [angel](#), apostle, John (the Baptist))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 6:21
- 2 Kings 1:1-2
- Luke 7:27
- Matthew 11:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G00320, G06520

(Go back to: [1 Kings 13:18](#); [19:2](#); [20:2](#); [20:5](#); [20:9](#); [22:13](#))

Midian, Midianite

Facts:

Midian was a son of Abraham and his wife Keturah. It is also the name of a people group and region located in the northern Arabian Desert to the south of the land of Canaan. The people of that group were called "Midianites."

- When Moses first left Egypt, he went to the region of Midian where he met the daughters of Jethro and helped them water their flocks. Later Moses married one of Jethro's daughters.
- Joseph was taken to Egypt by a group of Midianite slave traders.
- Many years later the Midianites attacked and raided the Israelites in the land of Canaan. Gideon led the Israelites in defeating them.
- Many of the modern-day Arabian tribes are descendants of this group.

(See also [Arabia](#), [Egypt](#), [flock](#), Gideon, Jethro, [Moses](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:30
- Exodus 2:16
- Genesis 25:1-4
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Genesis 37:28
- Judges 7:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:3** But then the people forgot about God and started worshiping idols again. So God allowed the **Midianites**, a nearby enemy people group, to defeat them.
- **16:4** The Israelites were so scared, they hid in caves so the **Midianites** would not find them.
- **16:11** The man's friend said, "This dream means that Gideon's army will defeat the **Midianite** army!"
- **16:14** God confused the **Midianites**, so that they started attacking and killing each other.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4080, H4084, H4092

(Go back to: [1 Kings 11:18](#))

might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “mighty” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, [miracle](#), power, [strength](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:22
- Genesis 6:4
- Mark 9:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0046, H0047, H0117, H0202, H0386, H0410, H0430, H0533, H0650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G14110, G14150, G14980, G24780, G24790, G29000, G29040, G31670, G31730

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:8](#); [1:10](#); [11:28](#); [15:23](#); [16:5](#); [16:27](#); [22:45](#))

miracle, wonder, sign

Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: power, [prophet](#), apostle, sign)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 2:8-10
- Acts 4:17
- Acts 4:22
- Daniel 4:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:1
- Exodus 3:19-22
- John 2:11
- Matthew 13:58

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:8** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:6** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

- **49:2** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540, G08800, G12130, G12290, G14110, G15690, G17180, G17700, G18390, G22850, G22960, G22970, G31670, G39020, G45910, G45920, G50590

(Go back to: [1 Kings 13:3](#); [13:5](#))

Mizpah

Facts:

Mizpah is the name of several towns mentioned in the Old Testament. It means “look-out point” or “watchtower.”

- When David was being pursued by Saul, he left his parents in Mizpah, under the protection of the king of Moab.
- One city called Mizpah was located on the border between the kingdoms of Judah and Israel. It was a major military center.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), Judah, kingdom of Israel, [Moab](#), Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:20-22
- 1 Samuel 7:5-6
- 1 Samuel 7:10-11
- Jeremiah 40:5-6
- Judges 10:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4708, H4709

(Go back to: [1 Kings 15:22](#))

Moab, Moabite

Facts:

The term “Moab” refers to a people group that lived to the east of the Salt Sea. The book of Genesis describes this people group as the descendents of a man named “Moab,” who was the son of Lot’s elder daughter.

- In the book of Ruth, Elimelek and his family went to live in Moab because of the famine around Bethlehem.
- Ruth is called a “Moabite woman” because she was born in the country of Moab and was from that people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, Judea, Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- Genesis 19:37
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 1:1-2
- Ruth 1:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4124, H4125

(Go back to: [1 Kings 11:1](#); [11:7](#); [11:33](#))

mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock

Definition:

The terms “mock,” “ridicule,” and “scoff at” all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people's words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term “scoff at” can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
- A “mocker” is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 3:4
- Acts 2:12-13
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Luke 22:63-65
- Mark 10:34
- Matthew 9:23-24
- Matthew 20:19
- Matthew 27:29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:12** Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah.
- **39:5** The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “He deserves to die!” Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him.
- **39:12** The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”
- **40:4** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God?”
- **40:5** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1422, H2048, H2049, H2778, H2781, H3213, H3887, H3931, H3932, H3933, H3934, H3944, H3945, H4167, H4485, H4912, H5058, H5607, H6026, H6711, H7046, H7048, H7814, H7832, H8103, H8148, H8437, H8595, G15920, G17010, G17020, G17030, G23010, G26060, G34560, G55120

(Go back to: [1 Kings 18:27](#))

Molech, Moloch

Facts:

Molech was the name of one of the false gods that the Canaanites worshiped. Other spellings are “Moloch” and “Molek.”

- People who worshiped Molech sacrificed their children to him by means of fire.
- Some of the Israelites also worshiped Molech instead of the one true God, Yahweh. They followed the evil practices of Molech worshipers, including sacrificing their children.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [evil](#), [false god](#), [God](#), [false god](#), [sacrifice](#), [true](#), [worship](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:7
- 2 Kings 23:10
- Acts 7:43
- Jeremiah 32:33-35
- Leviticus 18:21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4428, H4432, G34340

(Go back to: [1 Kings 11:7](#))

month, monthly

Definition:

The term “month” refers to a period of time lasting about four weeks. The number of days in each month varies depending on whether a lunar or solar calendar is used.

- In the lunar calendar, the length of each month is based on the amount of time it takes for the moon to go around the earth, about twenty-nine days. In this system there are twelve or thirteen months in a year. Despite the year being twelve or thirteen months, the first month is always called the same name even though it may be a different season.
- The “new moon,” or beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light, marks the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar.
- All the names of months referred to in the Bible are those of the lunar calendar since this was the system used by the Israelites. Modern Jews still use this calendar for religious purposes.
- The modern-day solar calendar is based on how long it takes the earth to go around the sun (about 365 days). In this system, the year is always divided up into twelve months, with the length of each month ranging from twenty-eight to thirty-one days.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 20:34
- Acts 18:9-11
- Hebrews 11:23
- Numbers 10:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2320, H3391, H3393, G33760

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:7](#); [5:14](#); [6:1](#); [6:37](#); [6:38](#); [8:2](#); [11:16](#); [12:32](#))

Moses

Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years. He was the leader of the Israelite people when they came out of Egypt, as described in the book of Exodus.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:21
- Acts 7:30
- Exodus 2:10
- Exodus 9:1
- Matthew 17:4
- Romans 5:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **12:5** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **12:7** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **13:7** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G34750

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:3](#); [8:9](#); [8:53](#); [8:56](#))

name

Definition:

The term “name” refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term “name” is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:12
- 2 Timothy 2:19
- Acts 4:7
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 9:27
- Genesis 12:2
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G25640, G36860, G36870, G51220

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:47](#); [3:2](#); [4:8](#); [4:31](#); [5:3](#); [5:5](#); [7:21](#); [8:16](#); [8:17](#); [8:18](#); [8:19](#); [8:20](#); [8:29](#); [8:33](#); [8:35](#); [8:41](#); [8:42](#); [8:43](#); [8:44](#); [8:48](#); [9:3](#); [9:7](#); [10:1](#); [11:26](#); [11:36](#); [13:2](#); [14:21](#); [14:31](#); [15:2](#); [15:10](#); [16:24](#); [18:24](#); [18:25](#); [18:26](#); [18:31](#); [18:32](#); [21:8](#); [22:16](#); [22:42](#))

Naphtali

Facts:

Naphtali was Jacob's sixth son. He was Bilhah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Naphtali" or "Naphtali" or "Naphtalites."
- The name Naphtali is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "to twist, wrestle."
- The tribe of Naphtali settled in the northern part of Canaan, between the tribes of Manassah and Asher. Its eastern border was on the western shoreline of the Sea of Chinnereth. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Naphtali" refers to the land given to the tribe of Naphtali.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), Bilhah)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:15
- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Genesis 30:8
- Judges 1:33
- Matthew 4:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5321, G35080

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:15](#); [7:14](#); [15:20](#))

Nathan

Facts:

Nathan was a faithful prophet of God who lived while David was king over Israel.

- God sent Nathan to confront David after David sinned grievously against Uriah.
- Nathan rebuked David in spite of the fact that David was the king.
- David repented of his sin after Nathan confronted him.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [faithful](#), [prophet](#), [Uriah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 17:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 9:29
- 2 Samuel 12:1-3
- Psalm 51:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:7** God sent the prophet **Nathan** to David with this message, "Because you are a man of war, you will not build this Temple for me."
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the prophet **Nathan** to tell David how evil his sin was.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5416, G34810

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:8](#); [1:10](#); [1:11](#); [1:22](#); [1:23](#); [1:24](#); [1:32](#); [1:34](#); [1:38](#); [1:44](#); [1:45](#); [4:5](#))

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, [Canaan](#), Gentile, Greek, [people group](#), [Philistines](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:6
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 2:5
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:4
- Daniel 3:4
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 7:5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 4:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H0524, H0776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G02460, G10740, G10850, G14840

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:31](#); [11:2](#); [14:24](#); [18:10](#))

neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring

Definition:

The term “neighbor” usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A “neighbor” is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term “neighbor” figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means “person who lives nearby.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [parable](#), [people group](#), [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:26-28
- Ephesians 4:25-27
- Galatians 5:14
- James 2:8
- John 9:8-9
- Luke 1:58
- Matthew 5:43
- Matthew 19:19
- Matthew 22:39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5997, H7138, H7453, H7468, H7934, G10690, G20870, G40400, G41390

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:31](#); [20:35](#))

noble, nobleman, royal official

Definition:

The term “noble” refers to something that is excellent and of high quality. A “nobleman” is a person who belongs to a high political or social class. A man “of noble birth” is one who was born a nobleman.

- A nobleman was often an officer of the state, a close servant to the king.
- The term “nobleman” could also be translated by, “king’s official” or “government officer.”

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 23:20-21
- Daniel 4:36
- Ecclesiastes 10:17
- Luke 19:12
- Psalm 16:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0117, H1419, H2715, H3358, H3513, H5057, H5081, H6440, H6579, H7261, H8282, H8269, G09370, G21040

(Go back to: [1 Kings 21:8](#); [21:11](#))

oak

Definition:

An oak, or oak tree, is a tall shade tree with a large trunk and wide spreading branches.

- Oak trees have strong, hard wood that was used to build ships and to make farming plows, oxen yokes and walking sticks.
- The seed of an oak tree is called an acorn.
- The trunks of certain oak trees could be measured up to 6 meters around.
- Oak trees were symbolic of long life and had other spiritual meanings. In the Bible, they were often associated with holy places.

Translation Suggestions:

- Many translations will find it important to use the term “oak tree” rather than just the word “oak.”
- If oak trees are not known in the receptor area, “an oak” could be translated as “an oak, which is a large shade tree like...,” then give the name of a local tree that has similar characteristics.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [holy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:3-4
- Genesis 13:18
- Genesis 14:13-14
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Judges 6:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0352, H0424, H0427, H0436, H0437, H0438

(Go back to: [1 Kings 13:14](#))

oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Definition:

The term "oath" in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term "swear" means to make an oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word "swear" is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, [covenant](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:3
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 1:73
- Mark 6:26
- Matthew 5:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0422, H0423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G03320, G36600, G37270, G37280

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:13](#); [1:17](#); [1:29](#); [1:30](#); [1:51](#); [2:8](#); [2:23](#); [2:42](#); [2:43](#); [18:10](#); [22:16](#))

Obadiah

Facts:

Obadiah was an Old Testament prophet who prophesied against the people of Edom, who were the descendants of Esau. There were also many other men named Obadiah in the Old Testament.

- The book of Obadiah is the shortest book in the Old Testament and tells a prophecy that Obadiah received through a vision from God.
- It is not clear when Obadiah lived and prophesied. It may have been during the periods that Jehoram, Ahaziah, Joash, and Athaliah, reigned in Judah. The prophets Daniel, Ezekiel, and Jeremiah would also have been prophesying during part of this time.
- Obadiah may also have lived at a later time period, during the reign of King Zedekiah and the Babylonian captivity.
- Other men named Obadiah included a descendant of Saul, a Gadite who became one of David's men, a palace administrator for King Ahab, an official of King Jehoshaphat, a man who helped with repairs to the temple during the time of King Josiah, and a Levite who was also a gatekeeper during the time of Nehemiah.
- It could be that the writer of the book of Obadiah was one of these men.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), Babylon, [David](#), [Edom](#), Esau, Ezekiel, Daniel, Gad, [Jehoshaphat](#), [Josiah](#), [Levite](#), Saul (OT), [Zedekiah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:21
- 1 Chronicles 8:38-40
- Ezra 8:8-11
- Obadiah 1:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5662

(Go back to: [1 Kings 18:3](#); [18:4](#); [18:5](#); [18:6](#); [18:7](#); [18:16](#))

oil

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: olive, [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 1:21
- Exodus 29:2
- Leviticus 5:11
- Leviticus 8:1-3
- Mark 6:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G16370, G34640

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:39](#); [5:11](#); [17:12](#); [17:14](#); [17:16](#))

Omri

Facts:

Omri was an army commander who became the sixth king of Israel.

- King Omri reigned for twelve years in the city of Tirzah.
- Like all the kings of Israel before him, Omri was a very evil king who led the people of Israel into more idol worship.
- Omri was also the father of King Ahab.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Israel](#), [Jeroboam](#), [Tirzah](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 22:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6018

(Go back to: [1 Kings 16:16](#); [16:17](#); [16:21](#); [16:22](#); [16:23](#); [16:25](#); [16:27](#); [16:28](#); [16:29](#); [16:30](#))

oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor, dominate

Definition:

The terms “oppress” and “oppression” refer to treating people harshly. An “oppressor” is a person who oppresses people.

- The term “oppression” especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term “oppressed” describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “oppress” could be translated as “severely mistreat” or “cause to be heavily burdened” or “put under miserable bondage” or “rule harshly.”
- Ways to translate “oppression” could include “heavy suppression and bondage” or “burdensome control.”
- The phrase “the oppressed” could be translated as “oppressed people” or “people in terrible bondage” or “those who are treated harshly.”
- The term “oppressor” could be translated as “person who oppresses” or “nation who controls and rules harshly” or “persecutor.”

(See also: bind, enslave, persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:7
- Ecclesiastes 4:1
- Job 10:3
- Judges 2:18-19
- Nehemiah 5:14-15
- Psalms 119:134

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1790, H1792, H2541, H2555, H3238, H3905, H3906, H4642, H5065, H6031, H6125, H6184, H6206, H6216, H6217, H6231, H6233, H6234, H6693, H7429, H7533, H7701, G26160, G26690

(Go back to: [1 Kings 12 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term “ordain.”

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term “ordinance” could be translated as “public decree” or “regulation” or “law,” depending on the context.

(See also: [command](#), decree, [law](#), ordain, [statute](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 4:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 8:31-33
- Malachi 3:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2706, H4687, H4931, H4941

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:28](#); [6:38](#); [18:28](#))

palace, house

Definition:

The term “palace” refers to the building or house where a king lived, along with his family members and servants.

- The high priest also lived in a palace complex, as mentioned in the New Testament.
- Palaces were very ornate, with beautiful architecture and furnishings.
- The buildings and furnishings of a palace were constructed of stone or wood, and often were overlaid with expensive wood, gold, or ivory.
- Many other people also lived and worked in the palace complex, which usually included several buildings and courtyards.

(See also: [courtyard](#), high priest, [king](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 28:7-8
- 2 Samuel 11:2-3
- Daniel 5:5-6
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Psalms 45:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0759, H1002, H1004, H1055, H1406, H1964, H1965, G08330, G09330, G42320

(Go back to: [1 Kings 21:1](#))

palm

Definition:

The term “palm” refers to a type of tall tree with long, flexible, leafy branches extending from the top in a fan-like pattern.

- The palm tree in the Bible usually refers to a type of palm tree that produces a fruit called a “date.” The leaves have a feather-like pattern.
- Palm trees typically grow in places that have a hot, humid climate. Their leaves stay green all year long.
- As Jesus was entering Jerusalem riding on a donkey, the people laid palm branches on the ground in front of him.
- Palm branches signified peace and the celebration of a victory.

(See also: [donkey](#), [Jerusalem](#), [peace](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:29-30
- Ezekiel 40:14-16
- John 12:12-13
- Numbers 33:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3712, H8558, H8560, H8561, G54040

(Go back to: [1 Kings 6:29](#); [6:32](#); [6:35](#); [7:36](#))

Paran

Facts:

Paran was a desert or wilderness area east of Egypt and south of the land of Canaan. There was also a Mount Paran, which may have been another name for Mount Sinai.

- The slave Hagar and her son Ishmael went to live in the wilderness of Paran after Sarah ordered Abraham to send them away.
- When Moses led the Israelites out of Egypt, they passed through the wilderness of Paran.
- It was from Kadesh-Barnea in the wilderness of Paran that Moses sent twelve men to spy out the land of Canaan and bring back a report.
- The wilderness of Zin was north of Paran and the wilderness of Sin was south of Paran.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [desert](#), [Egypt](#), Kadesh, [Sinai](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:18
- 1 Samuel 25:1
- Genesis 21:19-21
- Numbers 10:11-13
- Numbers 13:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0364, H6290

(Go back to: [1 Kings 11:18](#))

peace offering

Facts:

A “peace offering” was one of several sacrificial offerings that God commanded the Israelites to make. It is sometimes called the “thanksgiving offering” or “fellowship offering.”

- This offering involved sacrificing an animal that had no defects, sprinkling the animal’s blood on the altar, and burning the animal’s fat, as well as the rest of the animal separately.
- Added to this sacrifice was an offering of both unleavened and leavened bread, which was burned on top of the burnt offering.
- The priest and one who offered the sacrifice were permitted to share in eating the food that was offered.
- This offering symbolizes the fellowship of God with his people.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), fellowship, fellowship offering, [grain offering](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), unleavened bread)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 13:8-10
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Joshua 8:30-32
- Leviticus 9:3-5
- Proverbs 7:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8002

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:15](#); [8:63](#); [8:64](#); [9:25](#))

peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- In the Old Testament, the term “peace” often means a general sense of a person’s welfare, wellness, or wholeness.
- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:1-3
- Acts 7:26
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Colossians 3:15
- Galatians 5:23
- Luke 7:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 4:39
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:6** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:3** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G02690, G15140, G15150, G15160, G15170, G15180, G22720

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:5](#); [2:6](#); [2:13](#); [2:33](#); [4:24](#); [5:12](#); [20:18](#); [22:17](#); [22:27](#); [22:28](#); [22:44](#))

people, people group

Definition:

The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: descendant, [nation](#), [tribe](#), world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:51-53
- 1 Samuel 8:7
- Deuteronomy 28:9
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 1:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:2** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there.
- **21:2** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.

- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:3** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups**!" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0249, H0523, H0524, H0776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G10740, G10850, G12180, G14840, G25600, G29920, G37930

(Go back to: 1 Kings 1:39; 1:40; 3:2; 3:8; 3:9; 4:34; 5:7; 5:16; 6:13; 8:16; 8:30; 8:33; 8:34; 8:36; 8:38; 8:41; 8:43; 8:44; 8:50; 8:51; 8:52; 8:53; 8:56; 8:59; 8:60; 8:66; 9:7; 9:20; 9:23; 12:5; 12:6; 12:7; 12:9; 12:10; 12:12; 12:13; 12:15; 12:16; 12:23; 12:27; 12:30; 12:31; 13:33; 14:2; 14:7; 16:2; 16:15; 16:16; 16:21; 16:22; 18:21; 18:22; 18:24; 18:30; 18:37; 18:39; 19:21; 20:8; 20:10; 20:15; 20:42; 21:9; 21:12; 21:13; 22:4; 22:28; 22:43)

Perizzite

Facts:

The Perizzites were one of several people groups in the land of Canaan. Little is known about this group as to who their ancestors were or what part of Canaan they lived in.

- The Perizzites are mentioned most frequently in the Old Testament Book of Judges, where it is recorded that the Perizzites intermarried with the Israelites and influenced them to worship false gods.
- Note that the clan of Perez, called the “Perezites,” was a different people group from the Perizzites. It may be necessary to spell the names very differently to make this clear.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [false god](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 8:7-8
- Exodus 3:16-18
- Genesis 13:7
- Joshua 3:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6522

(Go back to: [1 Kings 9:20](#))

Pharaoh, king of Egypt

Facts:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

- Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
- These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
- Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
- Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as "Pharaoh."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [egypt](#), [king](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 7:13
- Acts 7:21
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 40:7
- Genesis 41:25

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** One night, the **Pharaoh**, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **8:8 Pharaoh** was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
- **9:2** So the **Pharaoh** who was ruling over Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves to the Egyptians.
- **9:13** "I will send you to **Pharaoh** so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt."
- **10:2** Through these plagues, God showed **Pharaoh** _ *that he is more powerful than* _ **Pharaoh** and all of Egypt's gods.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4428, H4714, H6547, G53280

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:1](#); [7:8](#); [9:16](#); [9:24](#); [11:1](#); [11:19](#); [11:20](#); [11:21](#))

Philistines

Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means “people of the sea.”

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ashdod, Ashkelon, [David](#), Ekron, [Gath](#), [Gaza](#), Goliath, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 13:4
- 2 Chronicles 9:25-26
- Genesis 10:11-14
- Psalm 56:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6429, H6430

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:21](#); [15:27](#); [16:15](#))

plague

Definition:

Plagues are events which cause suffering or death to a large number of people. Often a plague is a disease that spreads quickly and causes many people to die before it can be stopped.

- Many plagues have natural causes, but some were sent by God to punish people for sin.
- In the time of Moses, God sent ten plagues against Egypt to force Pharaoh to let Israel leave Egypt. These plagues included water turning into blood, physical diseases, destruction of crops by insects and hail, three days of complete darkness, and death of the firstborn sons.
- This could also be translated as “widespread disasters” or “widespread disease,” depending on the context.

(See also: hail, [Israel](#), [Moses](#), [Pharaoh](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:13-14
- Exodus 9:14
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Luke 21:11
- Revelation 9:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1698, H4046, H4194, H4347, H5061, H5062, H5063, G30610, G41270

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:37](#))

plow, plowed, plowers, plowman, plowshares, unplowed

Definition:

A “plow” is a farm tool that is used for breaking up soil to prepare a field for planting.

- Plows have sharp, pointed prongs that dig into the soil. They usually have handles that the farmer uses to guide the plow.
- In Bible times, plows were usually pulled by a pair of oxen or other work animals.
- Most plows were made of hard wood, except for the sharp points which were made of a metal, such as bronze or iron.

(See also: [bronze](#), [ox](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 8:10-12
- Deuteronomy 21:4
- Luke 9:62
- Luke 17:7
- Psalm 141:5-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0406, H0855, H2758, H2790, H5215, H5647, H5656, H5674, H6213, H6398, G07220, G07230

(Go back to: [1 Kings 19:19](#))

pomegranate

Facts:

A pomegranate is a kind of fruit that has a thick, tough skin filled with many seeds that are covered with edible red pulp.

- The outer rind is reddish in color and the pulp surrounding the seeds is shiny and red.
- Pomegranates are very commonly grown in countries with a hot, dry climate, such as Egypt and Israel.
- Yahweh promised the Israelites that Canaan was a land with abundant water and fertile soil so that food was plentiful there, including pomegranates.
- The construction of Solomon's temple included bronze decorations in the shape of pomegranates.

(See also: [bronze](#), [Canaan](#), [Egypt](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 25:16-17
- Deuteronomy 8:7-8
- Jeremiah 52:22-23
- Numbers 13:23-24
- Numbers 20:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7416

(Go back to: [1 Kings 7:18](#); [7:20](#); [7:42](#))

possess, possessed, possession, dispossess

Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [worship](#), [inherit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:70
- 1 Kings 9:17-19
- Acts 2:45
- Deuteronomy 4:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37
- Matthew 13:44

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0270, H0272, H0834, H2505, H2631, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H4736, H5157, H5159, H5459, H7069, G11390, G21920, G26970, G27220, G29320, G29330, G29350, G40470, G52240, G55640

(Go back to: [1 Kings 14:24](#); [21:15](#); [21:16](#); [21:18](#); [21:19](#); [21:26](#))

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [false god](#), [forgive](#), praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:9
- Acts 8:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 4:4
- John 17:9
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:5** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:8** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:7** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H0577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G01540, G11620, G11890, G17830, G20650, G21710, G21720, G38700, G43350, G43360

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:28](#); [8:29](#); [8:30](#); [8:33](#); [8:35](#); [8:38](#); [8:42](#); [8:44](#); [8:45](#); [8:48](#); [8:49](#); [8:54](#); [9:3](#); [13:6](#))

precious, valuable, expensive, fine

Facts:

The term “precious” describes people or things that are considered to be very valuable.

- The term “precious stones” or “precious jewels” refers to rocks and minerals that are colorful or have other qualities that make them beautiful or useful.
- Examples of precious stones include diamonds, rubies, and emeralds.
- Gold and silver are called “precious metals.”
- Yahweh says that his people are “precious” in his sight (Isaiah 43:4).
- Peter wrote that a gentle and quiet spirit is precious in God’s sight (1 Peter 3:4).
- This term could also be translated as “valuable” or “very dear” or “cherished” or “highly valued.”

(See also: [gold](#), [silver](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:1
- Acts 20:22-24
- Daniel 11:38-39
- Lamentations 1:7
- Luke 7:2-5
- Psalms 36:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0068, H1431, H2532, H2667, H2896, H3357, H3365, H3366, H3368, H4022, H4030, H4261, H4262, H5238, H8443, G09270, G17840, G24720, G41850, G41860, G50920, G50930

(Go back to: [1 Kings 5:17](#); [7:9](#); [7:10](#); [7:11](#); [10:2](#); [10:10](#); [10:11](#); [20:6](#))

priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, high priest, mediator, [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 1:44
- Mark 2:25-26
- Matthew 8:4
- Matthew 12:4
- Micah 3:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 1:6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:7** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"

- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- **19:7** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:7** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G07480, G07490, G24050, G24060, G24070, G24090, G24200

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:7](#); [1:8](#); [1:19](#); [1:25](#); [1:26](#); [1:32](#); [1:34](#); [1:38](#); [1:39](#); [1:42](#); [1:44](#); [1:45](#); [2:22](#); [2:26](#); [2:27](#); [2:35](#); [4:2](#); [4:4](#); [4:5](#); [8:3](#); [8:4](#); [8:6](#); [8:10](#); [8:11](#); [12:31](#); [12:32](#); [13:2](#); [13:33](#))

prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Definition:

A “prince” is the son of a king. A “princess” is a daughter of a king.

- The term “prince” is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham’s wealth and importance, he was referred to as a “prince” by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term “prince” is used in the expressions “prince of Persia” and “prince of Greece,” which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a “prince” in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as “the prince of this world.”
- Jesus is called the “Prince of Peace” and the “Prince of Life.”
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as “Lord and Christ” and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as “Prince and Savior,” showing the parallel meaning of “Lord” and “Prince.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “prince” could include, “king’s son” or “ruler” or “leader” or “chieftain” or “captain.”
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as “spirit ruler” or “leading angel.”
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as “evil spirit ruler” or “powerful spirit leader” or “ruling spirit,” depending on the context.

(See also: [angel](#), authority, Christ, demon, [lord](#), power, [ruler](#), Satan, Savior, [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 5:29-32
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 1:52

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0001, H0117, H0324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7261, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G07470, G07580, G14130, G31750

(Go back to: [1 Kings 11:3](#))

prison, prisoner, imprison

Definition:

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: [captive](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 25:4
- Ephesians 4:1
- Luke 12:58
- Luke 22:33-34
- Mark 6:17
- Matthew 5:26
- Matthew 14:3
- Matthew 25:34-36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0612, H0613, H0615, H0616, H0631, H0953, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H4929, H5470, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G11980, G11990, G12000, G12010, G12020, G12100, G22520, G36120, G47880, G48690, G50840, G54380, G54390

(Go back to: [1 Kings 22:27](#))

promise, promised

Definition:

When used as a verb, the term “promise” refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term “promise” refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 3:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:9
- James 1:12
- Numbers 30:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”[⚡]
- **3:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **5:4** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **8:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:1** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0562, H1696, H8569, G18430, G18600, G18610, G18620, G36700, G42790

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), divination, [false god](#), false prophet, fulfill, [law](#), vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- Acts 3:25
- John 1:43-45
- Malachi 4:4-6
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalm 51:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:1** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.

- **19:6** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:9** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:5** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:7** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G24950, G43940, G43950, G43960, G43970, G43980, G55780

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:8](#); [1:10](#); [1:22](#); [1:23](#); [1:32](#); [1:34](#); [1:38](#); [1:44](#); [1:45](#); [11:29](#); [Notes](#); [13:11](#); [13:18](#); [13:20](#); [13:23](#); [13:25](#); [13:26](#); [13:29](#); [Notes](#); [14:2](#); [14:18](#); [Notes](#); [16:7](#); [16:12](#); [Notes](#); [18:4](#); [18:13](#); [18:19](#); [18:20](#); [18:22](#); [18:25](#); [18:29](#); [18:36](#); [18:40](#); [Notes](#); [19:1](#); [19:10](#); [19:14](#); [19:16](#); [20:13](#); [20:22](#); [20:35](#); [20:38](#); [20:41](#); [Notes](#); [22:6](#); [22:7](#); [22:8](#); [22:10](#); [22:12](#); [22:13](#); [22:18](#); [22:22](#); [22:23](#))

prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Definition:

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well, whether it be physically, morally, emotionally, etc. This term often expresses the idea of being wealthy or successful in life.

- The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
- The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
- “Prosperity” could also be translated as “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: [bless](#), [good](#), fruit, [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:6
- Job 36:11
- Leviticus 25:26-28
- Psalms 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1129, H1767, H1878, H1879, H2428, H2896, H2898, H3027, H3190, H3444, H3498, H3787, H4195, H5381, H6500, H6509, H6555, H6743, H6744, H7230, H7487, H7919, H7951, H7961, H7963, H7965

(Go back to: [1 Kings 22:12; 22:15](#))

prostitute, harlot, whored

Definition:

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: adultery, [false god](#), sexual immorality, [false god](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 34:31
- Genesis 38:21
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 21:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2154, H2181, H2183, H2185, H6945, H6948, H8457, G42040

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:16](#); [14:24](#); [15:12](#); [22:38](#); [22:46](#))

prostrate

Definition:

The term “prostrate” means to be lying face down, stretched out on the ground.

- To “fall prostrate” or to “prostrate oneself” before someone means to suddenly bow down very low or in front of that person.
- Usually this position of being prostrate is a response that shows shock, amazement, and awe because of something miraculous that happened. It also shows honor and respect for the person being bowed to.
- Being prostrate also was a way to worship God. People often responded this way to Jesus in thanksgiving and worship when he did a miracle or to honor him as a great teacher.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “prostrated” could include “bowed down low with the face to the ground” or “worshiped him by lying face down in front of him” or “bowed down low to the ground in amazement” or “worshiped.”
- The phrase “will not prostrate ourselves” could be translated as “will not worship” or “will not lie face down in worship” or “will not bow down and worship.”
- “Prostrate himself to” could also be translated as “worship” or “bow down in front of.”

(See also: awe, [bow](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 17:36-38
- Genesis 43:28
- Revelation 19:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5307, H5457, H6440, H6915, H7812

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:16](#); [1:23](#); [1:31](#); [2:19](#))

prostrate

Definition:

The term “prostrate” means to be lying face down, stretched out on the ground.

- To “fall prostrate” or to “prostrate oneself” before someone means to suddenly bow down very low or in front of that person.
- Usually this position of being prostrate is a response that shows shock, amazement, and awe because of something miraculous that happened. It also shows honor and respect for the person being bowed to.
- Being prostrate also was a way to worship God. People often responded this way to Jesus in thanksgiving and worship when he did a miracle or to honor him as a great teacher.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “prostrated” could include “bowed down low with the face to the ground” or “worshiped him by lying face down in front of him” or “bowed down low to the ground in amazement” or “worshiped.”
- The phrase “will not prostrate ourselves” could be translated as “will not worship” or “will not lie face down in worship” or “will not bow down and worship.”
- “Prostrate himself to” could also be translated as “worship” or “bow down in front of.”

(See also: awe, [bow](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 17:36-38
- Genesis 43:28
- Revelation 19:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5307, H5457, H6440, H6915, H7812

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:53](#))

prostrate, bow down, worship

Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [bow](#), [fear](#), [sacrifice](#), praise, [honor](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 2:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 3:11-12
- Luke 4:7
- Matthew 2:2
- Matthew 2:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **14:2** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:7** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:2** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:1** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G13910, G14790, G21510, G23180, G23230, G23560, G30000, G35110, G43520, G43530, G45730, G45740, G45760

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:47](#); [9:6](#); [9:9](#); [11:33](#); [16:31](#); [22:53](#))

proverb

Definition:

A proverb is a short statement that expresses some wisdom or truth.

- Proverbs are powerful because they are easy to remember and repeat.
- Often a proverb will include practical examples from everyday life.
- Some proverbs are very clear and direct, while others are more difficult to understand.
- King Solomon was known for his wisdom and wrote over 1,000 proverbs.
- Jesus often used proverbs or parables when he taught people.
- Ways to translate “proverb” could include “wise saying” or “true word.”

(See also: [Solomon](#), [true](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:32-34
- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- 2 Peter 2:22
- Luke 4:24
- Proverbs 1:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2420, H4911, H4912, G38500, G39420

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:32](#); [9:7](#))

province, provincial

Definition:

The term “province” refers to a large area into which a nation or empire might be divided for the purposes of government. The term “provincial” describes something that is related to a province, such as a provincial governor.

- For example, the ancient Persian Empire was divided up into provinces such as Media, Persia, Syria, and Egypt.
- During the time of the New Testament, the Roman Empire was divided up into provinces such as Macedonia, Asia, Syria, Judea, Samaria, Galilee, and Galatia.
- Each province had its own ruling authority, who was subject to the king or ruler of the empire. This ruler was sometimes called a “provincial official” or “provincial governor.”
- The terms “province” and “provincial” could also be translated as “region” and “regional.”

(See also: Asia, [Egypt](#), Esther, Galatia, [Galilee](#), Judea, Macedonia, Medes, Rome, [Samaria](#), Syria)

Bible References:

- Acts 19:30
- Daniel 3:2
- Daniel 6:2
- Ecclesiastes 2:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4082, H4083, H5675, H5676, G18850

(Go back to: [1 Kings 20:14](#); [20:15](#); [20:17](#); [20:19](#))

provoke, provoked, provocation

Facts:

The term “provoke” means to cause someone to experience a negative reaction or feeling.

- To provoke someone to anger means to do something that causes that person to be angry. This could also be translated as to “cause to become angry” or to “anger.”
- When used in a phrase such as, “do not provoke him,” this could be translated as “do not anger him” or “do not cause him to be angry” or “do not make him angry with you.”

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 20:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3707, H3708, H4784, H4843, H5006, H7065, H7069, H7107, H7264, G20420, G38630, G39470, G39490, G42920

(Go back to: [1 Kings 14:9](#); [14:15](#); [15:30](#); [16:2](#); [16:7](#); [16:13](#); [16:26](#); [16:33](#); [21:22](#); [22:53](#))

punish, punished, punishment, unpunished

Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [repent](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- 2 Thessalonians 1:9
- Acts 4:21
- Acts 7:59-60
- Genesis 4:15
- Luke 23:16
- Matthew 25:46

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:7** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **16:2** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **48:6** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him.
- **49:9** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:11** Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5414, H6031, H6064, H6213, H6485, H7999, H8011, H8199, G13490, G15560, G15570, G28490, G38110, G50970

(Go back to: [1 Kings 12:11](#); [12:14](#))

queen

Definition:

A queen is either the female ruler of a country or the wife of a king.

- Esther became the queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.
- Queen Jezebel was the evil wife of King Ahab.
- The Queen of Sheba was a famous ruler who came to visit King Solomon.
- A term such as “queen mother” usually referred to the mother or grandmother of a ruling king or the widow of the previous king. A queen mother had much influence; Athaliah, for example, influenced the people to worship idols.

(See also: Ahasuerus, Athaliah, Esther, [king](#), Persia [ruler](#), [Sheba](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:10
- 1 Kings 11:18-19
- 2 Kings 10:12-14
- Acts 8:27
- Esther 1:17
- Luke 11:31
- Matthew 12:42

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1404, H1377, H4410, H4427, H4433, H4436, H4438, H4446, H7694, H8282, G09380

(Go back to: [1 Kings 10:1](#); [10:4](#); [10:10](#); [10:13](#); [11:19](#); [15:13](#))

raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The phrase “raise up” sometimes means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or to “appoint” or to “bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: resurrection, [appoint](#), [exalt](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- 2 Samuel 7:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 3:1
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 6:1
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 7:22
- Matthew 20:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- **41:5** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:7** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:5** "You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead."
- **44:8** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:4** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:2** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, G03050, G03860, G03930, G04500, G10960, G13260, G14530, G15250, G18170, G18250, G18920, G19990, G48910

(Go back to: [1 Kings 7:21](#); [8:20](#); [9:5](#); [11:14](#); [11:18](#); [11:23](#); [11:40](#); [12:15](#); [14:7](#); [14:14](#); [15:4](#); [16:2](#); [16:32](#))

Ramah

Facts:

Ramah was an ancient Israelite city located about 8 km from Jerusalem. It was in the region where the tribe of Benjamin lived.

- Ramah was where Rachel died after giving birth to Benjamin.
- When the Israelites were taken captive to Babylon, they were first brought to Ramah before being moved to Babylon.
- Ramah was the home of Samuel's mother and father.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Benjamin](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:27
- 1 Samuel 2:11
- 2 Chronicles 16:1
- Jeremiah 31:15
- Joshua 18:25-28
- Matthew 2:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7414, G44710

(Go back to: [1 Kings 15:17](#); [15:21](#); [15:22](#))

Ramoth

Facts:

Ramoth was an important city in the mountains of Gilead near the Jordan River. It was also called Ramoth Gilead.

- Ramoth belonged to the Israelite tribe of Gad and was designated as a city of refuge.
- King Ahab of Israel and King Jehoshaphat of Judah waged war against the king of Aram at Ramoth. Ahab was killed in that battle.
- Sometime later, King Ahaziah and King Joram tried to take the city of Ramoth from the king of Aram.
- Ramoth Gilead was where Jehu was anointed king over Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Ahaziah](#), [Aram](#), Gad, [Jehoshaphat](#), [Jehu](#), Joram, [Jordan River](#), Judah, refuge)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:73
- 1 Kings 22:3
- 2 Chronicles 18:3
- 2 Kings 8:28-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7216, H7418, H7433

(Go back to: [1 Kings 22:3](#); [22:4](#); [22:6](#); [22:12](#); [22:15](#); [22:20](#); [22:29](#))

ransom, ransomed

Definition:

The term “ransom” refers to a sum of money or other payment that is demanded or paid for the release of a person who is held captive.

- As a verb, to “ransom” means to make a payment or to do something self-sacrificially in order to rescue someone who has been captured, enslaved or imprisoned. This meaning of “buy back” is similar to the meaning of “redeem.”
- Jesus allowed himself to be killed as a ransom to free sinful people from their enslavement to sin. This act of God buying back his people through paying the penalty of their sin is also called “redemption” in the Bible.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “ransom” could also be translated as to “pay to release” or to “pay a price to free” or to “buy back.”
- The phrase to “pay a ransom” could be translated as to “pay the price (of freedom)” or to “pay the penalty (to free people)” or to “make the required payment.”
- The noun “ransom” could be translated as “a buying back” or “a penalty paid” or “the price paid” (to free or buy back people or land).
- The terms a “ransom” and a “redemption” have the same meaning in English but are sometimes used slightly differently. Other languages may have only one term for this concept.
- Make sure this is translated differently from “atonement.”

(See also: atonement, redeem)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 2:6
- Isaiah 43:3
- Job 6:23
- Leviticus 19:20
- Matthew 20:28
- Psalms 49:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H3724, H6299, H6306, G04870, G30830

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:29](#))

rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebel” could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: authority, [governor](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14
- 1 Timothy 1:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:38
- Luke 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- **18:9** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- **18:13** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- **20:7** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- **45:3** Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G38930, G49550

(Go back to: [1 Kings 12:19](#); [13:21](#); [13:26](#))

Rehoboam

Facts:

Rehoboam was one of the sons of King Solomon, and he became the king of the nation of Israel after Solomon died.

- At the beginning of his reign, Rehoboam was severe with his people, so ten of the tribes of Israel rebelled against him and formed the “kingdom of Israel” in the north.
- Rehoboam continued as king of the southern kingdom of Judah, which consisted of the remaining two tribes, Judah and Benjamin.
- Rehoboam was a wicked king who did not obey Yahweh, but worshiped false gods.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: kingdom of Israel, Judah, [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:10
- 1 Kings 11:41-43
- 1 Kings 14:21
- Matthew 1:7

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **18:5** After Solomon died, his son, **Rehoboam**, became king. **Rehoboam** was a foolish man.
- **18:6** **Rehoboam** answered foolishly and told them, “You thought my father Solomon made you work hard, but I will make you work harder than he did, and I will punish you more harshly than he did.”
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against **Rehoboam**. Only two tribes remained faithful to him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7346, G44970

(Go back to: [1 Kings 11:43](#); [12:1](#); [12:3](#); [12:6](#); [12:12](#); [12:17](#); [12:18](#); [12:21](#); [12:23](#); [12:27](#); [14:21](#); [14:25](#); [14:27](#); [14:29](#); [14:30](#); [14:31](#); [15:6](#))

reign, rule

Definition:

The term to “reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: [kingdom](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 19:26-27
- Matthew 2:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G07570, G09360, G22310, G48210

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:5](#); [1:11](#); [1:13](#); [1:17](#); [1:18](#); [1:24](#); [1:30](#); [1:35](#); [1:43](#); [2:11](#); [2:15](#); [3:7](#); [4:21](#); [6:1](#); [11:24](#); [11:25](#); [11:37](#); [11:42](#); [11:43](#); [12:1](#); [12:17](#); [12:20](#); [14:19](#); [14:20](#); [14:21](#); [14:31](#); [15:1](#); [15:2](#); [15:8](#); [15:9](#); [15:10](#); [15:24](#); [15:25](#); [15:28](#); [15:29](#); [15:33](#); [16:6](#); [16:8](#); [16:10](#); [16:11](#); [16:15](#); [16:16](#); [16:21](#); [16:22](#); [16:23](#); [16:28](#); [16:29](#); [22:40](#); [22:41](#); [22:42](#); [22:50](#); [22:51](#))

remnant

Definition:

The term “remnant” literally refers to people or things that are “remaining” or “left over” from a larger amount or group.

- Often a “remnant” refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who would survive attacks from outsiders and live to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a “remnant” of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term “remnant” also implies that there were other people who did not remain or were not left over.

Translation Suggestions:

- A phrase such as “the remnant of this people” could be translated as “the rest of these people” or “the people who are left.”
- The “whole remnant of people” could be translated by “all the rest of the people” or “the remaining people.”

Bible References:

- Acts 15:17
- Amos 9:12
- Ezekiel 6:8-10
- Genesis 45:7
- Isaiah 11:11
- Micah 4:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3498, H3499, H5629, H6413, H7604, H7605, H7611, H8281, H8300, G26400, G30050, G30620

(Go back to: [1 Kings 9:20](#); [9:21](#); [18:22](#); [19:10](#); [19:14](#); [20:30](#))

repent, repentance

Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “turning away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [sin](#), [turn](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 3:19-20
- Luke 3:3
- Luke 3:8
- Luke 5:32
- Luke 24:47
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 3:3
- Matthew 3:11
- Matthew 4:17
- Romans 2:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:2** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **17:13** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **19:18** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **24:2** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- **42:8** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins.”
- **44:5** “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5150, H5162, H5164, G02780, G33380, G33400, G33410

(Go back to: [1 Kings 21 General Notes](#))

report, reported, tell, reputation

Definition:

The term to “report” means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A “report” is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

- “Report” could also be translated as “tell” or “explain” or “tell the details of.”
- The expression “Report this to no one” could be translated as “Don’t talk about this with anyone” or “Don’t tell anyone about this.”
- Ways to translate “a report” could include “an explanation” or “a story” or “a detailed account,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- Acts 5:22-23
- John 12:38
- Luke 5:15
- Luke 8:34-35
- Matthew 28:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, H8089, G01890, G01910, G03120, G05180, G09870, G12250, G13100, G18340, G20360, G21630, G30040, G30560, G31400, G33770

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:20](#); [1:23](#); [1:51](#); [2:28](#); [2:29](#); [2:39](#); [2:41](#); [10:1](#); [10:3](#); [10:7](#); [14:3](#); [18:12](#); [18:13](#); [18:16](#); [19:1](#); [20:17](#))

rest, rested, restless

Definition:

The term “rest” generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- Something that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: [remnant](#), Sabbath)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 2:3
- Jeremiah 6:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0014, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G03720, G03730, G04250, G15150, G18790, G19540, G19810, G22700, G26630, G26640, G26810, G28380, G30620, G45200

(Go back to: [1 Kings 5:4](#); [7:47](#); [8:9](#); [8:56](#); [13:29](#); [13:30](#); [13:31](#); [19:3](#))

return, turn back

Definition:

The term “return” means to go back or to give something back.

- To “return to” something means to start doing that activity again. To “return to” a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshiping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: [turn](#))

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G03440, G03600, G03900, G18770, G18800, G19940, G52900

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:32](#); [2:33](#); [2:41](#); [2:44](#); [8:33](#); [8:34](#); [8:35](#); [8:47](#); [8:48](#); [12:5](#); [12:6](#); [12:9](#); [12:12](#); [12:16](#); [12:20](#); [12:21](#); [12:24](#); [12:26](#); [12:27](#); [13:4](#); [13:6](#); [13:9](#); [13:10](#); [13:16](#); [13:17](#); [13:19](#); [13:22](#); [13:33](#); [17:21](#); [17:22](#); [18:37](#); [18:43](#); [19:6](#); [19:7](#); [19:15](#); [19:20](#); [19:21](#); [20:5](#); [20:9](#); [20:34](#); [22:17](#); [22:26](#); [22:28](#); [22:33](#))

reward, prize, deserve

Definition:

The term “reward” refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. To “reward” someone is to give someone something he deserves. However, this is different than the concept of “wages,” which refers to payment (often money) given in exchange for work performed.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement “the reward of the wicked.” In this context “reward” refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “reward” could be translated as “payment” or “something that is deserved” or “punishment.”
- To “reward” someone could be translated by to “repay” or to “punish” or to “give what is deserved.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: [punish](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 32:6
- Isaiah 40:10
- Luke 6:35
- Mark 9:40-41
- Matthew 5:11-12
- Matthew 6:3-4
- Psalms 127:3-5
- Revelation 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0319, H0866, H0868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7938, H7939, H7999, G04690, G05140, G05910, G26030, G34050, G34060, G34080

(Go back to: [1 Kings 13 General Notes](#))

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [parallelism](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good.”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), integrity, [just](#), law, [law](#), obey, pure, [righteous](#), [sin](#), unlawful)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 1:8
- Psalms 37:30
- Psalms 49:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 2:6
- Matthew 6:1
- Acts 3:13-14
- Romans 1:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- Galatians 3:7
- Colossians 3:25
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 John 1:9
- 1 John 5:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **4:8** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:2** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:1** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G00930, G00940, G04580, G13410, G13420, G13430, G13440, G13450, G13460, G21180, G37160, G37170

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:32](#); [3:6](#); [8:32](#); [9:4](#); [10:9](#); [11:33](#); [11:38](#); [14:8](#); [15:5](#); [15:11](#); [22:43](#))

rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action to “rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: authority, [governor](#), [king](#), synagogue)

Bible References:

- Acts 3:17-18
- Acts 7:35-37
- Luke 12:11
- Luke 23:35
- Mark 10:42
- Matthew 9:32-34
- Matthew 20:25
- Titus 3:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4427, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4623, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7300, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G07460, G07520, G07550, G07570, G07580, G09320, G09360, G10180, G12030, G12990, G17780, G17850, G18490, G22320, G22330, G25250, G25830, G28880, G29610, G35450, G38410, G41650, G41730, G42910

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:35](#); [4:2](#); [5:16](#); [11:34](#); [14:7](#); [16:2](#))

run, runner, rushed, quickly went, scattered, flows

Definition:

Literally the term “run” means “move very quickly on foot,” usually at a greater speed than can be accomplished by walking.

This main meaning of “run” is also used in figurative expressions such as the following: * To “run in such a way as to win the prize” refers to persevering in doing God’s will with the same perseverance as running a race in order to win. * To “run in the path of your commands” means to gladly and quickly obey God’s commands. * To “run after other gods” means to persist in worshiping other gods. * “I run to you to hide me” means to quickly turn to God for refuge and safety when faced with difficult things. * Water and other liquids such as tears, blood, sweat, and rivers are said to “run.” This could also be translated as “flow.” The border of a country or region is said to “run along” a river or the border of a different country. This could be translated by saying that the country’s border “is next to” the river or other country or by saying that the country “borders” the river or other country. * Rivers and streams can “run dry,” which means that they no longer have water in them. This could be translated as “have dried up” or “have become dry.” * The days of a feast can “run their course,” which means they “have passed by” or “are finished” or “are over.”*

(See also: [false god](#), [persevere](#), [refuge](#), [turn](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:18
- Galatians 2:2
- Galatians 5:7
- Philippians 2:16
- Proverbs 1:16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0213, H0386, H1065, H1272, H1556, H1980, H2100, H2416, H3001, H3212, H3332, H3381, H3920, H3988, H4422, H4754, H4794, H4944, H5074, H5127, H5140, H5472, H5756, H6437, H6440, H6544, H6805, H7272, H7291, H7310, H7323, H7325, H7519, H7751, H8264, H8308, H8444, G04130, G13770, G16010, G15300, G15320, G19980, G27010, G37290, G40630, G43700, G43900, G48900, G49360, G51430, G52400, G52950, G53430

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:5](#); [14:27](#); [14:28](#); [18:46](#); [19:20](#))

sackcloth

Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made from goat hair or camel hair.

- A person who wore clothing made from it would be uncomfortable. Sackcloth was worn to show mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase “sackcloth and ashes” was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “coarse cloth from animal hair” or “clothes made of goat hair” or “rough, scratchy clothing.”
- Another way to translate this term could be “rough, scratchy mourning clothes.”
- The phrase “sit in sackcloth and ashes” could be translated as “show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: ash, [camel](#), goat, [humble](#), mourn, [repent](#), sign)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 3:31
- Genesis 37:34
- Joel 1:8-10
- Jonah 3:5
- Luke 10:13
- Matthew 11:21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8242, G45260

(Go back to: [1 Kings 20:31](#); [20:32](#); [21:27](#))

sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin; animal sacrifices could never do that.

offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), drink offering, [false god](#), fellowship offering, freewill offering [peace offering](#), [priest](#), sin offering, [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:6
- Acts 7:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 4:3-5
- James 2:21-24
- Mark 1:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 5:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **5:6** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:6** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:8** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0801, H0817, H0819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G02660, G03340, G10490, G14350, G14940, G23780, G23800, G36460, G43760, G54850

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:9](#); [1:19](#); [1:25](#); [3:2](#); [3:3](#); [3:4](#); [8:5](#); [8:62](#); [8:63](#); [11:8](#); [12:27](#); [12:32](#); [13:2](#); [18:29](#); [18:36](#); [19:21](#); [22:43](#))

Samaria, Samaritan

Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on its west and the Jordan River on its east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region, moving them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on its north and the region of Judea on its south.

(See also: Assyria, [Galilee](#), Judea, Sharon, kingdom of Israel)

Bible References:

- Acts 8:1-3
- Acts 8:5
- John 4:4-5
- Luke 9:51-53
- Luke 10:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:4** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called **Samaritans**.
- **27:8** "The next person to walk down that road was a **Samaritan**. (**Samaritans** were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. **Samaritans** and Jews hated each other.)"
- **27:9** "The **Samaritan** then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him."
- **45:7** He (Philip) went to **Samaria** where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8111, H8115, H8118, G45400, G45410, G45420

(Go back to: [1 Kings 13:32](#); [16:24](#); [16:28](#); [16:29](#); [16:32](#); [18:2](#); [20:1](#); [20:10](#); [20:17](#); [20:34](#); [20:43](#); [21:1](#); [21:18](#); [22:10](#); [22:37](#); [22:38](#); [22:51](#))

sandal

Definition:

A sandal is a simple shoe with a flat sole that is held onto the foot by straps that go around the foot or ankle. Sandals are worn by both men and women.

- In ancient Israel, a sandal was sometimes used to confirm a legal transaction, such as the selling of property. One person would take off a sandal and give it to the other person to show that the transaction was legal and binding.
- John said that he was not worthy to even untie Jesus' sandals, which was a normal task for the servant or slave with the lowest status in a Jewish household.

Bible References:

- Acts 7:33
- Deuteronomy 25:10
- John 1:27
- Joshua 5:15
- Mark 6:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5274, H5275, H8288, G45470, G52660

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:5](#))

scribe

Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was “expert in Jewish law.”

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term translated “scribes” was also translated as “teachers of the Law.”
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the “Pharisees,” and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: [law](#), Pharisee)

Bible References:

- Acts 4:5
- Luke 7:29-30
- Luke 20:47
- Mark 1:22
- Mark 2:16
- Matthew 5:19-20
- Matthew 7:28
- Matthew 12:38
- Matthew 13:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5608, H5613, H7083, G11220

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:3](#))

Sea of Galilee, Sea of Kinnereth, lake of Gennesaret, Sea of Tiberias

Facts:

The “Sea of Galilee” is a lake in eastern Israel. In the Old Testament it was called the “Sea of Kinnereth.”

- The water of this lake flows south through the Jordan River down to the Salt Sea.
- Capernaum, Bethsaida, Gennesaret, and Tiberias were some of the towns located on the Sea of Galilee during New Testament times.
- Many events of Jesus’ life took place on or near the Sea of Galilee.
- The Sea of Galilee was also referred to as the “Sea of Tiberias” and the “lake of Gennesaret.”
- This term could also be translated as “lake in the region of Galilee” or “Lake Galilee” or “lake near Tiberias (Gennesaret).”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Capernaum, [Galilee](#), [Jordan River](#), Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- John 6:1-3
- Luke 5:1
- Mark 1:16-18
- Matthew 4:12-13
- Matthew 4:18-20
- Matthew 8:18-20
- Matthew 13:1-2
- Matthew 15:29-31

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3220, H3672, G10560, G10820, G22810, G30410, G50850

([Go back to: 1 Kings 15:20](#))

sea of reeds, Sea of Reeds, Red Sea

Facts:

The "Sea of Reeds" was the name of a body of water located between Egypt and Arabia. It is now called the "Red Sea."

- The Red Sea is long and narrow. It is larger than a lake or river, but much smaller than an ocean.
- The Israelites had to cross the Red Sea when they were fleeing from Egypt. God performed a miracle and caused the waters of the sea to divide so that the people could walk across on dry land.
- The land of Canaan was north of this sea.
- This could also be translated as "Reed Sea."

(See also: [Arabia](#), [Canaan](#), [Egypt](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:35-37
- Exodus 13:17-18
- Joshua 4:22-24
- Numbers 14:23-25

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:4** When the Israelites saw the Egyptian army coming, they realized they were trapped between Pharaoh's army and the **Red Sea**.
- **12:5** Then God told Moses, "Tell the people to move toward the **Red Sea**."
- **13:1** After God led the Israelites through the **Red Sea**, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called Sinai.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3220, H5488, G20630, G22810

(Go back to: [1 Kings 9:26](#))

seal, sealed, unsealed

Definition:

To term “seal” means to close an object with something (usually called a “seal”) that makes the object impossible to open without breaking the seal.

- Often a seal is marked with a design to show who it belongs to.
- Melted wax was used to seal letters or other documents that needed to be protected. When the wax cooled and hardened, the letter could not be opened without breaking the wax seal. The person who received the letter would see the unbroken seal and know that no one had opened it.
- A seal was put on the stone in front of Jesus’ grave in order to keep anyone from moving the stone.
- Paul figuratively refers to the Holy Spirit as a “seal” showing that our salvation is secure.

(See also: Holy Spirit, [tomb](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 2:3
- Isaiah 29:11
- John 6:27
- Matthew 27:66
- Revelation 5:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2368, H2560, H2856, H2857, H2858, H5640, G26960, G49720, G49730

(Go back to: [1 Kings 21:8](#))

seed, semen

Definition:

A “seed” is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term “seed” is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term “seed” is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called “semen.”
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a person’s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God’s Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of “seed.” Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [children](#), descendant)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 1:11
- Jeremiah 2:21
- Matthew 13:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G46150, G46870, G46900, G47010, G47030

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:33](#); [11:14](#); [11:39](#); [18:32](#))

seek, search, look for

Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is “sought.” This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to “attempt” or “make an effort” to do something or to ask for something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “urgently ask for favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: [just](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:6
- Luke 11:9
- Psalms 27:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G03270, G15670, G19340, G20520, G22120

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:2](#); [1:3](#); [2:40](#); [10:24](#); [11:22](#); [11:40](#); [14:5](#); [18:10](#); [19:10](#); [19:14](#); [20:6](#); [20:7](#); [22:5](#); [22:7](#); [22:8](#))

seize, seizure, capture

Definition:

The term “seize” means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

- When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
- When used figuratively, a person can be described as being “seized with fear.” This means that the person was suddenly “overcome by fear.” If a person was “seized with fear” it could also be stated that the person “suddenly became very afraid.”
- In the context of labor pains that “seize” a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated by saying that the pains “overcome” or “suddenly come upon” the woman.
- This term could also be translated as “take control of” or “suddenly take” or “grab.”
- The expression “seized and slept with her” could be translated as “forced himself on her” or “violated her” or “raped her.” Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable.

(See: [euphemism](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 16:19-21
- Exodus 15:14
- John 10:37-39
- Luke 8:29
- Matthew 26:48

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0270, H1497, H2388, H3027, H3920, H3947, H4672, H5377, H5860, H6031, H7760, H8610, G07240, G19490, G26380, G29020, G29830, G48150, G48840

(Go back to: [1 Kings 9:16](#); [13:4](#); [16:18](#); [18:40](#); [20:18](#))

send, sent, send out

Definition:

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean to “cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as to “send word” or to “send a message,” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father, who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as “the one who commissioned me.”

(See also: [appoint](#), [redeem](#), [castout](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:33-34
- Acts 8:14-17
- John 20:21-23
- Matthew 9:37-38
- Matthew 10:5
- Matthew 10:40
- Matthew 21:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0935, H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H3947, H4916, H4917, H5042, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7725, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G07820, G03750, G06300, G06490, G06520, G06570, G10260, G10320, G15440, G15990, G18210, G33330, G33430, G39360, G39920, G43110, G43410, G43690, G48420, G48820

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:44](#); [1:53](#); [2:25](#); [2:29](#); [2:36](#); [2:42](#); [5:1](#); [5:2](#); [5:8](#); [5:9](#); [5:14](#); [7:13](#); [8:44](#); [9:7](#); [9:14](#); [9:27](#); [11:21](#); [11:22](#); [12:3](#); [12:18](#); [12:20](#); [14:6](#); [15:18](#); [15:19](#); [15:20](#); [18:10](#); [18:19](#); [18:20](#); [19:2](#); [20:2](#); [20:5](#); [20:6](#); [20:7](#); [20:9](#); [20:10](#); [20:17](#); [20:34](#); [20:42](#); [21:8](#); [21:11](#); [21:14](#))

servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

Definition:

A “servant” or “slave” refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. A servant was under his master's control. In the Bible, “servant” and “slave” are mostly interchangeable terms. The term “serve” generally means to do work for someone, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves cruelly. Other masters treated their slaves well, like a valued member of the household. The term “slavery” means the state of being a slave.
- A person could be a slave temporarily, for instance while working to repay a debt to his owner.
- The words “young man” or “young woman” often mean “servant” or “slave.” This meaning will be discerned from context. One indicator of this situation is if the possessive is used, eg. “her young women” could be translated as “her servants” or “her slaves.”
- The term “enslave” means “to cause to be a slave” (usually by force).
- The New Testament speaks of human beings as “slaves of sin” until Jesus frees them from its control and power. When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often called his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.” When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”
- Often, when a person referred to himself as “your servant” he was showing respect to the person addressed. That person may have had higher social status, or the speaker may be showing humility. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.

(See also: bondage, [works](#), obey, [house](#), [lord](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:13
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Genesis 25:23
- Deuteronomy 24:7
- Jeremiah 30:8-9
- Matthew 4:10-11
- Matthew 6:24
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- Mark 8:7-10
- Mark 9:33-35
- Luke 4:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 12:47-48
- Luke 22:26-27
- Acts 4:29-31
- Acts 6:2-4
- Acts 10:7-8
- Galatians 4:3
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Colossians 1:7-8
- Colossians 3:22-25
- 2 Timothy 2:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **8:4** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **9:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:3** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:6** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:4** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:4** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H0519, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G12490, G14010, G14020, G23240, G34070, G34110, G36100, G38160, G49830, G52570
- (Serve) H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G12470, G12480, G13980, G14020, G14380, G19830, G20640, G22120, G23230, G29990, G30000, G30090, G43370, G43420, G47540, G50870, G52560
- (Enslave) H3533, G26150

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:9](#); [1:13](#); [1:17](#); [1:19](#); [1:26](#); [1:27](#); [1:33](#); [1:47](#); [1:51](#); [2:38](#); [2:39](#); [2:40](#); [3:6](#); [3:7](#); [3:8](#); [3:9](#); [3:15](#); [3:20](#); [4:21](#); [5:1](#); [5:6](#); [5:9](#); [8:23](#); [8:24](#); [8:25](#); [8:26](#); [8:28](#); [8:29](#); [8:30](#); [8:32](#); [8:36](#); [8:52](#); [8:53](#); [8:56](#); [8:59](#); [8:66](#); [9:6](#); [9:9](#); [9:21](#);

9:22; 9:27; 10:5; 10:8; 10:13; 11:11; 11:13; 11:17; 11:26; 11:28; 11:32; 11:34; 11:36; 11:38; 12:4; 12:7; 14:8; 14:18;
15:18; 15:29; 16:9; 16:31; 18:9; 18:12; 18:36; 18:43; 19:3; 20:6; 20:9; 20:12; 20:14; 20:15; 20:17; 20:19; 20:23; 20:31;
20:32; 20:39; 20:40; 22:3; 22:49)

set apart

Definition:

The term “set apart” means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to “set apart” some person or thing means to make it “set apart.”

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To “sanctify” someone means to set apart that person for God’s service.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate to “set apart” could include to “specially select” or to “separate from among you” or to “take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), sanctify, [appoint](#))

Bible References:

- Ephesians 3:17-19
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12
- Numbers 3:11-13
- Philippians 1:1-2
- Romans 1:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G00370, G00380, G00400, G08730

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:64](#); [9:3](#); [9:7](#))

Sheba

Facts:

In ancient times, Sheba was an ancient civilization or region of land that was located somewhere in southern Arabia.

- The region or country of Sheba was probably located near what are now the present-day countries of Yemen and Ethiopia.
- Its inhabitants were probably descendants of Ham.
- The Queen of Sheba came to visit King Solomon when she heard the fame of his riches and wisdom.
- There were also several men named "Sheba" listed in genealogies in the Old Testament. It is possible that the name of the region of Sheba came from one of these men.
- The city of Beersheba was shortened to Sheba one time in the Old Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Arabia](#), [Beersheba](#), Ethiopia, [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:8-10
- 1 Kings 10:1-2
- Isaiah 60:6-7
- Psalms 72:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5434, H7614

(Go back to: [1 Kings 10:1](#); [10:4](#); [10:10](#); [10:13](#))

Shechem

Facts:

Shechem was a town in Canaan located about 40 miles north of Jerusalem. Shechem was also the name of a man in the Old Testament.

- The town of Shechem was where Jacob settled after being reconciled to his brother Esau.
- Jacob bought land from the sons of Hamor the Hivite in Shechem. This land later became his family burial ground and the place where his sons buried him.
- Hamor's son Shechem raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, resulting in Jacob's sons killing all the men in the town of Shechem.

(Translation suggestions: Hamor)

(See also: [Canaan](#), Esau, Hamor, [Hivite](#), [Jacob](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:14-16
- Genesis 12:6-7
- Genesis 33:19
- Genesis 37:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7928, H7930

(Go back to: [1 Kings 12:1](#); [12:25](#))

shepherd, herder, pastor

Definition:

A “shepherd” is a person who takes care of sheep. In the Old Testament, this word can also refer to a “herder” who takes care of other kinds of domestic livestock such as goats or cattle.

- As a verb, the term “shepherd” means to lead sheep (or other livestock) to places with good food and water, protect them from wild animals, keep them from getting lost and other duties necessary to keep livestock alive and healthy.
- In the Bible, this term is often used figuratively to refer to taking care of the needs of people (not only animals), both physical and spiritual.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the “shepherd” of his people because he took care of them. In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the “good shepherd,” and in other places Jesus is called the “great shepherd” of the Church.
- The term “shepherd” is also used in the New Testament to refer to a person who is a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as “pastor” is the same word that is translated as “shepherd.” Elders and overseers are also called shepherds.

Translation Suggestions

- The noun “shepherd” can be translated as “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When referring to someone who cares for livestock other than sheep, the term can be translated as “herder,” “tender of livestock” or “person who takes care of livestock.”
- When used as a verb, the term “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- In some contexts, the term “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- When used figuratively, the noun “shepherd” could be translated in different ways, including “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- When used figuratively, the verb “shepherd” could be translated as to “take care of” or to “spiritually nourish” or to “guide and teach” or to “lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep).”

(See also: [sheep](#), [livestock](#), [pastor](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 13:7
- Genesis 49:24
- Luke 2:9
- Mark 6:34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 25:32
- Matthew 26:31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:11** Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.to

- **17:2** David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- **23:6** That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- **23:8** The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G07500, G41650, G41660

(Go back to: [1 Kings 22:17](#))

shield

Definition:

A shield was an object held by a soldier in battle to protect himself from being injured by the enemy's weapons. To "shield" someone means to protect that person from harm.

- Shields were often circular or oval, were made of materials such as leather, wood, or metal, and were sturdy and thick enough to keep a sword or arrow from piercing them.
- Using this term as a metaphor, the Bible refers to God as a protective shield for his people. (See: Metaphor)
- Paul talked about the "shield of faith," which is a figurative way of saying that having faith in Jesus and living out that faith in obedience to God will protect believers from the spiritual attacks of Satan.

(See also: faith, obey, Satan, [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:26
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- 2 Samuel 22:36
- Deuteronomy 33:29
- Psalms 18:35

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2653, H3591, H4043, H5437, H5526, H6793, H7982, G23750

(Go back to: [1 Kings 10:17](#); [14:26](#); [14:27](#))

Shiloh

Facts:

Shiloh was a walled Canaanite city that was conquered by the Israelites under the leadership of Joshua.

- The city of Shiloh was located west of the Jordan River and northeast of the city of Bethel.
- During the time that Joshua was leading Israel, the city of Shiloh was a meeting place for the people of Israel.
- The twelve tribes of Israel met together at Shiloh to hear Joshua tell them which portion of the land of Canaan had been assigned to each of them.
- Before any temple was built in Jerusalem, Shiloh was the place where the Israelites came to sacrifice to God.
- When Samuel was a young boy, his mother Hannah took him to live in Shiloh to be trained by the priest Eli to serve Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethel](#), [dedicate](#), [Hannah](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Jordan River](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [Samuel](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 2:26-27
- 1 Samuel 1:9-10
- Joshua 18:1-2
- Judges 18:30-31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7886, H7887

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:27](#); [14:2](#); [14:4](#))

Shimei

Definition:

Shimei was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- Shimei son of Gera was a Benjamite who cursed King David and threw stones at him as he was fleeing Jerusalem to escape being killed by his son Absalom.
- There were also several Levite priests in the Old Testament who were named Shimei.

(See also: [Absalom](#), [Benjamin](#), [Levite](#), [priest](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:17
- 1 Kings 1:8
- 2 Samuel 16:13
- Zechariah 12:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8096, H8097

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:8](#); [2:8](#); [2:36](#); [2:38](#); [2:39](#); [2:40](#); [2:41](#); [2:42](#); [2:44](#); [4:18](#))

Sidon, Sidonians

Facts:

Sidon was the oldest son of Canaan. There is also a Canaanite city called Sidon, probably named after Canaan's son.

- The city of Sidon was located northwest of Israel on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is part of the present-day country of Lebanon.
- The "Sidonians" were a Phoenician people group who lived in ancient Sidon and the region surrounding it.
- In the Bible, Sidon is closely associated with the city of Tyre, and both cities were known for their wealth and for immoral behavior of their people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), Noah, Phoenicia, the sea, [Tyre](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 12:20
- Acts 27:3-6
- Genesis 10:15-18
- Genesis 10:19
- Mark 3:7-8
- Matthew 11:22
- Matthew 15:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6721, H6722, G46050, G46060

(Go back to: [1 Kings 5:6](#); [11:1](#); [11:5](#); [11:33](#); [16:31](#); [17:9](#))

siege, besiege, besieged, siegeworks

Definition:

A "siege" occurs when an attacking army surrounds a city and keeps it from receiving any supplies of food and water. To "besiege" a city or to put it "under siege" means to attack it by means of a siege.

- When the Babylonians came to attack Israel, they used the tactic of a siege against Jerusalem to weaken the people inside the city.
- Often during a siege, ramps of dirt are gradually constructed to enable the attacking army to cross over the city walls and invade the city.
- To "besiege" a city can also be expressed as to "lay siege" to it or to "perform a siege" on it.
- The term "besieged" has the same meaning as the expression "under siege." Both these expressions describe a city that an enemy army is surrounding and besieging.

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 20:1
- 1 Kings 20:1-3
- 1 Samuel 11:1-2
- Jeremiah 33:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4692, H4693, H5341, H5437, H5564, H6693, H6696, H6887

(Go back to: [1 Kings 15:27](#); [16:17](#))

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 2:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 3:6
- Matthew 26:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G06930, G06940, G06950, G06960, G14060

(Go back to: [1 Kings 7:51](#); [10:21](#); [10:22](#); [10:25](#); [10:27](#); [10:29](#); [15:15](#); [15:18](#); [15:19](#); [16:24](#); [20:3](#); [20:5](#); [20:7](#); [20:39](#); [21:2](#); [21:6](#); [21:15](#))

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, [evil](#), [flesh](#), tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1-3
- 1 John 1:10
- 1 John 2:2
- 2 Samuel 7:12-14
- Acts 3:19
- Daniel 9:24
- Genesis 4:7
- Hebrews 12:2
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 4:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31

- Romans 6:23
- Romans 8:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:1** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:1** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:8** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0817, H0819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G02640, G02650, G02660, G02680, G03610, G37810, G39000, G42580

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:21](#); [8:31](#); [8:33](#); [8:34](#); [8:35](#); [8:36](#); [8:46](#); [8:47](#); [8:50](#); [12:30](#); [13:34](#); [Notes](#); [14:16](#); [14:22](#); [15:3](#); [15:26](#); [15:30](#); [15:34](#); [16:2](#); [16:13](#); [16:19](#); [16:26](#); [16:31](#); [18:9](#); [Notes](#); [21:22](#); [22:52](#))

Sinai, Horeb

Facts:

Mount Sinai or Mount Horeb is a mountain that was probably located in the southern part of what is now called the Sinai Peninsula, but the exact location of this mountain is not known.

- It is possible that “Horeb” was the actual name of the mountain and that “Mount Sinai” simply means “mountain of Sinai,” referring to the fact that Mount Horeb was located in the desert of Sinai.
- It is also called the “mountain of God.”
- It was the place where Moses saw the burning bush when he was tending sheep.
- It was the place where God revealed his covenant to the Israelites by giving them the stone tablets with his commandments written on them.
- It was also the place where God later told Moses to strike a rock to provide water for the Israelites as they were wandering in the desert.

(See also: [desert](#), Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:29-30
- Exodus 16:1-3
- Galatians 4:24
- Leviticus 27:34
- Numbers 1:17-19
- 1 Kings 8:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 5:9-10
- Deuteronomy 1:2
- Exodus 3:1-3
- Psalms 106:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:1** After God led the Israelites through the Red Sea, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called **Sinai**.
- **13:3** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves spiritually, God came down on top of **Mount Sinai** with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **13:11** For many days, Moses was on top of **Mount Sinai** talking with God.
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at **Sinai**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2722, H5514, G37350, G46140

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:9](#))

slaughter, slaughtered

Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called “slaughter.”

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression “the slaughter was very great” could be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: [angel](#), [cow](#), disobey, Ezekiel, [servant](#), [slay](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 7:1
- Isaiah 34:2
- Jeremiah 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G28710, G49670, G49690

(Go back to: [1 Kings 18:40](#))

slay, slain, slaughter, kill, murder

Definition:

To “slay” a person or animal means to kill it. Often it means to kill it in a forceful or violent way. If a man has killed an animal he has “slain” it.

- When referring to an animal or to a large number of people, the term “slaughter” is another term that is often used.
- An act of slaughtering is also called a “slaughter.”
- The phrase “the slain” could also be translated as “the slain people” or “the people who were killed.”

(See also: [slaughter](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 28:23
- Isaiah 26:21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2076, H2491, H2717, H2763, H2873, H2874, H4191, H4194, H5221, H6991, H6992, H7523, H7819, G03370, G06150, G13150, G23800, G26950, G49680, G49690, G54070

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:5](#); [2:32](#); [9:16](#); [11:24](#); [12:27](#); [18:12](#); [18:13](#); [18:14](#); [19:1](#); [19:10](#); [19:14](#); [21:19](#))

Solomon

Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the first years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms, Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bathsheba](#), [David](#), [Israel](#), Judah, kingdom of Israel, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:47-50
- Luke 12:27
- Matthew 1:7-8
- Matthew 6:29
- Matthew 12:42

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:14** Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him **Solomon**.
- **18:1** After many years, David died, and his son **Solomon** began to rule. God spoke to **Solomon** and asked him what he wanted most. When **Solomon** asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. **Solomon** learned many things and was a very wise judge. God also made him very wealthy.
- **18:2** In Jerusalem, **Solomon** built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **18:3** But **Solomon** loved women from other countries....When **Solomon** was old, he also worshiped their gods.
- **18:4** God was angry with **Solomon** and, as a punishment for **Solomon's** unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after **Solomon's** death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8010, G46720

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:10; 1:11; 1:12; 1:13; 1:17; 1:19; 1:21; 1:26; 1:30; 1:33; 1:34; 1:37; 1:38; 1:39; 1:43; 1:46; 1:47; 1:50; 1:51; 1:52; 1:53; 2:1; 2:12; 2:13; 2:17; 2:19; 2:22; 2:23; 2:25; 2:27; 2:29; 2:41; 2:45; 2:46; 3:1; 3:3; 3:4; 3:5; 3:6; 3:10; 3:15; 4:1; 4:7; 4:11; 4:15; 4:21; 4:22; 4:25; 4:26; 4:27; 4:29; 4:30; 4:34; 5:1; 5:2; 5:7; 5:8; 5:10; 5:11; 5:12; 5:13; 5:15; 5:16; 5:18; 6:1; 6:2; 6:11; 6:14; 6:21; 7:1; 7:8; 7:13; 7:14; 7:40; 7:45; 7:47; 7:48; 7:51; 8:1; 8:2; 8:5; 8:12; 8:22; 8:54; 8:63; 8:65; 9:1; 9:2; 9:10; 9:11; 9:12; 9:15; 9:16; 9:17; 9:19; 9:21; 9:22; 9:23; 9:25; 9:26; 9:27; 9:28; 10:1; 10:2; 10:3; 10:4; 10:10; 10:13; 10:14; 10:16; 10:21; 10:23; 10:24; 10:26; 10:28; 11:1; 11:2; 11:4; 11:5; 11:6; 11:7; 11:9; 11:11; 11:14; 11:25; 11:26; 11:27; 11:28; 11:31; 11:40; 11:41; 11:42; 11:43; 12:2; 12:6; 12:21; 12:23; 14:21; 14:26](#))

son

Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- The phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person’s father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- The “sons of Israel” are usually the Israelite nation (after Genesis).
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.
- The phrase “son of” can be used to associate the person with whatever person or concept comes next. The meaning is then greatly determined by context. It can be positive (eg. 2 Kings 2:16: “sons of ability”), negative (eg. 2 Samuel 7:10: “sons of wickedness”), denote membership in a group, express contempt by not naming the person (eg. “you sons of Zeruiah”), etc.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: descendant, [ancestor](#), Son of God, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:2
- 1 Thessalonians 5:5
- Galatians 4:7
- Hosea 11:1
- Isaiah 9:6
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 8:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **4:9** God said, “I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **5:5** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”

- **9:7** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:6** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:1** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:4** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G38160, G50430, G52070

(Go back to: 1 Kings 1:5; 1:7; 1:8; 1:9; 1:11; 1:12; 1:13; 1:17; 1:19; 1:21; 1:25; 1:26; 1:30; 1:32; 1:33; 1:36; 1:38; 1:42; 1:44; 2:1; 2:4; 2:5; 2:7; 2:8; 2:13; 2:22; 2:25; 2:29; 2:32; 2:34; 2:35; 2:39; 2:46; 3:6; 3:19; 3:20; 3:21; 3:22; 3:23; 3:26; 4:2; 4:3; 4:4; 4:5; 4:6; 4:12; 4:13; 4:14; 4:16; 4:17; 4:18; 4:19; 4:30; 4:31; 5:5; 5:7; 6:1; 6:13; 7:14; 8:1; 8:9; 8:19; 8:25; 8:39; 8:63; 9:6; 9:20; 9:21; 9:22; 11:2; 11:7; 11:12; 11:13; 11:20; 11:23; 11:26; 11:33; 11:35; 11:36; 11:43; 12:2; 12:15; 12:16; 12:17; 12:21; 12:23; 12:24; 12:31; 12:33; 13:2; 13:11; 13:12; 13:13; 13:27; 13:31; 14:1; 14:5; 14:20; 14:21; 14:24; 14:31; 15:1; 15:4; 15:8; 15:18; 15:24; 15:25; 15:27; 15:33; 16:1; 16:3; 16:6; 16:7; 16:8; 16:13; 16:21; 16:22; 16:26; 16:28; 16:29; 16:30; 16:31; 16:34; 17:12; 17:13; 17:17; 17:18; 17:19; 17:20; 17:23; 18:20; 18:31; 19:10; 19:14; 19:16; 19:19; 20:3; 20:5; 20:7; 20:15; 20:27; 20:29; 20:35; 21:22; 21:26; 21:29; 22:8; 22:9; 22:11; 22:24; 22:26; 22:40; 22:41; 22:49; 22:50; 22:51; 22:52)

soul, self, person

Definition:

The term “soul” can either refer generally to the non-physical part of a person or refer specifically to a person’s awareness of themselves as a person distinct from others.

- In the Bible, the terms “soul” and “spirit” may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- In contrast to the body, the “soul” can be spoken of as the part of a person that “relates to God.”
- The word “soul” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, “the soul who sins” means “the person who sins” and “my soul is tired” means “I am tired.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “soul” could also be translated as “inner self” or “inner person.”
- In some contexts, “my soul” could be translated as “I” or “me.”
- Usually the phrase “the soul” can be translated as “the person” or “he” or “him,” depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts “soul” and “spirit.”
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase “dividing soul and spirit” could mean “deeply discerning or exposing the inner person.”

(See also: [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:8
- Acts 2:27-28
- Acts 2:41
- Genesis 49:6
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 1:21
- Jeremiah 6:16-19
- Jonah 2:7-8
- Luke 1:47
- Matthew 22:37
- Psalms 19:7
- Revelation 20:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5082, H5315, H5397, G55900

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:4](#); [8:48](#); [11:37](#))

spear, spearmen

Definition:

A spear is a weapon with a long wooden handle and sharp metal blade on one end that is thrown a long distance.

- Spears were commonly used for war in biblical times. They are sometimes still used in present-day conflicts between certain people groups.
- A spear was used by a Roman soldier to pierce the side of Jesus while he hung on the cross.
- Sometimes people throw spears to catch fish or other prey to eat.
- Similar weapons are the "javelin" or "lance."
- Make sure that the translation of "spear" is different from the translation of "sword," which is a weapon that is used for thrusting or stabbing, not throwing. Also, a sword has a long blade with a handle, while a spear has a small blade on the end of a long shaft.

(See also: prey, Rome, [sword](#), warrior)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 13:19-21
- 2 Samuel 21:19
- Nehemiah 4:12-14
- Psalm 35:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1265, H2595, H3591, H6767, H7013, H7420, G30570

(Go back to: [1 Kings 18:28](#))

spirit, wind, breath

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of a person which cannot be seen. In biblical times, the concept of a person's spirit was closely related to the concept of a person's breath. The term can also refer to wind, that is, the movement of air in the natural world.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, such as an evil spirit.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes things in the non-physical world.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.” Sometimes the Bible applies this term in the context of a person's attitude or emotional state, such as “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”
- Jesus said that God is a spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God's” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”
- Sometimes this term can be translated as “wind” when referring to the simple movement of air or “breath” when referring to air movement caused by living beings.

(See also: [soul](#), Holy Spirit, demon, [breath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- 1 John 4:3
- 1 Thessalonians 5:23
- Acts 5:9
- Colossians 1:9
- Ephesians 4:23
- Genesis 7:21-22
- Genesis 8:1
- Isaiah 4:4
- Mark 1:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 1:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:3** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:7** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G41510, G41520, G41530, G53260, G54270

(Go back to: [1 Kings 18:12](#); [18:45](#); [19:11](#); [21:5](#); [22:21](#); [22:22](#); [22:23](#); [22:24](#))

statute

Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” and “command” and “law” and “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: [command](#), decree, [law](#), [ordinance](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:15
- Numbers 19:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H2708, H7010, G13450

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:3](#); [3:3](#); [3:14](#); [6:12](#); [8:58](#); [8:61](#); [9:4](#); [9:6](#); [11:11](#); [11:33](#); [11:34](#); [11:38](#))

stone, stoning

Definition:

A stone is a small rock. To “stone” someone is to throw stones and larger rocks at that person with the intention of killing him. A “stoning” is an event in which someone was stoned.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- In the New Testament, Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed for testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: adultery, commit, crime, [death](#), Lystra, [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:57-58
- Acts 7:59-60
- Acts 14:5
- Acts 14:19-20
- John 8:4-6
- Luke 13:34
- Luke 20:6
- Matthew 23:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0068, H0069, H0810, H1382, H1496, H1530, H2106, H2672, H2687, H2789, H4676, H4678, H5553, H5601, H5619, H6344, H6443, H6697, H6864, H6872, H7275, H7671, H8068, G26420, G29910, G30340, G30350, G30360, G30370, G40740, G43480, G55860

(Go back to: [1 Kings 12:18](#); [21:10](#); [21:13](#); [21:14](#); [21:15](#))

storehouse

Definition:

A “storehouse” is a large building that is used for keeping food or other things, often for a long time.

- In the Bible a “storehouse” was usually used to store extra grain and other food to be used later when there was a famine.
- This term was also used figuratively to refer to all the good things that God wants to give to his people.
- The storehouses of the temple contained valuable things that had been dedicated to Yahweh, such as gold and silver. Some of these things used to repair and maintain the temple were also kept there.
- Other ways to translate “storehouse” could include “a building for storing grain” or “place for keeping food” or “room for keeping valuable things safe.”

(See also: consecrate, [dedicate](#), [famine](#), [gold](#), grain, [silver](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 16:2-3
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Psalms 33:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0214, H0618, H0624, H4035, H4200, H4543, G05960

(Go back to: [1 Kings 7:51](#); [9:19](#); [15:18](#))

strength, strengthen, strong

Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
 - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
 - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
 - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
 - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
 - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
 - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
 - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
 - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
 - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
 - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
 - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), persevere, right hand, save)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 2:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 21:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0193, H0202, H0353, H0360, H0386, H0410, H0553, H0556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633,

G04610, G09500, G14110, G14120, G17430, G17650, G18400, G19910, G24790, G24800, G29010, G29040,
G36190, G37560, G45990, G47320, G47330, G47410

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:42](#); [1:52](#); [2:2](#); [8:42](#); [10:2](#); [11:28](#); [12:18](#); [15:20](#); [16:22](#); [17:17](#); [18:2](#); [19:8](#); [19:11](#); [20:1](#); [20:19](#); [20:22](#);
[20:23](#); [20:25](#))

stronghold, fortifications, fortress, citadel

Definition:

The terms “stronghold” and “fortress” both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. A “citadel” is a fortress inside a city. The term “fortified” describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses were manmade structures with defensive walls. They could also have been places with natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
- People fortified strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that made it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- “Stronghold” or “fortress” could be translated as “securely strong place” or “strongly protected place.”
- The term “fortified city” could be translated as “securely protected city” or “strongly built city.”
- Another figurative meaning for the term “stronghold” referred to something that someone wrongly trusted in for security, such as a false god or other thing that was worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as “false strongholds.”
- This term should be translated differently from “refuge,” which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.

(See also: [false god](#), [false god](#), [refuge](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:4
- 2 Kings 8:10-12
- 2 Samuel 5:8-10
- Acts 21:35
- Habakkuk 1:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0490, H0553, H0759, H1001, H1002, H1003, H1219, H1225, H2388, H4013, H4026, H4581, H4526, H4679, H4685, H4686, H4692, H4694, H4869, H5794, H5797, H5800, H6438, H6877, H7682, G37940, G39250

(Go back to: [1 Kings 16:18](#))

Succoth

Definition:

Succoth was the name of two Old Testament cities. The word, “succoth” (or “sukkoth”) means “shelters.”

- The first city called Succoth was located on the east side of the Jordan River.
- Jacob stayed at Succoth with his family and flocks, building shelters for them there.
- Hundreds of years later, Gideon and his exhausted men stopped at Succoth as they were chasing the Midanites, but the people there refused to give them any food.
- The second Succoth was located on the northern border of Egypt and was a place where the Israelites stopped after they crossed the Red Sea as they were escaping from slavery in Egypt.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 7:46
- Exodus 12:37-40
- Joshua 13:27-28
- Judges 8:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5523, H5524

(Go back to: [1 Kings 7:46](#))

sword, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 12:2
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 2:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 1:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0019, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G31620, G45010

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:51](#); [2:8](#); [2:32](#); [3:24](#); [18:28](#); [19:1](#); [19:10](#); [19:14](#); [19:17](#))

Tamar

Facts:

Tamar is the name of several different women in the Old Testament. There are several cities or other places that are named Tamar in the Old Testament.

- Tamar was the daughter-in-law of Judah. She gave birth to Perez who was an ancestor of Jesus Christ.
- One of King David's daughters was named Tamar; she was the sister of Absalom. Her half-brother Amnon raped her and left her desolate.
- Absalom also had a daughter named Tamar.
- A city called "Hazon Tamar" was the same as the city of Engedi on the western shore of the Salt Sea. There is also a "Baal Tamar," and general references to a place called "Tamar" which may have been different from the cities.

(See also: [Absalom](#), [ancestor](#), Amnon, [David](#), [ancestor](#), [Judah](#), Salt Sea)

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:4
- 2 Samuel 13:2
- 2 Samuel 14:25-27
- Genesis 38:6-7
- Genesis 38:24
- Matthew 1:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1193, H2688, H8412, H8559

(Go back to: [1 Kings 9:18](#))

Tarshish

Facts:

In biblical times, Tarshish was a port city situated on the Mediterranean Sea. The specific location of the city is unknown. Also, the Old Testament mentions two different men named Tarshish.

- The city of Tarshish was a prosperous port city with ships that carried products to buy, sell, or trade. The Bible states that King Solomon kept a fleet of ships stationed at Tarshish.
- The Old Testament prophet Jonah boarded a ship bound for the city of Tarshish instead of obeying God's command to go preach to Nineveh.
- One of Japheth's grandsons was named Tarshish.
- Tarshish was also the name of one of the wise men of King Ahashuerus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Esther, Japheth, Jonah, Nineveh, Phoenicia, wise men)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:2-5
- Isaiah 2:16
- Jeremiah 10:9
- Jonah 1:3
- Psalms 48:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8659

(Go back to: [1 Kings 10:22](#); [22:48](#))

temple, house, house of God

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [Solomon](#), Babylon, Holy Spirit, tabernacle, [courtyard](#), [Zion](#), [house](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 3:2
- Acts 3:8
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 79:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:6** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:2** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:4** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:7** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, G14930, G24110, G34850

(Go back to: [1 Kings 5 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [6:3](#); [6:5](#); [6:17](#); [6:33](#); [Notes](#); [7:21](#); [7:50](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

tent of meeting

Facts:

The term “tent of meeting” refers to a tent which was a temporary place where God met with Moses before the tabernacle was built.

- The tent of meeting was set up outside the camp of the Israelites.
- When Moses went into the tent of meeting to meet with God, a pillar of cloud would stand at the entrance to the tent as a sign of God’s presence there.
- After the Israelites built the tabernacle, the temporary tent was no longer needed and the term “tent of meeting” was sometimes used to refer to the tabernacle.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Moses](#), [pillar](#), tabernacle, [tent](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 2:28-29
- Joshua 19:51
- Leviticus 1:2
- Numbers 4:31-32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:8** God gave the Israelites a detailed description of a tent he wanted them to make. It was called the **Tent of Meeting**, and it had two rooms, separated by a large curtain.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God’s law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the **Tent of Meeting** as a sacrifice to God.
- **14:8** God was very angry and came to the **Tent of Meeting**.
- **18:2** Instead of at the **Tent of Meeting**, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the Temple.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0168, H4150

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:4](#))

tent, tentmakers

Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents constructed from sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he supported himself by making tents.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses" or even "bodies." (See: [synecdoche](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Canaan](#), [curtain](#), Paul, [Sinai](#), tabernacle, [tent of meeting](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:10
- Daniel 11:45
- Exodus 16:18
- Genesis 12:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0167, H0168, H2583, H3407, H6898

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:39](#); [2:28](#); [2:29](#); [2:30](#); [8:66](#); [12:16](#))

test, tested, testing, testing in the fire

Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “test” could also be translated as, to “challenge” or to “cause to experience difficulties” or to “prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as to “test” or to “set up a challenge” or to “force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: tempt)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:1
- 1 Thessalonians 5:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:1
- Isaiah 7:13
- James 1:12
- Lamentations 3:40-43
- Malachi 3:10
- Philippians 1:10
- Psalm 26:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5254, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G12420, G12630, G13030, G13820, G19570, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G39840, G43030, G44510, G48280, G60200

(Go back to: [1 Kings 10:1](#))

testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence

Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- In some places in the Old Testament, “Testimony” refers specifically to the tablets of stone on which Yahweh wrote his ten commandments. From that use it came to refer to God’s law more broadly.
- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- Ways to translate “Testimony” could include, “the stone slabs on which I wrote my commands” or “God’s law” or “God’s commands” or “the record of the agreement between Yahweh and Israel.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#), [prophet](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 6:3
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 1:44
- John 1:7
- John 3:33
- Acts 4:32-33
- Acts 7:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 1:9
- 1 Thessalonians 2:10-12
- 1 Timothy 5:19-20
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- 2 Peter 1:16-18
- 1 John 5:6-8
- 3 John 1:12
- Revelation 12:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:2** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:7** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G02670, G12630, G19570, G26490, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G31440, G43030, G48280, G49010, G55750, G55760, G55770, G60200

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:3](#); [2:42](#); [21:10](#); [21:13](#))

thresh

Definition:

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating grain from the rest of the plant.

- Threshing a crop loosens the grain from the stalk. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the seed from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: chaff, grain, winnow)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- 2 Kings 13:7
- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Daniel 2:35
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Ruth 3:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0212, H4173, H1637, H1758, H1786, H1869, H2251, G02480

(Go back to: [1 Kings 22:10](#))

threshold, doorway

Definition:

The term “threshold” refers to the bottom part of a doorway or the part of a building that is just inside the door.

- Sometimes a threshold is a strip of wood or stone that must be stepped over in order to enter a room or building.
- Both a gate and the opening to a tent can also have a threshold.
- This term should be translated with a term in the project language that refers to the place at the very entrance to a home that a person steps across.
- If there is no term for this, “threshold” could also be translated as “doorway” or “opening” or “entranceway,” depending on the context.

(See also: [gate](#), [tent](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:17-19
- Ezekiel 9:3
- Isaiah 6:4
- Proverbs 17:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4670, H5592

(Go back to: [1 Kings 14:17](#))

throne, enthroned

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word “throne” can also be used to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: authority, power, [king](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:15-17
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 1:32
- Luke 22:30
- Matthew 5:34
- Matthew 19:28
- Revelation 1:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G09680, G23620

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:13](#); [1:17](#); [1:20](#); [1:24](#); [1:27](#); [1:30](#); [1:35](#); [1:37](#); [1:46](#); [1:47](#); [1:48](#); [2:4](#); [2:12](#); [2:19](#); [2:24](#); [2:33](#); [2:45](#); [3:6](#); [5:5](#); [7:7](#); [8:20](#); [8:25](#); [9:5](#); [10:9](#); [10:18](#); [10:19](#); [16:11](#); [22:10](#); [22:19](#))

Tirzah

Facts:

Tirzah was an important Canaanite city that was conquered by the Israelites. It was also the name of a daughter of Gilead, a descendant of Manasseh.

- The city Tirzah was located in the region occupied by the tribe of Manasseh. It is thought that the city was about 10 miles north of the city of Shechem.
- Years later, Tirzah became a temporary capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel, during the reigns of four kings of Israel.
- Tirzah was also the name of one of Manasseh's granddaughters. They asked to be given a portion of the land since their father had died and he had no sons to inherit it as would normally be the custom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [inherit](#), kingdom of Israel, [Manasseh](#), [Shechem](#))

Bible References:

- Numbers 27:1
- Numbers 36:11
- Song of Songs 6:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8656

(Go back to: [1 Kings 14:17](#); [15:21](#); [15:33](#); [16:6](#); [16:8](#); [16:9](#); [16:15](#); [16:17](#); [16:23](#))

to minister, ministry

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “ministry” refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would “minister” to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their “ministry” also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- The job of “ministering” to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, to “minister” could also be translated as to “serve” or to “care for” or to “meet the needs of.”
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term “minister” could be translated as “serve God in the temple” or “offer sacrifices to God for the people.”
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as to “serve” or to “work for God.”
- The phrase “ministered to” could also be translated as “took care of” or “provided for” or “helped.”

(See also: [serve](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 20:23-26
- Acts 6:4
- Acts 21:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6399, H8120, H8334, H8335, G12470, G12480, G12490, G20230, G20380, G24180, G30080, G30090, G30100, G30110, G39300, G52560, G52570, G55240

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:11](#))

transgress, transgression

Definition:

The term “transgress” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. The term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a command, rule, or moral code.

- This term is very similar to the word “trespass,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against God than against other people.
- To “transgress” can also be described as to “cross a line,” that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “transgress” could be translated as to “sin” or to “disobey” or to “rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: [parallelism](#))

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), trespass, [iniquity](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 4:6
- Daniel 9:24-25
- Galatians 3:19-20
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Psalm 32:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G04580, G04590, G38450, G38470, G38480, G39280

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:50](#))

tremble, stagger, shake

Definition:

The term “tremble” means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning “to be very afraid.”

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to “tremble.” It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as “be afraid” or “fear God” or “shake,” depending on the context.

(See also: [earth](#), [fear](#), [Lord](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 7:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 5:22
- Luke 8:47

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5568, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, H8653, G17900, G51410, G51560, G54250

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:49](#))

tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: clan, [nation](#), [people group](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 2:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G14290, G54430

(Go back to: [1 Kings 7:14](#); [8:1](#); [8:16](#); [11:13](#); [11:31](#); [11:32](#); [11:35](#); [11:36](#); [12:20](#); [12:21](#); [14:21](#); [18:31](#))

tribute, contribution, fined

Definition:

The term “tribute” refers to a gift from one ruler to another ruler, for the purpose of protection and for good relations between their nations. A tribute can also be a payment that a ruler or government requires from the people, such as a toll or tax.

- In Bible times, traveling kings or rulers sometimes paid a tribute to the king of the region they were traveling through to make sure they would be protected and safe.
- Often the tribute would include things besides money, such as foods, spices, rich clothing, and expensive metals such as gold.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “tribute” could be translated as “official gifts” or “special tax” or “required payment.”

(See also: [gold](#), [king](#), [ruler](#), tax)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 2 Kings 17:3
- Luke 23:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1093, H4061, H4503, H4530, H4853, H6066, H7862, G54110

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:21](#))

trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity

Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: [afflict](#), persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:6
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H0926, H0927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G03870, G16130, G17760, G23460, G23470, G23500, G23600, G28730, G36360, G39260, G39300, G39860, G44230, G46600, G50150, G51820

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:29](#); [18:17](#); [18:18](#))

true, truth

Definition:

The term “truth” refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according to the real world.

- “True” things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- “Truth” means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy “came true” or “will come true” mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of “truth” includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), fulfill, obey, [prophet](#), [understand](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:6-8
- 1 John 1:5-7
- 1 John 2:8
- 3 John 1:8
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 1:6
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 1:18
- James 3:14
- James 5:19
- Jeremiah 4:2
- John 1:9
- John 1:16-18
- John 1:51
- John 3:31-33
- Joshua 7:19-21
- Lamentations 5:19-22
- Matthew 8:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 26:1-3

- Revelation 1:19-20
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true**! You will not die."
- **14:6** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is *true* that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the *true* God.
- **31:8** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- **39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0199, H0389, H0403, H0529, H0530, H0543, H0544, H0551, H0571, H0935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G02250, G02260, G02270, G02280, G02300, G11030, G33030, G34830, G36890, G41030, G41370

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:4](#); [10:6](#); [Notes](#); [17:24](#); [22:16](#))

turn, turn away, turn back, return

Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”
- To “turn aside” means to change direction, it often means to either stop doing right and start doing evil or the opposite.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake. It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: [false god](#), leprosy, [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:2
- Acts 7:42
- Acts 11:21
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 1:17
- Malachi 4:6
- Revelation 11:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0541, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3943, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H6437, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G03440, G03870, G04020, G06540, G06650, G08680, G12940, G15780, G16120, G16240, G19940, G31790, G33130, G33290, G33440, G33460, G47620, G51570, G52900

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:15](#); [2:28](#); [8:28](#); [9:6](#); [10:13](#); [11:2](#); [11:3](#); [11:4](#); [11:9](#); [15:5](#); [17:3](#); [20:39](#); [22:32](#); [22:43](#))

Tyre, Tyrians

Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called "Tyrians."

- Part of the city was located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the mainland.
- Because of its location and its valuable natural resources, such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
- King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers to help build a palace for King David.
- Years later, Hiram also sent King Solomon wood and skilled laborers to help build the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
- Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [cedar](#), [Israel](#), the sea, Phoenicia, [Sidon](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 12:20
- Mark 3:7-8
- Matthew 11:22
- Matthew 15:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6865, H6876, G51830, G51840

(Go back to: [1 Kings 5:1](#); [7:13](#); [7:14](#); [9:11](#); [9:12](#))

understand, understanding, thinking

Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: [believe](#), [know](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 2:47
- Luke 8:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 3:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0995, H0998, H0999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G00500, G01450, G01910, G08010, G10970, G11080, G12710, G19210, G19220, G19870, G19900, G26570, G35390, G35630, G49070, G49080, G49200, G54240, G54280, G54290

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:29](#); [7:14](#))

Uriah

Facts:

Uriah was a righteous man and one of King David's best soldiers. He is often referred to as "Uriah the Hittite."

- Uriah had a very beautiful wife named Bathsheba.
- David committed adultery with Uriah's wife, and she became pregnant with David's child.
- To cover up this sin, David caused Uriah to be killed in battle. Then David married Bathsheba.
- Another man named Uriah was a priest during the time of King Ahaz.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ahaz, [Bathsheba](#), [David](#), [Hittite](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:5
- 2 Samuel 11:3
- 2 Samuel 11:26-27
- Nehemiah 3:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:12** Bathsheba's husband, a man named **Uriah**, was one of David's best soldiers. David called **Uriah** back from the battle and told him to go be with his wife. But **Uriah** refused to go home while the rest of the soldiers were in battle. So David sent **Uriah** back to the battle and told the general to place him where the enemy was strongest so that he would be killed.
- **17:13** After **Uriah** was killed, David married Bathsheba.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0223, G37740

(Go back to: [1 Kings 15:5](#))

vine

Definition:

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: grape, [vineyard](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 40:9
- Genesis 49:11
- John 15:1
- Luke 22:18
- Mark 12:3
- Matthew 21:35-37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5139, H1612, H8321, G02880, G02900, G10090, G10920

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:25](#))

vineyard

Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Vineyard could be also translated as “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: [grape](#), [Israel](#), [vine](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 9:20-21
- Luke 13:6
- Luke 20:15
- Matthew 20:2
- Matthew 21:40-41

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G02900

(**Go back to:** [1 Kings 21:1](#); [21:2](#); [21:6](#); [21:7](#); [21:15](#); [21:16](#); [21:18](#))

virgin, virginity

Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See also: Christ, Isaiah, Jesus, Mary)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- Luke 1:27
- Luke 1:35
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 25:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **22:4** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **22:5** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?"
- **49:1** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1330, H1331, G39320, G39330

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:2](#))

voice

Definition:

The term “voice” refers to audible sound that a person makes when speaking or communicating. In the Bible, the term can be used figuratively to refer to the concepts of sound, communication, and/or obedience.

Translation Suggestions

- The expression “to hear someone’s voice” can mean either “to hear someone speaking” or “to heed what someone says.”
- The Bible describes God as “speaking” and having a “voice,” even though God doesn’t have a physical body in the same way a human being does.
- The term “voice” sometimes implies the presence of a person, as in this statement: “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as “A person is heard calling out in the desert....” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- However, sometimes the word “voice” is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the heavens have a “voice” that reaches the whole earth. This means that the objects in the sky communicate something to human beings about God the Creator. (See: [metaphor](#))

(See also: [call](#), proclaim, splendor.)

Bible References:

- John 5:36-38
- Luke 1:42
- Luke 9:35
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 12:19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G29060, G54560

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:55](#); [17:22](#); [18:26](#); [18:27](#); [18:28](#); [18:29](#); [19:12](#); [19:13](#); [20:25](#); [20:36](#))

walk, walked

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, [honor](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Kings 2:4
- Colossians 2:7
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 17:1
- Isaiah 2:5
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 4:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G17040, G40430, G41980, G47480

(Go back to: [1 Kings 9 General Notes](#))

watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:6
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 8:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G00690, G09910, G11270, G14920, G23340, G28920, G35250, G37080, G39060, G43370, G46480, G50830, G54380

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:3](#); [2:4](#); [2:43](#); [3:6](#); [3:14](#); [6:12](#); [8:23](#); [8:24](#); [8:25](#); [8:58](#); [8:61](#); [9:4](#); [9:6](#); [11:10](#); [11:11](#); [11:34](#); [11:38](#); [13:21](#); [14:8](#); [14:27](#); [20:39](#))

water, deep

Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- The “deep” refers to a deep body of water, such as the watery depths at the beginning of creation or bodies of water that extend deep under the earth’s surface such as oceans, seas, etc.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: [life](#), [spirit](#), Holy Spirit, power)

Bible References:

- Acts 8:36-38
- Exodus 14:21
- John 4:10
- John 4:14
- John 4:15
- Matthew 14:28-30

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2222, H4325, H4529, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, H8415, G05040, G42150, G42220, G52020, G52040

(Go back to: [1 Kings 13:8](#); [13:9](#); [13:16](#); [13:17](#); [13:18](#); [13:19](#); [13:22](#); [14:15](#); [17:10](#); [18:4](#); [18:5](#); [18:13](#); [18:34](#); [18:35](#); [18:38](#); [19:6](#))

wheat

Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: [barley](#), chaff, grain, [seed](#), [thresh](#), winnow)

Bible References:

- Acts 27:36-38
- Exodus 34:21-22
- John 12:24
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Matthew 13:26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H2406, G46210

(Go back to: [1 Kings 5:11](#))

will of God

Definition:

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term to “will” means to “determine” or to “desire.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The “will of God” could also be translated as “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:15-17
- 1 Thessalonians 4:3-6
- Colossians 4:12-14
- Ephesians 1:1-2
- John 5:30-32
- Mark 3:33-35
- Matthew 6:8-10
- Psalms 103:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6310, H6634, H7522, G10120, G10130, G23070, G23080, G23090, G25960

(Go back to: [1 Kings 13 General Notes](#))

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: obey, fruit)

Bible References:

- Acts 6:3
- Colossians 3:15-17
- Exodus 31:6
- Genesis 3:6
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 7:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:5** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:1** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:9** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G46780, G46790, G46800, G49200, G54280, G54290, G54300

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:3](#); [2:6](#); [2:9](#); [Notes](#); [3:12](#); [3:28](#); [4:29](#); [4:30](#); [4:31](#); [4:34](#); [5:7](#); [5:12](#); [7:14](#); [Notes](#); [10:4](#); [10:6](#); [10:7](#); [10:8](#); [10:23](#); [10:24](#); [Notes](#); [11:41](#))

word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term “word of truth” is another way of referring to “God’s word,” which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God’s word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”
- “Word of truth” could be translated as “God’s true message” or “God’s word, which is true.”
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: [prophet](#), [true](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:1
- 1 Kings 13:1
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 8:11
- John 5:39
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 12:24
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 6:7

- Ephesians 1:13
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- James 1:18
- James 2:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:7** In **God's word** he commands his people, "Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him."
- **33:6** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the **word of God**."
- **42:3** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:7** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0561, H0565, H1697, H3068, G30560, G44870

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:27](#); [6:11](#); [12:22](#); [12:24](#); [13:1](#); [13:2](#); [13:5](#); [13:9](#); [13:17](#); [13:18](#); [13:20](#); [13:26](#); [13:32](#); [14:18](#); [15:29](#); [16:1](#); [16:7](#); [16:12](#); [16:34](#); [17:2](#); [17:5](#); [17:8](#); [17:16](#); [17:24](#); [18:1](#); [18:31](#); [19:9](#); [20:35](#); [21:17](#); [21:28](#); [22:5](#); [22:19](#); [22:38](#))

work, works, deeds

Definition:

The term “work” refers generally either to the action of expending effort in order to accomplish something, or to the result of that action. The term “works” refers generally to actions as a whole (that is, things that have been done or that need to be done).

- In the Bible, these terms are commonly used both in reference to God and humans.
- When used in reference to God, the term “work” in the Bible often refers to God’s action of creating the universe or saving his people (either from enemies, from sin, or both).
- God’s works refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place.
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” could be “deeds” or “actions” or “things that are done.”
- God’s “works” or “deeds” or the “work of his hands” could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “things that God does.”
- The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “everything that God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- When work is done for God or others, it can be translated as “service” or “ministry.”

(See also: fruit, Holy Spirit, [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:12
- Acts 2:8-11
- Daniel 4:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 2:15-16
- James 2:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 2:7
- Romans 3:28
- Titus 3:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4399, H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G20410

(Go back to: [1 Kings 5:16](#); [7:14](#); [7:40](#); [7:51](#); [9:23](#); [11:28](#); [16:7](#))

Yahweh

Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name in the Old Testament. The specific origin of this name is unknown, but it is probably derived from the Hebrew verb meaning, “to be.”

- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULT and UST texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” in agreement with the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” never occurs in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even when quoting the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [Lord](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:20
- 1 Samuel 16:7
- Daniel 9:3
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 2:4
- Genesis 4:3-5
- Genesis 28:13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:4
- Isaiah 38:8
- Job 12:10
- Joshua 1:9
- Lamentations 1:5
- Leviticus 25:35
- Malachi 3:4
- Micah 2:5

- Micah 6:5
- Numbers 8:11
- Psalm 124:3
- Ruth 1:21
- Zechariah 14:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:5** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

(Go back to: 1 Kings 1:17; 1:29; 1:30; 1:36; 1:37; 1:48; 2:3; 2:4; 2:8; 2:15; 2:23; 2:24; 2:26; 2:27; 2:28; 2:29; 2:30; 2:32; 2:33; 2:42; 2:43; 2:44; 2:45; 3:1; 3:2; 3:3; 3:5; 3:7; 5:3; 5:4; 5:5; 5:7; 5:12; 6:2; 6:19; 8:9; 8:11; 8:12; 8:15; 8:18; 8:20; 8:21; 8:22; 8:23; 8:25; 8:28; 8:44; 8:53; 8:54; 8:56; 8:57; 8:59; 8:60; 8:61; 8:62; 8:63; 8:64; 8:65; 8:66; 9:2; 9:3; 9:8; 9:9; 9:25; 10:1; 10:9; 11:2; 11:4; 11:6; 11:9; 11:10; 11:11; 11:14; 11:31; 12:15; 12:24; 13:2; 13:3; 13:6; 13:21; 13:26; 14:5; 14:7; 14:11; 14:13; 14:14; 14:15; 14:21; 14:22; 14:24; 15:3; 15:4; 15:5; 15:11; 15:14; 15:15; 15:26; 15:30; 15:34; 16:7; 16:13; 16:19; 16:25; 16:26; 16:30; 16:33; 17:1; 17:12; 17:14; 17:20; 17:21; 17:22; 18:3; 18:4; 18:10; 18:12; 18:13; 18:18; 18:21; 18:22; 18:24; 18:30; 18:32; 18:36; 18:37; 18:38; 18:39; 18:46; 19:4; 19:7; 19:10; 19:11; 19:12; 19:14; 19:15; 20:13; 20:14; 20:28; 20:36; 20:42; 21:3; 21:19; 21:20; 21:23; 21:25; 21:26; 22:7; 22:8; 22:11; 22:12; 22:14; 22:15; 22:16; 22:17; 22:19; 22:20; 22:21; 22:23; 22:24; 22:28; 22:43; 22:52; 22:53)

Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host of heaven, host of the heavens, Lord of hosts

Definition:

The terms “Yahweh of hosts” and “God of hosts” are titles that express God’s authority over the thousands of angels who obey him.

- The term “host” or “hosts” is a word that refers to a large number of something, such as an army of people or the massive number of stars. It can also refer to all the many spirit beings, including evil spirits. The context makes it clear what is being referred to.
- Phrases similar to “host of the heavens” refer to all the stars, planets and other heavenly bodies.
- In the New Testament, the phrase, “Lord of hosts” means the same as “Yahweh of hosts” but it cannot be translated that way since the Hebrew word “Yahweh” is not used in the New Testament.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “Yahweh of hosts” could include, “Yahweh, who rules all the angels” or “Yahweh, the ruler over armies of angels” or “Yahweh, the ruler of all creation.”
- The phrase “of hosts” in the terms “God of hosts” and “Lord of hosts” would be translated the same way as in the phrase “Yahweh of hosts” above.
- Certain churches do not accept the literal term “Yahweh” and prefer to use the capitalized word, “LORD” instead, following the tradition of many Bible versions. For these churches, a translation of the term “LORD of hosts” would be used in the Old Testament for “Yahweh of hosts.”

(See also: [angel](#), authority, [God](#), [lord](#), [Lord](#), Lord Yahweh [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Zechariah 13:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0430, H3068, H6635, G29620, G45190

(Go back to: [1 Kings 18:15](#); [19:10](#); [19:14](#))

year

Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into twelve months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has twelve months. But an extra thirteenth month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is eleven days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: [month](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:31
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 8:1
- Exodus 12:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G17630, G20940

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:11](#); [2:39](#); [4:7](#); [5:11](#); [6:1](#); [6:38](#); [7:1](#); [9:25](#); [10:22](#); [10:25](#); [11:42](#); [14:20](#); [14:21](#); [14:25](#); [15:1](#); [15:2](#); [15:9](#); [15:10](#); [15:25](#); [15:28](#); [15:33](#); [16:8](#); [16:10](#); [16:15](#); [16:23](#); [16:29](#); [17:1](#); [18:1](#); [20:22](#); [20:26](#); [22:1](#); [22:2](#); [22:41](#); [22:42](#); [22:51](#))

yoke, yoked, tied

Definition:

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

- The term “yoke” is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
- Paul used the term “yokefellow” to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as “fellow worker” or “fellow servant” or “coworker.”
- The term “yoke” is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
- In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
- Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, “oppressive burden” or “heavy load” or “bond,” depending on the context.

(See also: bind, [burden](#), [oppress](#), persecute, [servant](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 15:10
- Galatians 5:1
- Genesis 27:40
- Isaiah 9:4
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Matthew 11:30
- Philippians 4:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3627, H4132, H4133, H5674, H5923, H6776, G20860, G22180

(Go back to: [1 Kings 12:4](#); [12:9](#); [12:10](#); [12:11](#); [12:14](#))

Zadok

Facts:

Zadok was the name of an important high priest in Israel during the reign of King David.

- When Absalom rebelled against King David, Zadok supported David and helped bring the ark of the covenant back into Jerusalem.
- Years later, he also took part in the ceremony to anoint David's son Solomon as king.
- Two different men by the name of Zadok helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem during Nehemiah's time.
- Zadok was also the name of King Jotham's grandfather.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [David](#), [Jotham](#), [Nehemiah](#), [reign](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 24:1-3
- 1 Kings 1:26-27
- 2 Samuel 15:24-26
- Matthew 1:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6659, G45240

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:8](#); [1:26](#); [1:32](#); [1:34](#); [1:38](#); [1:39](#); [1:44](#); [1:45](#); [2:35](#); [4:2](#); [4:4](#))

zeal, zealous

Definition:

The terms “zeal” and “zealous” refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

- Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
- Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
- The “zeal of the Lord” or the “zeal of Yahweh” refers to God’s strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “be zealous” could also be translated by, “be strongly diligent” or “make an intense effort.”
- The term “zeal” could also be translated as “energetic devotion” or “eager determination” or “righteous enthusiasm.”
- The phrase, “zeal for your house” could be translated, “strongly honoring your temple” or “fervent desire to take care of your house.”

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:31
- 1 Kings 19:9-10
- Acts 22:3
- Galatians 4:17
- Isaiah 63:15
- John 2:17-19
- Philippians 3:6
- Romans 10:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7068, G22050, G22060, G22070, G60410

(Go back to: [1 Kings 19:10](#); [19:14](#))

Zedekiah

Facts:

Zedekiah, son of Josiah, was the last king of Judah (597-587 B.C.). There are also several other men named Zedekiah in the Old Testament.

- King Nebuchadnezzar made Zedekiah king of Judah after capturing King Jehoiachin and taking him away to Babylon. Zedekiah later rebelled and as a result Nebuchadnezzar captured him and destroyed all of Jerusalem.
- Zedekiah, son of Kenaanah, was a false prophet during the time of King Ahab of Israel.
- A man named Zedekiah was one of those who signed an agreement to the Lord during the time of Nehemiah.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), Babylon, Ezekiel, kingdom of Israel, Jehoiachin, Jeremiah, [Josiah](#), Judah, Nebuchadnezzar, Nehemiah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:15-16
- Jeremiah 37:1-2
- Jeremiah 39:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6667

(Go back to: [1 Kings 22:11](#); [22:24](#))

Zion, Mount Zion

Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: [metonymy](#))
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [David](#), [Jerusalem](#), Bethlehem, [Jebusites](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:5
- Amos 1:2
- Jeremiah 51:35
- Psalm 76:1-3
- Romans 11:26

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6726

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:1](#))

Contributors

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki
Cheryl Stieben
Cheryl Warren
Christian Berry
Christine Harrison
Clairmene Pascal
Connie Bryan
Connie Goss
Craig Balden
Craig Lins
Craig Scott
Cynthia J Puckett
Dale Hahs
Dale Masser
Daniel Lauk
Daniel Summers
Darlene M Hopkins
Darlene Silas
David Boerschlein
David F Withee
David Glover
David J Forbes
David Mullen
David N Hanley
David Sandlin
David Shortess
David Smith
David Whisler
Debbie Nispel
Debbie Piper
Deborah Bartow
Deborah Bush
Deborah Miniard
Dennis Jackson
Dianne Forrest
Donna Borkenhagen
Donna Mullis
Douglas Hayes
Drew Curley
Ed Davis
Edgar Navera
Edward Kosky
Edward Quigley
Elaine VanRegenmorter
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas
Ellen Lee
Emeline Thermidor
Emily Lee
Esther Roman
Esther Trew
Esther Zirk
Ethel Lynn Baker
Evangeline Puen
Evelyn Wildgust
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble
Gail Spell
Gary Greer
Gary Shogren
Gay Ellen Stulp
Gene Gossman
George Arlyn Briggs
Gerald L. Naughton
Glen Tallent
Grace Balwit
Grace Bird
Greg Stoffregen
Gretchen Stencil
Hallie Miller
Harry Harriss
Heather Hicks
Helen Morse
Hendrik deVries
Henry Bult
Henry Whitney
Hilary O'Sullivan
Ibrahim Audu
Ines Gipson
Irene J Dodson
Jackie Jones
Jacqueline Bartley
James Giddens
James Pedersen
James Pohlig
James Roe
Janet O'Herron
Janice Connor
Jaqueline Rotruck
Jeanette Friesen
Jeff Graf
Jeff Kennedy
Jeff Martin
Jennifer Cunneen
Jenny Thomas
Jerry Lund
Jessica Lauk
Jim Frederick
Jim Lee
Jimmy Warren
Jim Rotruck
Jim Swartzentruber
Jody Garcia
Joe Chater
Joel Bryan
Joey Howell
John Anderson
John Geddis
John D Rogers
John Hutchins
John Luton

John Pace
John P Tornifolio
Jolene Valeu
Jon Haahr
Joseph Fithian
Joseph Greene
Joseph Wharton
Joshua Berkowitz
Joshua Calhoun
Joshua Rister
Josh Wondra
Joy Anderson
Joyce Jacobs
Joyce Pedersen
JT Crowder
Judi Brodeen
Judith Cline
Judith C Yon
Julia N Bult
Patty Li
Julie Susanto
Kahar Barat
Kannah Sellers
Kara Anderson
Karen Davie
Karen Dreesen
Karen Fabean
Karen Riecks
Karen Smith
Karen Turner
Kathleen Glover
Kathryn Hendrix
Kathy Mentink
Katrina Geurink
Kay Myers
Kelly Strong
Ken Haugh
Kim Puterbaugh
Kristin Butts Page
Kristin Rinne
Kwesi Opoku-debrah
Langston Spell
Larry Sallee
Lawrence Lipe
Lee Sipe
Leonard Smith
Lester Harper
Lia Hadley
Linda Buckman
Linda Dale Barton
Linda Havemeier
Linda Homer
Linda Lee Sebastien
Linn Peterson
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box
Luis Keelin
Madeline Kilmore
Maggie D Paul
Marc Nelson
Mardi Welo
Margo Hoffman
Marilyn Cook
Marjean Swann
Marjorie Francis
Mark Albertini
Mark Chapman
Mark Thomas
Marselene Norton
Mary Jane Davis
Mary Jean Stout
Mary Landon
Mary Scarborough
Megan Kidwell
Melissa Roe
Merton Dibble
Meseret Abraham-Zemedede
Michael Bush
Michael Connor
Michael Francis
Michael Geurink
Mike Tisdell
Mickey White
Miel Horrilleno
Monique Greer
Morgan Mellette
Morris Anderson
Nancy C. Naughton
Nancy Neu
Nancy VanCott
Neal Snook
Nicholas Scovil
Nick Dettman
Nils Friberg
Noah Crabtree
Pamela B Johnston
Pamela Nungesser
Pamela Roberts
Pam Gullifer
Pat Ankney
Pat Giddens
Patricia Brougher
Patricia Carson
Patricia Cleveland
Patricia Foster
Patricia Middlebrooks
Paul Mellema
Paula Carlson
Paula Oestreich
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser
Peggy Anderson
Peggyrose Swartzentruber
Peter Polloni
Phillip Harms
Phyllis Mortensen
Priscilla Enggren
Rachel Agheyisi
Rachel Ropp
Raif Turner
Ray Puen
Reina Y Mora
Rene Bahrenfuss
Renee Triplett
Rhonda Bartels
Richard Beatty
Richard Moreau
Richard Rutter
Richard Stevens
Rick Keaton
Robby Little
Robert W Johnson
Rochelle Hook
Rodney White
Rolaine Franz
Ronald D Hook
Rosario Baria
Roxann Carey
Roxanne Pittard
Ruben Michael Garay
Russell Isham
Russ Perry
Ruth Calo
Ruth E Withee
Ruth Montgomery
Ryan Blizek
Sam Todd
Samuel Njuguna
Sandy Anderson
Sandy Blanes
Sara Giesmann
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)
Sharon Johnson
Sharon Peterson
Sharon Shortess
Shelly Harms
Sherie Nelson
Sherman Sebastien
Sherry Mosher
Stacey Swanson
Steve Gibbs
Steve Mercier
Susan Langohr
Susan Quigley
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards
Sylvia Thomas
Sze Suze Lau
Tabitha Price
Tammy L Enns
Tammy White
Teresa Everett-Leone
Teresa Linn
Terri Collins
Theresa Baker
Thomas Jopling
Thomas Nickell
Thomas Warren
Tim Coleman
Tim Ingram
Tim Linn
Tim Lovestrand
Tim Mentink
Tom Penry
Tom William Warren
Toni Shuma
Tracie Pogue
Tricia Coffman
Vicki Ivester
Victoria G DeKraker
Victor M Prieto
Vivian Kamph
Vivian Richardson
Ward Pyles
Warren Blaisdell
Wayne Homer
Wendy Coleman
Wendy Colon
Wilbur Zirk
Wil Gipson
William Carson
William Cline
William Dickerson
William Smitherman
William Wilder
Yvonne Tallent

unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors

Nicholas Alsop
Scott Bayer
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Matt Carlton
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Dan Dennison
Jamie Duguid
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D.Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Michael Francis
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

Jesse Harris
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
John Huffman
D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament
Jack Messarra
Gene Mullen
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Kristy Nickell
Tom Nickell
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Dean Ropp
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch
Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Doug Smith, M.T.S., M.Div., Th.M., Midwestern Baptist Theological Seminary
Leonard Smith
Suzanna Smith
Tim Span
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Maria Tijerina
David Trombold, M. Div.
Aaron Valdizan, M.Div., Th.M. in Old Testament, The Masters Seminary
James Vigen
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University
Grant Ailie, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors

Nicholas Alsop
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Matt Carlton
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Michael Francis
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation
Kailey Gregory
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
John Huffman
D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament
Robert Hunt

Demsin Lachin
Jack Messarra
Gene Mullen
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Kristy Nickell
Tom Nickell
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Dean Ropp
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch
Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Christopher Smith, M.A.T.S. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary, Ph.D. Boston College
Leonard Smith
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
David Trombold, M. Div.
James Vigen
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics, MA in Theology, BA in Biblical Studies
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics
Bev Staley
Carol Brinneman
Jody Garcia
Kara Anderson
Kim Puterbaugh
Lizz Carlton
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors

Andrew Belcher
David Book
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000
Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Lizz Carlton

Jan Zanutto
Matthew Latham
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Richard Joki
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community
Jesse Griffin (BA Biblical Studies, Liberty University; MA Biblical Languages, Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary)
Perry Oakes (BA Biblical Studies, Taylor University; MA Theology, Fuller Seminary; MA Linguistics, University of Texas at Arlington; PhD Old Testament, Southwestern Baptist Theological Seminary)
Larry Sallee (Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary)
Joel D. Ruark (M.A.Th. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary; Th.M. Stellenbosch University; Ph.D. Candidate in Old Testament Studies, Stellenbosch University)